THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST
THE

SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

TRANSLATED

BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

AND EDITED BY

F. MAX MÜLLER

VOL. XXXVII

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1892

[All rights reserved]
PAHLAVI TEXTS

TRANSLATED BY

E. W. WEST

PART IV

CONTENTS OF THE NASKS

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1892

[All rights reserved]
CONTENTS OF THE NASKS.

DINKARD, BOOK VIII.

1. Classification, names, and divisions of the Nasks 3
2. Sūd'kar Nask 10
3. Varštānsar Nask 12
4. Bakō Nask 13
5. Dāmdād Nask 13
6. Nādar Nask: only the Avesta extant 15
7. Pāgag Nask: meat-offering, preparations, and priests for season-festivals; (§ 10) periods of day and year, fra-varādīkān days; gathering herbs, chastisement of sinners, 33 chieftainships, apostasy; (§ 20) almsgiving, summer and winter, calamity of a century, months 15
8. Rādō-dād-āltag Nask 19
9. Baris Nask: good and evil; advantages and disadvantages of the period 20
10. Karkīsrōbō Nask 23
11. Vistāsp-sāstō Nask: particulars about Kāf-Vistāsp, visit of the archangels to him, and his war with Argāsp 23
12. Vastag Nask: not extant 25
13. Kūtrādād Nask: races and monarchs from Gāyomard to Zaratür; (§ 17) the Sasanians and some leaders of religion 25
14. Spend Nask: birth and life of Zaratür, his vision of the past, future, and other world; (§ 12) his posthumous sons, the future apostles 31
15. Bakān-yār Nask: worship of the sacred beings and duties of the worshippers 34
16. Patkār-radāstān section of the Nikādām Nask: misery from sin and assault, kinds of assault and magisterial enquiry; (§ 13) punishment without enquiry, counter-assault.

17. Zatamistān section of the same: assault and its consequences, begging and beneficence, perversion, using weapons; conflict through assault, tumult, false-teaching, starving, spells, and threats, by men, women, and children; ill-treatment of slaves, compensation the only atonement, responsibility of fathers for crimes of children.

18. Rēshistān section of the same: kinds of wounds, scourging, 76 members of the body, effects of assaults, modes of assaulting, description of a wound and the weapon, curing wounds.

19. Hamēmālistān section of the same: various accusations, true and false, and retribution for the offences; pollution, a young woman well taught, slander, care of a pregnant woman, a householder neglecting his family, opinions of quiet and unquiet people; (§ 10) cowardice, impenitence, sin of priests, retribution, authority of priests, punishment of judges, illegal action of plaintiff, seizing purity of foreigners, those worthy of death, confession; (§ 21) assault with a weapon, curing a wounded person who afterwards dies, security taken from defendant, procrastination by plaintiff, mediation, assaults furious and harmless, punishment of a child for sin, interpretation, signs of approval by the dying; (§ 31) undefined assault, killing a foreigner, great hinderers, indiscriminate assault, a frontier governor, striking the living and dead, timber and firewood, atonement and ordeals, physicians, mutilating a horse; (§ 41) a wound as evidence of crime, modes of using a weapon, assault and retribution, incarceration, pulling a steed's tail, threats and spells, various plaints and plaintiffs, pleadings inconsistent with accusations; (§ 50) master unfriendly to disciple, arresting and prosecuting a thief, the good to be treated like oneself, when carrying off property becomes theft, native and foreign thieves, why the foreigner is unfettered, assail-
20. Fifth section of the same: an armed man riding to attack another, overhearing talk of murder or robbery, how to act when a companion murders, saving one worthy of death for medical purposes, legal argument unnecessary only when the judge is a supreme priest, unauthorised combatants, travellers' supplies, penalties; (§ 10) power and good works of the worthy, weakness and sin of the unworthy, how to conduct legal proceedings, a wife can do so for her husband, particulars about ordeals, measures of distance; (§ 20) litigation as to a costly article, annulling decisions by appeal or ordeal, litigation of three claimants, selling another's property, disputing, litigation of Iranians with foreigners or slaves, a noisy plaintiff, a high-priest, a wife unfit for evidence; (§ 30) a pledge, property of partners, or held without evidence of ownership, ordeal of excessive eating, dispute as to a stolen female, property of any one given by another to a third party without dispute, a master teaching his disciple not to litigate, dispute about alms, a successful triple ordeal, spells and threats; (§ 40) ordeals, a thief liberated to attend a ceremonia, a priest's personal property and its inheritance, residuary wealth of fathers, penalty for stealing cattle, three plaintiffs, three claimants, and three thieves; (§ 50) imprisoning a native for theft; duration, order, hardship, and stratagems of legal proceedings; ordeals, benedictions on decisions, evidence, ownership; (§ 60) certainty of statements, incrimination, treatment of apostates, origins of virtue and vice, harm of unatoned sin, Tanâpûhar sin, atonement and ordeal, witnessing a theft, decisions according to scripture or precedent; (§ 70) when men and beasts can be sold with a warranty, an exceptional decision, appointment and qualification of judges, legal proceedings producing injustice, litigating thieves convicted, offences as to property, isolation; (§ 80) dispute about property resigned by a third party, disputing
fathers' debts, when women and children can be condemned for spells, lowest and highest values, stealing one's own property, false and true investigation, litigation of man and wife, who gives away the daughter of a dead father; (§ 90) estranging a wife from her husband, bartering girl for girl, consequent injury to one's own wife, overpayment for wife recoverable, sin of keeping a marriageable daughter unmarried, a wife can be given only to a Mazda-worshipper, mortal sin of giving no food, chastising a wizard, longest and shortest days and parasangs; (§ 101) work and food of an injured beast, manslaughter by a sheep, period from certainty to doubt, useless witnesses and unjust judges, harm of gifts to the unworthy, gifts and righteous gifts; (§ 110) crime of not maintaining families under one's control, punishment and atonement for sin and assault, all prosperity given to Zarathust and his disciples, an isolated creature, keeping and breaking promises; sin and punishment of strife, insincerity, and slander; hostages and ransom; (§ 121) sin of a governor, ransom of thieves, stolen article tied to the thief's neck, no atonement for theft without confession, stolen property to be recovered by authorities, sin of giving a woman to one when engaged to another, cheating an ignorant man, interceding for him, fitness for sovereignty; (§ 130) indisputable ordinances, enquiry after confession, squandering alms, delay of legal proceedings, a woman without a guardian, written statements in law, sin of frightening away, restoring what was extorted, minor decisions obvious from greater ones, benefit of a family; (§ 140) sin of wealth from unnatural intercourse, a decree of three kinds, a stolen tree, a sin aggravated by deceit, defilement, stopping a combat, counter-assaults, no property for one worthy of death, abettors of sin; (§ 150) harm of an incompetent president, sin of deciding by origin of claimant, sin of delivering an Irânian to a foreigner; gifts of the righteous, controversy with apostates, necessity for maintaining the truth, sin of occasioning schism, injustice produced by the evil spirit, complaint
of aristocrats condemned for taking bribes, the just judge; (§ 160) possibility of reaching heaven, true and false justice, learning the Gāthas, Hādōkht, and Vastag; greatness of the law, kinds of property not to be taken as security, ten friends differing, and much other adjudication

21. First section of the Ganabā-sar-nigad Nask: the thief, his arrest, sin, punishment, and ransom, pinioning and fettering, imprisonment at expense of privileged accusers; kinds of theft, theft with plunder, injury, and in confederacy; shares in theft, assisting a thief, theft by women and children, property to be preserved from thieves; (§ 10) testimony of thieves, rewards, difference of theft and plunder, property to be restored to its owners, protectors of thieves

22. Second section of the same is miscellaneous: authority for enquiry into sin of a relative, teaching and sin of children, not killing in war, property of a slain soldier, weapons not for women, children, or foreigners; a woman’s treatment of two men, supplies found by a warrior, property inexpedient, delays of a judge; (§ 10) improper decisions, duties of judges; (§ 21) fitness of women and children for judgeship, aiding a disciple, supremacy of Rashnū, property in trust, consistency of actions, congregational actions, misuse of the law

23. Pasūs-haūrvastān section of the same: selection and efficiency of the shepherd’s dog, preparations for him, his duties; (§ 12) characteristics of sheep, way to the village, when starved the dog may kill a sheep, stray sheep and dogs; treatment, punishment, instruction, and peculiarities of the dog

24. Stōristān section of the same: sin of injuring cattle, beasts, and sheep; branding, making a dog dumb, plucking birds, spoiling fish, beating cattle, leathern and woollen clothing, sin of burning it, good works lead to heaven, and sin to hell

25. Argistān section of the same: value of property, animate and inanimate, and of preserving the righteous; damaging the sacred fire
26. Aratârstâristân section of the same: destroying wolves, two-legged and four-legged; supplies, equipments, and horses for warriors; training of horses, efficacy of warriors, sin of a warrior's village on account of a battle, armour, officers and troopers, number of troopers; (§ 10) supplies for two warriors, medicinal herbs and accoutrements, feeding warriors on day of battle, wealth of the enemy, friendship and devotion of warriors, the general and his strategy, requisite horses to be seized, sentinels; (§ 20) demonstrations, altercation with enemy, speech to troops, conciliating and encouraging them, religious rites before the battle, reserves who keep the stores and prisoners, refreshment and return of stores after the battle . . . . 86

27. A miscellaneous section of the same: a warm bath, exertion of a horse, precautions with regard to fire when cooking and travelling, picketing a horse, food of men, fire, and cattle; hospitality, clothes, a street-keeper; (§ 10) providing in summer for the winter, reaping, union for good purposes, produce of plants and animals, property of nobles and the multitude, envy among animals and people . . . . 90

28. Aërpatistân section of the Hûspâram Nask: providing for a priestly assembly, the priest and his disciple, district priest to be appointed, five dispositions of priests, enquiry into concealed parentage of a priest, his accountability for sin, worry in forming a priestly assembly, relative superiority of priests . . . . 92

29. Nîrangistân section of the same: ritual and priests for the ceremonial, the sacred cake, abstaining from wine, recitation of Avesta, the ceremonial when the priest is a Tanâpûhar sinner, priestship of a woman or child, he who is cursed, season-festivals and periods of the day; (§ 11) sacrifice of a sheep, stations of the priests, the perfect ceremonial, sacred shirt and girdle, sacred twigs, firewood, ceremonials of various grades, celebrations of the ceremonies; (§ 21) cleanliness of the celebrator, place, and apparatus; ceremony of the waters, and other particulars; families of Zaratûst, Hvôv, and Vîršasp . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 94
30. Gohar-fkistân section of the same: superiority; selling
property of another, cattle, slaves, and without war-
 ranty; (§ 9) houses and clothing used during con-
tagious sickness, fatal or otherwise, family alliance
with foreigners, sheep of good breed . . . . 97

31. A miscellaneous section of the same: stealing, religious
instruction, oppression and deceit, reducing liberality,
limit of a wife's liberality, a bride going to her husband's
house, quarrels in wedlock, menstruation, foreigners
seeking wives; (§ 9) birth and care of a son, injurious
things that must be kept, those who must not punish,
rejoicing and gifts at a birth, naming the child, breed-
ing sheep and dogs; (§ 20) fees for priestly duties,
guardianship of a child, sickness from evil eye or
touching a mensturous woman, fearfulness, supplies,
produce of property, duties of judges; (§ 30) creation
and production of corn, excitement due to blood,
ownership, land-grabbing, supplies sold in distress,
supremacy of sin, atonement for various sins; (§ 42)
the oppressor, greed, the weak man should be good . 99

32. Another section of the same: about an ordeal . . . 105
33. Another section of the same: mad animals and their
care . . . . . . . . 105

34. A miscellaneous section of the same: amassing property,
arranging marriages for one's children, portioning
daughters, righteous gifts, an Irânian vainly asking
reward for assisting foreigners in battle, offering up
of water; (§ 10) best and worst actions, heinous sins,
various sins, assisting foreigners, destroying plants,
digging a grave, clothing a corpse; defiling fire, water,
or people; about water, damage by water or fire;
preventing misery and adversity . . . . 106

35. Another section of the same: seeking and begetting a
son, conception, tokens of sex, development of fetus;
period of gestation and birth, period of determination
of sex, childbirth and care of child; (§ 10) periods of
gestation in various animals, spiritual perceptions of
the child, habits tending to beauty, evils of unnatural
intercourse and adultery; increased and diminished
vigour of the female and male, respectively . . . 109
36. Another section of the same: ownership and litigation about property; earnings, family guardianship and income; about wives, adoption, partnership of brothers, inheritance, and giving in marriage.

37. Another section of the same: daily food of men, women, children, and dogs; religious conversion, association of various kinds, sins of falsehood and extortion, atonement for deprival of food, necessary debt; (§ 14) physicians, medical treatment and fees; (§ 30) suitability for trust, unauthorised dwellings, boundaries, testimony of the orthodox and heterodox, priestly dwellings, abode of fires, water oozing and flowing, works on a frontier; (§ 40) sheep trespassing, animals' food, distance of house from river, grazing sheep, felling trees, slaughtering, defensive clothing, migration during war, waters reverenced by a traveller, obedience of disciple to priest; (§ 50) frontier war, various advantages.

38. One of the first 30 sections of the Sakâdûm Nask: future reward and punishment, necessity of seeking the good law and scrutinizing actions, noticing a fire, intentional injury, extent of the fire's light, size of its sanctuary door, care and food of a new-born child, keeping a cooking-pot pure; (§ 11) proper bed-places, curing defective sight, workmen and women, giving no food thrice and four times, care of anything pointed and of all utensils, injury by a door, washing the head and shaving; (§ 21) custodians and rules of a market, giving forth pointed things and victuals lawfully and unlawfully, horse-courses and manoeuvres, admitting listeners, making and tying the sacred girdle, scratching with the nails, care of fire when travelling; (§ 29) panic at night among warriors, marching in fear or fearlessly, demanding a share, care of firewood, warming bull's urine, selecting pasture, farm-houses, interference with the seizure of cattle, hanging things up, stabling horses; (§ 40) cutting trees, washing clothes, walking in, passing through water, canals and fords; (§ 52) two warriors marching, sin of eating on the road, remedies for cattle, their breeding,


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chap.</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39. Haroldakānīstān section of the same: sequestration of property, sheep, horses, cattle, and their young, milk, and wool; their shelter and ill-treatment; (§ 11) handing over sheep to the sequestrator and his responsibility, a free sheep among those seized, the killing of a seized sheep, particulars of a seized animal to be stated when it is kept with others, care of a man wounded in slaughtering, gain of a sequestrator of animals in various circumstances; (§ 17) treasure found in various places and at various depths of earth and water; (§ 24) nourishing a seized sheep, disputes as to its identity, keeping it in the mountains, and other details</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. Ziyānakāstān section of the same: duty of protecting animate and inanimate existences, and sin of injuring them; a damaged gift or animal, inanimate property and its increase, merit of not rejecting a damaged article</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41. Vakhshistān, one of the last 22 sections of the same: atonement, compensation, active and existent increase, increase upon increases, righteous gifts, interest simple and compound, how loans are treated on the death of lender or debtor; (§ 10) retribution, penalty for inefficient breeding of animals, animals’ milk and hair, males preferable to females, an injured camel, improved dog or pig, buying up supplies too much; (§ 20) giving away necessary clothing, penalty for deprival of food, litigation about debts, unauthorised supplies, multiplication of sheep and other details, loans and repayment by instalments, seizure of slaves to work off a debt; (§ 30) seizure of a cloak or a water-skin, increase of grains and sheep, seizure of clothes and implements, produce of land and ornaments</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
42. Varistân section of the same: trial and execution of a wizard, trial by ordeal, and particulars about ordeals. 144

43. A miscellaneous section of the same: assistants, wealth causing imprisonment, confession, disciple and master, penalties, sins owing to the wrathful, an unjust judge and one of long experience; (§ 10) a daughter controlled by parents and one without a guardian, bequeathing property, sin of declining adoption, property of a liberal man and of a damsel, a damsel taken by an idolator and offered to a Mazda-worshipper, a mother being guardian of her son’s father, providing a high-priest; (§ 20) sin of not providing a husband for an adult daughter, inadvertent sin, worst demoneservice and sins, furtherances and destroyers of the world, truth that is wicked, driving spiritual benefit from the world, three kinds of righteous men, sin of defiling water and fire; merit of removing dead matter of men, dogs, and reptiles from water; reptiles may be killed in water, but must be removed to gratify the earth-spirit and vex the demons; (§ 30) a well-managed drinking-party, the sin of him who leaves it uproariously, animals produced from the sole-created ox, offerings to the sacred beings; injury to the world by fiends, idolators, and wolves; the necessity of destroying them, advice not to reverence the evil spirits, nor to chatter unseasonably, the advantage of the ceremonial of the sacred beings 145

44. Vendidâd Nask: corresponding with the contents of fargirdâs I–XI, XIII–XXII 152

45. Hâdêkht Nask: recital of Ahunavair, high-priests, 21 chieftainships, duties at periods of the day, season-festivals, superiors, membership of the community, prayers at eating, recitations, invocation, devotion; (§ 10) good attributes and qualities, diligence, righteousness, the chief resource of the creatures, sayings full of humility 166

46. Stôn-yast Nask 169
CONTENTS.

DINKARD, BOOK IX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chap.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Introductory</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Súd'kar Nask, fargard 1. Use of various repetitions of the Ahunavair, and the division of the Nasks according to its lines</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 2. The Ashem-vohû</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 3. Formation, decline, and death of human beings; illiberal opulence</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 4. The utilisers and misusers of life, the latter being the defects of Dahâk; the vices driven away by Yim, what is to be avoided, the distresser and the distressed, and the mode of relieving the latter</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 5. Forgetfulness of kinsfolk and unforgetfulness of the Gâthic spirit, complaint and power of that spirit</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 6. The five excellences, distribution and acquirement of fortune, grief of an old man, things to be amassed in youth, storeholders of excellence, how one should drink and eat</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 7. The four periods in Zaratâst's millennium</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 8. Abstinence from sins due to reverence for the arch-demons, chattering while eating, prayer and purity at meals, loss of merit from want of a priest, proper times for the ceremonials of various sacred beings</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 9. Heinous sinfulness of sodomy</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Same, fargard 10. Complaint of fire against seven kinds of people who injure it; (§ 10) proper and improper fire, its wish to leave the world resisted, attention to it is the best worship, the righteous are to be pleased and not vexed</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 12.   | Same, fargard 11. Petition of fire for removal to the sky or to Afrân-vêg, the propitious fire Gûr-nasp; reward of the promoters of fire, and sin of its injurers; (§ 10) evil of maintaining fire by extortion, and of neglecting it; all food to be consecrated, opposition of the fiend to worship, three grades of

[37] b
ceremonial, sin of not reciting the Gathas, coming of the demon of death, disbelief of the wicked; (§ 20) mourning for the dead prohibited, different desires of body and soul, self-injury of a liar, sin of employing or being an improper Zoti, controllers of sin; (§ 30) wounders to be brought before four priests, promises not to be broken . . . . 189

13. Same, fargard 12. Advantage of satisfying water, impure recitation, impurity of greed, birds kill snakes, effectual invocation, goodness of archangels and Zarathust, gifts to his disciples . . . . . . . 195

14. Same, fargard 13. The spirit of the sacred cake attacks demons when the cake is consecrated, men who pray are righteous if not deceitful, a heinous sin no obliterator of other sin . . . . . . . 196

15. Same, fargard 14. The torment of Keresasp's soul, notwithstanding his heroic deeds, owing to smiting the fire which opposes his soul, though befriended by Gos-afrvan, until Zarathust interceded . . . . 197

16. Same, fargard 15. Proceedings of the demon of death, the soul alone sees the events of the spiritual state, treatment of the corpse and misery of its consciousness; (§ 9) worldly happiness seldom lasts a century, ordainable supplies, the seven immortal rulers in Khvanfras . . . . . . . 199

17. Same, fargard 16. Bridge-judgment of sinners, merit of certain good works, punishment of certain sinners, Gathas for an ordeal . . . . . . . 204

18. Same, fargard 17. Where seven particular classes of sinners have to go . . . . . . . 206

19. Same, fargard 18. Pregnancy of the fiend due to certain sins; the soul blesses the body when righteous, and curses it when wicked; proper times for reciting the Ahunavair and Ashem, the corruption of the wicked . 206

20. Same, fargard 19. The souls praise a virtuous high-priest, miseries of hell, the Kinvad bridge, promises not to be broken, not even those to a courtezan, in which case the penalty is childlessness in hell . . . 209

21. Same, fargard 20. Dahaks's oppressiveness, the people's reproaches contrasting him with Yim, Frendun's smiting
and binding him; (§ 11) gradual submission of most
of the regions, war with the Mázendarâns; (§ 22)
their defeat and slaughter by Frêdûn, since which
time none of them have entered Khvanchâras, except
two men who came to consult Frashôstar .

22. Same, fargard 21. The four best prayers; the Dâhmân
Áfrîn making a good man infinitely more splendid
than the finest woman, horse, ox, or sheep, and a bad
man infinitely worse. The reign of Kâf-Ûs, his
success and ruin; (§ 10) his flight followed by the
spirit of Kâf-Khûsrûf and the angel Nêryûsang .

23. Same, fargard 22. Kaî-Khûsrûf riding upon Vâê in the
form of a camel, his finding Haoût, Tûs, and Kaî-
Apîvêh, his meeting Sôshânû, who praises him for his
exploits; Keresâsp, exhorted by Tûs, adopts the
religion, and so all the producers of the renovation
are united . . . . . . . .

24. Varstânsar Nask, fargard 1. Zaratûst relates the
incidents of his birth to Maîdûk-mâh; his first three
utterances that routed the demons; (§ 12) his pro-
fession of the religion, Aûharmasîd's advice and its
acceptance, grumbling of the evil spirit, creation by
Aûharmasîd, reverencing fire, water, and a spirit .

25. Same, fargard 2. Worthiness of a ruler and high-priest


27. Same, fargard 4. Worship of Aûharmasîd and the arch-
angels . . . . . . . .

28. Same, fargard 5. Worthiness of Zaratûst and obeisance
to the sacred beings, the supreme heaven, praise of
Zaratûst and Frashôstar, assisting others, good works,
wisdom of Zaratûst . . . . . .

29. Same, fargard 6. Complaint and petition of Gûs-aûrvan,
the reason of her creation, her colloquy with Aûharmasîd;
(§ 9) nourishment of cattle, punishment of
their oppressor, wisdom of Aûharmasîd, benefit of
the liturgy, goodness of Zaratûst . . . . .

30. Same, fargard 7. Benefits of worship, advice to man,
falsehood of the demon Aresh about the origin
of Aûharmasîd and Aharman, their difference of
motive and action, the demons' want of discrimina-
tion, their deception of man; (§ 10) monarchy and religion provided for the creatures who triumph in the end, the producers of the renovation and future existence, the doers of good, advice to man . . . 241

31. Same, fargard 8. Reciting revelation, benefit owing to Aūharmazd and misery to Aharman, the actions of both spirits; (§ 6) colloquy of the demon Aresh and Zaratūst, power of the liturgy, creation by Aūharmazd, benefits from Vohûman, merit of benefiting cattle, hypocrisy, work of the creator; (§ 17) complete mindfulness, liberality, the worst ruler, judges and guardians, conflict of good and evil, apostates; (§ 24) the three nights, Khûrda and Amûrda, the good ruler . . . . . . . . . 245

32. Same, fargard 9. Three deceitful demons and their colloquy with Aūharmazd; (§ 8) arrival of demons in the world, their evil doings and those of their followers, evil of burying a corpse, its impurity; (§ 17) evildoers of the ninth and tenth centuries, their evil deeds; (§ 25) the final punishment in melted metal, at the renovation, is the end of evil . 252

33. Same, fargard 10. The renovation and Sôshâns, merit of a good priest, avoidance of oppressors, the Kinvad bridge; Zaratūst, taught by Aūharmazd, is Zôdi of the world at the renovation; the names of his assistant priests . . . . . . . . . . 260

34. Same, fargard 11. Vohûman reports to Aūharmazd thrice a day, the demons trying to seduce man are vexed by his resistance, Ārmat and Târûkmât, opposition to the demons, advantage of religion and its reward . . . 263

35. Same, fargard 12. Benefits of religion; mutual service of men, cattle, and the sacred beings; evil deeds prohibited, worship by the righteous is the best, begging for life; (§ 11) duties to fire, Zaratūst's seeing the future existence, benefits of worship; (§ 17) colloquy of Aūharmazd and Zaratūst . . . 265

36. Same, fargard 13. Reward and tokens of righteousness 269

37. Same, fargard 14. Aūharmazd's creativeness, threat of the evil spirit, praise of religion, the wicked in hell, the demons . . . . . . . . . . 270
38. Same, fargard 15. The seven perfections of religious advice, power and contempt for the demons given to the creatures, praise of Zarathuṣṭa.

39. Same, fargard 16. Worship not to be neglected on any account, want of spirituality in men, liberality of the archangels, promises for the future, praise of the renovators; (§ 13) characteristics of the heretic Mânîh, attracters to the religion, the last millenniums, disturbers of religion; (§ 20) praise of the Fârânaks, liberality for the archangels, praise of Vîstâsp, advice to the Sîrûmânas, four marvels in the other world, advice to Zarathuṣṭa.

40. Same, fargard 17. Praise of truth, cattle, good works, ordeals.

41. Same, fargard 18. Evidence of the future existence, four triumphs of the sacred beings over the demons, enquiring about religion, avoiding apostates; (§ 12) mankind attaining wisdom, care for cattle, oppression by wrath and envy; (§ 21) progress of righteousness, the renovation, next-of-kin marriage, girdling.

42. Same, fargard 19. Protection at the renovation, belief necessary for being convinced, evil of a wicked judge and vicious people; praise of Zarathuṣṭa, Frashôstar, and Gâmâsp; punishment of the wicked.

43. Same, fargard 20. Assistance by the archangels, reward given to the righteous in the other world when unattainable here, cattle for warriors, advancement of religion by force, assisters of the dead righteous, reason for certain movements of the Zôti, worship of archangels, merit of Zarathuṣṭa, reward of good works.

44. Same, fargard 21. Desire for a good ruler; where the best wealth, prayer, and sovereignty exist; favours from the sacred beings, memory and discrimination, attraction of spiritual mercy and leadership in heaven, good works and wealth, submission to the priesthood meritorious, creations for the benefit of the creatures, comfort for the spirit of the liturgy; (§ 10) the wicked deceiver, man prepared for future existence by fire, the supreme heaven for the righteous only, enmity.
of Akht the heretic, Kašt and Karap excluded from virtue; praise of Virtāsp, Frashōstar, Ḥvōbō, Gāmāsp, Matōk-māh, and Zaratūst . . . . 294

45. Same, fargard 22. Perfection of prayers, glory of the Spitāmas, praise of Pūrūṭast and Hūtōs, characteristics of the preparers and disturbers of the end, the apostle and follower of the demons is to be smitten by the righteous ruler . . . . . . 298

46. Same, fargard 23. Benefits of the Afrāmān supplication 302

47. Bakšt Nask, fargard 1. The Ahunavair produced before the creation; its divisions, goodness, and use; benefit of its proper recital and sin of imperfect recital; (§ 12) it was the first creature and teaches submission to the king, the reward of Vohūman, dominion given to Aūharmaṣad, assistance to the poor, entrance of the destroyer; use of this saying by the degrees, classes, and chieftainships; the summing up of liberality . 303

48. Same, fargard 2. Excellence is producing suitably, reward of good works . . . . . . 308

49. Same, fargard 3. Worship of Aūharmaṣad and the archangels, particulars regarding worship . . . . 309

50. Same, fargard 4. Praise of Zaratūst, giving joy to Aūharmaṣad, good work of reverence, wisdom of Vohūman, benefit of cattle and the worthy, prosperity of the worthy, (§ 10) reverence of the good, supplicants should be contented, the way to heaven, reverence, acquaintance with religion, teaching righteousness, seeing the throne of Aūharmaṣad, welcoming him, recommending to rulers for benefit, the way of prosperity; (§ 20) a suitable sovereign solicited, the praiser, religion made progressive, zealoussness for good works, the man praised above others, assister of the ignorant, wisdom for Aūharmaṣad; the past, present, and future periods . . . . . . 311

51. Same, fargard 5. Complaint of Gōs-atrvan, care of cattle, the cattle-master, keeping animals properly, admitting the male, not slaughtering the young, he whose power is most useful, power for worship, reward stimulates perseverance; (§ 10) a virtuous mouth, religious duty develops knowledge, teaching
52. Same, fargād 6. Enlarging the priestly assembly, glorification of Aūharmazd, worship of Vohu Man, the ceremonial becomes greater through virtue, the extender of religion, discrimination as to duty, giving to the needy, granting the leadership, selecting the better of two ways; (§ 10) the discriminator of sagacity, thinking of eternity, preventing reverence of demons, practising liberality, persistence in virtue and attachment to the sacred beings for sake of reward, advantage of the righteous.

53. Same, fargād 7. The world freed from destruction, apostates forced to make the religion progressive, triumph of the priests, miraculousness of Aūharmazd, decision of acquittal or conviction, rite of ordeal, appointing a priest, reciter of revelation; (§ 10) teaching employers their responsibility, thinking of religion, teaching the nature of the sacred beings, giving a sheep to the diligent and moderate, development of the world and sheep, inward prayer, keeping animals and men as property, giving predominance to those of Gāyomart's nature, telling rulers the truth; (§ 20) keeping sovereignty within Aūharmazd's will, illustrating the information due to religion, the virtuous course of the liturgy, he whose Vohu Man is Aūharmazd's progeny, the good creation is Aūharmazd's, a ruler as to actions, giving Spendarmad to Aūharmazd, wisdom that arises through care of cattle, admitting the male; (§ 30) the way to heaven, assistance to the renovation, a heart and mind for not being misled, he who sees his sin mingled with good works, giving a loan, non-injury of the innocent, he who makes Aūharmazd ruler in himself, a decider informs others, a proper nurturer is an indicator for others, the demeanour for virtuous statements; (§ 40) indicating the acquitted and convicted, immortal and complete progress, making the
soul immortal, persisting in good works, maintaining predominance as high-priest, growth and increase owing to Vohûman, welcoming Aûharmazd in oneself, evidence of the well-informed

54. Same, fargard 8. Not being deceived by an apostate, making Spendarmañd an archangel, wisdom teaches not to destroy, teaching how to learn, strengthening the archangels and the good, loving Vohûman, giving thought to religion, keeping wealth in Zarathût's control, destiny controlled by self, good works becoming one's own.

55. Same, fargard 9. The Gâthic lore, priestly-controlled action, command of the liturgy, personal assistance to the creatures, reverence, causing progress for one's own, benefit for a cultivator through cattle, making righteousness one's own, three things promoted by submission, pleasure of energy.

56. Same, fargard 10. Advantage of doing good works, injuring an apostate, he who is eager for knowledge, slaying an apostate, development by Vohûmanic rule, the ceremonial a great ordinance, a ceremonial of the needy, the way of righteousness, reward of a teacher of professionals.

57. Same, fargard 11. All good works belong to him who teaches virtue, doing the best for one's own, he whose work is good work, he for whom the best occurs in both existences, the worship of Aûharmazd, a leader in religion, a server of religion, the authoriser of a wish for life; (§ 10) giving acceptance, hints, and words to Aûharmazd, teaching the words of Aûharmazd, providing care for fire, teaching the religion with joyfulness, obeisance, strengthening fire for its greatest work, being informed as to religion, sagacity of teaching words and actions, praising the perfection of Aûharmazd's body, all excellence is both root and fruit; (§ 20) invoking Aûharmazd as lord, invoking by name, benefit for one race is felt by all, he who is the sacred beings' own, and when his own is in their guardianship, giving life to mankind, obtainer of Aûharmazd's friendship, causing righteous-
ness and the propitiousness of Aûharmazd, his perpetual guardianship . . . . . . 348

58. Same, fargard 12. Benefits, pleasing superiors, the best for one's own in every mode, teaching virtue to all, one whose spirit is connected with Aûharmazd, whose words are through Vohûman, who produces long-continued joy, who teaches the proper way to man, who gives heat to fire; (§ 10) assistants of the renovation, the progeny of Aûharmazd, defeating the bad and accepting the good, transformation of the creatures, teaching religion like a priest, wisdom of Aûharmazd, complete mindfulness that is not deceived, maintaining the destinies of the body, conveying to the rulers for benefit; (§ 20) benefit of sovereignty for that which arises, liberality to fire, thinking of righteousness, interrogating religion, progress of religion, pleasure given to a friend, gratification from Aûharmazd, indication of intellect in a vigorous-minded man, the spirit of Aûharmazd, reward taught in the publicity of the sun . . . 353

59. Same, fargard 13. Obeisance to the archangels, seven kinds of men, Vohûmanic attainment to religion, perfection of the first of existences, nourisher of good works; (§ 10) development in virtue, words and actions through complete mindfulness, exposition of the renovation, deciding about duty and opinion, propagation and progressiveness of the religion, protection from the annoying spirit, exploits of the archangels, people shall become supplicant, interested liberality . . . . . . . . . 360

60. Same, fargard 14. Instruction to be heard, perfection of the first next-of-kin marriage, the teaching of it, daughterhood of Spendarman, this is taught by him who is completely mindful, attraction to good works, reverence for Vohûman, ceremonial taught with complete mindfulness . . . . . . . . . 364

61. Same, fargard 15. To what lands one should step, diligence in good works, teaching religion, even in an exhausted province, protection of fire, giving oneself in discipleship, he who so gives men and women,
goodness taught to the good by him whose \textit{Kinvad} passage teaches them to step forth; (§ 10) the world produces abundance through complete mindfulness, the wicked man becomes unprivileged, as in the case of \textit{Argasp}, contentment of the archangels, he who thinks of Zarathustra.

62. Same, fargard 16. The wise, practising the deeds of complete mindfulness, nourishing good works and the creatures with propriety, giving pasture, he who becomes a benefit to the good, sentence according to declaration of acquittal or conviction, a strong foundation for learning.

63. Same, fargard 17. Maintaining the benedictions of religion, making known the \textit{Kinvad} passage, causing a change from evil to good, generosity to tillers, developing the world, formation of creatures and devastation by Vohu\textit{man} caused by him whose rule is for \textit{A\textit{tharmazd}}, he who increases virtue in a province, he who loves Vohu\textit{man}, virtuous deeds set going.

64. Same, fargard 18. He who makes people intelligent through his complete mindfulness, how this occurs, discriminating through wisdom, teaching joyfulness in righteousness to Frash\textit{istar}, and ardour in good works, supplying guardianship, a master of all commands, Vohu\textit{man}'s guarding the creatures of \textit{A\textit{tharmazd}}, the arrival of the wicked in the fiend's abode, (§ 10) reverence coming to assistance through invocation, the supplicant for what is coveted from \textit{A\textit{tharmazd}}; \textit{A\textit{tharmazd}}'s statement about one's own, confederate, and serv

65. Same, fargard 19. Sheep-nature, mankind nourished, he who produces joyfulness and provides the ceremonial, displaying wisdom, instructing the tongue, teaching preparation and the virtuous way; (§ 10) obeisance for the archangels, taking assistance, within the day till dawn made as a signal, complete mindfulness among the existences.

66. Same, fargard 20. \textit{A\textit{tharmazd}}'s command about smiting the deceiver and giving sovereignty to him who is good, providing complete mindfulness, the coveted
thing expedient for sovereignty to give away, words of Vohūman, innocence from discontinued good works, causing goodness, way of righteousness not concealed, repletion unnecessary for cattle, house-wifery, loving religion through knowledge, gratification of Aůharmasd 379

67. Same, fargard 21. Performing the ceremonial, spirits lodging in the body, teaching the religion, diligence in good works, loving the beneficial way, giving a daughter in daughterhood, authority of Vohūman, a daughter given to a father for womanly service, reverence of a wife for her husband, producing origin and effect, dominion in the house 381

68. Same, fargard 22. Giving delight to him who is a right-living poor man 383

69. A selection from the whole Yast referring to the developer: containing many unidentified statements by Aůharmasd, Zaratūst, Sôshâns, Vohūman, and Spendarmad; and concluding with a long series of short quotations, from the Pahlavi Gâthas, concerning what every one shall do, or know, in the future existence 384

DETAILS OF THE NASKS FROM OTHER SOURCES 399

From the Selections of Zâd-sparam 401

" Dînkard, Book III 406

" Book IV 410

" Rivâyat of Bahman Pûngyah 418

" Kâmah Bahrah 419

" Narêmân Hôshang 428

" Barzâ Qiyûmu-d-dîn 433

" Dîn-vigirgard 438

Nask-fragments that are still extant 449

INDEX 489

ERRATA 501

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East 503
INTRODUCTION.

ATTENTIVE readers of the Sacred Books of the East have had ample opportunities of becoming acquainted with the Zoroastrian scriptures, so far as these have been preserved by the Parsis. In vols. iv, xxiii, and xxxi they have translations of all the texts extant in the original language of the Avesta, excepting a few fragments which are not yet collected. And in vols. v, xviii, and xxiv they have translations of later Pahlavi texts, showing how faithfully the old doctrines and legends were handed down by the priests of Sasanian times to their immediate successors. But they will also have noticed that the translators of these texts are well aware of the fact that the texts themselves are mere fragments of the religious writings of the Zoroastrians, which owe their preservation to the circumstance that they were those portions most usually committed to memory by the priesthood, such as the liturgy, sacred myths, and ceremonial laws. The object of the present volume is to add to those fragments all the accessible information, that can be collected from Iranian sources, regarding the contents of the whole Zoroastrian literature in Sasanian times.

It has been long known that this literature was contained in twenty-one Naskhs, or treatises, named either from the nature of their contents, or from their initial words, and each having one of the twenty-one words of the Ahunavair attached to it as a kind of artificial reminder of their proper order and number while enumerating them. Very brief statements of the contents of each Nask have also been accessible in manuscripts of the Persian Rivâyats, such as those translated in pp. 419–438 of this volume. And the existence of a much longer account of the Nasks in the DīnkaRD was ascertained by Haug, who published
some extracts from it in 1870, when describing several of the Nasks in the Index to the Pahlavi-Pâzand Glossary. He was unable to do more, on account of the defective state of all modern manuscripts of the Dînkarâd, in which a large portion of the text of the description of the Nasks, in the eighth and ninth books, is missing in various places without any hint of the omissions. These defects were owing to the abstraction of 52 folios of this part of the Iránian manuscript of the Dînkarâd, after it was brought to India and before any copy of it had been written; and, even now, two of these folios are still missing, as stated in pp. 262, 270. The importance of recovering these 52 missing folios was due to the fact that they contain the text of Dk. VIII, Chaps. VII, 5–XIX, 36, XXXI, 31–XXXVIII, 19, XLIV, 34–XLVI, 5, and Dk. IX, Chaps. I, 1–XI, 1, XII, 15–XLVII, 17, or nearly half the text of the two books.

Regarding the early history of the Dînkarâd there exists a detailed statement in the last chapter of its third book, which can now be translated with greater precision than was possible in 1867, when Haug published its Pahlavi text, with an English translation, in his introduction to the Farhang-i Oim-aêvak, or Zand-Pahlavi Glossary. In this historical statement it is evident that §§ 1–8 refer to the traditional history of the Zoroastrian scriptures generally, considered as the original source of the information contained in the Dînkarâd; but §§ 9–13 may be accepted as the actual history of the compilation of the work itself, the facts of which may, very possibly, have all been within the personal knowledge of the writer of the statement. The Pahlavi text of this statement, as preserved in the manuscripts B and K (see pp. xxxv–xxxviii and 2), may be translated as follows:—

'i. About the Dînkarâd scripture (nipîk), from the Exposition of the Good Religion, there is this:—The Dînkarâd scripture is a work which is adorned with all wisdom, and a publication of the Mazda-worshipping religion. 2. And, first, the work—which was derived from the good religion of those of the primitive faith, and which was the knowledge revealing the good religion of the
prophet (vakhshvar) Spītāmān Zarātūst, whose guardian spirit is reverenced, and his first disciple through asking and hearing the same reverenced guardian spirit—is information which is a similitude of enlightenment on every subject from the original light. 3. And those original questions and the decision of the exalted ruler Kaš-Vīstāosp to have them written were its origin, and he ordered them to deliver the original to the treasury of Shapīgān, and to distribute copies provided. 4. And, after that, he sends a copy to the fortress of documents, to keep the information also there.

5. And during the ruin that happened to the country of Irān, and in the monarchy, owing to the evil-destined villain Alexander, that which was in the fortress of documents came to be burnt, and that in the treasury of Shapīgān into the hands of the Arūmans, and was translated by him even into the Greek language, as information which was connected with the ancients (min pēsīnīgān padvastakō).

6. And that Artakhshatar, king of kings, who was son of Pāpak, came for the restoration of the monarchy of Irān, and the same scripture was brought from a scattered state to one place. 7. The righteous Tōsar of the primitive faith, who was the priest of priests, appeared with an exposition recovered from the Avesta, and was ordered to complete the scripture from that exposition. 8. He did so accordingly (ham-gūnakō), to preserve a similitude of the splendour of the original enlightenment in the treasury of Shapīgān, and was ordered to distribute copies of the information provided.

9. And after the ruin and devastation that came from the Arabs, even to the archives (dīvān) and treasures of the realm, the saintly Ātūr-farnbag, son of Farukhō-zād, who became the leader of the orthodox, brought those copies, which were scattered on all sides, and new resources, back from dispersion into union with the archives of his residence; and, through observance and consideration for the Avesta and Zand of the good religion, he made the sayings of those of the primitive faith again a similitude of the illumination (frōkō) from that splendour.

---

1 Both MSS. have Shapīgān here, but see p. 473, n. 4.
2 So in K, or perhaps Shīṣīgān; B has Shapīgān.
3 So in K.
4 So in K; B has Shapān.
5 B has Ātūr-pād inserted here by mistake.
'10. Through the awful displeasure (or defect) and ruin (or injury) that happened to Zarašt, son of Âtûr-farnbag, who became the leader of the orthodox, even those archives came to devastation, that scripture to dilapidation and dispersion, and the statements (vâkîh) also to obsolescence, perversion, and corruption.

'11. And, after that, I, Âtûrpâd, son of Hêmêd and leader of the orthodox, have likewise written, from their fragments (sûbâra-gânû), a new means of giving assistance to the Masda-worshipping religion, with much prayer, investigation, and trouble. 12. From whatever was recovered from those dilapidated (visândakû), decayed, worn out, and dust-mingled (khâk-âmûg) archives—and these, too, brought back by taking away, carrying off, and seizing—it is selected, owing to the assistance of the counselling wisdom of the mighty spirit, for the rediffusion of the words and deeds of the ancients, and of the evidence of the Avesta, for those of the primitive faith. 13. And the increase of knowledge from the good religion, arranged and prescribed in its chapters, is a lustre from encountering that splendour from the enlightenment of the original light primarily composed for the exposition of the good religion, and this which is named is a resemblance by adoption of the thousand chapters of that great original Dînkârī. 14. It is perfected by the sacred beings, and transmits the powerful effect which has come upon even that which is the perfect religion of the sufferers in this age, and also the coming of the assistance of the soul to the knowledge of the orthodox; and even reunion with the rest of Irân is acquaintance with the exposition of the Masda-worshipping religion, and the reproping of more resources of a like origin, which will be also due to those whom the Supreme has provided, the disciples of Aûshêdar, son of Zarašt, for asking again a declaration of the good religion from Aûshêdar.'

From this statement it appears that the compilation of the Dînkâr was commenced by Âtûr-farnbag, son of Farukhô-zâd, one of the leaders or supreme high-priests of the Masda-worshippers, and was revised and completed

---

1 Assuming that m stands for min.
2 Both MSS. have zak rabû bûn Dênô-kardû.
3 K has dênû bûrûdûrân.  B has 'arising.'
5 B has 'and the reunited selection for.'
6 See Dk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 12.
7 B omits 'a declaration of.'
by Âtûrpâd, son of Hêmêd, one of his successors. From the Mâdîgân-i gugastak Abâlis we learn that Âtûr-farnbag had a religious disputation with Abâlis in the presence of the Khalîfah Al-Mâmûn, who reigned A.D. 813–833; he must therefore have been compiling the Dînkard during the first half of the ninth century. In the Sikand-gûmânîk Vigâr, IV, 107, IX, 3, X, 55, he is also mentioned as a compiler of the Dînkard, but the details there quoted must have been taken from its first two books which are still missing. It is likewise stated at the beginning of both its fourth and fifth books that their contents are derived from his statements, and a similar acknowledgement is made with regard to some of the contents of Chap. CXLII of the third book; so that the evidence of his authorship is very complete. With regard to Âtûrpâd, the completer of the Dînkard, we may safely identify him with the Âtûrpâd, son of Hâmêd, mentioned in Bd. XXXIII, xi as a contemporary of Zâd-sparâm, who flourished at the latter end of the ninth century (see S.B.E., vol. xviii, p. xiv). We have, therefore, every reason to be satisfied that the whole of the Dînkard was compiled during the ninth century.

The history of the transmission of the text of its last seven books, through the last thousand years, down to the present manuscripts, is equally satisfactory, owing to the preservation of a series of colophons appended to the text, of which the first and most important may be translated as follows:—

‘Completed in great joy and full of gratification this last portion of the manuscript of the incomparable, priceless, and unequalled Dînkard, at the place where it was found and happily disinterred by us in Asûristân, within the happily prosperous, odoriferous, precious, well-thriving, and glorious Bâdêd of Good Rectitude; from a copy which, as regards the religion, is just as the leaders of the saintly and orthodox, who were of the family of the saintly Âtûrpâd, son of Mâraspend, (who re-explained knowledge, by five or six well-destined ones, from the pure revelation

---

1 Khûr-kand might be the name of a place here, but cannot be so in the next paragraph.
2 The angel Aharîvang (Av. ashiś vanguhi).
which is the all-embellished learning of learnings) and the successive leaders of the orthodox (who again provided at different times [ahamvâr] for its restoration, through manuscripts at various places, to maintain reading and investigation therein) had written.

'I, Mâh-vindâd, son of Naremân, son of Vâhrâm, son of Mitrö-spân, like an adopted son for his own possession, who wrote it, am letting it forth on the day Dên of the month Tir, the victor, of the year 369 after the year 20 of that Yasdakard, king of kings, who was son of Shatrô-ayär [2nd July, 1020]¹; in reliance on the pure good religion of the Mazda-worshippers, as regards remembrance of Zarätást, the Spítämân with the righteous guardian spirit, and of the genuine achievement of Átûrpâd, son of Mârâspend; and as regards remembrance of the righteous utterance of blessings for the whole embodied existence by the desirers of righteousness, who are thinkers of good thoughts, speakers of good words, and doers of good deeds; in the worldly existence, through completely-wishful kind regard of the practices of righteousness, they shall unite with the union of the renovation of the universe, and spiritually their pure souls and guardian spirits attain to the supremely great position and eminence, and complete acquirement of recompense, which are in the light that is endless, constantly beneficial, and full of glory, which they shall obtain. This is especially for those saintly and supremely learned men, Átûr-fârnâbag, son of Farukhô-zâd, and Átûrpâd, son of Hêmêd, by whom this priceless Dînkard scripture was selected so learnedly and (with a pure perception of the spiritual lord, in seizing the cream of the fortunate commentary of the good religion) so truly amicably, and fully affectionately for the good creatures and religion, with great advantage for us moderns, and concealed for me who, through eagerness for righteousness, like an adopted son, have happily disinterred this scripture; and even he who reads, and shall make use of it, is reliant and free from doubt about it; and him who shall take a copy from it, and preserves it with propriety, they shall appropriately connect with it.'

¹ The remainder of this colophon, so far as it is here translated, is also quoted in the second colophon.
² Here written ar'gô, but it is an-ar'gô in the second colophon.
³ Reading dên farukhô zand shîr-hâdê-kô-i, but this is doubtful. From this point the whole of the rest of this colophon, including the aphorisms, is also found in K.
(This is followed by a long succession of aphorisms, and the colophon winds up with some threats against those who shall misuse the manuscript.)

As this colophon mentions only the 'last portion' of the Dinkrād, and is appended to the text of Dk. III–IX, it is probable that the first portion of the work, Dk. I, II, had already become separated from the rest within 150 years of its revision and completion. And if Māh-vindād did not copy from the original manuscript of Ātūrpađ, he must certainly have done so from a very early transcript.

The second colophon was written by Shatrō-ayār, son of Ėrdāshīr, son of Aīrk, son of Rūstām, son of Aīrk, son of Kubād, son of Aīrān-shāh, who completed his copy on the day Aūharmāz of the month Spendarmād in the year 865 after the 20th year of Yasdakard [3rd October, 1516], having transcribed it from a copy written by Mar'zapān, son of Spend-dād, son of Mar'zapān, son of Mitrō-āpān, son of Spend-dād, son of Mitrō-āpān, son of Mar'zapān, son of Dahisn-āiyār, son of Rūg-vēh, son of Shāh-mard. The date of Mar'zapān's copy may be approximately fixed by observing that his father's first cousin wrote a copy of AV. and Gf., mentioned in K20, in the year 690 of Yasdakard, while his great great granduncle wrote a similar copy, mentioned in MH6, in the Pārsī year 618. If this Pārsī year be reckoned from the era of the 20th year of Yasdakard, as seems probable¹, these dates give 52 years for three generations; and Mar'zapān, living one generation later than the writer of A.Y. 690, may perhaps have written his copy of the Dinkrād about A.Y. 707 [A.D. 1338]; so that there was probably another copyist, intermediate between him and Māh-vindād-i Naremāhān, of whom no record has been preserved. Shatrō-ayār concludes his colophon by quoting a long passage from the first colophon, as already stated in p. xxxiv, n. i, and by acknowledging his obligations to three other persons whom he names. This colophon is the last that now remains attached to the manuscript B, but it was formerly followed

¹ Observe the use of the phrase 'Pārsī year' in the third colophon and in the manuscript K (see p. xxxviii).
by a third colophon, written by the actual writer of B, and
preserved in copies transcribed from B since its arrival in
India.

This third colophon was written by Māh-vindād, son of
Vāhrām, son of Ērdāshīr of Türkābād, who completed his
copy, from that of Shatrū-ayār, on the day Ārvān of the
month Khūrād in the Parsi year 1009 after the 20th year of
Yasākard [21st December, 1659, N. S.]. This copy,
which constitutes the manuscript B, was afterwards ap-
proved by Vāhrām, son of Māh-vindād, son of Rūstām,
son of Anōshak-rūbān, son of Rūstām of Türkābād, who
blesses the writer of the second colophon, on the day
Tīstar of the month Vohūman in the year 1038 of Yasā-
kard [18th August, 1669, N. S.]. It was also finally seen
and approved by Rūstām, son of Gūstāsp, son of Ērdāshīr,
who likewise blesses the writer of the second colophon;
and the approximate date of this approval may be guessed
from the fact that Rūstām Gūstāsp is known to have copied
one manuscript in A. D. 1706, and another in 1741.

Regarding this manuscript B, written in 1659, it appears
from Mullā Firūz's Avidēk Dīn (Bombay, 1830) that
Mullā Bahman, son of Mullā Behrām, a Parsi priest of
Yazd, brought this manuscript of the Dīnkard from Irān
to Surat in 1783, and, having shown it to Aspandiārjī
Ratanī-shāh, he lent it to Kāusji Rustamji, then Dastūr
of Surat, and allowed him to have it copied. Mullā
Bahman had great difficulty in obtaining the return of
his manuscript, and when it was returned many folios were
missing. It was after this loss of folios that Aspandiārjī
had several other copies transcribed from the defective
manuscript, to be sent to various persons, and all these
copies were therefore equally defective.

This manuscript B, thus defective, afterwards came into
the possession of Mullā Firūz, who was high-priest of the
Kadmi Parsis in Bombay; and, after his death in 1830,
it descended to his successor. In 1875 it belonged to
Dastūr Sohrābjī Rustamji, high-priest of the Kadmis,
through whose courtesy, and that of Dastūr Dr. Jāmāspjī
Minochiharjī, it was then lent to me long enough to
enable me to copy and collate two-thirds of Dk. III and to collate Dk. IV–IX; and Dastûr Jâmâspji, afterwards, kindly supplied me with a copy of the remainder of Dk. III.

The manuscript has been bound in its defective state, and contains 322 folios, originally fourteen inches high and ten inches wide, written 20 to 22 lines to the page. When complete it appears to have consisted of 392 folios, all numbered in Persian words, but with several blunders, including one of fifty folios, so that the last folio was really numbered 442. Of the 70 folios not bound with the rest of the manuscript, fourteen were lying loose in the volume; forty-three belonged to Dastûr Rustamji Kaikobâdji of Nausâri, with a copy of which I was kindly supplied by Dastûr Dr. Peshotanji Behramji of Bombay, who also enabled me to collate it with the original folios; and seven folios were lent to me by Dastûr Dr. Hoshangji Jâmâspji of Poona, for the purpose of copying. The remaining six folios have not been discovered; they comprise the first folio of the manuscript, containing the commencement of Dk. III, which was probably lost before the manuscript arrived in India; also one folio in Dk. VII, two in Dk. IX (see pp. 262, 270 of this volume), and the last two folios of the manuscript, containing the third colophon and final approvals (see p. xxxvi).

I am likewise much indebted to the kindness of Professor Kielhorn, who gave me a modern copy of Dk. IV–IX (with the text in its defective state) which had been prepared at Poona, so that it was only necessary to collate this copy with the original text of the manuscript B. With the aid of all this liberal assistance I was enabled to obtain the whole text of the Dinkârd, known to exist, in the course of a few months; that it has since taken as much as sixteen years to find opportunities for translating and publishing rather more than one-fourth of its contents, will not surprise any one who is acquainted with the nature of the work that had to be done.

The only known manuscript, independent of B, that contains any portion of the Dinkârd, is the old codex K
brought from Persia by the late Professor Westergaard in 1843, and now No. 43 of the Irâniân manuscripts in the University Library at Kopenhagen. This codex contains about one-fifth of the text of the Dînkard in two detached portions, together with other Pahlavi texts. The first portion occupies fols. 177–261, and comprises Dk. VI, of which one-eighth is missing, with Dk. III, Chaps. CLX and CCLXXXIII, and a colophon, all written in the district of Tûrkâbâd by Mîtrô-ðâpân, son of Anôshak-rûbân, son of Rûstâm, son of Shatrû-ayâr, son of Mâh-vindâd, son of Vâhrâm, son of Gûshisn-ayâr, son of Mîtrô-ðâpân, and completed on the day Gôs of the month Mîtrô in the Pârsî year 943 after the 20th year of Yaśdakard [10th May, 1594, N.S.]. This copyist appears to have been a great-uncle of the writer who approved the manuscript B in 1669, ten years after it was written; and the original from which he copied was, no doubt, descended from Mâh-vindâd-i Naremânî’s manuscript of 1020, as he appends to his colophon all the latter part of Mâh-vindâd’s colophon (see p. xxxiv, n. 3). The second portion of the text of the Dînkard, contained in the manuscript K, is written by another hand on 42 additional folios, and comprises the last two chapters of Dk. III, the whole of Dk. V, and the first three-tenths of Dk. IX (as mentioned in p. 172, n. 1, of this volume). This manuscript supplies several short passages in the Dînkard, which are omitted by B, especially in the first portion of the text described above. It has also afforded much assistance in the translation of Dk. IX, Chaps. I, i–XXXI, 17.

Regarding the authorship of the summary account of the Nasks, contained in Dk. VIII, IX, it may be reasonably assumed, in default of any positive information, that the compiler was Âtûrpàd, son of Hêmêd, the last editor of the Dînkard. And, as nothing is said about any previous treatise being consulted, it may be safely supposed that he had access to the Avesta texts and Pahlavi versions of all the Nasks he describes, fully three centuries after the Muhammadan conquest of Persia. The only Nask he could not obtain was the Vastag, and the Pahlavi version
of the Nâdar was also missing; under which circumstances, the fully detailed accounts of these two Nasks, given in the Persian Rivâyats, must be viewed with suspicion, until better evidence of their authenticity has been discovered than is at present available.

The survival of so much of the sacred Zoroastrian literature, during three centuries of Muhammadan rule, indicates that the final loss of nearly all this literature was not so directly attributable to the Arabs as the Parsis suppose. So long as a considerable number of the Persians adhered to their ancient religion, they were able to preserve its literature almost intact, even for centuries; but when, through conversion and extermination, the Mazda-worshippers had become a mere remnant, and then fell under the more barbarous rule of the Tartars, they rapidly lost all their old literature that was not in daily religious use. And the loss may have been as much due to their neglecting the necessary copying of manuscripts, as to any destructiveness on the part of their conquerors; because the durability of a manuscript written on paper seldom exceeds five or six centuries.

The statements of the Dinkard, about the classification and subdivisions of the Nasks, are corroborated and supplemented by those of Zâd-sparam (see pp. 401-405). The division of all literature into three classes of knowledge, religious, worldly, and intermediate, is one that would naturally suggest itself to any classifier\(^1\), but the names employed (which are transcribed from the Avesta, and do not exactly correspond with these three meanings) must have originated at a period when the Avesta language was still spoken. That such a classification cannot be very strictly carried out in practice is already admitted in Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 13.

\(^1\) Professor Darmesteter has suggested to me the very similar apportionment of the old Hebrew literature, mentioned in Jeremiah xviii. 18, thus:—"For the law shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet." And in Ezekiel vii. 26, thus:—"Then shall they seek a vision of the prophet: but the law shall perish from the priest, and counsel from the ancients."
The further division of the literature into twenty-one books, seven in each of the three classes, is a much more artificial arrangement, and can, perhaps, be best explained as an attempt to make the twenty-one words of the Ahunavair serve the purpose of a reminder for enumerating the Nasks in their proper order. This arrangement was probably made at some period when the scattered Avesta literature was being collected and re-arranged, the Pahlavi versions being then supplied, and the present Pahlavi names of the Nasks appointed. This may possibly have been the work of 'composition and preservation' attributed to Atūr-pād, son of Māraspend, in Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 22, when 'the Nasks were enumerated' (see Dk. IV, 27, in p. 415), which occurred in the fourth century.

Why the established sequence of the Nasks, detailed in Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 12, should differ from the successive sequences of their three classes, given in §§ 9-11, is very imperfectly explained; but some of the reasons for the difference may perhaps be guessed. If the notation proposed in p. 7, n. 3, be adopted, the established sequence is G2-4; H1-7; G5; L6; G7; L7, 1-5; G6, 1; in which the only Nasks that are out of their order in the classes are G1, 5-7 and L6, 7. The placing of G6, 1 next after L5 (that is, the Hādōkht and Stōd-yast next after the Vendīdād) may perhaps have been owing to the constant use of these three Nasks in the liturgy, in which either the Vendīdād, or the Hādōkht, was frequently interpolated in the recitation of the Stōd-yast which comprised by far the larger portion of the present Yasna and Vīspērad. But this position of the Stōd-yast, at the end of the list of Nasks, was probably considered derogatory to its sacred character by most of the writers of the Persian Rivāyats, who have, therefore, restored it to its original place at the head of the Gāthic Nasks. Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 15, states that G5 was placed after H7 because the Vastag was connected with the Vistāsp-sāstō, probably by the nature of its contents. And, possibly, the sequence L6, G7, L7 of the Xitradād, Spend, and Bakān-yast, between the Vastag

1 So long as it was preserved.
and Nikâdûm, may indicate some similar resemblance of contents; especially as the contents of the Kitradâd and Bakân-yast were so far from being strictly legal that these Nasks were placed in a sub-class by themselves, and the connection of the Spend with the Gâthas appears to have been merely historical. The Persian Rivâyats place the Spend next after the Vastag, thereby bringing the two imperfectly Gâthic Nasks together, as well as the two imperfectly legal ones; but then they also transpose the Ganabâ-sar-nigad and the Hûspâram, for which there seems to be no justification.

With regard to the names of the Nasks, it is evident that several of the Persian names, used in the Rivâyats, are more or less irreconcilable with the Pahlavi names in the Dinkârd, and some others are improbable readings of the Pahlavi forms. In this translation the Pahlavi forms have been followed, as clearly more authentic than the Persian corruptions, and some few of the names have been read differently; while in other cases the most probable readings have been merely suggested in foot-notes, not on account of the Persian reading being justifiable, but because the evidence for the suggested reading is less complete than would be desirable.

In dealing with this account of the Nasks it is always necessary to remember that the compiler of the Dinkârd relies entirely upon their Pahlavi versions, as he states distinctly in Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 3; he occasionally mentions the Avesta texts, as in Chaps. VI, 1, XII, 1, and it is abundantly evident, to the practised translator, that Avesta phrases often underlie the Pahlavi passages which seem to be quoted at length from the original Nasks, especially in Dk. IX; but, for some of the details mentioned, there may be no older authority than a Pahlavi commentary, and this should ever be borne in mind by the sceptical critic in search of anachronisms.

Owing to his complete reliance upon the Pahlavi versions, it is impossible to ascertain with certainty whether any particular statement, made by the compiler of the Dinkârd, was contained in the Avesta text; his summary, there-
for, throws little or no satisfactory light upon the origin of that text. A few of the details he mentions (such as those contained in Dk. VIII, Chaps. XIII, 17–20, XLIII, 24 and Dk. IX, Chaps. XXXII, 17, XXXIX, 13–16, LIII, 3) evidently refer to Sasanian times, and may be reason-ably supposed to have originated in the Pahlavi versions of those times. But vaguer prophecies of good or evil, such as are common in all religions at all times, may have often occurred in the Avesta texts themselves.

It is evident, however, that all the Nasks have accumu-
lated around the Gâtha centre of the Stôd-yast, and that this Gâtha centre in the earliest Sasanian times was neither more nor less extensive than it is at present. The age of Gâthic composition had so long passed away in the time of the earliest Sasanian monarchs, that the sages whom they appointed to collect and re-arrange the sacred litera-
ture, were unable to fully understand many of the stanzas they had to translate into Pahlavi, much less could they have added to their number. How far they may have been able to write ordinary Avesta text is more uncertain, but any such writing was probably confined to a few phrases for uniting the fragments of old Avesta which they dis-
covered, or for interpolating opinions of their own. All such compositions, however, would have been hazardous, as forming no part of their duties, which seem to have been confined to the arrangement of the fragmentary Avesta texts, and their translation into Pahlavi with explanatory comments in that language. It appears from the traditional statements, mentioned in p. 415, that this work was com-
pleted, and the Nasks were fully arranged, by Ātûrpâd, son of Mâraspend, in the reign of Shahpûhar II (A. D. 309–379); but the Pahlavi versions were certainly revised, and some further commentaries added, after the suppression of the heresy of Mazdak, as late as the reign of Khûsrûî I (A. D. 531–579).

That the Avesta texts themselves were not written, to any great extent, in Sasanian times, is shown by the quantity of Pahlavi commentary necessary to adapt them to the altered circumstances of those times. The Gâthic
Nasks, being strictly religious, required only some explanations, with little extended commentary; because the religion had to be maintained without sensible modification. Of the Hadha-māthric Nasks we know but little. But the strictly Legal Nasks consisted chiefly of the commentary which is always necessary to adapt ancient laws to modern ideas.

With regard to the mode of describing the Nasks, adopted in the Dinkarād, it is evident that the compiler intended, in the first place, to give merely a very short account of the general contents of each Nask, to be followed by a detailed statement of the particular contents of each chapter (see Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 23, 24). But, when he had fully carried out this intention with respect to the first three Nasks, his work came to a premature conclusion, which has deprived us of much valuable information regarding the rest of the Nasks. The descriptions of these other Nasks vary in extent, but may be roughly classified as follows:—Of the Nādar and Vastag there is no description whatever. Of the Dāmdād, Radō-dād-aṭtag, Kaskisrōbō, Vistāsp-sāstō, Bakān-yast, and Stōd-yast the description is very short, averaging 80 Pahlavi words for each. Of the Pāgag, Barī, Kītraḍād, Spend, and Hāzdēkht the description is rather longer, averaging 358 Pahlavi words for each; but, as such a description is still far too brief to be satisfactory, the compiler must have intended to add a detailed account of each chapter of all these Nasks. On coming to the strictly Legal Nasks, however, he adopted a different plan, by giving a much more voluminous statement of the contents of certain selected chapters; thus the very long description of the Nikāḍūm, Ganabā-sar-nigad, Hūspāram, and Sakāḍūm averages 3670 Pahlavi words for each. This change of plan is somewhat modified in the case of the Vendīdād, where the description of 1272 Pahlavi words is only moderately long. While the first three Nasks, the Stōdkar, Varstmānsar, and Bakō, after a very short description averaging 65 Pahlavi words for each, are again described in detail, as already mentioned, to the average extent of 8647 Pahlavi words for each.
From these descriptions, and their connection with certain Avesta texts and Pahlavi writings, it is now possible to form a more or less adequate conception of the contents of Nasks I–IV, X, XIII–XIX, XXI, and also some idea of those of Nasks VI, XII; but the accounts of the remaining six Nasks, most of which belonged to the Hadha-māthic or scientific class, are very unsatisfactory.

With reference to the total extent of the Nasks, when they were all extant, it is obvious that the length of descriptions, drawn up on the same plan, ought to bear approximately some definite proportion to the lengths of text described; so that, if the extent of the text of one Nask be known, and the proportion it bears to the length of its description be ascertained, this proportion becomes a rough means of estimating the probable extent of other Nasks, from the length of their descriptions drawn up on the same plan. Three years ago an attempt was made\(^1\) to estimate the total extent of the Nasks in this way, based upon the assumptions that the Nasks still extant were three in number, that the length of the description of the Vendīdād was a fair average one for estimating the extent of Pahlavi version in all the lost Nasks, and that the proportion of Avesta text to Pahlavi version in the Nirangistān was also a fair average for estimating the extent of their Avesta texts. These assumptions were carefully made, as the least liable to objection, and the total extent of the Nasks in Sasanian times, thus estimated, amounted to 133,000 words of Avesta text and 844,000 of Pahlavi version.

Since the completion of the translation of Dk. IX it has, however, become possible to estimate the probable extent of the first three Nasks from the proportion between the actual extent of the first three fargardās of the Bakō (Yas. XIX–XXI) and the length of their description. It has also been thought no longer reasonable to neglect the actual length of the Nirangistān as a basis for estimating the extent of the Pahlavi versions of the strictly Legal Nasks XV–

---

\(^1\) In the Sitzungsberichte der philosophisch-philologischen und historischen Classe der k. b. Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München, 1888, pp. 441, 442.
INTRODUCTION.

XVIII; and the Bakân-yast has been identified with the Yâsts still extant. These additional considerations have led to a new estimate of the probable extent of each Nask separately, based upon the best data available in each case, as stated in detail in the foot-notes to the names of the Nasks in the Extant Fragments (pp. 451-488 of this volume). These estimates are here collected, for the sake of convenient reference, as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G2: Nask</th>
<th>Avesta</th>
<th>Pahlavi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Sâdkar</td>
<td>4,700 words</td>
<td>10,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Varstmnânsar</td>
<td>8,300</td>
<td>18,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Bakô</td>
<td>9,500</td>
<td>21,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Dâmdâd</td>
<td>8,900</td>
<td>29,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Nâdâr</td>
<td>6,800</td>
<td>22,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Pâgag</td>
<td>9,100</td>
<td>29,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Radâ-dâd-aitag</td>
<td>10,500</td>
<td>34,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Baris</td>
<td>4,400</td>
<td>14,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Kâskisrêbô</td>
<td>5,500</td>
<td>17,900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Vîstâsp-sâstô</td>
<td>2,200</td>
<td>7,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Vastag</td>
<td>8,900</td>
<td>18,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Kîtradâd</td>
<td>2,600</td>
<td>23,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Spend</td>
<td>9,900</td>
<td>20,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Bakân-yast</td>
<td>22,000</td>
<td>44,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Nikâdûm</td>
<td>62,600</td>
<td>562,900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Ganabâ-sar-nigad</td>
<td>28,000</td>
<td>251,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Hûspâram</td>
<td>44,900</td>
<td>403,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Sakâdûm</td>
<td>53,000</td>
<td>476,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Vendidâd</td>
<td>23,000</td>
<td>48,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Hûdîkht</td>
<td>8,400</td>
<td>17,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Stôd-yast</td>
<td>12,500</td>
<td>22,400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total extent of 21 Nasks: 345,700, 2,094,200

This total is about 2½ times as great as that of the former estimate, but, as nearly the whole of this increase is in the four strictly Legal Nasks, whose length is well attested by that of the extant Nirangistân, there is little probability that further investigation will lead to any re-

---

1 This had been done, long ago, in a Persian Rivâyat, quoted in Bâg, fol. 164, which states that the following sixteen Yâsts were in the Bayân-yast Nask, namely, the Hîrmiz, Åbân, Mâb, Tîr, Gûr, Mîhir, Srosh, Rashn, Fravardin, Bahîrâm, Râm, Dîn, Åshasang, âtâd, Zamyâd, and Khurshêd Yâsts.
duction of this estimate. No probable alteration of the estimate of the extent of the Hadha-māthric Nasks, which is the most uncertain, would materially affect the total.

Another matter of interest to the readers of translations from the Pahlavi, especially to those who are aware of the ambiguities of the original text, is the degree of confidence they can place in the correctness of the translation. In the case of the Dīnkārd it is fortunately possible to consult manuscripts written in Persia, and descended through only four or five intermediate copies from the work of the original writer, so that the text is remarkably free from copyists' errors. The eighth and ninth books also contain very few of those involved sentences, with long parenthetical clauses, which, owing to the habitual absence or misplacement of stops, are very perplexing to a translator. The chief difficulties of the text arise from its synoptical character, and the consequent want of connection between its sentences; there being often too little context to define the meaning of a doubtful word. The number of words of doubtful meaning in Pahlavi is, however, fast diminishing, in proportion to the advancing study of the texts; and the certainty of a translator, as to the correctness of his work, is increasing in a like proportion. At any rate, the reader may safely rely upon the general accuracy of these translations, even if a few errors should hereafter be discovered.

As an instance of such possible errors I will here correct one that exists in my translation of the Epistles of Mānūškīhar, which was pointed out to me by Mībad Tchmuras Dinshawji Ankalesaria, in a letter dated 28th October, 1887. In Ep. II, ii, 9-11, there occurs an illustration of what should be done when commentators differ, derived from the use that can be made of different observations of the stars, and containing three names that were difficult to identify. These names were doubtfully read as corruptions of the names of three of the lunar mansions, but it now appears that they were the names of three sets of astronomical tables (zik); so that Shatro-ayārān, Hindūk, and Ptolemēōs should be read, instead of Satvāharān, Avēnak, and Padramgōs; both sets of readings expressing the same
Pahlavi letters. With these alterations the passage may be translated as follows:—

Ep. II, ii, 9. 'And there may be a position of the stars, settled even by computers of the stars, when they would take that of the sun and moon from the tables of Shatro-ayār, that of Saturn from the Hindū tables, and that of Mars from the tables of Ptolemy, and the position comes out very good, and they are able to speak of the maturity of strength undoubtedly brought on. 10. That this is to be seen as an occurrence is a conjunction which is not possible; because, if the tables of Shatro-ayār be exact, yet, since its Saturn and Mars are not from the tables, the effect is not a good configuration; if the Hindū tables be correct, yet, since its sun, moon, and Mars are not from those tables, the effect is not good; and if the tables of Ptolemy be correct, yet, since its sun, moon, and Saturn are not from those tables, the effect is not good; on account of which the conjunction is not correct in any way; they believe it possible, however, for a firm mind to accomplish this auspicious labour. 11. But they say the just and wise are making the decision that this would be a very good position, because that which is in the tables of Shatro-ayār is truly issuing from him, the great Shatro-ayār; and that of Shatro-ayār, being better through the tables of Ptolemy, remains that employed.'

In conclusion, it is desirable to make some remarks upon the transliteration of Pahlavi, because it is necessary to express not only the various sounds of the letters of a very deficient alphabet, but also the mode of writing several abbreviated compounds which are quite as essential to the correct orthography of Pahlavi as the forms of the separate letters themselves. For this purpose italics are used to indicate not only a few differences of sound from the usual English pronunciation of consonants, but also different letters having the same sound, and letters abbreviated in the writing of compounds. When the abbreviated letter is already italicised, the preceding short vowel (which is not expressed in Pahlavi writing) is also italicised to indicate the abbreviation, or an apostrophe is introduced between the two consonants when no short vowel sound intervenes. Hyphens are used both to connect the components of compound words, which are often written
separately, and also to separate words that are written together in Pahlatvi. The application of these rules will be best understood by reference to the following list of transliterations which have been found necessary:—

### Alphabet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>(initial), å, h, kh, zd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>û</td>
<td>2, a (prativive), ae, åë (final), h (final).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f, p, v</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d, t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g, k, z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l, r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ç</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ö</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ü</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ë</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>øe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Irregular Compounds.

- ayâ.
- (û + æ, or û + ö) aëk, af, ag, ap, av, az, åf, åg, åk, åp, åv, åz, hat, hak, hap, has, khef, khek, khs.
- åñ.
- 3, åë, åë (final), êk (final).
- adin, didû (better bidû).
- lp, rag, raz, r'g, rp, r'z.
- dif, dîf, gîf, sag, sak, sap, sig, sip, sp.
- s'k, yâf, yâv.
- m-ë.
- dag, d-k, ëg, ëk, gag, gak, gug, ëk, ëv, ëz, yas, ycs.
- denen (better bèn), yèn.
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS VOLUME.

A.D. for Anno Domini; Åf. for Åfrängän; Ar. for Arabic; AV. for Arda-Virâf nâmak, ed. Hoshangji and Haug, 1872; Av. for Avesta; A.Y. for Anno Yasâykarde; B for Bombay MS. of Dînkarde, written in Irân, A.D. 1659, see pp. xxxv–xxxvii; B29 for MS. No. 29 in the University Library at Bombay; Bd. for Bundahis, as translated in vol. v of this series; Bk. for Book; B.P. for Bahman Pûngyah, see p. 418, n. 3; Byt. for Bahman Yast, as translated in vol. v of this series; Ch. or Chald. for Chaldee; Chap. for chapter; Dd. for Dâdîstân-i Dinik, as translated in vol. xviii of this series; Dk. for Dînkarde; Dv. for Dîn-vigirgard; ed. for edited by or edition; Ep. for Epistles of Mânûskîhar, as translated in vol. xviii of this series; Farh. Otm. for Farhang-i Olm-aëvak, or Zand-Pahlavi Glossary, ed. Hoshangji and Haug, 1867; fol. for folio; G for gâthic; Gah. for Gahânbar or Gâhanbâr; Gen. for Genesis; gen. for genitive; Gesch. der Sas. for Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden, 1879; Gf. for tale of Góst-i Fryânê, ed. West and Haug, 1872; Gld. for Geldner; H for hadha-mâthric; Haug’s Essays for Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings, and Religion of the Parsees, by M. Haug, 2nd ed.; Hn. for Hâdökht Nask, ed. Haug, 1872; Ibid. for ibidem; J2 for Jâmâspji’s Yasna MS. with Pahlavi, now in the Bodleian Library, by the same copyist as K5; K for Kopenhagen MS. No. 43, written A.D. 1594, see pp. xxxvii–viii; K1, K5, K20, K35 for Iranian MSS. Nos. 1, 5, 20, 35 in the University Library at Kopenhagen; L for legal; l. for line; ll. for lines; Mf4 for the Mullâ Fîrûz Library’s Yasna MS. with Pahlavi, descended from an ancestor of K5; MH6, MH10 for MSS. Nos. 6, 10 of Haug’s Collection in the State Library at Munich; Mkh. for Dînâ-i Mañgôg-i Khirad, as translated in vol. xxiv of this series; MS. for manuscript; n. for foot-note; N.S. for new style; Ny. for Nyâyis; O225 for MS. No. 225 of Ouseley’s Collection in the Bodleian Library at Oxford; OM for Olshausen and Mohl’s Fragmens relatifs à la religion de Zoroastre; p. for page; Pahl. [37]
for Pahlavi; Pâz. for Pâzand; Pers. for Persian; pp. for pages; Pt4 for Peshotanji’s Yasna MS. with Pahlavi, similar to Mf4; Riv. for Rivâyat; S.B.E. for Sacred Books of the East; Sd. and Sg. for Sad-dar and Sikand-gûmânîk Vigâr, as translated in vol. xxiv of this series; Sfr. for Sfrôzah; Sls. for Shâyast-lâ-shâyast, as translated in vol. v of this series; Sp. for Spiegel; Vend. for Vendîdâd; Vig. for Vigirkard-i Dînîk, ed. Peshotan, Bombay, 1848; Vîsp. for Vîspêrâd; vol. for volume; W. or Westerg. for Westergaard; Yas. for Yasna; Yt. for Yast; ZA. for Zend Avesta; Zs. for Selections of Zâd-sparan, as translated in vol. v of this series.
CONTENTS OF THE NASKS

AS STATED IN

THE EIGHTH AND NINTH BOOKS

OF THE

DÎNKARD.
OBSERVATIONS.

1. For all divisions into chapters and sections the translator is chiefly responsible, as the stops found in the manuscripts are not used systematically.

2. Italics are used for any English words which are not expressed, or fully understood, in the original text, but are added to complete the sense of the translation.

3. Italics occurring in Oriental words, or names, represent certain peculiar Oriental letters (see the 'Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets' at the end of this volume), or certain abbreviated modes of writing Pahlavi letters, for which see the remarks on Pahlavi transliteration near the end of the Introduction. Italic a, d, d, e, f, h, i, f, kh, l, p, r, sh, u, v, zd indicate no change of pronunciation; but g should be sounded like j, hw like wh, k like ch in 'church,' s like sh, and Avesta z like French j.

4. In the translation words in parentheses are merely explanatory of those that precede them.

5. For the meaning of the abbreviations, used in the notes, see the explanatory list after the Introduction.

6. The manuscripts used, being the only two independent authorities for the text of the Dīnkard known to exist, are:—

B (written A.D. 1659), a nearly-complete MS. of Books III—IX, brought from Irān to Surat in 1783, and now divided between three, or more, owners in Bombay, Nawsāri, and Poona. Of the Books here translated two folios are missing, which contained portions of Bk. IX, Chaps. XXXIII, XXXIV, XXXVI, XXXVII.

K (written A.D. 1594 and later), No. 43 in the University Library at Kopenhagen, a miscellaneous MS. containing several fragments of Books III, V, VI, IX. Of the Books here translated it contains the text of Bk. IX, Chaps. I, r—XXXI, 17.
CONTENTS OF THE NASKS.

DîNKARD.—BOOK VIII.

CHAPTER I.

1. Praise for Aûharmazd, and obeisance to the Mazda-worshipping religion which is the ordinance of Aûharmazd opposed to the demons.

2. The eighth book is the present (latamman) memorandum about a summary of what is in the Nasks of the Mazda-worshipping religion, each separately. 3. That which is within the compass (shâd-aûrvân) of this book, about the account of the good religion, is a writing for the information of the many, and an announcement from the commentary (zand)—that which is in explanation of revelation (dênô)—which, for this simple (pâdram) high-priest, is in itself the writing of the voice of revelation.

4. But, before that, is a writing of the usage about the divisions (bangisnô) of the reckoning of the Mazda-worshipping revelation, also the parts (bâhar) of its divisions, and the sections (burînakô) of the parts; and the exposition of the account—

The author means that he derives his information about the contents of the Nasks entirely from their Pahlavi versions which, so far as he is concerned, are of equal authority with the Avesta text.

This introductory chapter.
which, though very condensed, is in its division—is also condensed in the parts of its division, and more diffuse in the sections of the parts. 5. The divisions of the reckoning of the Mazda-worshipping revelation are three:—Gáthis which are the higher spiritual knowledge and spiritual duty; Law which is lower1 worldly knowledge and worldly duty; and the Hadha-máthric which are mostly information and matters about what is between these two 2.

1 Or ‘mostly,’ if we read avártar, instead of asártar, as is done in the next clause of this sentence.
2 The three Pahlavi terms are gásánō, dád, and hádák-mánsarík. Of these dád evidently means ‘law,’ because the Dádik Nasks are chiefly devoted to legal matters (see Chaps. XVI–XLIV); and gásánō appears to mean ‘gáthis’ rather than ‘verses,’ because the first Gásánik Nask contained the Gátha texts (see Chap. XLVI), the next three were commentaries upon the Gáthis (see Chaps. II–IV and Bk. IX, Chaps. II–LXVIII), and the remaining three, so far as we are informed, were devoted to religious matters, but we have no reason to suppose that any of them were metrical, except the Gáthis themselves. The exact meaning of hádák-mánsarík is less clear; it is derived from Av. hadha-máthra, ‘provided with spells, or inspired words,’ a term applied to Zaratást in Visp. XIII, 1 and also to the Máthra-spenta, or liturgy, in a phrase (see Westerg. Z. A., p. 485) which is appointed to be used in certain parts of the liturgy whenever the Vistászp Yást (a remnant of the last Hadha-máthric Nask) is recited; just as another phrase, referring to the Law, is appointed to be used in the same places whenever the Vendífád (one of the Dádik Nasks) is recited. In what sense the Hadha-máthric Nasks can be said to be ‘provided with spells’ is not clear from the details given in Chaps. V–XI, but, practically, the meaning of the term must be something like ‘semi-religious,’ being applied to philosophy and science which are neither strictly religious nor strictly secular.

The same three terms were applied to the three classes of mankind, probably the priests, philosophers, and laity; a classification analogous to that of the three professions, the priests, warriors, and husbandmen, but not quite identical with it, as may be gathered from a passage in the sixth book of the Dínkard. This book is
6. And the reason of the triple division of the reckoning of revelation is the exposition of all knowledge and duty, and the kinds of knowledge and action in the same revelation are these three that have been written. 7. Also in the Ahunavair, which

'about an epitome, composed and preserved by those of the primitive faith, concerning the statements of the religion of Mazda-worship;' and its statements are introduced by the following words:—'Those of the primitive faith, who were the sages of the ancients, considered thus, &c.' Near the middle of the book the following passage occurs:—'And this, too, was considered by them thus, that these are the three species of mankind:—One is the Gāthic, one the Hadba-māthric, and one the Dādik. The association (hamīh) of him who is Gāthic is with the sacred beings, and his severance (wīgī-aftāghī) from the demons and fiends; the extent of his wealth is due to members of the community and religious feasts (dāhm va-sūr), and the punishment for the sin which he may commit is shame and is invisible. The association of him who is Hadba-māthric is with the righteous, and his severance from the wicked; also the extent of his wealth is that which may be produced virtuously, and the punishment for the sin he shall commit is the goad, or scourge (see Chap. XLIV, 65 n); also noxious creatures for the body, and compensating the destitute. And the association of him who is Dādik is with Iranians, and his severance from foreigners; also the extent of his wealth is due to affairs that it is possible to accomplish lawfully, and the punishment for the sin which he shall commit is for the lifetime of a fowl (kāk), the day of a demon.'

1 This information seems to be taken from the first fargard of the Šudāk Nask (see Bk. IX, Chap. II, 19). The Ahunavair (Av. ahuna vairya) is the name of the most sacred formula of the Parsis, derived from its second and third words; it is also called the Yathā-ahū-vairyō, from its first phrase, and is a declaratory statement in metre, consisting of one stanza of three lines, containing twenty-one Avesta words, as follows:—

Yathā ahū vairyō, athā ratus ashād-kīd hakā,
Vangheus dazdā mananghō shyaothanāām angeheus mazdāi,
Khshathremkā ahurái ā, yim drigubyō dadad vāštārem.

The usual Pahlavi version of this formula explains it as follows:—
is the basis of the reckoning of revelation, are three metrical lines (gâs); the first chiefly indicates the Gâthic lore, the second the Hadha-mâthric lore, and the third the Law.

8. And there have been twenty-one parts\(^1\) of its divisions, which are called Nasks:—(9) Seven are Gâthic, because they are composed for the Gâthas,

'As is the will of the spiritual lord (as is the will of Aûharmaezd) so should be the priestly master (so virtuous should he be) owing to whatsoever are the duties and good works of righteousness (the duties and good works should be as virtuous as the will of Aûharmaezd). Whose is the gift of good thought (that is, the reward and recompense that good thought gives, it gives also unto him) which, among spiritual lords, is the work of Aûharmaezd (that is, he would do that which Aûharmaezd requires): [there are some who would say thus: Whose gift is for good thought (that is, the reward and recompense which they give for good thought, they give also unto him); and there are some who would say thus: Whose gift is through good thought (that is, the reward and recompense which they give up through good thought, they would also give even him); Âtûrpâd, son of Zarâtûst, said thus: Owing to the gift of good thought, among spiritual lords, they recognise a doer of deeds]. The dominion for Aûharmaezd is his (that is, his dominion exists through the advantage that Aûharmaezd has maintained) who gives allotments (vâyagânô) to the poor (that is, he would make intercession for them).'

The Avesta text may be translated, according to Haug, as follows:—'As a spiritual lord is desirable, so is a priestly master, for the sake of every righteousness, to be a giver of good thoughts as to the actions of life towards Mazda; and the dominion is for the lord whom he (Mazda) has given as a protector for the poor.'

According to Geldner the first two lines refer to Zarâtûst, and, if we assume that yim is a contraction of yô îm, the Avesta text may be translated somewhat as follows:—'As he is the desirable spiritual lord, so is he the priestly master with every right, the producer of the actions of the good thoughts of life towards Mazda. The dominion, however, is for Ahura who has given him as a protector for the poor.'

\(^1\) See §§ 18, 19.
and their names\(^1\) are that of the ritual of the Gāthic worship, which is the Stōd-yast, with the Sūdkar, Varstmānsar, Bakō, Vastag, Hādōkht, and that which has made them Gāthic\(^2\), the Spend. 10. And the names of the seven Hadha-māthric are Dāmdād, Nādar, Pāgag, Radō-dād-altag, Baris, Kaskisrōbō, and Vistāsp-sāstō. 11. And seven are Legal, because they are composed for the lawyer (dādīk), and their names are those of the legal, and those are the Nīkādūm, Ganabā-sar-nigad, Hūspāram, Sakādūm, and Vendīdād, and those which are composed for the law with separate dedications, the Kitradād and Bakān-yast. 12. And the sequence is Sūdkar, Varst-mānsar, Bakō, Dāmdād, Nādar, Pāgag, Radō-dād-altag, Baris, Kaskisrōbō, Vistāsp-sāstō, Vastag, Kitradād, Spend, Bakān-yast, Nīkādūm, Ganabā-sar-nigad, Hūspāram, Sakādūm, Vendīdād, Hādōkht, and Stōd-yast\(^3\).

13. In all three divisions all three are found; in the Gāthic are the Hadha-māthric and Legal, in the Hadha-māthric are the Gāthic and Legal, and in the Legal are the Gāthic and Hadha-māthric.

---

\(^1\) For variants of these names, in the order stated in § 12, see the notes to the first sections of Chaps. II–XVI, XXI, XXVIII, XXXVIII, XLIV–XLVI, which begin the summary description of each of the twenty-one Nasks.

\(^2\) Referring probably to ‘the bestowal of the other Nasks’ mentioned in Chap. XIV, 5.

\(^3\) This is the order in which the twenty-one words of the Ahu-navair are applied to the twenty-one Nasks, as hinted in § 19; and, therefore, the order in which they ought to be enumerated. Representing the three divisions of the Nasks by G, H, L, respectively, and the seven Nasks in each division by the ciphers 1–7, the order of enumeration is as follows:—G 2–4; H 1–7; G 5; L 6; G 7; L 7, 1–5; G 6, 1. More or less fanciful reasons for this dislocation of the divisions are given in §§ 15–17.
14. In each separately that which is essentially and specially itself is included, and that which is partly another and introduced is included; and the reason of it is that in spiritual and worldly existences, and in worldly and spiritual existences, and in that which is between the two, there are both existences.

15. The occurrence of the joining of the Vastag part of the Gâthas on to the last of the Hadha-mâthric\(^1\) is because it is written in connection with the Vistâsp-sâstô, the last of the Hadha-mâthric. 16. The reason of the Hâdôkht and Yast being in succession to the Vendidâd, the last of the Law\(^2\), and 'the production of the worldly creation\(^3\) being between the Hadha-mâthric and those spiritual Gâthas, is because the spiritual existence likewise, which is spiritual life (ah vô), is the beginning; and the worldly existence is purposed and caused, and a part is preserved (nôst-aitô), important for the purpose and intended for the spiritual life, the part at the beginning. 17. And the rejoining of the end of the Law, which is about the Hôm\(^4\), to the Gâthas, which are the beginning.

---

\(^1\) That is, the placing of G 5 after H 7.

\(^2\) That is, the placing of G 6, 1 after L 5. The Vendidâd appears to be the last of the truly legal Nasks, as the contents of the Kîtradâd (see Chap. XIII) appear to have been chiefly historical, and those of the Bakân-yart (see Chap. XV) chiefly religious. These two Nasks are also placed in a sub-class in § 11.

\(^3\) This Dâhirnô-ô-stîh-dâdô is evidently another name for the Dâmâdâd, or 'the creatures produced,' which is placed between G 2-4 and H 2-7.

\(^4\) Written Hûm in Pâzand, for Hôm; and referring to the white Hôm, mentioned in Pahl. Vend. XX, 17, 21, and its healing properties. It is not absolutely necessary to understand from the text that the twentieth fargard was literally the end of the Vendidâd in Sasanian times, because Chap. XLIV, 81 is quite as descriptive of the twenty-second as of the twentieth fargard.
is a symbol of the existence of the pure influence of the Gâthic lore upon the first spiritual state—that which exists likewise at last—and of the rejunction of the worldly existence to the spiritual, because it came down from the spiritual to exist at present.

18. And the reason of the twenty-one-fold partition of the three divisions of the reckoning of revelation is in the distinction which is evident from their composition; also in the three metrical lines of the Ahunavair, which is the basis of the reckoning of revelation, there are twenty-one words (mârîk). 19. As the three metrical lines of the Ahunavair, which is the basis of the reckoning of revelation, are an emblem of the triple division of the reckoning of revelation; so the twenty-one words of the three lines indicate the twenty-one-fold partition of these three divisions; as it is declared that ‘He who is the omniscient creator produced a discourse from every single word.’

20. As to the sections of the parts, such as the Hâs and Fargards⁠¹ in the Nasks, it is known there were one thousand², from the testimony and knowledge of the religion owing to the teaching of Zaratûst—whose guardian spirit is reverenced—in the country of Irân. 21. And after the devastation occurred, owing to the evil-destined and raging villain Alexander, there was not so much of them

---

¹ The term Hâ (hâd, Av. háiti) is applied to the chapters of the Yasna, and the term Fargard (Av. fra+kereta) to the chapters of the Vendôdâd and most of the other Nasks.
² Combining the information given in the Persian Rivâyats with that in the Dinkard we find only 905 chapters enumerated, of which 180 are said to have been lost, from the philosophical Nasks, during the Greek rule.
recovered as would be possible for a high-priest to preserve. 22. And that which the saintly (hû-fravardô) Ātûr-pâd, son of Mâraspend, achieved through their composition and preservation, is known so far as the decrees (kâkô) in the treatises (mâdî-gân) of the country of Irân are preserved as teaching and admonition (pandânô).

23. After writing of each separate Nask, that is, as to what it speaks about more particularly, each Nask is accounted for separately, and what is in its various Hâtş and Fargards comes to be realized; for in these particulars (mâdîgân) any ruggedness of the auspicious and desirable collection is explained. 24. But, first, the class of writing of the various Nasks—that is, about what they speak—is here written; the extent of attainment not being adapted to their peculiarity of wonderfulness.

---

**Chapter II.**

1. Homage to the glory of the good religion of Mazda-worship!

2. The Südkar contains particulars about the

---

1 Probably meaning not more than a high-priest could retain in his memory.

2 A supreme high-priest who was prime minister of king Shah-pûhar II (A.D. 309–379).

3 In this eighth book of the Dînkarî.

4 In the more detailed statements in the ninth book.

5 Reading hûrukûngûn, but it may be khûskûnînô, 'beneficent,' or anasikôn-gûn, 'unconfusing.'

6 Corresponding to the first word, yathâ, in the Ahunavair, according to the Persian Rivâyat of Bahman Pûngyah, which adopts the sequence detailed in Chap. I, 12. All other Persian Rivâyats and also the Dînî-vigirkard adopt the sequence G 1–4; H 1–7;
power of the pure glorifying of the first utterance of Aûharmazd\(^1\), through thinking, speaking, and acting; and about abstaining from the law of very evil and very disturbing people\(^2\). 3. Glorifying the observances (hûnârânô) and good works of the good religion and of a like nature, as well as their effectualness; and condemning the faults and sin of him of very evil religion, when all kinds of neglect of the spiritual ceremony and of care for the archangel of the worldly existence are owing to him\(^3\); also much information about spiritual matters. 4. It has become old (kâhûnik), and is a witness whose statement extends even unto the renovation of the universe\(^4\).

5. Righteousness is perfect excellence\(^5\).

\(^1\) The Ahunavair, or Yathâ ahû vairyô, which Aûharmazd recited before the creation in order to confound Aharman (see Bd. I, 21, 22). This clause refers chiefly to the first fargard of the Sûdkar (see Bk. IX, Chap. II).

\(^2\) Referring to Bk. IX, Chaps. V, IX, X, &c.

\(^3\) See Bk. IX, Chap. IX.

\(^4\) See Bk. IX, Chap. XXIII, 7.

\(^5\) The text is aharâ yîh dûdîh pâhlûm aîtô, the Pahl. equivalent of the Av. ashem vohû vahistem aît, 'righteousness is the best good,' the first metrical line of the Ashem-vohû formula, with which it is usual to conclude forms of prayer and religious writings. It is here used to conclude the account of each of the twenty-one Nasks, and twice over at the end of the last one, so that it occurs twenty-two times in this eighth Book. In the ninth Book it concludes the account of each fargard of the three Nasks detailed, and is written twice at the end of the second Nask, and twice at the end of the Book; so that it occurs in three series of 22, 24, and 24 repetitions, respectively, in the ninth Book. As the formula,
Chapter III.

1. The Varstmânsar\(^1\) contains particulars about the birth of Zaratûst, his attaining the religion\(^2\), and whatever is on the same subject\(^3\). 2. A notice (numâd) of the priestliness, discipleship, spiritual lordship, priestly authority, and steadfastness which are in his original more concise words of the Gâthas\(^4\). 3. The explanation (zand) of the statements about everything and also the good arrangement (khûs-ra'dâkî) are such as that which one speaks of thus: —'It is the Varstmânsar which has given forth an exposition upon everything.' 4. So that, in the Varstmânsar, something is said about everything that is mentioned in the Gâthas.

5. Of righteousness the excellence is perfect.

which is thus repeated, consists of four words, it is capable of \(1 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 = 24\) permutations in the order of its words; and it appears as if the author intended that each of the four series of repetitions of the formula, contained in the two Books, should give all these permutations successively; and, with the exception of a few deviations (chiefly in the first two series, and probably due to the errors of copyists), he has maintained this fanciful peculiarity throughout. The English translations of the formula have been varied, so as to preserve this peculiarity to some extent, but it has not been found possible to differentiate the whole of the twenty-four permutations.

\(^1\) Corresponding to the second word, ahu, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the third Nask in other Rivâyats. Varstmânsar means 'used as spells, or employed as liturgy,' and is often corrupted into Vahist-mânthurah in the Rivâyats. For a detailed account of the contents of each of its twenty-three fargârs see Bk. IX, Chaps. XXIV–XLVI.

\(^2\) See Bk. IX, Chap. XXIV.

\(^3\) This final phrase is often used for unspecified details, and may be considered as equivalent to \(et\ caetera\).

\(^4\) See Bk. IX, Chap. XXV.
CHAPTER IV.

1. The Bakō\(^1\) contains particulars about the division of the recital of the first saying of revelation\(^2\), the first creature\(^3\) in that saying, the first occurrence of it, the adaptation of the creature, and the greatness of that saying which is incorporating the creature, owing thereto; also, especially, the intermingling of thought (mēd)\(^4\) with it. 2. Very comprehensive knowledge about everything, each separately its own offspring, and many an appendage as much connected with it as that which is said concerning the Bakō\(^5\), that 'the Bakō of the community (dāhmān) is heard where it is spoken for the community,' that is, whoever shall do this good work, for him this good work will be done.

3. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

CHAPTER V.

1. Amid the Dāmdād\(^6\) are particulars about the maintenance of action and the production of the

---

\(^1\) Corresponding to the third word, vairīyā, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the fourth Nask in other Rivāyats. Bakō means 'subdivision, or apportionment,' and is written Bagh, or Bagh-ast, in the Rivāyats. For a detailed account of the contents of each of its twenty-two fargards see Bk. IX, Chaps. XLVII–LXVIII.

\(^2\) The Ahunavair (see Chap. II, 2 and Bk. IX, Chap. XLVII, 3).

\(^3\) The Ahū, or 'spiritual lord,' who is the first creature mentioned in the Ahunavair (see Bk. IX, Chap. XLVII, 4).

\(^4\) Av. mait, Pāz. mit in Bk. IX, Chap. XLVII, 5, the Av. manas of Yas. XIX, 29 (Sp.).

\(^5\) This section is an extreme condensation of the contents of Bk. IX, Chaps. XLVIII–LXVIII.

\(^6\) Corresponding to the fourth word, athā, in the Ahunavair,
beneficial creatures. 2. First, as to the spiritual existence, and how much and how is the maintenance in the spiritual existence; and the production of the worldly existence therefrom, qualified and constructed for descending (fitōdanā) into the combat with the destroyer, and accomplishing the associated necessity for the end and circumvention (garang) of destructiveness.

3. The manner and species of the creation of the creatures; also their material existence, and the character and use of the races and species; and whatever is on the same subject. 4. The reason for their creation, and for their perfection at last. 5. About the adversity, injury, and misery of those creatures, and their secret (nīhōnā) resources and means of attacking and annihilating them; with the preservation or disablement (apēkārīnīdanā) of the creatures thereby¹.

6. Of righteousness the excellence is perfect excellence.

according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the fifth Nask in other Rivāyats. Dāṃdād means 'the creatures produced,' and it is called Dvāz-dah-hāmāst (or humāst) in the Rivāyats, which also state that it contained thirty-two kardah, or subdivisions. No further particulars of this and the subsequent Nasks are given by the Dīnkard, beyond the contents of this eighth Book.

¹ So far as this brief account of the Dāṃdād goes, it corresponds very well with much of the contents of the Bundahish. Žaad-sparam, in his Selections, IX, 1, 16, also quotes the Dāṃdād as the authority for certain details contained in the Bundahish, which work must therefore be considered as derived from this Nask. It is very probable, however, that the Nask contained much more information than is here hinted, because the author's usual plan, in these brief summaries, is evidently to confine his remarks to a few of the details near the beginning of each Nask.
CHAPTER VI.

1. On account of the Zand of the Nâdâr\(^1\) not reaching us, the Avesta is retained, for teaching, recital, and ceremony, because it has come unto us with authority.

2. Of righteousness the excellence is perfect excellence.

CHAPTER VII.

1. The Pâgâg\(^2\) contains particulars about lawfully slaughtering a sheep, for the ceremonial of fires, waters, and holy-water, in aid of a season-festival\(^3\) of the Mazda-worshippers; besides this, namely, in what are the skill, and the means for selection, of a man for such work, and the formula (nîrang) of the ceremony. 2. And this, namely, from which limb of the sheep species is the

---

\(^1\) Corresponding to the fifth word, ratus, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the sixth Nask in other Rivâyats. Owing to its Zand, or Pahlavi version, having been lost, the author does not undertake to describe its contents; but the Rivâyats state that it consisted of thirty-five ġûrat, or compilations, about astronomy and astrology. The traditional name Nâdâr, or Nâdâr, is probably a misreading; as Vakhtar (for Vakhttar), 'more destined,' and Vakhtvar, 'fate-bringing,' would be more intelligible readings of the same letters.

\(^2\) Corresponding to the sixth word, ashâd, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the seventh Nask in other Rivâyats. Pâgâg probably means 'cooking,' with reference to the preparations for the sacred feasts; it is called Pâgam, Pâlam, or Pâzûn in the Rivâyats, which also state that it contained twenty-two kardah, or subdivisions.

\(^3\) The six Gâhanbârs or season-festivals are held on the five days ending, respectively, with the 45th, 105th, 180th, 210th, 290th, and 365th days of the Parsi year (see Sls. XVIII, 3 n).
share of the fires and waters to be taken\(^1\), and how is the preparation which is to be carried on, and with what Avesta. 3. And whatever is about a season-festival; where the appointed place is, when one celebrates it, and when it has fully elapsed; the assembly of the season-festival, and the donation for the feast; where and when the celebration is possible, in what proportion the provisions are to be given out, and when to be prepared and divided; where its advantage is, and what benefit there is from it to the good creations both spiritually and materially.

4. And this, namely, what skill is more suitable for the sacerdotal (\textipa{ra\textipa{d}-p\textipa{tsag}}) leadership and other priestly authority (\textipa{ra\textipa{d}th}) each separately. 5. About the business of the sacerdotal leadership, where it is owing to having appointed the place and having gone forth to the assembly of the Mazda-worshippers, and when they are to be made aware that that assembly is more particularly for the arrangement of renunciation of vice and retribution for sin; the needful supply of things for the feast; the selection of the men for the Z\textipa{oti} duty and R\textipa{asp} duty before the day\(^2\); the Z\textipa{otis}, R\textipa{asp}s, and others who put in action the work for the preparation and giving of the portions; and the cleansing of the body-clothing.

6. As to the selection of the president (\textipa{p\textipa{es}-g\textipa{a}s}) of the feast there is this, namely, what ability is requisite for that presidency. 7. The allotment of the portions, and giving them sooner to those who are sooner in need of them. 8. Scoffing before

\(^1\) The heart for the fires, and the fore-legs for the waters, according to Sls. XI, 4.

\(^2\) The Z\textipa{oti} is the chief officiating priest in the ceremonial, and the R\textipa{asp} is the assistant priest.
priestly authorities, who are great and good, and when they do not give a portion to the authorities are cases when the season-festivals are not to be considered as celebrated. 9. This, too, that the Zôtis and Râspîs are for the Zôti duty and Râspî duty, and the other priestly authorities for the control of sin and computation (âvâr) of the portions; and more on the same subject.

10. About the rotation of the day-watches (gâs), days, months, and seasons of the year—which are when it is summer and winter—and the appearances (sahîsnô) therein which are owing to the motion of the constellations ¹. 11. Where the coming of the righteous guardian spirits (fravâhar) into the worldly existence occurs, in those ten days which are the end of the winter and termination of the year, because the five Gâthic days ², among them, are for that purpose; the cessation of that same, as well as its continuance. 12. The great needfulness of the guardian spirits of the righteous in the ceremonial and obeisance of those ten days, and their abundant gratification therefrom; their vexation from

¹ That is, the apparent motions of the akhtarân, or signs of the zodiac.
² The five supplementary days, named after the five Gâthas, which are added to the twelfth month of thirty days to complete the 365 days of the year. They are also called fravarâdîkân, or 'those devoted to the Frâvârds,' or Frâvâshis, the guardian spirits, or prototypes, of created beings, who are supposed to revisit their old haunts on earth during those days. The last five days of the twelfth month are also considered a part of the same festival of ten days, which would have terminated at the vernal equinox, as indicated in the text, about A.D. 1000 if the ordinary receding calendar of the Irânian Parsis were used; but it seems probable, from Bd. XXV, that the calendar in those times was fixed for the new year to begin at the vernal equinox.
want of welcome and want of obeisance; and their ascent from the worldly existences. 13. The extreme importance (frēvōánīkīh) of liberality and bounty at that season; and the proper duty of the priestly authority of a district (shatrō) in assisting and interceding for the poor, for the sake of teaching, from the days devoted to the guardian spirits, proper actions among those having guardian spirits.

14. About the period for taking medicinal plants, and whatever is on the same subject. 15. About where there is a household, village, communal, or provincial petitioning for the royal chastisement of sins affecting the soul, each separately; and for whom is the atonement. 16. About the advantage owing to disposal of sin and infliction of chastisement, and the harm owing to not disposing of sin and neglecting the chastisement inflicted.

17. About the first thirty-three chieftainships (raḍḥ), around and concealed; that is, which and how many are spiritual, and how many worldly; and which is the second, and which the third, of the spiritual and worldly existences. 18. About the admirableness and great meritoriousness of public observances, and the awfulness and grievous sinfulness of apostasy. 19. And also this, that is, when any one is doubtful, through apostasy, which is the law from the sacred beings in elucidation, and which of the sacred beings is to be entreated for assistance. 20. About this, namely, for which of the women the bringing of a handful of anything, from the property of her husband, to be given away is allowable, in what proportion, and how, and for whom; and for whom, when she gives it away, it is allowable for the husband to bring it back.
21. About this, namely, when summer comes on, where does winter run to; and when winter comes on, where does summer go to? 22. About the amount of disaster\(^1\) that has passed by in one century, and the duration of its passing; everything which is connected with the disaster, and whatever is on the same subject. 23. Where and how many months are of such a kind\(^2\), and how many of such a kind\(^2\); as well as the religious names of the twelve months, and the reason of the name of each one of them, that is, to which of the sacred beings, in the ceremonial, each one of these twelve months is predominantly appertaining; so also of the thirty days which are in every month, and so also of the five Gāthas in every year—that is, the five Gāthic days at the end of the year\(^3\)—all the sacred beings to whom they are appertaining, and when the righteous guardian spirits (ardāt fravarďō) are reverenced.

24. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

---

**CHAPTER VIII.**

1. The Raďō-dâd-aīt tag\(^4\) contains particulars about the religious and important customs and laws to be

---

\(^1\) Pāz. vőighn.

\(^2\) Reading hamgūn in both places; but the two words may be hamīnē, ‘summer,’ and khamīnē, ‘wet weather.’

\(^3\) The five supplementary days mentioned in § II.

\(^4\) Corresponding to the seventh word, ēd, in the Ahurāvair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the eighth Nask in other Rivāyats. Raďō-dâd-aīt tag means ‘concerning the habits of a priestly master,’ which is a fair description of the contents of this Nask, but it is misread Ratusṭāt, or Ratusṭād, in the Rivāyats, which also state that it contained originally fifty kardah, or subdivisions, of which only thirteen were recovered after the time of Alexander.
enforced. 2. The reason of the worthiness and superexcellence in a sacerdotal leader, and his possession of a portion of the other authority (patīh) of a ruler also; that is, how worthiness is to be distinguished from unworthiness, and superexcellence from unworthiness, in him, namely, in the priestly chieftainship (rādīh) of Khvanītras and the other regions, each separately, the first which stood aloof from the Mazda-worshippers.

3. About the demonstration and notification of the sitting together of the archangels, the ritual and appliances in the ceremonial of the sacred beings, the position and business of the Zōtis and Rāspīs in a ceremonial, and also all the business of the leaders in their duty, each separately and originally.

4. The greatness of the helpfulness (vīgdār-dahīnnīh) in good works, the kinds of helpfulness, and the proximity of Aūharmazd to the thoughts, words, and deeds of the embodied existence.

5. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

Chapter IX.

1. The Barīs contains particulars about the invigorating power, truth, and generosity of the many

---

1 Av. Hvaniratha, the central region of the earth, containing the countries best known to the Irānians, around which the other six smaller regions were supposed to be arranged.


3 Or 'fundamentally' (val būn).

4 Corresponding to the eighth word, hākā, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the ninth Nask in other Rivāyats. Barīs, or Barīs, means 'splendid, sublime;' and the Rivāyats state that it contained originally sixty kardah, or subdivisions, of which only twelve were recovered after the time of Alexander.
capabilities of instinctive and acquired wisdom. And also the ill-advisedness of falsity, stinginess, and ignorance; and the many defects which are fraternizing with the opponent of capabilities. The blessing and cursing, the good will and ill-will of the good ritual and evil ritual, the good statements and evil statements of Vohûman, Spendarmad, Srôsh, Aharîsvang, and many other sacred beings, and of evil thought, lust, wrath, unrighteousness, and many other demons; and whatever is on the same subject.

4. The destiny, nature, desire, religion, habit, learning, business, and diligence of the period, and whatever is on the same subject, as regards sovereignty, government, priestly authority, justice, and mediation. 5. The union, peace, and promise-keeping, and whatever is on the same subject. 6. The law and custom, good works and sin, good repute and evil repute, righteousness and wickedness, and whatever is on the same subject. 7. The modesty and pomp, glory and penance (srôshítikîh), and whatever is on the same subject. 8. The connec-

---

1 Pûs, the demon of misers in Bd. XXVIII, 28.
2 These four angels are personifications of Av. vohû manô, ‘good thought,’ spenta ârmaitis, ‘bountiful devotion,’ sraoshô, ‘the obedient one,’ and ahsîs vanguhi, ‘good rectitude.’
3 These four demoniacal propensities are here mentioned as the opponents of the foregoing four angels. Akômanô and Aeshm, the first and third, are the recognised opponents of Vohûman and Srôsh, respectively (see Bd. XXX, 29). Varenô, the second, is considered a demon (see Bd. XXVIII, 25), and is mentioned in the Dinkard, book VI, as opposing the angel Arô or Aharîsvang (see Dd. XCIV, 2); here he evidently opposes another female angel, Spendarmad, while Aharîsvang or Ashi is opposed by her simple negation, Anâhar.
4 Av. sraoshya, see Pahl. Vend. XIII, 9.
tion through ownership, subordination, service, and religion, and whatever is on the same subject. 9. The suitability and unsuitability, friendship and enmity, and whatever is on the same subject. 10. The handsomeness and ugliness, youth and decrepitude, opulence and destitution, happiness and misery, and whatever is on the same subject. 11. The strength in races and species of things, and whatever is on the same subject. 12. The learning, solving of questions, complete virtue, and whatever is on the same subject. 13. The hunger and thirst, and their remedy, and whatever is on the same subject. 14. The delirium and death, and their expediency, and whatever is on the same subject. 15. The primitive state and tendency of things, precedence and sequence, and whatever is on the same subject. 16. The acceptableness and unacceptableness, gratification and afflictiveness, and whatever is on the same subject. 17. The mightiness (takhtar), loquacity, sociality, and whatever is on the same subject. 18. The understanding and mind; the body and soul; the heaven, hell, and future existence; and whatever is on the same subject. 19. The omniscience of the creator Aûharmazd, and all goodness of like motive, the life and glory of a righteous man, and whatever is on the same subject.

20. And many other arrangements of the creator, through propagation of statements, preparation of sovereignty, maintenance of the body, and preserva-

---

1 Supposing that s̄ukō stands for sūd.
2 Reading bēshāsinīdārī which is more probable than the bēshāsinīdārī, 'curativeness,' of the MS.
3 All the details in §§ 5–19 are to be read in connection with 'the period' mentioned in § 4.
tion of the soul; a statement adapted to that which one mentions thus: ‘Truly-spoken statements are the Baris, Kaskisrobo, and Vistasp-sastō.’

21. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

CHAPTER X.

1. The Kaskisrobo\(^1\) contains particulars about the explanation of the ceremonial and ritual of the sacred beings, through what arises its conversion into demon-worship, and information as to cleanliness and uncleanness. 2. The preparations and precautions for the Yasts\(^2\); the tokens and signs of the overflowing and evil owing to the demons at various times, and the cause of their exhaustion and the final victory of the sacred beings. 3. Then the exalting chants of every kind, which Anaharmazd taught to Zaratust, are called the teaching (sastō) of the spirits.

4. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

CHAPTER XI.

1. The Vistasp-sastō\(^3\) is about particulars of

---

\(^1\) Corresponding to the ninth word, van gheus, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the tenth Nask in other Rivâyats. Kaskisrobo may perhaps mean ‘with happy, or comfortable, statements,’ and is corrupted into Karsrob, Kaskafrâh, or Karafriz, in the Rivâyats, which also state that it contained originally sixty kardah, or subdivisions, of which only fifteen were recovered after the time of Alexander.

\(^2\) The minor ceremonies.

\(^3\) Corresponding to the tenth word, da zdâ, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the eleventh Nask in other Rivâ-
every kind relating to Kal-Vistâsp; the temper, character, demeanour, knowledge, learning, and law for sovereignty; the government of the creatures, and the advancement of the will of the sacred beings requisite for it.

2. The creator Aûharmasad sends the archangels on to Kal-Vistâsp as evidence about Aûharmasad, and a reminder of Spîtâmân Zaratûst, of the pure goodness of the Mazda-worshipping religion, and of the command for the ruler Vistâsp, as to its triumph, on accepting the religion from Zaratûst. 3. The visible coming of the archangels to the metropolis, and, secondly, their domestication (handêmânîh) at the residence of Vistâsp and his companions; the envoys’ explanation of Aûharmasad’s message to Vistâsp, and the accepting of the Mazda-worshipping religion by the obedient king Vistâsp.

4. The outpouring (sârînt’dânô) of Argâsp the Khyôn, by the demon of wrath, for war with Vistâsp.
CHAPTER XI, 2—XIII, 1.

and disturbance of Zaratâst; the arrangements and movements of king Vistâsp for that war, and whatever is on the same subject.

5. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

CHAPTER XII.

1. The Avesta and commentary of the Vastag

have not reached us through any high-priest.

2. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

CHAPTER XIII.

1. The Kitradâd contains particulars about the race of mankind; how the formation of the first

Vistâsp on account of the latter’s conversion to Mazda-worship, and was defeated with great difficulty in a most desperate battle which is also described in the Shâhnâmah. Whether the Khyôns were the Chionitae of later times is uncertain.

1 Corresponding to the eleventh word, mananîghô, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the twelfth Nask in other Rivâyats. The name of this Nask is very uncertain; in five occurrences of the word the first letter is omitted once and may once be the conjunction ‘and,’ and the last syllable is also omitted once; the B. P. Riv. calls it Dâd, by omitting the first and last letters and varying the reading of the rest, and the other Rivâyats call it ‘Hast or Hast. They also state that it contained twenty-two kardah, or fargardâs, in six divisions treating of various religious and worldly duties, as detailed in the translations in the latter part of this volume.

2 Corresponding to the twelfth word, sâya oth ananâm, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the fourteenth Nask in other Rivâyats. Kitradâd means ‘the races produced,’ a name of the same form as Dânmdâd, but it is read Kûdrast, Kârast, or Gîrast in the Rivâyats, which also state that it contained twenty-two kardah, or subdivisions.
man, Gâyômard¹, by Aûharmazd was for the manifestation of the bodily form (kerpîh); and in what manner the first couple, Mashya and Mashyôt², arose. 2. About their progeny and lineage during the entire progress of mankind in the central region of Khvanîras³, and the distribution from them into the six⁴ regions which are around Khvanîras. 3. The various races, which are specially enumerated, were ordered to disperse by the attracting or banishing command of the creator, to each separate race, as to the place where it went to; and whose life and soul (nisman) are appointed from yonder world. 4. Also the original description of their descent into the various regions, of those, too, who are on the frontiers of Khvanîras, and those who also made their habitation in the intermediate places; and the customs of each one of the species of mankind which was produced among the original races.

5. The original establishment of law and custom; that of village superintendence (dihânkânîh)⁵, for the cultivation and nourishment of the world, based upon the traditional early law (vâsardâ pêsdâdô); and that of monarchy, for the protection and govern-

¹ The original human being who was created as the source whence mankind were to spring, in the same way as 'the sole-created ox' was to be the origin of all other animals (see Bd. III, i4, 17, 19–23, IV, i, XV, i, 31).
² Literally 'man and woman,' here written masyê va-masyâôî. The mode of their origin from Gâyômard and the development of man upon the earth are detailed in Bd. XV.
³ See Chap. VIII, 2.
⁴ The MS. has 'seven' by mistake.
⁵ A more probable reading than gehânakânîh in the sense of 'colonization.'
ment of the creatures, upon Hôshâng the Pêsdàðian. 6. A report of the lineage of Hôshâng, who was the first, and Tâkhmô-rupô who was the second ruler of the seven regions; and an enumeration of reports of lineage from the original creation even unto Yim. 7. A report of the lineage of Yim, the third ruler of the seven regions; information as to his period, and the progress (saḵišnô) of time from the original creation till the end of the reign of Yim.

8. A report of the ill-informed evil ruler of the seven regions, Dahâk; his lineage back to Tâz, the brother of Hôshâng and father of the Tâziks (Arâbs); information as to him and his period, the progress of time from the end of the good reign of Yim till the end of the evil reign of Dahâk, and the lineage from Yim as far as Frêdûn.

---

1 This ‘Hôshâng of the early law,’ Av. Haoshyanghô para-dhâtô, is considered to have been the great-grandson of Mashya and first monarch of the world, being the founder of the Pêsdâðian dynasty (see Bd. XV, 28, XXXI, 1, XXXIV, 3, 4).

2 Here written Tâkhmô-rôpô, Av. Takhmô-uru-pa; the great-grandson and successor of Hôshâng (see Bd. XXXI, 2, 3, XXXIV, 4).

3 Av. Yimô khshaētô, the Gamshêd of the Shâhnâmah; the brother and successor of Tâkhmô-rupô (see Bd. XXXI, 3–5, XXXIV, 4).

4 Also called Aṣṭ Dahâk, Av. aṣis dâhâkô, ‘destructive serpent,’ a name applied to a foreign dynasty, considered as a single king who conquered Yim and succeeded him, being traditionally his third cousin once removed (see Bd. XXXI, 5, 6, XXXIV, 5). Further details are given in Bk. IX, Chap. XXI, 1–13. Dahâk was the last ruler of all the seven regions, excepting Kâf-Ûs.

5 See Bd. XV, 26–28.

6 Av. Thraētâonô, son of Âthwô, and, traditionally, the ninth in descent from Yim (see Bd. XXXI, 7, 8); nine generations being assumed necessary to allow for the thousand years’ reign of the Dahâk dynasty which he put an end to. His rule was confined to the central region of Khvanîras.
9. A report of Frādōn, the ruler of Khvanīras; as to the smiting of Dahāk, the conquering of the country of Māzendarān¹, and the allotment of Khvanīras among his three sons, Salm, Tūg, and Airīk²; their union with the daughters of Pāt-srōbō³, king of the Arabs and descendant of Tāz, and the lineage and report of them, each separately. 10. The reign of Mānūṣkīhar of Irān, descendant (nāpō) of Airīk. 11. The expiating⁴ monarch Frāštyāv of Tūrān, and Aūzōbō⁵ the Tūmāspian, monarch of Irān.

12. The descendant of Mānūṣkīhar, Kavī-Kavād, who was progenitor of the Kayāns and ruler of Irān; and the expiating ruler Keresāsp⁶. 13. Kāt-Ūs, grandson⁷ of Kavād, ruler and maintainer of royalty (kaī-dānō) in the seven regions. 14. Kaī-Khūsrōī who was son of Styāvakhsh⁸ and ruler of

¹ The land on the southern coast of the Caspian belonging to the Māzainya daēva (demons, or idolators) of the Avesta.
² The last of whom was slain by his brothers, and was avenged by his descendant Mānūṣkīhar (see Bd. XXXI, 9–12).
³ Possibly the celebrated individual of that name who is mentioned, in Pahl. Vend. XX, 4, as an instance of opulence. The Shāhnāmah speaks only of the three daughters of the king of Yaman.
⁴ Or 'plundering;' but Tūg-hōmōnd here, and Tūgāvānd in § 12, may perhaps mean 'descended from Tūg,' as Frāštyāv was the sixth in descent from Tūg (see Bd. XXXI, 14).
⁵ Said to have been a great-grandson of Mānūṣkīhar (see Bd. XXXI, 23).
⁶ Probably the hero who was sixth in descent from Tūg, and third cousin of Frāštyāv (see Bk. IX, Chap. XV; Bd. XXXI, 14, 26, 27); though placed by Firdausī as a king Garshāsp preceding Kaī-Qubād.
⁷ As appears from Bd. XXXI, 25.
⁸ The son of Kāt-Ūs, who did not become king.
Khvantras. 15. And a special report of many particulars of the races of Irân, Tûrân, and Salmân\(^1\), even unto the ruler Kaî-Lôharâsp\(^2\) and the monarch Kaî-Vistâsp\(^3\). 16. The prophet (vakhshvar) of the Mazda-worshipping religion, Zaratûst the Spîtâmân, and the progress of time from the beginning of the reign of Frêdân till the coming of Zaratûst to conference with Aûharmazd\(^4\).

17. And many races and statements, onwards from that time, are enumerated in the same Nask as having existed, and are characterized by it for existence, such as the Sasanians—whom it reckons as the well-created—and their sovereignty. 18. In the race of Mânûšâihar, Nôdar\(^5\), Yôskô Fryânô\(^6\), and

---

\(^1\) The people of the Airya, Tûrya, and Sairima provinces, mentioned in Yt. XIII, 143.

\(^2\) Fifth in descent from Kavî-Kavâd, and third cousin once removed of his predecessor Kaî-Khûsrôî (see Bd. XXXI, 25, 28).

\(^3\) Son of Kaî-Lôharâsp (see Bd. XXXI, 29).

\(^4\) The historical legends contained in the Avesta end with the sons of king Vistâsp, and other contemporaries of Zaratûst; not a word being said of any succeeding monarch. Similarly, Bd. XXXI and this historical Nask fail to carry on the details of the royal line beyond Vistâsp; ignoring the Achaemenians, Alexander, and the Askânians, they leap over an evident gap in history (very insufficiently bridged in the more modern chapter, Bd. XXXIV) to the Sasanians. This gap, between Avesta legends and the later undoubted Persian history, is a very weak point in the continuity of the two periods. And as the mode of bridging over this gap in Bd. XXXIV occurs in a chapter ‘on the computation of years of the Arabs’ (see S. B. E. vol. v, p. xxxvii) it must be considered as more of an Arab than a Persian contribution to history.

\(^5\) Av. Naotara; a son of Mânûšâihar (see Bd. XXXI, 13, 23, XXXIII, 5).

\(^6\) Doubtful; if the second name be a patronymic, the combination suggests the Yôstô yô-Fryânânâm of Yt. V, 81, XIII, 120, regarding whom the tale of Yôstô Fryânô is told. No son of
Namûn, son of Spend-shêd\(^1\), is *included* the father of Avarethrabau\(^2\), Ātûr-pâd son of Mâraspend; and *its* existence, even then, remains for the future. 19. Also about the many qualities of capability and glory of the selfsame sovereignty, which are promoting the renovation of the universe destined for the races; and *its* fortune *and* splendour which are shed upon the race, and are not severed from it till the renovation\(^3\).

20. About the original knowledge of the professions, care, and industry of the period; the great acquaintance of mankind with the putting aside of injury from the adversary, the preservation of the body, *and* the deliverance of the soul; the govern-

Nôdâr with a corresponding name is known, so that we are not dealing with a complete pedigree.

\(^1\) Probably intended for Spend-dâd, and we should perhaps read 'Vohûmanô, son of Spend-dâd,' whose reign is celebrated as the silver age in Byt. II, 17 (see also Bd. XXXI, 29, XXXIV, 8).

\(^2\) This name, or surname, is given in Pázand, and is also to be found in Yt. XIII, 106, as follows: 'we reverence the guardian spirit of the righteous Avarethrabau, son of Râstare-vaghant.' If the latter epithet were a surname of Ātûr-pâd, the famous prime minister of Shâhpûhar II, as the text intimates, we must conclude that the former epithet was a surname of his only son, Zaratûst, mentioned in his Pandnâmak. These surnames, and others of their time, might have been easily interpolated in the long list of uncouth names included in the Fravardîn Yast, when the Avesta books were revised during the reign of Shâhpûhar II, and the Nasks were 'reckoned,' as stated in the fourth book of the Dînkard (see Haug's Essay on Pahlavi, pp. 146, 152).

\(^3\) §§ 17–19 refer to text which must have been written either in the time of Shâhpûhar II, or at some later period during Sasanian rule. Whereas §§ 1–16 are descriptive of an older record which, though consistent with the extant Avesta texts, could not have been compiled from them alone. And § 20 describes text that might have been written at any time.
ment necessary for the world, even before the coming of Zaratūst by order of the creator; the bringing of the word\textsuperscript{1} from the sacred beings, and all occurrences to the leaders of religion at various times; and whatever is on the same subjects.

21. Perfect righteousness is excellence.

---

\textbf{Chapter XIV.}

1. The Spend\textsuperscript{2} contains particulars about the origin and combination of the material existence, guardian spirit, and soul (nisman) of Zaratūst; how the creation of each one occurred in the spiritual existence, and in what mode it was produced for the worldly existence; how their connection with the parents arose, the coming of the parents together, the combination in the mother, and the birth from the mother; and whatever is on the same subject.

2. Also about the arrival of both spirits, the good one for developing, and the evil one for destroying; the victory of the good spirit, and the rearing of Zaratūst.

3. His attainment on maturity, at thirty years of age, to a conference with Aûharmazd; and the

---

\textsuperscript{1} Reading vakhsh in the same Avesta sense as in vakhshtvar, 'a prophet;' it may, however, mean 'gain, fortune, gifts.' A similarly-written word, vâyâ, 'air, breath,' is used in Sg. XIII, 7 to translate the 'Spirit' of God in Gen. i. 2.

\textsuperscript{2} Corresponding to the thirteenth word, anghesus, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; and it is the thirteenth Nask in all Rivâyats. Spend means 'beneficent, or bounteous,' and is written Sfend, or Spentah, in the Rivâyats, which also state that it contained sixty kardah, or subdivisions.
occurrence of seven conferences in ten years. 4. Many marvels, owing to him, are published therein, just as there are some which, collected and selected, are noticed by the Dīnkard manuscript 1.

5. In seven sections (būrīnā), such as are called Spend, are the seven enquiries, in each instance a single enquiry; and the bestowal of the other Nasks, in these seven enquiries, was through speaking out in each one of the places of conference. 6. About the various enquiries, the period of the sitting and rising on each occasion, the nature of the sitting of the archangels, the coming forward of Zaratūst to that domestic conclave (handēmānīh), his position in that place, what there was to say to him, and what there was to exhibit to him.

7. The conferring of the wisdom of omniscience upon Zaratūst, and what was seen by Zaratūst of the past and future, and the perpetual amount of duration therein, through that wisdom 2. 8. The existence of that wisdom, and what that is which, after having subsisted in it, is again well recognised; such as, owing to it, are the highest and best of places, heaven and the various grades of position and reward of the righteous, according to their worthiness through the practice of good works; the most downward and worst of places, hell and the place of punishment of the wicked, according to their sin; and, between the two, the place of the ever-stationary, those having equal good works and

1 In its seventh book which contains a full account of the birth and much of the life of Zaratūst, with a narrative of future events, all derived, no doubt, from the Spend Nask. Particulars connected with his birth will also be found in Bk. IX, Chap. XXIV.

2 See Byt. II, 5–9.
sin; the Kinvad bridge, at which is the account as to good works and sin; and the future existence, in which is the consummation of every one, righteous and wicked, and the preservation of all good creations from every evil occurs.

9. Information also as to many other things which are marvellous, and as to a summary of the statements of these seven enquiries, which is derived from knowledge of every kind. 10. Likewise, about the communication of Zarathust's knowledge of the Mazda-worshipping religion to the world, his attracting mankind to the religion, and the ages, after Zarathust, until the renovation of the universe. 11. And about the nature of the advancement of the people of the period, the separation of centuries and millenniums, and the signs, wonders, and perplexity which are manifested in the world at the end of each millennium in the world.

12. Also as to the birth and arrival of Aushedar, son of Zarathust, at the end of the first millennium, and a report of him and his time, and of the many destroyers of the organizers of the period between Zarathust's millennium and the coming of Aushedar.

---

1 Av. Kinvatō peretūs, the route to the other world (see Bk. IX, Chap. XX, 3).
2 Commonly written Hushedar, but i is a corruption of Av. Ukhshyad-ereta. He is the first of the three posthumous sons of Zarathust, who were expected to restore his religion and make it triumphant by three successive efforts, each preceded by a period of anarchy (see Bd. XXXII, 8, 9, Byt. III, 13, 43-50).
3 The millennium of Zarathust, which, according to the chronology of the Bundahirs, must have ended during the period a.d. 593-635 (see Byt. III, 11 n).
4 The occurrence of such an interval between the first millennium and the coming of Aushedar seems inconsistent with the previous
13. The arrival of Aushēdar-māh, son of Zaratūst, at the end of the second millennium; information about him and his time, and the destroyers of the organizers who were within the millennium of Aushēdar. 14. The coming and arrival of Sōshāns, son of Zaratūst, at the end of the third millennium, the destroyers of the organizers who were within the millennium of Aushēdar-māh, the arrival of Sōshāns, and information about Sōshāns and his time. 15. Also, as to the renovation of the universe and the future existence, it is declared that they arise in his time.

16. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

---

**Chapter XV.**

1. The Bakān-yast contains particulars, first, about the worship of Aūharmazd, the highest of divinities (bakān), and, secondly, of the worship of the angels of other invisible and visible worldly existences, out of whom are likewise the names of

---

1 Commonly written Hūshēdar-māh, but it is a corruption of Av. Ukhshyad-nemangh. He is the second of the expected posthumous sons (see Bty. III, 52, 53).

2 Av. Saoshyās; the last of the posthumous sons, who is expected to complete the triumph of the religion, and prepare for the renovation of the universe (see Bd. XXX, 4, 7, 25, 27, Bty. III, 52).

3 Corresponding to the fourteenth word, mazdâi, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the fifteenth Nask in other Rivāyats. Bakān-yast means ‘worship of the divinities,’ and is written Baghān-yast, or Bayān-yast, in the Rivāyats, which also state that it contained seventeen kardah, or subdivisions.
the days\(^1\); also their glory, power, triumph, and marvellousness. 2. Besides, also, many angels who are invoked by name in their worship, and the attention and obeisance due to them.

3. The worthiness and dispensation of favour for worshippers, and the duty of their many separate recitations unto the angels. 4. The duty of unlimited acquaintance with knowledge about the possessions and arrangements of the period, over which the creator Ahurarmazd has appointed them, and they remain to cause industry.

5. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

---

**Chapter XVI.**

1. The beginning of the law is the Nikâdûm\(^2\) of thirty fargârs\(^3\). 2. The section Patkâr-radistân (‘magistrate code’)\(^4\) is about this, that the ruin and misery (ayûyakth) from the destroyer, for mankind and animals, occurring really apart from the spiritual existence, have arisen through the sinfulness even of

---

\(^1\) Each of the days of the Parsi month being named after some particular angel, or spirit. From this description it appears probable that the Yasts formed a part of this Nask; but, if so, it ought to have contained at least thirty chapters.

\(^2\) Corresponding to the fifteenth word, khshathremkâ, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the sixteenth Nask in other Rivâyats. This name should probably be Vîk-âft-tûm, meaning ‘the most separate concerns,’ as the Nask refers chiefly to public law; but it is called Niyâram, or Niyâdâm, in the Rivâyats.

\(^3\) The Rivâyats say fifty-four kardah, which number may have been obtained by adding the ‘twenty-four particulars,’ mentioned in Chap. XX, 1, to the thirty fargârs stated here.

\(^4\) The patkâr-rad, or settler of disputes, appears to have held a position somewhere between an arbitrator and a judge, and which may be approximately defined as that of a magistrate.
mankind; and the progress of ruin and misery in the world is owing to unauthorisedly assaulting one another. 3. Advice to mankind about abstaining therefrom, with an estimate of an authorised assault, and, again, for a slight assault and no assault. 4. To stand magisterially, even opposed to the unmagisterial, with freedom from hurt and loss to oneself; and to abstain altogether, likewise, from the most innocuous (anakhrūgūnōtūm) assault even upon an unmagisterial person.

5. In all magisterial investigation (patkār-radūh) —of which, when the custom that exists is established judicially, the substance is two statements, which are verbal and demonstrable, that subsist in different combinations—there are four species: the verbal and demonstrable, the verbal which is not demonstrable, the demonstrable which is not verbal, and that which is neither verbal nor yet demonstrable. 6. In the arguments (sāmān) which are allotted as verbal are four species, the dispute having different arguments and different assertions which are for unmagisterial investigation, for one's own priestly authority (radō), for another good man—three of such being requisite¹—and also for other evidence². 7. And in those which are allotted as demonstrable are six species, and for an unmagisterial person the assertions, like the previous species which are on the same subject, are twelve³. 8. Of

¹ Evidently referring to arbitrators with an umpire.
² Reading hanō gōkāyīh, but hanō is an unusual form. Perhaps agōkāyīh, 'want of evidence,' would be more suitable to the context.
³ So the MS., but 'four' would suit the context better, and the two Pahlavi ciphers do not differ much in shape.
all unmagisterial proceedings—which, though it be a custom, is to proceed unauthorisedly—the species are five, which consist in having demonstrated, getting upon, striking, having caused a wound, and having slain.

9. Of those subject to the magistrate (paṭkār-radō-hōmōnd) the twelve species are divided into four sections of three each. 10. One section are the hearing who are seeing, they to whom a dispute which is verbal [is demonstrable; the hearing who are not seeing, they to whom a dispute which is verbal] is not demonstrable; and the seeing who are not hearing, they to whom even a dispute which is demonstrable is not verbal. 11. And with these three, who are in one section, there is magisterial investigation; and the magistrate, unless (bara hat) risk for the body be certain, is then irresistible; which is as though it be said that to restrain by

---

1 These five grades of unauthorised retribution are analogous to the five grades of personal outrage mentioned in Vend. IV, 17.

2 Pahl. zatam, 'a blow, assault, striking,' is used throughout, instead of zākhām (Pers. za'hm), which latter word does not occur in these two books of the Dīnkard, except in the form zakhām-hastānō in Bk. IX, Chap. VIII, 6. The Farhang-f Oīm-aēvak also uses zatām in the same sense, in its oldest MSS.; and Dd. V, 1 has zatam. Darmesteter suggests that zatam and zākhām are both traceable to an original zathma, or zathma.

3 The words in brackets are omitted by mistake in the MS.

4 The ambiguity, mentioned in the latter clause of this section, appears to lie in these words, which mean either 'but if' or 'only if.' Such ambiguity must have existed in the original Pahlavi text of the Nask, and probably indicates that the earlier part of this section is a summary of the Pahlavi version of the original Avesta text, while the latter part is a summary of the Pahlavi commentary upon that version. As the same ambiguity occurs, without comment, in § 12, where the meaning seems tolerably certain, it is doubtful if the commentator's opinion can be adopted.
wounding (rēsh) is not justifiable, but the decision therein is this, that, when they do not change through lawful litigation, and they cannot hold back without wounding, it is justifiable to keep them back even by wounding. 12. One section are the not hearing who are also not seeing, the women, and the children; and with these three, who are in one section, there is no magisterial investigation; and the decision as to the bodies thereof is this, that, unless risk for the body be certain from their complete change, they are then to be completely changed (barā vardisnō). 13. One section are the foreigner and him worthy of death, certain of thereby producing a sentence for being executed from the judges; also the highwayman, when he stays on the highway and his destruction is proclaimed, but it is not possible to effect it. 14. With these three, likewise, who are in one section, there is no magisterial investigation, but the decision about them is even this, that when one is utterly destroying their life, one is thereby possessing merit. 15. One section are they who are walking, or coming upon one, unseasonably, or retreating confused into a rugged place, and, when people ask them to speak, they are giving no answer, and they are not suspicious as foreigners. 16. With these three, likewise, who are in one section, there is no magisterial investigation, and the decision about them is this, that when one kills them outright, one does not become sinful thereby.

17. As to whatever is on the same subject it introduces many opinions, and also this, that a counter-assault (avâz-zatam) is that which becomes a blow and wound, and is to be so committed when it
is possible to produce them again exactly in every single particular.

CHAPTER XVII.

Nēkādām Nask.

1. The second section is the Zatamistān (‘assault code’), particulars about assault (zatam) and the annoyances (vēshīgānō) from assault, such as pain, blood, and unconsciousness; also the sin\(^1\) that a man may commit in a state of unconsciousness.

2. About the seven kinds of symptoms of unconsciousness, and separate decisions about assaults that adults may commit among those who are children; also as regards an assault which proceeds to pain and blood, and as regards that in which the duration of the disposition of wrath abates the pain and blood.

3. About begging (khvahīsno) and beneficence (hū-dahīsno)\(^2\), such as those of which one says in particular there are four species: when stinginess (pūstīh) benefits pride (pīkō), when pride benefits stinginess, when stinginess benefits stinginess, and when pride benefits pride; and there are three other species that originate from these last two, in consultation together, when stinginess and pride benefit stinginess and pride, when stinginess and pride benefit stinginess, and when stinginess and pride benefit pride, all which, together, constitute the seven primary species; many others, too, are traced back to these. 4. Also about seeing the depravity (khang

---

\(^1\) Involuntary violations of the ceremonial law.

\(^2\) The terms used in this section are not quite certain.
di'dānō) of a perverting member of the community (kastār dāhm) and of the perverter of a member of the community, and whatever is, on the same subject.

5. About a weapon seizable, and a weapon one brings, there is this, namely, what is the thing which is imperfect (anaspōrtk) as a weapon, what is that which is not, and what is that which is welcome as a weapon; what is that which, when any one forces it back at any one as a weapon, is itself something annoying to him; what is his natural annoyance and what his imparted; and the penalty in property and difference of sentence on a man who is carrying a weapon, due to any weapon he has to carry away.

6. About the six modes of engaging in conflict: through assault, tumult (khvāsīsnō)\(^1\), false teaching (mitōk-sāstō)\(^2\), giving no food (atapdādō)\(^3\), speaking with wizard’s spells\(^4\), and speaking with threats of danger\(^5\); and, where there is an engaging

\(^1\) Pers. ḥāsīs. Farh. Ofm, p. 34, ll. 6–8, has ‘Av. vālti=Pahl. khvāsīsnō is that when one runs behind any one for offensiveness.’

\(^2\) Farh. Ofm, p. 36, ll. 1–4, has ‘Av. mithōsāst and its explanation “false teaching” are that when one teaches a false way to any one; even when he unaccustomedly shows it rightly to any one, it is a committal of Mithōsāst by him.’

\(^3\) Compare Pers. tabah, tō, tōf. Farh. Ofm, p. 38, ll. 2–4, has ‘Atafddād is that when one keeps back food and drink, whereby there is hunger and thirst.’ It is worthy of death (see Chap. XX, 97).

\(^4\) Farh. Ofm, p. 34, ll. 3–5, has ‘Av. yātukhta, through wizard’s spells (yātūk-gōbiṣnīhā), is that when one shall speak thus: “I will destroy thee through witchcraft;” when one says “through the spirits’ lack of good religion” it is of the same kind.’

\(^5\) Farh. Ofm, p. 34, ll. 5, 6, has ‘Av. dudhuwi buzda, threats of danger (saham-numāyisnīh), is that when one speaks thus: “I will strike with worldly weapons.”'
in conflict, it then occurs when one has stood up for beginning it and the assault is committed, on one by the other, and not before. 7. And this, too, that engaging in conflict occurs as regards adult with adult, childless women with childless women, pregnant women with pregnant women, and children of seven years with children of seven years—but, as regards children of seven years in sight of their fathers, it becomes an engaging in conflict of the fathers—and the decision about it is this, that the atonement for every sin which may be committed through engaging in conflict goes to the priestly authorities.

8. About the affliction of a pure lord who sees any one who has been useless (a bûn) unto his slave, though the slave is beseeching, and does not contend for his ownership. 9. About sin affecting accusers not being atoned for by any other good work, except unto the accuser himself; also about the slaying of a servant together with his lord, and whatever is on the same subject.

10. About slaying by untaught children of seven years, or even of eight years in sight of their fathers; and the criminality of the fathers therein, when it is possible for them to hinder it and they do not hinder it, and when it is not possible for them to hinder it.

---

**Chapter XVIII.**

*Nîkâdâm Nask.*

1. The third section is the Râshistân (*wound code*), particulars about cutting, tearing, cleaving.

---

1 A sin which injures another person, or any good creation, who must be satisfied by compensation before the sin can be remitted.
disembowelling, stabbing, gnawing\(^1\), rupturing, hacking, mutilating, and withering\(^2\); such as are all called wounds. 2. The upheaving circular movement of a certain serpent-scourge\(^3\), the throwing down of the person, and the flow of blood from the bodies of the people.

3. How the various members are divided into seventy-six that are more particularly called principal, which are comprised in two classes; two of these, which are clothed and different, one from the other, are female, and some out of the surrounding parts (gîrvŏgānth), which are apart from eight of the principal, that are comprised in the members of the two classes and among those seventy-six—and which, in like manner, are different one from the other—are female, and are of different purpose and different design, one from the other.

4. These, too, namely, when any one, through an assault, produces, for any other, stupefaction, swelling, or leanness, blackness\(^4\), or paleness, shortness, or tallness, want of intelligence, much eating, little eating, or moderate eating, indolence, or diligence, or dulness of hearing; or he wishes to speak some words, and they strike him in return; or one altogether diminishes any one’s speech, sight, or hearing,

\(^1\) Or, perhaps, khvāyîsnō (compare Pers. ‘hāyîdan) may mean ‘biting.’

\(^2\) The last four terms are, in Pahlavi: skônisnô, khûrdô kardanô, tâshîdanô, and khûshînîdanô.

\(^3\) The mār-ganô (Av. kharfstraghna), we are told in Pahl. Vend. XVIII, 6, ‘may be made of anything, but a leathern one is good’ (see also Bd. XXVIII, 22). Intended as a snake-killer, it was misused as a scourge for human beings.

\(^4\) Assuming that vēsîh, ‘excess,’ is a miswriting of siyâhîh.
wisdom, strength, or semen, milk, or pregnancy; or when one destroys the spleen (ṣpur) or milk of females, or, in revenge (gifar), kills his son outright; or when they would inflict a wound upon a wound, and one’s blood goes streaming forth.

5. Also about an assault with one, two, or three weapons, or more, in conjunction; or they may commit it on the spot, or in confederacy, or as a first offence. 6. About the measure of a wound when a two-edged sword (dōbarakō) plunges down, the area (sarāf), walls, and surroundings, and the shape which is plunged; that which is hacked, or cleft, or mutilated, or a torrent of blood streaming; the affliction (vamang) of the furious serpent-scourge (mārvanō), and the length, glitter, and weight of the weapon.

7. The ritual for the departure of a wound and the departure of pain, watching over it for the duration of three nights or a year, its greater wretchedness or less wretchedness, its cure (spōrikīh) or incurableness, and whatever is on the same subject. 8. Trivial enumerations, and decisions upon each separately.

Chapter XIX.

Nīkādām Nask.

1. The fourth section, which is also called the law of the Hamēmālistān (‘accuser’s code’), contains particulars about accusation, and about the false

---

1 These three modes are expressed by Pāz. ithrih, hidlih, and apavarravartih, which stand evidently for the original Avesta words ithra, hadha, and apaurvavarta (see Chap. XXI, 6).
2 See §-2.
accusation by any one, regarding any other, as to witchcraft, destroying a righteous man, theft, plunder, injuring the existence, minor injury as regards several particular things, taking up a weapon, threatening with it, assault, tumult, incarcerating, false teaching, fettering, making dejected (nigūnō), giving no food, falsehood, speaking with wizard’s spells, or with threats of danger, abstracting

1 Pahl. aharūbōkīh (=Av. ashavagha) must not be confounded with aharūbōth, ‘righteousness,’ for which aharāyīth is more commonly used.

2 These two kinds of injury, usually written bāidōk-zēdō and kātyōk-gadō in the Dīnkard, are mentioned in Farh. Oīm, pp. 32, l. 8–34, l. 2, as follows:—‘Av. baodhagad = Pahl. bōdō-zēd and Av. baodhō-varstahē = Pahl. bōdōk-varst are as it were “observantly assaulted,” and one mentions them most about the assault and injury of anything which is noticeable. Through falsehood other noticeable sin is small, and is subdued through being devoid of an injurer, as the assault and injury of anything through wear is a small sin. Kātyōk-ged is a sin for mankind, which is a degree of Bōdōk-zēd, but less; so also the decree (das-tīnak) is different from Bōdōk-varst. The principal Bōdōk-zēd, that of animals with observance, the Bōdōk-zēd through wear, and the Kātyōk-zēd sin towards people are sins which are hamē-mālān (“affecting accusers”). The dissipating weapon for sin dissipates the sinfulness of the other sin, which is called rūbānīk (“affecting the soul”).

3 These two terms are āgēreptō and avōiristō (Av. āgeretem and avaoiristem) which are thus described in Farh. Oīm, p. 36, ll. 4–6: ‘āgērepti, “seized,” is that when they shall take up a weapon for smiting an innocent person; avōirist, “turning,” is that when one turns the weapon upon an innocent person.’

4 See Chap. XVII, 6, for some of these terms.

5 Pahl. handerētō which is thus described in Farh. Oīm, pp. 34, l. 8–35, l. 1: ‘Av. handereiti, Pahl. handeretō, is that when, owing to negligence, one keeps any one exhausted; when one would make him fallen who is of the ruined, or him who is a master of arms, and has imprisoned him, the causing of much anguish thereby is the committal of incarceration.’ See also § 44.
the increase of labourers' wages, wishing to cut (vurtdanö) and squeeze (pashkhabdanö) anything from any one, and seizing (magidanö) it for fire and water, and whatever is on the same subject. 2. Also about the limitation of the accusation of sin therein, the retribution for it, and the dust, or ashes, or flour, for the eyes and the rest of the bodies of human beings, it now\(^1\) speaks henceforth for thirty successive heads\(^2\).

3. About the sin of making people eat bodily refuse\(^3\), and bringing it unlawfully to their persons or clothes; and of going to a menstruous woman, or a wizard. 4. About a juvenile and well-behaved woman who comes out from a house of those of the good religion, and is considered as well taught. 5. About falsehood and slander, small and great, and whatever is on the same subject. 6. About the care of a pregnant woman in lawful reclining (khapsak), feasting (gashnö), and work.

7. About a householder who does not teach his own household, in order to teach the household of another; and whatever is on the same subject. 8. About a quiet and an unquiet person with equal opinionativeness, and the opinion which they have to form before beginning. 9. About the expediency or inexpediency of the opinion which is announced, and the reason of both. 10. About the man who, for fear of a counter-assault, runs away.

11. Also about not renouncing sin, neglecting complaints, and whatever is on the same subject.

---

\(^1\) Pâz. knûn (=knûn).

\(^2\) Of which the details are not mentioned.

\(^3\) Pahl. hîkhar (Av. hikhra) is any refuse or dirt from the living body, or any liquid exudation from a corpse.
12. The difference of sin in priests from that in any one else, as regards its renunciation. 13. About the expediency of retribution, and the measure of the expediency. 14. About and to what extent is the authority of one's own priestly master, for allowing the sin which any other person may commit as regards a disciple of that same, and that, too, of his disciple affecting the soul.

15. About the chastisement of a judge who is releasing sinners, and whatever is on the same subject. 16. About the justifiableness of a plaintiff in committing illegality. 17. About seizing the purity produced for foreigners, and whatever is on the same subject. 18. About one worthy of death making supplication (lāvakō), co-operation with one worthy of death, and whatever is on the same subject. 19. About confession as regards anything, the object of confession, and whatever is on the same subject. 20. About exhibiting a liking for sin worthy of death.

21. About a blow with a weapon, which is incomplete or not incomplete, when adults or children shall inflict it, or when children with mutual assistance. 22. About a wounded person whose anguish was allayed by medicine, the arising of the anguish again from disease, when he died, and whatever is on the same subject.

23. About taking security (garðbō) from the defendant after the decree of the judges. 24. About the legal proceedings as to an offence when, owing to the incapability of the plaintiff, adjournment has always occurred, and a man would occasion an acceleration of the statement of law (dâdō vâk) and of the procedure of the plaintiff. 25. About appointing
a mediator (dâdak-gôbô), and the object of mediation.

26. About an assault (zatam) which is altogether of furious (pûr-tûk) origin. 27. And about a harmless (âzad) assault and striking back fairly to test a weapon, and, when it is not possible fairly, turning it into execution of duty, or giving of scars (pisâng-das), or punishment; a statement of the change, and whatever is on the same subject. 28. About the limit of the punishment of a child for the sin it may commit. 29. About seeking an interpretation (pâdô-khân), the limit of interpreting, and whatever is on the same subject. 30. As regards a signal of approving the words of any one, on passing away, are these:—About giving up anything, making a will about it, and renunciation of sin.

31. About committing an assault upon an unknown person at an indefinite time, and whatever is on the same subject. 32. About giving a weapon and telling some one to kill a foreigner who is taken for judicial investigation, and whatever is on the same subject. 33. About the great hinderers\(^1\) who are slain by a righteous man, who the great hinderers are, and unto whom it occurs; when one has to command it as assistance for one or many, or they shall commit the assault in advance or afterwards, and whatever is on the same subject. 34. About the weapon they shall seize it is stated thus: 'I see a man and a sheep, I strike upon this and upon that, and it is gone:' and whatever is upon the same subject.

---

\(^1\) Doubtful: the word can be read frēh-gasîgân on its first occurrence, and frēh-gasîgânô on its last; but both reading and meaning are very uncertain.
35. About petitioning, and the going of a frontier governor (mar’espân) to the feet of tyrants (sâstârânô) to speak of regulations, and whatever is on the same subject. 36. Where and when one strikes a living person he vexes him, and the living person he strikes vexes him when dead; but he who strikes a dead person is vexed alive, and the dead person he strikes vexes him when dead; and whatever is on the same subject.

37. As to wood and useless pith (dîl), that which is for keeping is as far as a dimension that is mentioned, and one, therefore, passes it by not to burn; concerning also that wood which is only for the blast of a furnace (gûrîh zîgâ) as firewood, the burning and dimensions and blast of the furnace are stated, and whatever is on the same subject. 38. About the sin through which a man attains from atonement to the sacred-twig ordeal (baresmôk-vârîh), and from the sacred-twig ordeal to the heat ordeal (garemôk-vârîh) which has maintained the worthiness of an assault that is an actual inexcusability (akârîh)¹ to reasoning thought; and whatever is on the same subject.

39. About the excellence of physicians, their merit from doing good, and sin from not doing good; the quality that exists as regards medicines, seeking a physician for animals also, and whatever is on the same subject. 40. About a horse, which is new to the saddle (kôfak), being made tailless (kapûk) and not feeding (akhavânô), how it is done, the sin owing to doing it unlawfully and heedlessly, the

¹ It might be ‘inevitability,’ but this would render the ordeal unnecessary.
wound and damage that arise from it, and whatever is on the same subject.

41. About several persons, when anything that is imperfect, or even not imperfect, as a weapon is convenient to them, and a wound occurs, and it is not evident which, or who, threw the weapon, it is not necessary to know its imperfection or lack of imperfection\(^1\); and whatever is on the same subject. 42. About the three modes for thrusting a weapon are these details, that is, so much of it when one thrusts it on ground that is hard, or soft, or full of ruggednesses (\(\text{âkârigânakô}\)); when one shall bear it up aloft, and the amount of the height; and when one impels it again with a sweep, or has to draw up its centre at the time of a sweep; and whatever is on the same subject. 43. About an assault and the most hurtful occasion when, for the same reason, they would celebrate a religious rite; the retribution on the spot, and the sentence upon the fourth occasion\(^2\).

44. About incarcerating (handerêtô) in a frightful and inaccessible (avidarg) place, and among noxious creatures; the quantity of noxious creatures, and whatever is on the same subject. 45. About grasping the tail of an ox, or a horse, on which another sits, to hold it back, and whatever is on the same subject. 46. About threatening danger,

---

\(^1\) The fact of the wound being sufficient to prove the unlawfulness of using the weapon.

\(^2\) According to Vend. IV, 35, if a man wounds another so that the blood comes, and does this for the fourth time, he becomes an outcast and receives the maximum punishment. Also, when a person walks without the sacred girdle or shirt (Vend. XVIII, 59), it is at the fourth step that the demons possess him.
wizard's spells, and whatever is on the same subject.

47. About plaints as to the value of a lamb, or a sheep, or a beast of burden (stôr), or a human being (vîrôk); either when the plaintiffs are one, or two, or three, or four, or many; how one has to summon the defendant, and how much time there is.

48. About when the controversy (han-bêshinîlî) is as to theft (dûgô), and the confession as to plunder (avor); or the controversy is as to plunder, and the confession as to theft; and when the controversy is as to injuring the existence, and the confession as to minor injury; or the controversy is as to minor injury, and the confession as to injuring the existence; and when the controversy is as to theft and plunder, and the confession as to injuring the existence and minor injury; or the controversy is as to injuring the existence and minor injury, and the confession as to theft and plunder.

49. And when the controversy is about so much, and the confession about so much of a different kind; when the controversy is about so much, and the confession about more of a different kind; when the controversy is about so much, and the confession about less of a different kind; when the controversy is about so much, and the confession as to more of the same kind; and whatever is on the same subject.

1 See Chap. XVII, 6.
2 Pahl. Av. asperenô (=Pahl. anaspôrîk) 'imperfect, immature;' an epithet for a lamb or kid.
3 Pahl. anûmôyê (Av. anumaya), probably 'bleater;' an epithet for a sheep or goat.
4 These four grades of value are mentioned in Vend. IV, 48.
5 See § 1.
50. About the sin of unfriendliness of a master towards a disciple, and whatever is on the same subject. 51. About taking a thief of any one’s goods (āṣīgāṇā), conducting him to the judges, and whatever is on the same subject. 52. This, too, that when affliction has come upon a good man, the effort of every one, for removing that affliction, should continue just as though it happened to himself. 53. And when a good man is beaten through malice, the effort of every one, in demanding compensation for him from the smiter, should continue just as though it happened to himself. 54. And this, too, that, when there is no danger for one, the power of affording assistance is thus assistance of the innocent; and, as to the property which may be carried away from him, and of which they shall make no restitution, after as much as a Hāsār the carrier off becomes guilty and liable to penalty.

55. About the distinction of indigenous and foreign (āfr va-an-āfr) thieves as to cold and the clothing given, and as to sickness and undergoing remedies. 56. About the hands of a foreigner being unfettered for no other reason but care of water and fire, to

---

1 A Hāsār (Av. hāthra) is a measure of distance, as well as of time. This is stated in Farh. Oīm, pp. 41, l. 11-42, l. 3, thus:—

‘Of the Hāsār there are also several kinds that express measurement. A medium Hāsār on the ground, which they call also a Parasang, is a thousand steps of two feet which have to walk. With the lapse of time of a medium Hāsār the day and night are computed.’ Again, p. 43, ll. 1-3 state that ‘of twelve Hāsārs is the longest day; that day and night in which is the longest day are twelve of the longest Hāsārs, eighteen of the medium, and twenty-four of the least.’ From this it appears that an average Hāsār of distance is a thousand paces, or Roman mile; and an average Hāsār of time is one hour and twenty minutes.
preserve them from blood, filth, and injury (āsipō). 57. About the sin of not restraining him who is the first assailant of two combatants, as soon as his attack is seen. 58. About teaching the peace of renunciation of sin, the bond of worthiness of him of great power even when proffering union in renunciation with him of little power, and whatever is on the same subject.

59. On the nature of responding about the keeping away from one worthy of death which arises through great judiciousness, the reason of keeping, how to keep, and whatever is on the same subject. 60. And on the nature of responding when they ask in malice about a righteous man, when one knows his whereabouts, and when one does not know. 61. About how one is to give a weapon to generals (hēn-gō-pađānō) and august frontier governors.

62. About authorisedly shooting an arrow at one worthy of death, which is given again for killing him to any one unto whom the person worthy of death is consigned and becomes supplicating (lānakō) and goes to the middle of the distance, and they shall afford him assistance and enervate him for it, when, through the three words¹ which he utters, they do not deliver him up again. 63. About one worthy of death who is preserved with great judiciousness when the evidence, which they give before that about him, is through another one worthy of death, and whatever is on the same subject. 64. About evidence as to witchcraft and destroying a righteous man, that is, in what propor-

¹ Possibly hūmat, hūkht, hūvarst, ‘good thoughts, good words, and good deeds,’ which would be accepted as a sign of repentance.
tion it is certain or doubtful. 65. About causing the execution of one worthy of death for entertaining fondness for witchcraft and laughing at witchcraft, and whatever is on the same subject.

---

Chapter XX.

Nikādām Nask.

1. In the fifth section are twenty-four particulars about the standing up and going forth of a man with a weapon and angry thoughts towards another man; and also when he takes a beast of burden, saddles it, and sits upon it, takes the rein (ayōkham) in hand and walks away; this, too, that, when he arrives there, he smites that man, or some one else; and whatever is on the same subject. 2. About what one has to do when the conversation of two men is of the destruction of a righteous man, of highway robbery, and of the cursing owing thereto; and whatever is on the same subject. 3. About what one has to do when, of two men who are on the same road, one slays a righteous man; and about the other when he is fearless, and when he is fearful. 4. About preserving one worthy of death when it is requisite for medical purposes (bezashkīf), though the plaintiff is of a different opinion; and whatever is on the same subject.

5. About the needlessness of plaintiffs and defendants speaking as to the substance (min tanā) of

1 It is not clear whether these twenty-four particulars are to be sought in the details of §1, or in the whole chapter, or some portion of it.

2 Merely a guess.
the law, when the witness and judge is the supreme priest; the confidence which they may place in the decision of the supreme priest, due to his own knowledge and evidence, when, moreover, they have not to atone in the body; and the want of confidence in another judge when, moreover, they have to atone in the body, and the needfulness of plaintiffs and defendants speaking on the substance (val tanû) of the law, even when the judge is aware of the law. 6. About unauthorised combatants, become mutually sinful, when, to dissipate (ṣīkhtanō) a wound of the one, he would make the other one worthy of death. 7. About supplies (pīshōn)\(^1\) in travelling together, and their renewal; and whatever is on the same subject.

8. About inflicting penalties by magistrates, the assistance of the unmagisterial given to magistrates, the assistance of the magistrates, and the exemption of these latter from atonement to those former; likewise about conversation as to an assault, and whatever is on the same subject. 9. About the evasion of penalty by men at the time when a sin may be committed, and the arrest of their nearest relations being important, in whatever measure implicated therein and impossible to consider innocent; how to confine and make them really coerced to seek a remedy, and whatever is on the same subject. 10. About the powerfulness which comforts in sin where there is any special worthiness, and the reason

\(^1\) Compare Pers. bising, Av. fshaoni. In some cases it might perhaps be read pthreshō, and be traced to Av. pithwa. The word often occurs, as in § 11, Chaps. XXIII, 3, 15, XXVI, 10, XXVII, 4, 6, XXXI, 25, 36, XXXVII, 5, 7, 22, XLI, 19, 23, XLIII, 19, and its meaning, ‘provision, or nourishment,’ is well ascertained.
of any worthiness; the want of power where there is special unworthiness, and the reason of any unworthiness; the production of the good works of one towards another of the powerful, and of the sin of one of those lacking power; and whatever is on the same subject.

11. About the plaint which one has to argue, and for the defendant to dispute; the time for making the statement (gōbō) when the defendant does not come, or comes not to conduct the business; the several peculiarities of plaintiff and defendant, the time for conducting being on the day before yesterday, the firm one and the powerless, the incrimination therein, the death-blow on the exhaustion of the possessions of the plaintiff, and provisions for conducting the legal proceedings; a privileged wife\(^1\) shall be capable of making a plaint for her husband, and of informing the husband of the plaint; when her property is anything whatever, and nothing is manifest as to that wealth, she is to be admitted for evidence; and whatever is on the same subject.

12. About the ordeal of those who have atoned, of those undergoing the sacred-twig ordeal, and of those undergoing the heat ordeal, who are pure; the freedom from falsehood of which, each separately, which they, every one of them, request when the ordeal is not that for their own station, but that for the station of others; and whatever is on the same subject. 13. About the object of any evidence, and, on account of the reason of its propriety, the impropriety of any one being without evidence; and what-

---

\(^1\) One married to her husband with the parents' consent, and never betrothed to another, so that she and her children belong to him in both worlds (see Bd. XXXII, 6 n).
ever is on the same subject. 14. About the reality of a statement due to an ordeal, and so many having gone to the ordeal place for the sake of watching the first-comer and after-comer; the time of performance, the statement, the ceremonial and the invulnerableness due to it; the kinds of incrimination, how to protect the limbs by which the ordeal is accomplished, and each one of the formulas (nīrango) of protection; the superintendence for observing the ceremonial, and the decision about the acquitted or convicted one. 15. This, too, that is, whose going to the ordeal place is first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth; and by whom is the command to be given. 16. About the business of the ordeal attendants (vārauṣṭigānō). 17. About incrimination through confession, or some other reason, the reliance restored thereby, and whatever is on the same subject. 18. About a thief destroying life and escaping, the suspicion owing thereto, about any one, as to assisting the thief, and whatever is on the same subject. 19. About there being no ordeal for those confessing, and so also as regards those of good repute; accusation as to the existence of a limit to the good repute, even that which is for the extent of a Yūgyāst, a Dashmest, an Agoyōst, a Tākar, and a Hāsār1 at the least.

1 The relative lengths of these five measures of distance are stated in Farh. Ofm, p. 41, lls. 9–11, as follows:—‘So much as two Dashmēst (Av. dakhshmaiti) is as much as a Yūgyast (Av. yugyasti); so much as two Agoyōhast is as much as a Dashmēst; so much as two Tākar is as much as an Agoyōhast; and so much as two Hāsār (Av. hāthra) is as much as a Tākar (Av. takara).’ As the average Hāsār is a Roman mile (see Chap. XIX, 54 n), the Tākar (‘run?’) is two, the Agoyōst or Agoyōhast (‘cattle-run?’).
20. About litigation as to a costly article, when a witness of its possession by the one party is combined with non-possession by the other one with no witness, or with its possession by the other one with a single witness; or the witness of one is with the sacred beings, and its possession by the other one is likewise not manifest; when both parties are related (khidyahik), or both are unrelated (anazdithik); and what kind of possession they say is most real.

21. About annulling the decision of a judge, and the time it is done at the court of a chief judge, and also owing to an ordeal for certainty; and whatever is on the same subject. 22. About the litigation of three persons as to property it is declared, so much is given to one on the day Aûharmasad to the day Vohûman, to another one on the day Ardavahist, and possession is not made over to the third one at all.

23. About selling property which is not one’s own, and whatever is on the same subject. 24. About controversy as to anything which ought not to occur.

25. About any essential dispute that any one has, when agreeing thus: ‘I do not have it as my own, but owing to the other person;’ and whatever is on the same subject. 26. About the litigation of an Irânian with a foreigner, or with foreigners, of a

Av. gaoyaoiti?) is four, the Dashmêst (‘distance-mark?’) is eight, and the Yûgyûst (‘stage?’) is sixteen miles. This series of distances is analogous to the Sanskrit series, but more elaborate; the Hûsar is best compared with the Krosa as the commonest unit of moderate distance, though less than half its usual length; the Agoyôst is nearly the same as the Gavyûta; and the Yûgyûst is analogous to the Yogana, though nearly double its length.

1 That is, on the first or second day of the Parsi month; and to the other on the third day.
foreigner with an Irânian, or a slave with a man of the country, as to a costly article; and whatever is on the same subject.  27. About a much-clamouring plaintiff having summoned defendants to the judges regarding a decision, and about the perverted wordiness and mixed verbiage in the legal proceedings; and whatever is on the same subject.

28. About the time for a high-priest of property and possessions, what is the specific necessity for a high-priest, and whatever is on the same subject.

29. About the fitness of a woman for evidence and judgeship when guardian over herself, and the unfitness of a privileged wife who is a foreigner and worthy of death for only a single offence, even with the authority of her husband; and whatever is on the same subject.

30. About the owner of a pledge not depositing the pledge beforehand, and whatever is on the same subject.

31. About giving up the property of partners, and whatever is on the same subject.

32. About the property that any one possesses, and is without any witness as to his ownership and possession of it.

33. About the ordeal of excessive eating (pâûrû-khûrânû) for escaping distress (mûst-kar'zîh) by plaintiffs and defendants before driving each other into legal proceedings, and whatever is on the same subject.

34. About the legal proceedings as to a female they steal from some one, and she becomes a suppliant of a thief; some one takes her by sequestration (hâkidâkîh)3, and they steal her also from him;

---

1 See § 11 n.
2 A slave no doubt.
3 This is the technical term for legal seizure, or sequestration (see Chap. XXXIX).
the original possessor (bûn) sees his own, not knowing she is back alive, when they become disputing about her; and whatever is on the same subject. 35. About property which is in the possession of any one, when some one gives it up to some one else in his sight, and he does not dispute it. 36. About a master teaching a disciple not to go back to legal proceedings, and whatever is on the same subject. 37. About controversy, with any one, as to special property in righteous gifts, and whatever is on the same subject.

38. About legal proceedings in which one accomplishes an ordeal three times, and it comes off in one way; and whatever is on the same subject. 39. About the existence of the many kinds of speaking with wizard’s spells, and those with threats of danger; and about the usage in witchcraft as to the moderate and justifiable production of mutual afflictiveness thereby. 40. About which is the ordeal for one worthy of death, the greatness and littleness of an ordeal, and also this, that is, which are the blessed among twenty of those undergoing ordeals. 41. About the proportion of firewood, and from which tree it ought to be good; and again, too, the several appliances and formulas that are necessary in accomplishing the ordeal. 42. And this, too, that when the man is aware of his own truth, even though he be aware of it, the fire speaks in the words of men thus: ‘Walk not on to me! for I chastise during one’s progress.’ 43. About one still mediating in legal proceedings as to a thief who has acted faithfully about quitting confinement and fetters to

1 See Chap. XVII, 6.
cause a ceremonial, and whatever is on the same subject.

44. About the wealth of a priest who is not keeping his property in edifices (a uzdesikth) or domains (matâ), but goes on with his occupation; and when he passes away, to whom and how it has to come. 45. About litigation as to property from the residuary wealth of fathers, about keeping it together (vâham-dâr), and whatever is on the same subject.

46. About the amount of retribution, in confinement, fettering, and punishment, for a lamb, or a beast of burden, which is stolen; and whatever is on the same subject. 47. About a defendant regarding whom three plaintiffs complain, all three as comrades, one as to a lamb, one as to a sheep, and one as to a beast of burden; and whose answer is first given. 48. About the litigation of three persons as to a costly article which remains apart from them, he who deposited it being a strong person, and the ownership of not even one of them being certain. 49. About the coming of retribution to three persons who, all three as comrades, have stolen a lamb from one, a sheep from another one, and a beast of burden from a third one.

50. About the reason of the justifiableness, and that also of the unjustifiableness, of confining a fellow-countryman for his own theft, and whatever is on the same subject. 51. About the extent of continuance in hearing a defendant, and this, too, as to a plaintiff; also about the time appointed for speaking, and its extent. 52. And about this,

---

1 Or it may be ‘to provide supplies.’
2 See Chap. XIX, 47.
namely, when any one has made an accusation about any other, and goes back at the time appointed, and, before a reply is given, he shall make out another accusation about the same man, to which of the two accusations a reply is to be first given. 53. About the reason of the hardship of legal proceedings; about what man it is whose statement is second, third, fourth, and last in conducting legal proceedings; and about the twenty-two stratagems in conducting legal proceedings.

54. About the cancelling (pâdyârânîth) of an ordeal, even that which is accomplished with three selected witnesses. 55. About the season of the hot ordeal, and also that of the cold; and whatever is on the same subject. 56. About one, in a procedure, demanding an ordeal, the other one having appointed the time for the supreme priest, and whatever is on the same subject. 57. About the benediction of the supreme priest on making, or changing, a decision; also this, namely, which are the blessings for changing, through their nature, a decision which is made.

58. About evidence of walking upon a water-skin (khîk) and putting something inside it, of assault and wounds, of wealth which they squander (nîkizend) and a righteous gift, of a damaged and sequestrated thing; and of rubbing up (pâdô-mâlîsnô) and buying it strengthened¹, and at a price. 59. On litigation about the ownership of a wife, cattle, trees, and land; and whatever is on the same subject. 60. About the certainty of the statement of several leaders of an affair, as to that on which their affair

¹ Pâz. aôganghen for Av. aoganghem=aoganghem (see also Chap. XLI, 17, 18).
depends, and of the supreme priest, or three witnesses, in every legal proceeding. 61. About incrimination (ařikhtakih) of several kinds as to statements in legal proceedings, and whatever is on the same subject. 62. About the modes of action for eradicating the deceptions (frévōánō-fítār) of apostates, and whatever is on the same subject.

63. About cases where the virtuousness of the thoughts, words, and deeds of mankind is all derived from the virtuousness of the beneficent spirit, and mankind themselves shall render it their own, and, in that way, its reward reaches them; and their viciousness is all derived from the viciousness of the evil spirit, and mankind themselves shall render it their own, and, in that way, its bridge penalty\(^1\) reaches them.

64. About the injuriousness due to unrenounced sinfulness, that is, what is injured by the first, second, third, fourth, or fifth unrenounced Aredūs sin\(^2\). 65. About where and which is the speaking with threats of danger\(^3\), and which is the taking up of a weapon (āģēreptō), not the turning it down, that becomes a Tanāpūhar sin\(^4\); also the sin which is owing to such sin.

---

\(^1\) The decision announced at the Kīnvad bridge (see Chap. XIV, 8), as to the fate of the soul until the renovation of the universe, after the account of its good works and sins has been accurately balanced.

\(^2\) Farh. Ofm, p. 36, ll. 6, 7, has 'when through sinfulness one lays a weapon upon a sinner, the name is Aredūs.'

\(^3\) See Chaps. XVII, 6, XIX, 1.

\(^4\) Whereby a person becomes an outcast and worthy of death. According to Vend. IV, 67–72, 75–78, 81–84, this occurs on the eighth committal of an Āģēreptō, on the seventh of an Avōfristō, and on the sixth of an Aredūs; or on the first committal of any of the three, if the criminal refuses to atone for it.
66. About *the case* where one has to atone, and who does it; he who undergoes the sacred-twig ordeal has atoned best; and which is the least heat ordeal. 67. About two men having seized property together, and having together, at the time, demanded a judge and ordeal about it; and when one seizes the property some time earlier, and the other one demands the judge and ordeal earlier; and whatever is on the same subject. 68. About some one carrying off the property of a person from the custody of another person in sight of the same, and he who kept it before is, within a Hausar, a witness before the judge as to *its* custody or possession; and also when the witness of it has not come within the Hâsar; and whatever is on the same subject.

69. About *cases* where the decision of the judge is to be made from the Avesta and Zand, or from the common consent of the good, and whatever is on the same subject. 70. About the justifiable selling of a man, a sheep, or a beast of burden, as free from defect when its defect is not obvious; also about the symptoms of their defects. 71. About the case where and how far a decision, about which one is in dispute, is a solitary statement, or more.

72. About the object of the appointment of a judge, the eminence of an appointed judge, and whatever is on the same subject. 73. About the reasonableness of the severity and want of severity

---

1 Eighty minutes on the average (see Chap. XIX, 54 n), but varying from one hour to two, according to the duration of daylight.
2 That is, from the scriptural law and its commentary.
3 That is, according to precedents recorded by the priesthood.
of judges. 74. And this, too, that the judgeship is
to be given to him who is acquainted with the law
(ākāṅs-dāḍ)\(^1\); and the object of acquaintance with the
law. 75. About the case where there are a supreme
judge of the law, a plaint, a defence, an arrangement
of legal proceedings, and an award; and through
what sin it becomes injustice. 76. And this, too,
that the justice of him who may therein commit
falsehood, as regards so many essential decisions, is
injustice.

77. About the many who may seize wealth, which
is the property of some one, with their own hands;
and, when they litigate about it, he says it is his
own property, whereby they are convicted. 78.
About incrimination of five kinds as to whatever
property is on the spot, or at a distance (pavan
hāsar); and whatever is on the same subject. 79.
About putting apart, keeping apart\(^2\), and two apart
before being put away; also about litigation as to
keeping apart, and whatever is on the same subject.
80. And when some one has to deliver property
which is a person’s own to some one else, in the

\(^1\) This term is explained in an extract from some Nask (com-
pare Chap. XLIII, 9) quoted in Farh. Oim, pp. 17, l. 9–18, l. 5, as
follows:—‘Av. kō asti dkaēṣhō viviṣṭātō, which is the judge
who is acquainted with the law? Av. yō aēta pairī arethra
frāzanaiti, he who thoroughly understands the adjudication
from the statements [even though he does not easily understand many of
the statements, and though it be not easy as regards the statements
which are not numerous, is an official who is acquainted with the
law (kaṛdār-ī ākāṅs-dāḍ); and he who does not thoroughly under-
stand the adjudication from the statements, even though the state-
ments are not numerous, and it be not easy for him as regards
them, is to be still considered as unacquainted with the law
(ānākāṅs-dāḍ)].’

\(^2\) Compare § 115.
sight of him whose own it is, and he who is seizing upon it disputes about it as his own property; and whatever is on the same subject.

81. About disputing the debts of fathers when one of their associates is confessing them, and the rest have come, and it is possible for them to dispute them, but they do not dispute. 82. And about the progress of a dispute of one of the associates as to the whole debt of one's fathers. 83. About the possibility of children being worthy of death, for wizard's spells, when with their guardian; and of a woman being so when guardian of herself. 84. About a case where the amount of a lamb (mīdat-i asperenô) is the lowest, and the amount of a human being (vīrōk mozd) is the highest¹. 85. About theft and plunder as regards one's own property, when one brings it away from the possession of some one without dispute. 86. About the triumph of him who, falsely investigating, may act judicially by illegally-issued incentives, when he institutes legal proceedings for the sake of appearances²; as distinguished from him who is truly seeking and truly investigating.

87. About the statements of a litigation of man and wife, which is justifiably brought on³. 88. And also this, namely, when she sees herself injured, or defence is possible by means of that which

¹ The minimum and maximum grades of value mentioned in Chap. XIX, 47. Here it is evident that mīdat and mozd are synonyms, the former being, no doubt, the Zvāris, or Semitic, equivalent of the latter, compare Chald. ܢܐ.ܢܢ.
² Pahl. khâkûnîhâ, literally 'through making a dust.'
³ Or it may be 'of a man and a woman who is domineeringly plundered.'

[37]
is discharged by two fingers, it is justifiable when they shall institute no litigation but seizing. 89. About the person who has become privileged to give away a daughter to a husband, her father having passed away. 90. About the sin of making a damsel (kanık) weary of her husband. 91. About the sin as regards property in this action, either produced where the action for this purpose is really devoid of illiberality (adhishnīth), or to commit in order that they shall give me a wife even when they do not give her on that account. 92. About the sin of giving a girl (kanık) for a girl, or other living thing, or of speaking thus: 'Do thou go in unto my sister, or daughter, while I, too, will go in unto thine.' 93. And the sin as regards the person of my wife, too, which is owing to that sin. 94. About one obtaining back the value which he gives away for a girl, when the girl is not that value in wedlock. 95. About a girl who, after fifteen years of age, is not given to a husband; and her father, to satisfy her menstrual excitement (dashtān-mēyah vīgārdanō), and to sustain it, becomes sinful and harbours a paramour; and whatever is on the same subject.

96. About having given food, and anything except a wife, to any one who praises the Mazda-worshippers' religion of another, even though it be through fear; also this, that it is only he, when he has thereby become quite of the same tenets with the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, to whom the gift of a wife worthy of a man (vīr māsāf) is then to be pre-

1 That is, in some very easy way. The intention was probably to discourage petty disputes between man and wife, by not interfering with the stronger party when aggrieved.
sented. 97. About committing the sin of giving no food\(^1\), which is one of those worthy of death. 98. About the duty imposed of chastising a wizard for the Tanâpôhar sin\(^2\) of assisting a demon\(^3\), so that one's duty is manifold, and to be accomplished during several years.

99. About the day and night which are longest, medium, and shortest; that is, how many Hâsars\(^4\) they are, each separately; and, as to their occurrence, in what control is the appointed time which is really theirs, each one, as to period. 100. About the Parasang\(^5\) which is the longest, medium, and shortest; and whatever is owing to their subdivision.

101. About the work and fodder (vâsân)\(^6\) of an injured beast of burden, by day and night. 102. About a sheep which kills a person, and whether its owner be innocent, or sinful, through not putting a tether (band) upon it; and the reason of the sinfulness and innocence therein. 103. About the period that extends from certainty to dubiousness, even though it be for the supreme priest, or one provides three witnesses; and how long it is. 104. About the multitude of witnesses who give no evidence, together with the judge who is unjustly deciding.

105. About the injuriousness (azârîkîth), for the

---

\(^1\) See Chap. XVII, 6.
\(^2\) See § 65.
\(^3\) Reading dêv-vîgîn which is miswritten ḫê ḫê.
\(^4\) See Chap. XIX, 54 n.
\(^5\) A distance of four Hâsars (Bd. XVI, 7), or as far as a far-seeing man can distinguish a black ox from a white one (Bd. XXVI, 2). It is usually from 3\(\frac{1}{2}\) to 4 English miles, but in Pahlavi texts it often stands for a Hâsar, or Roman mile, both being measures for long distances.
\(^6\) Or 'rations' (vâyagân).
priestly authorities, of anything that is given to the unworthy. 106. About what kind of gift, that is given, was accepted; that is, how, when given by one when another claims it, it returns to him; how, and in what proportion, when the other does not claim it, its expediency does not arise; and whatever is on the same subject. 107. About a case where there is property of several kinds which a man has given away as a righteous gift, and it is allowable. 108. About the case where whatever is given and reaches some one, when he gives it and does not say how it was given, it becomes a righteous gift. 109. And about its not having become a gift, through fear of whatever is its danger.

110. About the theft and extortion of him who does not maintain the wives and children of persons in his control, to preserve and nourish them, through fear. 111. About the allotment of punishment for the limbs of sinners, and upon which limbs is the allotment. 112. About the atonement for sin where it is most irksome. 113. About the amount of retribution for an assault (zatam) which may be committed upon one worthy of death who is preserved through great judiciousness.

114. About Aūharmæzd having given all prosperity to Zaratūst and the disciples of Zaratūst; the theft and extortion which have arisen in a man when he has not given to a worthy person any of the prosperity that has befallen him; and whatever is on the same subject. 115. About how an animate being is situated who is in a place apart (aham), and when he dies in innocence and keeping apart, his

1 Compare § 79.
CHAPTER XX, 106-122. 69

wound being also through duty; and whatever is on the same subject. 116. About the advantage and pleasure of keeping a promise (mitro-dârth), and the gravity, harm, and vexation owing to various degrees of promise-breaking (mitrâk-drûgîth); also how a promise is kept. 117. About the grievous sinfulness of strife, insincerity (avâkhîth), and slander, and the harm that proceeds therefrom; also the frost (pazd) and punishment provided for them 1, and whatever is on the same subject.

118. About having given frontier people 2 as hostages (garôbô) to foreigners who have demanded a ransom (navisnô). 119. About taking up (lâlâ gêrefstanô) anything whatever that is precious to a foreigner, and has become of exceeding value, when they give it up as a ransom 3 to Irân; the extreme value of a youth (tigîl) when they shall carry him off as a hostage from the foreigners, in place of ransom; and how they are to keep both. 120. About the grievous sinfulness of a man stealing back his ransom from foreigners, though it be his own son. 121. About the sinfulness of the governor (sardâr) of a province through any harm that occurs in the province owing to his elevation and evil commands.

122. About the existence of so many thieves assisting a thief with special ransom, and what kind of reward (navisnô) one is to use with thieves, to

---

1 In hell (compare AV. XL, γ).
2 Pahl. mar'sânân, which might be supposed to be a defective writing of margar'gânân, 'those worthy of death' (the two letters equivalent to rga being omitted), but see Chap. XXI, 13.
3 The MS. pâk is evidently a defective writing for navâk which is written correctly in the next clause of this section.
deceive with great judiciousness. 123. About attaching to the neck of a thief the thing which was stolen by him, for his personal identification, and conducting him to the judges. 124. About the non-atonement of thieves, by any amount of anything whatever, without confession as regards their own sin. 125. About the assistance to possession which is claimed by any one from the authorities (padân), when his property is stolen or extorted.

126. About the grievous sinfulness and deceitfulness of many kinds which occur when a woman who is given away with her concurrence, and her acceptance is announced, is given to another man; and whatever is on the same subject. 127. About the unjustifiableness of the wisdom of a man, through which he took away property in dispute, from him who was ignorant, before there was certainty about it. 128. About making intercession in a dispute, for him who is ignorant, with the judge and other authorities and chiefs, even including the king of kings¹, when there is no intercessor for him. 129. About the reason of the fitness of a man for sovereignty, and the lodgment of Aûharmazd upon the limited (tang) person of him who is a good ruler.

130. About the five special ordinances (dâdistân) that are certain; these are without ordeal, because they are to be considered as certain, and the penalties thereof are to be fully inflicted. 131. About investigation after confession. 132. About squandering (nikizand) wealth of which the custom (dastôbar) of maintaining is begging for it. 133. About the progress (sakîsnô) of legal proceedings not having

¹ The Persian monarch.
occurred, which is not demanded on account of the existence of want of power, and the number of kinds of that want of power. 134. About a woman without a guardian, when she takes a paramour, and whatever is on the same subject.

135. About bringing a written statement into judicial proceedings, and whatever is on the same subject. 136. About the sin of frightening any one from his place, when he shall move on account of that fright, and the amount of movement and harm which will come upon him therefrom. 137. The delivery back of that which is extorted from one’s hands or keeping; that is, how it is to be considered as delivered.

138. About the obviousness of a minor adjudication from that which is greater. 139. About the extreme benefit and peace, even in this world, through a wife and children and grandchildren, and also the prosperity, as regards produce and even wealth thereby, taking away the disputes that arise. 140. About the grievous sinfulness of wealth acquired through unnatural intercourse¹, the annihilation of the spiritual faculties (maɪnōgānō). 141. About a decree in which the decision is of three descriptions, about three persons. 142. About a tree which, when stolen away, is the death-blow (māt) of a hundred pure birds (vāē), and a thousand birds arise.

143. About a sin which, owing to deceiving previously, has to increase (frāz mastanō) its extent, and to fully taste the extremest crime of a dagger

¹ Vāmḵūnīh, compare Pers. bāmūn. It cannot be ‘making loans, or money-lending,’ because that would be spelt āvām-kūnīh.
(dahrakô) of several of the smallest finger-breadths. 144. About the sin of defiling four-footed females. 145. About keeping back one of the combatants from fighting, and whatever is on the same subject. 146. About counter-assaults of eight kinds, assault when an infidel shall commit it upon one of the good religion, and whatever is on the same subject. 147. About a counter-assault of a heretic (dûs-dênomô) when an arch-heretic (sarîtar-dênomô) is slain.

148. About not leaving any property in the keeping of one worthy of death. 149. About such numbers of abettors of sin being with the sinner, and whatever is on the same subjects. 150. About the injury of a plaint and defence, and the dwelling, property, and feast of the good, by that person who extols the presidentship which is given him, but who is not fit for the presidentship. 151. About the sinfulness of a judge when he shall make a decision for any one according to his origin. 152. About the grievous sinfulness of delivering the person of an Iranian to a foreigner, and whatever is on the same subject.

153. About the greatness of the gift of a righteous man, as compared with (min) the gift of another, for Rashnu 1, the just, to proclaim among the creatures and to accept. 154. This, too, that, when they encounter an apostate and it is necessary to hold a controversy, though there be danger for the hands or feet, or though even for the head, there is to be no refraining from asserting that which is true.

---

1 The angel of justice who weighs the good works of the departed soul against its sins, in order to decide its fate till the end of time.
155. This, too, that he who does not assert, on account of fondness for wealth, or dislike for his own people, vexes water and fire and the righteous man, and disturbs even the reposing archangels from their thrones.

156. About the grievous sinfulness of making the righteous dissevered (aūskāftakō). 157. About the bad properties produced by the evil spirit, adjudication attentive to lying evidence and false, in opposition to Rashnû, the just, and through discontent at the advantage due to Rashnû, owing to the impossibility of the occurrence of those mischiefs being produced at Rashnû’s judgment seat, there where they do not give decisions for the wretched for the sake of the aristocratic multitude (āṣād hāvandīh rāl). 158. And about the aristocratic multitude which comes to Rashnû owing to taking bribes, and went with a complaint to Aūharmazd, and whatever is on the same subject. 159. About a just judge who is appointed one of an assembly for the opposition of thieves, oppressors, and destroyers of the righteous.

160. About the possibility of the coming of every one, through diligence, to the best existence. 161. About the superiority (masīh) of true justice over (min) other good works, and the grievous sinfulness owing to false justice, and when they shall not deliver a sentence with a full understanding of the true from the false.

162. About solemnizing and learning by heart (narm kardanō) the Gâthas, the Hâdokht\(^1\), and

\(^{1}\) Here written Hâdōtiō; the name of the twentieth Nask (see Chap. XLV).
the Vastag, through knowing the foundations (pâyakân) thereof; the sin owing to not knowing them, and whatever proceeds therefrom. 163. About the greatness of the law through decrees and judgments from other discourses (srôbân).

164. About property of seven kinds, of which one says that it is not allowable to take it as security for other property. 165. About ten friends with different assertions on the same subject.

166. And about the apportionment of this discourse there are complete decisions of several other kinds, and into those, too, it advances and thereby introduces much adjudication which takes heed, in every one, of words and deeds of many kinds, and is specifically and also intelligibly apportioned.

167. Perfect excellence is righteousness.

Chapter XXI.

1. The first of eighteen sections of the Ganabâsar-nîgâd contains particulars about the thief, with his arrest as the special thief of that which is seized (tereftô) by him; the premeditated sin, the imprisonment and fettering, the punishment appointed for atonement of the sin, the execution of the duty,

---

1 The name of the eleventh Nask (see Chap. XII).
2 Corresponding to the sixteenth word, ahurâî, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the eighteenth Nask in other Rivâyats. Ganabâ-sar-nîgâd means 'the thief's head downstricken'; but it is misread Dwâsrûgâd, Dwâsrûngâd, Dwâsrûgîd, or Dwâsrôb, in the Rivâyats, which also state that it contained sixty-five kardah, or subdivisions, which agree with the numbers of sections mentioned in Chaps. XXI, XXIII, XXIV. This Nask is evidently named from the contents of its first section, and possibly from its initial words.
and the amount of the reward (na\textit{vis}n); the amount of speciality in the ransom (na\textit{vák}k) of every one, each separately; the act \textit{and} place of punishment, what is the person who is strangling and the mode, how those who are therein strangling are drawn forth (na\textit{z}t\textit{-a}lt\textit{ō}) successively, \textit{and} which is set to work first.

2. About a person whose offending limbs \textit{are} bound, the degree of tightness of the binding and fettering, and the formula (\textit{v}r\textit{a}ng) of \textit{being} bound for the sin of theft. 3. About imprisonment, and the imprisonment which accusers \textit{have} to provide, \textit{at} their own expense, \textit{if} they are those who are privileged; and whatever is on the same subject. 4. The number of places for fetters, and those which the thief, whoever \textit{he is}, possesses, each separately. 5. How far, how, \textit{and} for what putting on of fetters (ga\textit{rov-d}a\textit{hi}r\textit{ni}h) those accusers \textit{have} to provide a thief's fetters, too, \textit{at} their own expense, \textit{if} they are those who are privileged; the place for the requisite privileged putting on of fetters, the sin owing to putting on more fetters of a different kind, and that which is owing to neglecting the putting on of the fetters which \textit{they have} to provide; the limit as regards the deserving of more fettering, the number of grades of theft beyond the limit of deserving fettering, and those which are below the limit of deserving fettering.

6. About the kinds of theft, and the excessive sinfulness of a thief through cutting\textsuperscript{1} and wounding the body; the undiscoverableness which is specially as regards a thief at a distance (pavan h\textit{ā}sr), he

\textsuperscript{1} Assuming that g\textit{ū}dan\textit{ō} stands for kh\textit{ū}dan\textit{ō}.
who is on the spot being he who is within one step; theft, with plunder, injuring the existence, minor injury, and other sins, may be in confederacy before-hand or afterwards. 7. About the thievish design of a theft which is not abetted (lâ ham), a theft with equal shares, and a theft with different shares.

8. About the sin of assisting a thief (dûg aliyārak), of making investigation and releasing, of a sentence of acquittal, and of a listener to a thief; he who is a giver of assistance to a thief is carried off for theft; also decisions about theft by a child, by a childless woman, and by her who is pregnant; likewise their maintenance and earnings (vindisnô) in retributive work, and the work of a pregnant thief.

9. About the accumulated property of the innumerable which they would keep away from thieves, both the thief by means of his hands, and him who is a thief not by means of his hands. 10. About the testimony of a thief, that is, for what it is admissible when he advances as a thief; how at the time when it is necessary to seize and bind him, and how at the time when it is necessary to flatter (nivâkh tanô) and deceive him until one attains to absolute power (kâm-kârīf) thereby. 11. About rewards (navisnô) with thieves. 12. About the difference of theft from plunder.

13. About property which any one, carrying it off,

1 See Chap. XIX, 1.
2 Pâz hidhih, probably for a Pahl. adjective hadak from Av. hadha, and referring to accomplices before and after the fact (see Chap. XVIII, 5).
3 Assuming that màn stands for mât, their Irânian equivalents being nearly alike, and the latter word being used in the succeeding clauses.
has to bring back to its owners; such as that which the frontier people may take away from foreigners, that which the judge may take away from thieves, and the share which he may take away from any one not interfering with thieves. 14. And about protectors and defenders of a thief, and also many other legal decisions as regards theft.

Chapter XXII.

Ganabâ-sar-nigâd Nask.

1. The second section is miscellaneous (ham-dâdakō): about the authority for the enquiry (khvâst-radakîth) of a father into the sin of a grown-up son, when unaware of the sin of his son at the time it is committed; that of a son into that of a father, and of others grown-up, as to one another, when they are not abettors of the sin; and that of a husband into the sin of a wife, when not and when co-operating and unrestraining. 2. About arrival at the period for the teaching of children by a guardian or father, and the mode of his teaching; the period at which the sin of a child has reached a beginning, the extent of the sin of childhood, the retribution in childhood, and that also at maturity; the sin due to not teaching a child who is to be taught, and whatever is on the same subject.

3. About the freedom from slaughter which is to

---

1 Av. asterethwân. The share being a bribe for purchasing non-interference. In each case the property is to be restored to its original owner who had been robbed by the foreigners or thieves.

2 Perhaps the repetition of the word amat, 'and when' is a blunder of the copyist.
keep away the destruction of the world; and what is the mode of distributing the property of a man of the valiant after his slaughter. 4. About the sin of having given implements of slaughter to a woman, a child, or a foreigner. 5. About a woman who, as regards two men worthy of death, demands the head of the one, and is seeking a son in the other one.

6. About a warrior, without provisions (atûsakô), who, on the march, has come upon pasture, corn, and sheep whose shepherd is a stranger to him, and whatever is on the same subject. 7. About considering property inexpedient, and the decision thereon.

8. About the amount of delay of a judge on becoming aware that the plaintiff is falsely petitioning and the defendant is falsely confessing. 9. About the amount of delay of the judge, and in the court of justice (dâd gâs); and whatever is on the same

---

1 The Pahlavi word is written 𐭫𐭪𐭬 twenty-four times, and 𐭫𐭫𐭬 once, in this Book, but its reading is not quite certain. It means ‘shepherd’ throughout Chaps. XXIII, XXXIX, and in XXXI, 17, 31, XL, 3; but is used for ‘herdsman’ in XXXIX, 3, and for ‘follower’ in XXXI, 2. This last meaning is strongly in favour of the reading pasîg, for pasîk, ‘following,’ an adjectival form derived from pas, ‘after,’ which, when used as a noun, would imply ‘one who follows,’ as drovers and shepherds are accustomed to do, with a few local exceptions. The Pahlavi spelling of the word is uniformly inconsistent with the reading pâs, ‘guard, protector;’ and it seems hazardous to trace it to a possible Avesta adjective pasvya, from pasu, ‘a sheep,’ because the latter word becomes pâh in Pahlavi. The word also occurs in Pahl. Vend. XV, 116; it is a transcript of Av. fšhenghî and fšhenghyô in Yas, XXXI, 10b, XLIX, 9a, and of fšhê in Vend. XIII, 10, 11; so that it may perhaps be read fšheg, or fšhê, as a mere transcript from the Avesta.
subject. 10. About a decision regarding a judge who explained a doubtful opinion as a certainty, and that which is certain as a doubtful decision, and would make an undecided matter decided. 11. About the opinion as to certainty and that as to doubtfulness, making a decision, and whatever is on the same subject.

12. About the business of commissioned judges, from him who is lowest to him who is highest, one above the other one. 13. Decisions about adjudication; that which is legal when two judges are together, that which is legal with either one judge or two judges together, and whatever is on the same subject. 14. About the statements of a decision regarding interpretations (pādō-khānānō)¹, and whatever is on the same subject. 15. About the proportion of the time of judges for decision, that for summoning witnesses to the judges, and that for the proceedings (sākhānō). 16. About the judge who is doubly satisfied, and him who is not doubly satisfied; also the time from a judge’s not being doubly satisfied till his being doubly satisfied. 17. About a judge of four customs, and his decision thereon; one who knows the decree and would act to effect it, and one who knows it and would not act. 18. About the supremacy of a judge as to adjudication so far as there is a false decision therein; how it is when he is at a distance (pavan āsār), and how it is when he is on the spot; he who is at a

¹ Pahl. pādō-khān = Pers. pāt'āvān.
² Pāz. vayōzust, Av. vayāvāzustō = dvayōzustō. Farh. Oim, p. 43, ll. 10–12, has ‘the Vayōzustō, who is a judge, explains this, so that the petitioner who is doubtful is a hearer of certainty; it is, as one says, deliberately weighed.’
distance becomes a superior therein, when he comes back to the place of justice before the end of a Háasar\(^1\). 19. About other false teaching of a judge which is manifest therefrom, and the retribution for the false teaching; the false summoning, false investigation, and false evidence of the complainant (mûst-ḥômônd) having been his own, and a separate atonement unto the afflicted one has to atone for the affair; it having been mitigated by no good work. 20. About the trouble of adjudication to the priestly authorities (raḍân). 21. About the proficiency of a woman or child who is acquainted with the law\(^2\), for a judgship, being above that of a full-grown man unacquainted with the law.

22. About assisting the want of one’s own disciple for a master for the recited law, and the sin due to not assisting, such as that when, wanting assistance, it is allowable for the afflicted one to beg an assistant from foreigners, and according to his petition is the bringing of a foreigner for assistance; and whatever is on the same subject. 23. About the supremacy of Rashnu\(^3\) the righteous.

24. About several persons who are engaged in legal proceedings about the keeping and non-division of property not their own, and the decision as regards for whom one has in keeping that property which is not his own. 25. About actions which are not inconsistent and those which are inconsistent. 26. About the decision of a judge of congregational actions.

27. About the offence which accusers would commit, as regards the law, by means of the law, it being

---

\(^1\) See Chap. XX, 68.  
\(^2\) See Chap. XX, 74.  
\(^3\) See Chap. XX, 153.
not allowable to commit it with their own hands; also as regards anyone's property, about which there is a dispute, even though with a certainty as to its ownership.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Ganabā-sar-nigād Nask.

1. One section of the next twelve is the Pasūr-haūrvastān ('shepherd's-dog code'), about the shepherd who is selecting a shepherd's dog for the sheep, and the shepherd with various shepherd's dogs; about the shepherd's comprehension of their serviceableness, one with the other, and whatever is on the same subject. 2. The extent of authorised efficiency (salīt-gārikīh) accomplished by the shepherd's-dog nature of a shepherd's dog, after his being appointed by the shepherd.

3. About the shepherd's preparing the means of bedding¹ for the shepherd's dog, giving the amount of the price of the daily food of a shepherd's dog, provisions for the dog in the winter, and the preparation of a fire beforehand which it is necessary to make in the sheepfold (pāh-hastō). 4. About the mode of preparing the appointed fireplace of the sheepfold, the position of the shepherd's dog and the dog's fire, the means of lodging and provisioning the shepherd's dog in the sheepfold, the sin owing to the occasions when one proceeds to provide another mode, and whatever is on the same subject.

5. About the diligence of the shepherd's dog, and about his being guardian of the sheep asleep at night.

¹ Or 'covering,' gāmakō.
in flocks\(^1\) dreading distress; the dog, their protection, is not provided with bedding, nor with pillow, and they are happy; every night he has to come out, through the whole flock, three times, besides when one of the guards (padânô), who is apprehensive, counts them, who, every day at dawn, has to walk out among the sheep, with good words, to inspect them, to apply remedies properly to the sheep that are sick, wounded, bruised, or defective, and to be their guardian; also the sin owing to worrying them, and whatever is on the same subject. 6. About that which is to be done by him as regards the breeding of the sheep, and likewise for the sake of the young ones; and the sin when he does not do it, or shall act otherwise. 7. About his fully understanding where and which is the sheep for each young one. 8. About his habit and means of keeping away the thief and the wolf from the sheep, and the preservation of the sheep thereby when an awful cloud and wind and rain arise, or when the position of those distressed ones, at the fords of rivers, comes opposite a locality (nisisno) of bad footing; when it is not possible for him to save all, he has to save the greater in value, or the more in number.

9. About his having guarded a sheep from the pasture of others and the retribution for the sin of not having guarded as to the eating and damaging of the corn and pasture of others by the sheep. 10. About the extent of preservation by the shepherd's dog's driving the sheep from the corn and pasture of others of various species, such as that which one calls the very stupid (gôltar) pig; there is, more-

\(^{1}\) Pâz. pasîvân for pasûvân (pl. of pasu).
over, the specified pasture as regards those sheep, but the pig, which feeds upon its own predecessors, is also that which may commit another sin, for it feeds upon even its progeny at birth.

11. About the indication of an assembly place (garang) for the sheep, in a warm or cool locality, by the shepherd’s dog. 12. About the characteristics of sheep from one to four years of age. 13. About the village (vis) of the shepherd, where the shepherd’s dog is known when he arrives; how it is when a sheep has to be kept out of the sheepfold by the shepherd’s dog, and how it is when it has to be driven by him to the village of the heedful shepherd. 14. About the coming of the shepherd unto a sheep, and the path from the village which the shepherd has provided for the flock.

15. About a shepherd when he withholds the daily food of a shepherd’s dog, and the exhaustion of life thereby; after the fourth deprival of food (atapak-dâdô) it is allowable for the shepherd’s dog to kill a sheep for nourishment. 16. About a sheep, which comes astray into the flock to be slaughtered, being the perquisite of the butcher (bâhar-i kûstâr), and that of the shepherd’s dog being its dog and the appointed number of one sheep. 17. About their extent of movement, and their pregnancy and growing old (bâr va-khasân). 18. About the sin of the shepherd, as regards the shepherd’s dog, through injustice as to work,

1 Assuming that valman stands for val.
2 See Chap. XVII, 6.
3 The dog who allowed the sheep to stray being thus punished, by becoming the prey of the dog into whose flock the sheep strayed, who also receives a sheep as his share of the butchering.
reward, and chastisement; and of the shepherd's dog, as regards the shepherd, through improperly tending a sheep, or worrying it by exertion; also his chastisement, and the payment that occurs for the incompetence and unworthiness therein; besides adjudications between the shepherd and shepherd's dog.

19. About the instruction which the shepherd gives to the shepherd's dog, through reminders (pavan ayâdîhâ), to control a sheep, when, the shepherd's dog having heard some musical notes (srûdô gâsânô), the instruction took place in the form of words; and, when the notes were not heard, even by a blow (zatam), the means of that instructor being a blow. 20. About the peculiarity of the shepherd's dog as regards its employment (rôg'kâr) at the periods of satisfying menstrual excitement, solemnizing the season-festivals, and other important good works.

Chapter XXIV.

Ganabâ-sar-nigad Nask.

1. The first section of the last thirty-five is the Stîristân ('beast-of-burden code'), particulars about the sin, affecting the soul, due to unlawfully striking and wounding as regards beasts of burden and cattle; and the retribution and compensation for it to one's own cattle, that in case of a beast of burden and that in case of a sheep (anûmâbê), during life. 2. That which arises when one smites them with a brand (dakhshak); that when one smites them on the flank, and that when it is in front of them; that
when their flanks are so smitten is complete smiting. 3. Of the smiting, too, of other members, the smiting in front, though the smiting be such as when one so smites for smiting on the flank, is not complete smiting. 4. And that which amounts to as much as a complete smiting, when one so smites as for smiting on the flank, is such as that when one casts off the skin, and that when one casts off the flesh, thereby, that when one is cutting it, or that when wounds (khîmân) or serpent-scourging (mârvanô) are upon it.

5. It is also about making the dog which drives the sheep (pasûs-haûrvô) dumb. 6. About bruising the limbs and plucking the feathers of birds, such as the case when it is complete smiting, and such as that when it is not complete smiting. 7. And unlawfully destroying as regards fish, such as when it would make their flesh uneatable. 8. An account as to noticeably and worryingly beating cattle, about decrees of whatever kinds as to each separate beating worryingly that is to be considered as noticeable beating, and many decrees as to whatever is on the same subject. 9. About the retribution for making clothing of skins and woven wool (tâdakô), and the sin of any one owing to kindling a fire therewith, or roasting flesh which is stolen or plundered.

10. About the good work of all that is wise activity, and the reward of the happy place; the sin of everything that is ignorant activity, and the

---

1 See Chap. XVIII, 2, 6; or it may be muhârvanô, ‘cauterizing.’
2 Heaven.
bridge *penalty* of the evil place\(^1\); connected there-with, to make him who is righteous develope in wisdom, and to make him who is wicked diminish in ignorance, is the world.

**Chapter XXV.**

*Ganabâ-sar-nigad Nask.*

1. The second section is the *Ar'gistân* ("*value code*"), particulars about the value of small consumption of animate, and also that of inanimate, property; *with* the desirableness of information thereon, each separately. 2. The value of not destroying a righteous man even for a decree and justice, *and* of atonement for injuring the existence\(^2\) of the fire of Varahrân\(^3\).

**Chapter XXVI.**

*Ganabâ-sar-nigad Nask.*

1. The third section is the *Aratêstâristân* ("*warrior code*"), particulars about the worthiness of destroying a wolf; *and*, among wolves, the greater need of destroying (*zânîsntarîh*) those with two legs than those with four legs.

2. About selecting the daily *supplies* of warriors, the beasts of *burden*, clothing, and equipment of warriors, and other appurtenances (*avârîgânakîh*) which are to be given to them; *also* selecting a horse and *accoutrements* (*zênō-afzâr*) *for* each one.

\(^1\) Falling into hell owing to the narrowness of the *Kînvâd* bridge to the other world, occasioned by an excess of sin over good works (see Dd. XXI, 5–7).

\(^2\) See Chap. XIX, 1.

\(^3\) The sacred Bahirâm fire.
3. About having a man's horse trained before one sends him to smite enemies. 4. About the efficacy of the resources and care of a warrior in the destruction which enemies occasion; also the army and the slaughter of war. 5. About the sin of the village and abode of the warriors on the occurrence of a battle, and what is the retribution for wounds and damage; what is that which is disfiguring (apîrâyak) therein, and what is that which is worthy of death therein.

6. About the characteristics of the wearing of armour (zênâvandîth) and not wearing of armour by warriors. 7. About the rank of the general (sipâh-padô), and other officers (padân) over the troops, as to daily supplies, pay, and dignity; also their subordinates (azîrag), and the number of troopers (gûrd) to each one of the officers. 8. About the anxieties of a trooper for the protection of person and family. 9. About the number of troopers when the king of kings goes to battle. 10. About the proportion of daily provision for two warriors, the meat and milk and bread thereof, which are for the sake of providing guidance and causing contests of the warriors in that good eating; also the reason of certifying (gôvâlk) its distribution and weighing, the beast of burden of the original village (bûn kôkîh)¹, and its means of being sent unto the troops. 11. About cutting the herbs for the veterinary surgeon (stôr bezashkô), the store of accoutrements, and other things which are necessary with an army. 12. About the feeding of warriors on the day of battle, the meat and whatsoever are their eatables; even so the food of the horses.

¹ Whence the supplies come.
13. About the wealth which foreigners bring away, and this which is declared thereof, that is, 'I, too, am assisting even the wolf.' 14. About the display of esteem by warriors together, the union of friendship one with the other, obedient unto their commander of the troops, and mindfully resigning themselves to death, there being seen a spiritual reward, without doubt, in the future existence.

15. About the choice of a commander over the troops; also as to his coming and understanding the habits of his troops, each separately, through the capability of skill which is theirs. 16. About estimating the strength and resources of the troops, with those of their enemies; that is, how the battle is to be engaged in, or how the case is when it is to be avoided. 17. About the provision of anything requisite\(^1\) which warriors shall leave for safety when there is danger in the neighbourhood from a distant stronghold, or danger to a neighbouring stronghold from afar. 18. About the case where, when it is necessary to engage in battle, the horse of a warrior has not arrived, and it is allowable to seize upon several horses from a herd of horses. 19. About the watchful sentinel (nigâhakô pâspânô), and of what kind is the information from which this is manifest, to the army and commander of the troops, that the enemy is well dead, or fled.

20. About a demonstration whereby they produce terror and apprehension in the enemy. 21. About an altercation of the commander of the troops with foreigners before a battle; altercation also through an envoy, and calling them into subjection to the

\(^{1}\) Or 'of value;' khvâstakô having both meanings.
king of kings and the religion of the sacred beings.

22. About admonition to the troops, and declaring the share and arrangement of special duty of each one in the fight; announcing to the troops the recompense of the active, telling and informing the troops of the reason of being worthy of death, of the worthiness of destroying foreigners, of the command of the sacred beings as to their destruction when they shall not accept the Irânian nationality (Afrîh), and the equally great reward and recompense for their destruction announced by revelation, the legal code (dâdîstânîkîh) of Irân.

23. About not uttering words of irritation on the day of battle, and not mentioning, among the troops, any intelligence which gives the troops apprehension, but only that which is agreeable and pleasing, through giving heartiness and increasing the strength. 24. About the sacred ceremonial on the day of battle and evil deeds of war;—a twig of the sacred twigs of that ceremonial, and the Avesta as regards fighting, being the first arrow well delivered into the mark shot at;—the consecration of the water which is nearest to the place of battle, even by bringing holy-water; and the sequence of the fight, that is, with which arms and appliances it is first to be fought, and successively unto those which are the last.

25. About the proportion of those who keep the arms (zâd) for the combatants, and, after a victory over foreigners, are taking away the hostages and captives, out of the foreigners, from the combatants; also their return from them. 26. At what degree of distance from them they have to carry the arms and appliances and the restoratives for the unfatigued
and the fatigued; and, the accoutrements being deposed, a warm bath prepared, and relaxation of the body effected, the reward of merit is given. 27. One has to search offenders, to bring restoratives for the unfatigued and the fatigued, to deliver the accoutrements back to the arsenal (gan⁴g³), to allot the share of the hostage brought back to his own people, and also much else on the same subject.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Ganabā-sar-nigad Nask.

1. The fourth section is miscellaneous: about a warm bath being in a house of what kind, the position of security of the fireplace, the watchfulness to be upheld there, and whatever is on the same subject. 2. About the strength that a horse has to exert for the sake of the earth, and that which is to be exerted in that mode for the sake of fire. 3. About food and other matters which may be prepared with fire, and the security of the fire in like manner. 4. About fire which, even on the road, is free from throwing away, bodily refuse, and dead matter, and from the injury and harm owing thereto; the various safeguards of fire from being given to an infidel (ag-dēn⁴) or a child; the distance of the fire from a rivulet; the penalty for throwing it away, or other sin as regards it; and the

---

1 See Chap. XIX, 3.
2 Any solid portion of a corpse, or carcase, of a human being, dog, or other animal.
3 Which might extinguish it and, thereby, render the person who had charge of the fire grievously sinful.
proportion of nourishment and preparation for the fire in summer, and also in winter.

5. About picketing (barâ nisâstanô) a horse, that is, how it is justifiable when it is in water and dust, how it is so when really in very distressing bodily refuse, and how it is so when even in bodily refuse that is tolerable. 6. About the proportion of nourishment for mankind, fire, and cattle. 7. About receiving a guest, the praise of liberality, and the grandeur of the liberal, the contempt for stinginess, and the want of the wanderer.

8. About the mode of wearing garments in a dwelling of Mazda-worshippers, even so far as a bandage of four rags for protection; the care of them each separately, the wages of the makers and ornamenters of each one, and whatever is on the same subject. 9. About having procured a street-keeper (kûgpânô) for the Mazda-worshippers, the business of the street-keeper thereof, and whatever is on the same subject.

10. About preparing in the summer a store for the winter. 11. About reaping a field of corn, the Avesta for the first reaping, and having consecrated the first sheaf with the dedication (shnûman) to Aûhar Mazda the lord. 12. About the union of those of the good religion together, both in removing want and in union even with insidels in that which

---

¹ Reading vad-îk vand-î-î 4 lêtô-î pânakîh, and taking lêtô as equivalent to Pers. latah. We might suppose that the phrase meant 'a belt of the four strings (rûdô) of protection,' but the number would not correspond to the three times the sacred thread-girdle passes round the waist, nor would the material of rûdô, 'catgut,' be appropriate for the girdle.

² The scriptural formula to be recited in its original language.
is not detrimental to the religion, and whatever is on the same subject. 13. About duty as regards the produce of plants and animals; first, suitable eating; and secondly, moderate eating and avoidance of profusion.

14. About possessions which belong to the nobles, and those which belong to the multitude; in what manner that which belongs to the multitude has to come into the possession of the nobles; and whatever is on the same subject. 15. About the enviousness (zigûrîh) of the beast of burden, ox, and sheep, and also of people; that is, in how many of the multitudes, each separately, it is produced; and whatever is on the same subject. 16. And also much other adjudication and information on similar intelligence:

17. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

1. One section of the first thirty of the Hūspāram is the Aēρpātistān ('priest code'), particulars about a case where one has to provide for a priestly assembly (aēρpatistān), which is a birth; how the case is when it is important to go, how it is when one

---

1 Corresponding to the seventeenth word, â, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; and it is the seventeenth Nask in all Rivāyats. This name should probably be Avisp-kharam, meaning 'free from all defect;' but it is called Hūspārām, Aspāram, or Aspārûm in the Rivāyats, which also state that it contained sixty-four, or sixty, kardah or subdivisions. The former number agrees with the total of the sections mentioned in Chaps. XXVIII, XXXII, XXXVI.

2 A considerable portion of this section is still extant, combined with a larger portion of the next section, the Nîrangistān, whose name is applied to the whole text.
stays at his own house, and how it is when it is not allowable to go; also deciding about the chief priest (aërpatō), and the proportion of priests (āsrûkō) who are superior, of those who are intermediate, and of those who are inferior in the estimation of the wisdom of the righteous. 2. About the priest whom one is sending, and the wayfaring garments and appliances which are to be given to him.

3. About the disciple, as reverent towards the chief priest; the labour in receiving the sacred words and teaching them to the disciple; the advice of the chief priest to the priests; and the muttered phrases at the time of contamination by dead matter. 4. About what priest—on the arrival of a priest back at the district from which one sends him—is to be appointed, as priest for the district from which he came, by the district governor and those of the district, for teaching and instruction in the district.

5. About which are those reckoned as the five dispositions1 of a priest that are the glorification of the priest’s statements of the law, from the first of his statements in succession unto the last, and whatever is on the same subject.

6. About the subjects regarding which a priest of concealed parentage is to be asked, with the prelude and sequel of the same subject. 7. About the bridge penalty2 of a priest through sinfulness, in a separate fargard3. 8. About a priest they may carry away from a district, owing to anxiety for forming a priestly assembly, who becomes worried in forming it.

---

1 See Bd. XIX, 36 n.  
2 See Chap. XX, 63.  
9. About the superiority of priests in means of knowledge, one as regards another; the extent of superiority through which the greater suitability for authority, of one as regards another, arises; and whatever is on the same subject.

CHAPTER XXIX.

Hûspâram Nask.

1. One section is the Nîrangistân (‘ritual code’), particulars about the ritual of the ceremonial of the sacred beings, that which is important and goes to the bridge of judgment; the exceeding meritoriousness owing to an ample number of Râspîs in the ceremonial; and, as to the Avesta, the Zôti and Râspî are both for various phrases, those which are for the speaking of the one are for the hearing of the other. 2. About the sacred cake, and whatever is on the same subject. 3. About abstaining from the drinking of wines at the same time as the ceremonial. 4. About the quality (sâmân) of the voice in reciting the Avesta in a ceremonial, and the

---

1 Reading sagâktarîh-I aēvakô min tanê pavan patîh, but there are only faint traces of the third, fourth, and fifth words, as the decayed folio of the manuscript has been patched, and the repairer forgot to record the missing words at the time he did his work. His marginal note refers to a defect in the next line of the manuscript.

2 The Kînvaed bridge, at which the departed soul is believed to give a full account of its actions during life (see Chap. XIV, 8).

3 See Chap. VII, 5.

4 The drôn, or sacred cake, is a small pancake which is consecrated in the ceremonies, and dedicated to some particular spirit by means of a shnûman, or propitiatory dedication (see Sls. III, 32). It is tasted by the priests and by the participators in certain ceremonies (see Haug’s Essays, pp. 396, 404, 408).
Avesta which is twice recited and thrice or four times recited. 5. About the ceremonial, and the conducting of that ceremonial whose Zôti, or Râspî, is a Tanâpûhar sinner. 6. About the Zôti duty of a woman or child. 7. About a decision as regards him who is cursed by the Mazda-worshipping religion.

8. About the sin of him who does not solemnize a season-festival, and how the case is when it is solemnized by him. 9. About the limits of the five periods of the day and night, and the ceremonies of the same periods. 10. About the kinds of peculiarity of the things for the season-festivals and other good works produced authorisedly.

11. About the quantity of holy-water which is due to one sheep, the inspection and consideration in providing the sheep, the freedom from sickness due to contamination and other defects even in a lawful place, and the exemption from the appliances and attacks of noxious creatures; the ritual for making it, and deciding about the maker, producer, and carrier, the taster and the giver to him. 12. The reason of the slaughter, and whatever is on the same subject.

13. About the position and duty of the Zôti and Râspîs in the ceremonial. 14. About the perfect ceremonial, the gift to a righteous man who has

---

1 See Chap. XX, 65. 2 See Sls. X, 35.

3 See Chap. VII, 1.

4 These periods, or watches, are from dawn till noon, noon till 3 P.M., 3 P.M. till dusk, dusk till midnight, and midnight till dawn.

5 When slaughtered to provide the necessary meat-offerings (see Sls. XI, 4–6).

6 The holy-water apparently.
become a teacher and examiner of the wisdom of the righteous, and whatever is on the same subjects.

15. About the sacred shirt and thread-girdle, that is, from what it is proper to make them, and whatever is on the same subjects. 16. About gathering and tying the sacred twigs, and on the same subject. 17. About the proportion of firewood in various parts of the ceremonial, and the mode of bringing it forward; that for the household fire, and the priestly fire of Bahirâm (Varahrān).

18. About a ceremonial amid great opulence, that which is amid medium opulence, that which is amid little opulence, and a decision as regards want of opulence. 19. About always celebrating the ceremonies of the sacred beings for that which has occurred, and not neglecting them in any way. 20. About the cases where mankind observantly, and also unobservantly, celebrate the ceremonies of the sacred beings; that is, which is he who observantly and he who unobservantly does so; with advice about observantly celebrating the ceremonies of the sacred beings.

21. About the cleanliness of the body and clothing of the celebrator of the ceremony, the assurance of his mind from sin, the ablation of the apparatus of the place of the exalted (vulandānth), the cleanliness of the place of the ceremonial, the distance therefrom for any degree of manifest pollution and stench, and whatever is on the same subject.

22. About the ceremonial of the waters and their creatures, the vigour of healthfulness, the possession of the brilliancy of heaven, the bountifulness of

---

1 Or it may be 'holy-water.'
the spirit of the waters, and whatever is on the same subject. 23. About the celebration of a ceremonial, which is an ordinance of duties for the sake of a happy state of gladness (khûp parkânīh) and happy consequences; and also many other statements on the same subject. 24. About the ceremonial as proper and improper, beneficial and not beneficial.

25. About the families of Zarátûst, Hvôv¹, and Vístâsp, as regards the account (auśhmûrisnô) and ceremonial of the religion and their nature.

CHAPTER XXX.
Hûspâram Nask.

1. One section is the Gôharîkistân (‘quality code’), particulars about natural superiority; not the modified (gaštakô), but the lawful, approved², and specific state of superiority; not acquired by the slender power³ of the world, but by seeking virtuous living through causing the prosperity of every person; also the authorisation of superiority, and the proportion of advantage therein. 2. About a superiority unimpoverished (anyûrûzd), with one unimpoverished with a nature unspent (an-aûrûzd), with one unspent with an impoverished (nyûrûzd), and one impoverished with an impoverished; also the extent of impoverishment and non-impoverishment, that is, with whom it is not customarily of much

¹ An ancestor of several persons mentioned in the Avesta, including the two brothers, Gâmâsp the prime minister of king Vístâsp, and Frashôstar the father-in-law of Zarátûst.
² Assuming that pasandak stands for pasandak; otherwise, we may read pishonîk, ‘provided.’
³ Reading tang-karîh, but it may be tund-karîh, ‘the severe labour.’
consequence (pavan freh-ar'gö), with whom it is so customarily, and with whom, owing to an exception, it is not customarily of much consequence on account of its much consequence for an uninformed person, that is, with whom it is as it were proper with a servant of sin. 3. And superiority is a furtherance of living beings, and pervades the natural extent thereof.

4. About him who would sell property not his own, and him who would buy it. 5. About selling a sheep frequenting the house, and one not frequenting the house. 6. About various precautions as to samples of various things. 7. About selling beasts of burden, cattle, slaves, servants, and other property, of the nature of whose species one is aware through speaking about the nature of different species; and the retribution for the sin of whatever is on the same subject. 8. That which is an obvious agreement for selling with defects¹, when it is declared of beasts of burden; and that which is ever defective on selling.

9. About a house in which a person, or dog, has passed away through contagious sickness, and the clothing which the man wore owing to that sickness; that is, how it is when spoiled for selling for three years, how it is when it is so for two years, and how it is when it is so for one year. 10. About a house in which a person, or dog, has reposed in a contagious sickness, and not passed away after his descent therefrom; and the clothing which the man wore in that sickness; that is, how it is when spoiled for selling for two years, how it is when it is so for one year, and how it is when it is so for thirty nights; and whatever is on the same subject.

¹ That is, without a warranty.
11. About forming a family (gôharîk kardanô) with foreigners, that is, how it is when allowable. 12. About a sheep of good breed for the three nights\(^1\), and its slaughter after the three nights; likewise many other decisions as regards superiority and sheep of a good breed.

CHAPTER XXXI.

Hûspâram Nask.

1. A miscellaneous section is about taking anything which is not one’s own at the time when he does not think that they see him and they do see him, at the time when he thinks that they see him and they do not see him, and at the time when he thinks that they see him and they do see him. 2. About giving righteous instruction, that is, what happens, and how, at the time when the follower\(^2\) asks again. 3. About the sin of imprisoning the needy, exalting falsehood, and approving deceit. 4. About the action and command which diminish, or alter, a liberal gift to any one. 5. About the limit of the open-handedness of a wife who should be privileged, and who is reverent towards her husband, out of anything that has not reached the husband; how it is when the husband is foolish, how it is when it is legally, how when derived from what is legally property, and how about that which is unspent savings (anyûrûzd kabun); also the limit of the reverence of a wife for a husband, and whatever is on the same subject.

---

\(^1\) The three nights after a death; the sheep is to be slaughtered on the fourth day, including the day of death (see Sḷs. XVII, 2–5).

\(^2\) See Chap. XXII, 6 n.
6. About causing the conveyance of a maiden from the house of her fathers, or guardians, to the village of her husband, to hold the position of house-mistress of the husband; of the wife when she becomes reverent and propitiatory towards him, and admonishing her when she speaks thus: 'I am thy wife, but I will not perform a wife's duties for thee;' also the quarrelling of a husband with his wife, and carrying it on to the bridge of judgment.

7. About the blood on a woman who wants washing, and the bridge penalty upon him who has sexual intercourse with a woman who wants washing, with her who is a foreigner, or any other of those not authorisedly for intercourse; the confusion of germs by the woman who grants intercourse to foreigners, and other sin which they may commit about like matters. 8. About a wife claimed from foreigners; that is, how it is when allowable.

9. About the preparation of a wife for the control of a son, the period for it and for suckling, and the wish for a son which is present with a husband. 10. About the sin of a man owing to rejecting the controlling of his son by a sister or grown-up daughter. 11. About three things through which mankind become sinful and injuring their own property, and the possession of them is not to be taken away. 12. About those who may not inflict lawful chastisement with oppressive demeanour.

13. About that which a man is to be made to provide in feasting and gifts, for his store of good works, on his wife bringing forth. 14. How it is when he is a man of wisdom, and how it is when he is a disciple; how it is when it is a male birth, and how it is when it is a female. 15. The advantage
and benefit therefrom; the religious announcement of a name for the new-born, should it be a male, or should it be a female; the good work owing to the decision of a religious appointment of a name for the progeny, [and the sin]¹ owing to giving again to it a name of the idolators (dēvīyastān).

16. About the ritual and usage in admitting the male to a sheep, owing to which the male is a gratisher of the impregnated female nature, and a protection of the female nature; and the want of training and freedom from defect of the progeny; a proper condition of the flock, too, arises likewise through worshipping the sacred beings and providing the sacred feast; also about the shepherd's dog and the blessing for him. 17. About the regard of the shepherd for the breeding of the sheep. 18. About the work of the ceremonial and of providing the sacred feast, and the advantage for the sheep from the same cause. 19. About the Mazda-worshipping district-breeding of the dogs in a district, through providing careful nurture for the dogs, which is a good work owing to the same cause.

20. About the object of payment for teaching the Zōti duty, for the guardianship of the fire, for the publication and watching of worship, and for other labour, and whatever is on the same subject.

21. About the lawful guardianship of a child, the child who is lamp-light and the father who is the fire, and whatever is on the same subject. 22. About sickness owing to the look of an evil eye, or the vicinity of a menstruous woman, because those

¹ Here, again, the repairer of the manuscript has forgotten to note the words in brackets which he had cut out of the folio before patching it.
with an evil eye, or menstruous, are thereby harmful. 23. About what is the kind of watching for the admitters of fear; the fearful and whatever is on the same subject. 24. And that in case of descending from a house on the outside.

25. About lawful arrangements for supplies, in union and assistance one towards the other; about payment for the labour in the lawful arrangement; and whatever is on the same subject. 26. About the produce of property for the multitude, and that also for one's own association; that is, how it is when taking it authorisedly, and how it is when not doing so; and whatever is on the same subject.

27. The special generosity of judges in conveying property back to its owners; the advantage from just judges, and the harm from unjust sentencing and false decisions. 28. So, also, the advantage from truly demanding, truly answering, and assisting the just; the enmity and harm from falsely demanding, falsely investigating, and assisting a false demander and false investigation; but not the enmity and secret harm of a complaint of the wretched. 29. Advice to judges about just decision and abstinence from false decision; and, secondly, the reward of their just decision, and the awful bridge judgment of false decision; the accountability in the spiritual existence in the case of judges, the praise of truth and contempt of falsity, the gratification of the sacred beings and vexation of the demons from just judgment and turning away from false decision, and whatever is on the same subject.

30. About what place the appointment by Aûhar-mazd in the original creation brought the corn to

---

1 According to Bd. X, i, XIV, i, XXVII, 2, fifty-five species of
which arrived for use in the nourishment and assistance of mankind and animals; the sowing of corn from the bodies of Mashya and Mashyôt; and whatever is on the same subject. 31. About the labour in sowing and cultivating corn, and whatever is in the business of agriculturists; perseverance in agriculture, and the limit of its allotment, owing to suitable participation and inevitable participation in agriculture; whatever is about the shepherd and whatever is about the agriculturist, and the adjudication between them. 32. About the corn which is sown, that which is reaped, that which is for an increase (pavan nad-aê), and that which is for other things.

33. About the excitement of any one, owing to his blood. 34. About those kinds of ownership of land and other things that are best. 35. About him who sees some one conducting water for cultivation, when the person unauthorisedly sows the land of the observer who does not dispute about it with fearlessness and effectual resistance. 36. About the selling of supplies granted, which may be done in hunger, nakedness, and fear; and whatever is on the same subject.

37. About the supremacy of sin, both that which arises on the spot, and that at a distance (pavan hâsar); and whatever is on the same subject. 38. About the atonableness of every sin, and the bridge judgment for destroying a righteous man, for witchcraft, and for carrying evil (agîh) to fire and water. 39. About atonement for the sin of Yât, Bâzâî.

grain sprang up originally where the primeval ox passed away; a statement which does not agree with that hinted at in this section.

1 See Chap. XIII, 1.
Khôr, Aredûs, Awôtrist, Ágêrept 1, and giving no food, through giving of scars (pisang-das) 2, labour, and punishment; the kinds of horse-whip and scourge, and how the penitential effect of both arises. 40. When a sinner dies outright on account of the penalty of giving of scars, or the performance of the labour, or the exertion of effecting the penance of punishment, and when a man has died penitent, but incapable of a desire 3 for the retribution of sin, and has not atoned in the worldly existence, what the nature of his soul's helplessness is, owing to sin. 41. About those for whom there is no retribution for sin.

1 These six names are applied to the various grades of assault and wounding, for which a special scale of punishment is appointed (see Sls. I, 1, 2, XI, 1, 2, XVI, 1, 5). Here the list begins at the most heinous end of the scale, and the last three names, which refer to the lightest offences, have been already explained in Chaps. XIX, 1 n, XX, 64 n. The first three names are explained in Farh. Ofm, pp. 36, l. 7–37, l. 2, as follows:—"For whatever reaches the source of life the name is Khôr; one explains Bâsâf as "smiting," and Yât as "going to," though it be possible for the soul of man to be withstanding; and a counterstroke is the penalty for a Yât when it has been so much away from the abode of life." These six gradations of crime, therefore, range from the infliction of the nearest possible approximation to a fatal wound, down to the merely constructive assault of seizing a weapon. All authorities agree in estimating the relative heinousness of the first four crimes by the following numbers: 180, 90, 60, and 30; but regarding the amounts for the two lighter offences there is much difference of statement. In the old law of the Vendîdâd there are seven gradations of such crime, the lowest four corresponding in name with the lowest four here, and all punishable by lashes, with a horse-whip, or scourge, varying from five to two hundred in number, according to the heinousness of the offence and the number of times it has been committed.

2 By scourging, as prescribed in the Vendîdâd.

3 Owing to sickness, or any other disabling cause.
42. About what is the kind of contest of a poor man, plundered of his property; first, as regards the oppressor who was the plunderer, and, afterwards, having petitioned for criminal proceedings, through the judges, as regards his oppressor, until their repayment of the property. 43. About being delivered into distress and disaster, and the decision thereon. 44. About the oppressiveness of the much pollution of greediness (Āṣō) which is owing to all its fiendishness, and the arrangement of the creator about it for restraining the same fiend from destroying the whole worldly creation. 45. About the great judiciousness of a man in want of power being good, for preserving his own life and making it nurturable.

CHAPTER XXXII.

Hūspāram Nask.

1. One section of the next twenty contains particulars about the rite of an ordeal accomplished, also the modes of one's preservation or incrimination therein, and whatever is on the same subject.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

Hūspāram Nask.

1. One section is about the mode and object of confinement as regards a beast of burden, sheep, and dog that are mad (dēvānakā), and the operation of the affliction (vahksīsmā); also to what extent is their restoration; and when not restored, but come for slaughter, the care of them even in confinement,

1 Pāz. vōighn.  
2 The fiend of greediness, Āṣō.
and whatever is on the same subject.  2. About the harm (vinâs) which the beast of burden, sheep, and dog shall commit.  3. About the sin which killed one who is no offender.  4. About the care and remedy for a sick dog, and whatever is on the same subject.

Chapter XXXIV.

Hâspâram Nask.

1. One section is miscellaneous: about the object of amassing property lawfully produced, or derived from (frôdô min) what is legally property; the production authorisedly of what is derived from that which is legally property, and the production un-authorisedly of that which is legally property thereby become one, at first, as regards the very virtuous or vicious legal proceedings therein.

2. About the lawful time for giving up a maiden to her husband, the completion of her possessions, and whatever is on the same subject.  3. About the impoverishment owing to the completion of the possessions given, and whatever is on the same subject.  4. About a father who has sons, and for which of them a wife is to be earlier sought.  5. Also about which of his daughters is to be given away to a husband, and whatever is on the same subject.

6. About the progressive meritoriousness of a righteous gift for a woman, and the grievous sinfulness owing to its being dissipated.  7. About wealth through a righteous gift, the announcement of its manifest acceptance, and the acknowledgment of its acceptance in words, as a completed act that is so far exhausted.

1 Whether the sick animal, or a man attacked by it, is uncertain.
8. About a foreigner when an Irânian asks him for a reward for assistance in battle with his fellow-tribesmen, and the foreigner does not become generous, though the recompense is for the generosity of the Irânians.

9. About the offering up (madam dahišnô) of water; that which is an appointed indicator (numûdâr), and that which is no indicator; that which is an indicator of complete presentation, and that of partial presentation; that water which is continually producing the offering up (âzdahînâk), in like manner, of something of the things of a righteous gift, through the moistened peculiarity and distinction\(^1\) of an offering-producing gift of a male from that of a female; and that which is an indicator both male and female, and a voice producing offerings, is animate, or inanimate, or derived from the inanimate; that which is an indicator is a germ (tôkhamakô-1), that which is in a germ is of one species, that which is in a species is of one form, and the proportion that is appointed is completed, though the purpose for which it is appointed has not arisen; and whatever is on the same subject.

10. About the five best and five worst actions, the seven\(^2\) heinous sins, and the three sins that are very ill-atoned for. 11. About the sin of staining with bodily refuse, injuring the existence\(^3\), and of a

---

1 The Pahl. text is pavan mamânîh va-kadâmîh-i namîfô. Possibly namîfô, 'moistened,' may stand for numûfô, 'indicated;' but the whole sentence is more or less obscure.

2 Written 4 + 2 (= six) in the MS., but this is a most unusual way of writing 'six;' it is more probable that we ought to read 4 + 3, the usual mode of writing 'seven.' 'Seven evil-doers of sin of a heinous kind' are detailed in Dd. LXXII, 2–9.

3 Pahl. bâfôdôk-zêdô, see Chap. XIX, 1 n.
death-producing formation as to clothing. 12. About the sin owing to idleness when, moreover, that which they might do is good. 13. About a decision as to the justifiableness of clothing, arms, equipments, and other things being given to foreigners, besides promoting their service and business, and giving them any assistance whatever, or listening to that which relates to assistance; likewise listening to drunkards. 14. About unlawfully destroying and cutting plants, with a decision about it.

15. About the sin of digging a grave\(^1\) for burying a corpse, whether of the idolators (dēvīyastān) or non-idolators, and of supplying clothing for the corpse of a dead one of the idolators. 16. About him who threw bodily refuse\(^2\) on to fire or water, or any place or garment on which it is not authorisedly cast, to make Mazda-worshippers polluted; and whatever is on the same subject.

17. An account of water as regards the description and extent of moisture of the land. 18. About the sin owing to rendering anything useless through water or fire. 19. About carrying off two-thirds of the misery from the world, by eradicating it from the creatures through all the illumination of fires; and carrying off all adversity from the period of the creatures, through the freedom from malice of mankind, one as regards the other, and through their perfect sympathy together.

---

\(^1\) Assuming that gōbar khefruntanō stands for gōbar (Pers. gōr) khefruntanō.

\(^2\) See Chap. XIX, 3.
Chapter XXXV.

Hāspāram Nask.

1. One section contains particulars about the science (dānīṣnō) of seeking a son, advice about it from revelation (dēnō), the advantage of offspring for the admonitory explanation of revelation within one's self, and the harm owing to neglecting the advice of the same.

2. About what happens in the begetting of a son; the first sexual excitement it should produce for the female, the second, third, fourth, and fifth; the arising of a son in the world, and also the milk, owing to her impregnation. 3. And, when it is so that it amounts to a son, which of the two, male or female, is sooner emitting the germs at the time of occurrence; and how and how long both have remained, at the time, in semination, how long in connection, and how long in bleeding. 4. When and wherefrom various expectations are produced to contend about, and when and by what signs the male sex, or female sex, of the offspring has become manifest.

5. When the localization 1 regarding it is arranged, and, as to the members, which is the first member therein, and their being produced, each consecutively, till the bodily form is complete; which, and in what position, is the localization of the members after the complete production of the form of the body, and the purpose as regards the position and localization of the members after the complete production of the

---

1 Assuming that gēsī-hastanō stands for gāsī-hastanō in all three occurrences of the word. This is rather doubtful, because the noun gāsā, 'position,' occurs twice in close connection with the uncertain word, and is correctly spelt.
form of the body. 6. The effect upon the offspring which is furnished with subjection to the male, so far as the complete effecting of it is within the limit for its authorisation 1; the time (vidanâanâg 2) of the offspring with the female, the period of its turning downwards for birth, and the occurrence of birth at the same time.

7. About the growth of life, too, with the bodily organs (tanûgân); and which is the first bone become possessed of marrow, apart from the other bones, as it is reported. 8. About the admissibility of the elaboration of the male sex, or female sex, within it, by the guardian spirit of the righteous, at the fifth month; and the ceremony for the guardian spirit of the righteous for the sake of the arrival of a male child.

9. About the act of childbirth by a pregnant woman before recourse to midwifery (dâigânth), except that relating to the navel string of the child; also its first and second food, and when the midwifery is that of her mother; what is the kind of milk, and the care of the child at the time, its bandaging, sleeping, nourishment, and protection; and the sin owing to acting unlawfully in such matters. 10. About how many months is the bearing of the offspring in the womb of the camel, horse, ass,

1 The Pahl. text is as follows:—‘Kâr-î madam zâkô-î levatman dên kwrn spär, vad spîr kârhî zyâs dên sâmân pâdâs radâkîh.’

2 This unusual hybrid word is evidently intended as a Zvâris equivalent of the Irânian zamânah, and is composed of vidanâ ( = Ch. ṭhû, which is the usual Zvâris for zamân) + ânâg ( = ânah, the final syllables of zamânah). The central syllable of zamânah is, therefore, twice represented in the Zvâris vidanâanâg. The hybrid occurs again, in Bk. IX, Chap. XVII, 3, in a phrase where it can only mean ‘time, period.’ If it were not for this after-occurrence, the word here might be read va-dô-ahûg, ‘and the dual existence,’ with some degree of probability.
cow, and woman; and whatever is on the same subject. 11. About the spiritual perception of a newborn child, and its coming into the boundaries of worldly comprehension on the same subjects.

12. About the habits through which multitudes of mankind attain to the acme of beautiful form: that of desire for women, that of swiftness which is owing to the strength of the leg, and that of powerfulness which is owing to the vigour of the body, that of desire for wealth, that of speaking in an assembly, and that of speaking at a distance, that through which any one uncontrolled comes to a downfall, that through which there is more knowledge of obedience, and that through which a counteraction of the affliction of the race arises.

13. About the vicious desire of the performer and permitter of unnatural intercourse; also their violent lustfulness, heinous practice, and corrupt, polluted bodies, blighted in destiny; great through their destruction of life in the things which they see, and every greatness inevitably provides them a merited death; as great in sinfulness as Az-î Dahâk ¹ in oppression, as the serpent Srôbar ² in witchcraft, as Tûr-î Brâdrô-rêsh ³, the Karap ⁴, in destroying the

¹ See Chap. XIII, 8 n, and compare the account of the seven special evil-doers in Dd. LXXII, 3–9.

² The Av. aži srvara of Yas. IX, 11 (W.), Yt. XIX, 40; a terrible serpent slain by Keresâspa the Sâman, as mentioned again in Bk. IX, Chap. XV, 2.

³ Also written Brâdrôk-rêsh; he was one of the Tûrânian priesthood who persecuted Zarâtûst in his youth, and probably the same as Pers. Bûrtârûsh (the Brâdrâr-vakhsh of Sd. IX, 5) who is said to have killed Zarâtûst in the end. But, as he was one of five brothers, three of whose names were much alike (see Byt. II, 3 n), his identification is rather uncertain.

⁴ Av. karapan. In Dk. Bk. VII the Karaps are often men-
righteous, and as a deceiving apostate in falsehood.

14. About the grievous sinfulness of a woman, just delivered and giving milk, whose progeny is the offspring from intercourse with divers males, and whatever is on the same subject.

15. About the increasing vigour of the female from the mounting of the male, and the diminished vigour of the male from mounting on to the female.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Hūspāram Nask.

1. Six₁ Fargards of one section of the last fourteen contain particulars about the enumeration of species of ownership, their precedence one over the other, and their good report in conducting legal proceedings. 2. About property that is brought up to the judges, which, owing to an accuser, becomes a source of litigation for a judge. 3. About a decree as to restoring possession, or as to keeping possession, of whatever is among such matters. 4. About property

tioned as enemies of Zaratūst, both before and after his birth. Some are named, such as Dūrāsrōb, Brādrōk-rēsh, Vaēdvōst, and Gēshmak. The Karap of the district where the mother of Zaratūst was born banishes her for witchcraft, and must, therefore, have been the official head of the district. Dūrāsrōb, the Karap, travels sometimes with a disciple (hāvīst), so his title was probably a priestly one. The Karap is also often mentioned with the Kaī, or Kīk (Av. kāvan or kāvi), the title of an equally obnoxious class; both Kīks and Karaps being termed ‘demon-worshippers,’ or idolators; and the Pahlavi translators of the Avesta speak of them, metaphorically, as ‘blind and deaf’ to the sacred beings.

₁ These are called ‘five Fargards’ in Dd. LXI, 3 which appears to refer to §§ 7, 13. Or it may be ‘seven,’ if we consider the ‘seven’ of the next chapter as completing the last fourteen sections of this Nask.
which is, or is brought, out of the possession of a defendant, and property which is extorted from a man by worrying, or by a noticeable crime upon him; with a statement about it.

5. About the earnings (wndsñō) of fellow-combatants and fellow-subordinates, with a statement about them. 6. About the coming of land, property, or anything, held by foreigners, into the princely possession of one from Irān.

7. About the guardianship of a family (dūdākō); likewise the varieties of it, and the fitness of a man for it. 8. About one's own family, and whatever is on the same subject. 9. About the income (wndsñō) of wife and child.

10. About the trouble of the business of obtaining (wndsñō) a wife, and also her marriage, owing to the urgency of the husband, after the trouble. 11. About her guardian and paramour, and whatever is on the same subject. 12. About the proportion who have to keep a wife to seek for offspring, and the proportion who have to satisfy menstrual excitement.

13. About adoption; likewise the varieties of it, and fitness for it; the violation of adoption, the sin of the son who is accepted, and whatever is on the same subject. 14. About the partnership of brothers that has existed, is formed, or is designed; its abandonment (a-būkhtīkīh), the surplus property, the wealth that becomes quite sacrificed (zādākō), and whatever is on the same subject. 15. About property that comes to next of kin through relationship, and that through adoption. 16. About the residue that lapses into ways of righteousness.

17. About where and in whom, after the father, is
the prerogative as to a daughter being given away to a husband.

Chapter XXXVII.

Hāspāram Nask.

1. One section of the seven at the end contains particulars about the daily food of a grown-up man, a pregnant woman, her who is childless, and a child, as provided by law; also that of a shepherd's dog, a village dog, and a blood-hound; and the characteristics of these three kinds of dog.

2. About the sign of a person's conversion to the religion. 3. About association of several kinds, and one of them is that of the keepers (padân) with the flocks (ramân), and the flocks in connection with the keepers; and of what kind is the meritoriousness of the keepers of those flocks, as to guardianship of every description; the happy effects of the flock, and those of the keeper, of every description; the advantage from this association, and whatever is on the same subject. 4. One is the association of priestly instructor (radô) and pupil 2, and their meritoriousness together; the fame of the priestly instructor for priestly instruction, and that of the disciple (hâvistô) for every kind of learning derived from the priestly instructor, and every kind that the priestly instructor imparts to the pupil; and the happy effects of the priestly instructor, of every kind, in similar matters. 5. One is the association

1 It is doubtful whether seven sections are meant, or whether we should read 'the seven Fargards at the end of one section.' See, however, Chap. XXXVI, 1 n.

2 Pahl. radûnê (Av. ratunaya).
of ceremonial priests (rad-pîsakâ-nô), the worthiness of a man for the sacerdotal leadership, supplies for the whole of the ceremonial priests, and whatever is on the same subject. 6. About the highest of all associations, and about the lawful and virtuous existence of this same association, when there are two men in a case where he who is opulent is always necessary for him who is in innocence, and has given him the wealth that he asks for; or where, when the one shall commit sin, wealth is an affliction to the other; or the ownership, as to that which the one obtains, is as much even that of the other; or, on the passing away of the one, it is mingled with the wealth of the other; and whatever is on the same subject.

7. About the punishment of the sin of him for whom one lies to him by whom provision is made, by thought or by word, and given to him who is worthy. 8. About a father's making a child aware of the sin at the time of the sin. 9. About the sin of taking the course of a false guide and exalting falsehood, and whatever is on the same subject.

10. The sin of extorting supplies for a beast of burden from a lonely labouring person.

11. About important gifts to the worthy, atonement for deprival of food (atapdâdô-vigârisnih), and disbursements (aûrûzdân) of that which is legally, and also of that which is derived from what is legally, property among impoverished (nyûrûzd) supplicants. 12. The deplier of food is he who is for early atonement, and they who severally exist,

1 That of disinterested and devoted friendship, as appears from the examples given.

2 By falsely recommending him as a worthy object of charity.

3 See Chap. XVII, 6 n.
through grazing\(^1\) and bringing forth, are they who severally are also in loss of vitality, through deprival of the food of strength and intellect; even a powerful man is prostrated thereby; the food which is suitable as atonement for deprival of food, and that which is not suitable.

13. About that through which the indispensable creation of a debt arises, and whatever is on the same subject. 14. Where it is the healing of the sick, the spiritual debt is unto the archangel Ashavahist\(^2\), and that which is worldly unto the physician’s anteroom (dālānakō).

15. About the worthiness of a good physician for every benefit, and the unworthiness of a bad physician for any benefit. 16. About each one of the plants being produced by Aûharmazd for the subjugation of one disease at least. 17. About the protectiveness and preciousness of the profession of medicine; the advantage and reasoning thought of a physician due to the carrying on of his medical practice; the pleasant food, the handsome clothing, and the swift steed for a physician; and his wealth being as much as that of an average man in a house, village, community, or province. 18. About the diligently

\(^1\) Reading kārisnō, but part of the first letter has been cut off by the repairer of the MS. The semi-starvation of cattle is being referred to.

\(^2\) The personification of ‘perfect righteousness’ (Av. ashavahista) whose special duty is stated to be the care of fire (see Sls. XV, 6, 12, 13), and whose name, often written Ardavahist or Ardvavahist in Pahlavi, is applied to the second month and third day of the month in the Parsi year (see Chap. XX, 22). He is here connected with the healing of the sick, because of his association with Airyaman, the smiter of diseases (see Vend. XXII, Yt. III, Str. I, II, 3).
remedial hand of the physician for the sick, opportunity mindful, yet without chastisement.

19. About the sin of a physician through handling (sūdakīh) and having spread a disease by walking up to the sick, because that is when he would have been innocent through not having gone. 20. About a great pestilence (sēgō), and that which is trivial.

21. About the fee of a physician for curing a sick person of disease of the whole body, and of each one of the members; even of him who has cured chieftains, both those of the lower grades and him who is the supreme king of kings, and so also various destitute people. 22. About the mode and extent of delivering up fees to a physician, after the declaration of the sick person being well; that is, from whom comes the physician’s fee which is announced for the cure, and also that which is not announced; from whom that only which is announced for it, from whom a meal (pishōn-1), and from whom nothing whatever of worldly reward comes.

23. About the physician whom one hears and asks for medical treatment. 24. About a test as to the competency of a physician; that is, how it is to be made, how it is when it is possible to test it, and how it is when it is not possible to test it. 25.

---

1 In Vend. VII, 36–44 (W.) we have some of the old Avesta laws regarding medical men and their fees. How far the Avesta text of this section of the Hūspāram Nask corresponded with that of the Vendīdād on the same subject it is impossible to determine, because we have always to recollect that this summary of the contents of the Nasks was compiled from their Pahlavi versions (see Chap. I, 3) which included extensive commentaries, adapting the original Avesta statements to the altered circumstances of Sasanian times.

2 Or ‘satisfies’ (shnāyēdō).
About the sin of a physician who is not tested, and also of him whom it is not possible to test, when he shall undertake the medical treatment of others, and, as regards a limb of any one, there is not anything which is another's test of him, nor even that which is not another's test of him, nor that which is a trial of him.

26. About how long is the duration of having sought a physician in Irân whereafter it is allowable, through not obtaining one, to seek him even from foreigners. 27. The sin of having sought one from foreigners, when one can obtain a physician in Irân. 28. About the fee for a foreign physician, and much else on the same subject. 29. The medical treatment of mankind, and also about the medical treatment of beasts of burden and cattle.

30. About the sin owing to intrusting him who is unfit for a duty. 31. About the greater suitability of a priest than of a disciple for duty and position; a trusty person is also obtaining the important rather than obtaining a desire for the important, and even so far as being a potter rather than an astrologer, and being careful rather than a potter; and the reason of it.

32. About preparing an unauthorised (a-dastô bar) dwelling in the locality of other persons, and whatever is on the same subject. 33. About boundaries where there is a place of residence for people, and whatever is on the same subject. 34. About what description of testimony of one of the good religion is received as evidence regarding an infidel, and of an infidel as regards one of the good religion.

35. About the greatness of eminence of the abode of priestly authorities (radânô), both for procedure
and for petitions\(^1\); the openness of the doors of a priestly authority; the want of eminence of any one through every kind of offence to others, which is owing to his closed doors and evil eminence in every mode; \textit{and} whatever is on the same subject. 36. About the extent of splendour (\textit{liy\textsuperscript{a}n\textcircled{o}}) and pomp-diffusing (\textit{vaf\textsuperscript{sh}-a\textsuperscript{fg\textcircled{a}n\textcircled{o}}}) tokens from the abode of fires, \textit{and} the arrangement as regards him who casts the allotted twigs \textit{and} charcoal (\textit{k\textacute{h}\textacute{a}r akh\textacute{g}ar}) into \textit{them}. 37. About conveying prosperity (\textit{pad\textsuperscript{d}kh\textsuperscript{uh}h})\(^2\) to the abode of fires appropriately \textit{to} the capability of every one.

38. About the quality (s\textsuperscript{a}m\textsuperscript{a}n\textsuperscript{\textcircled{o}}) of water oozing out (\textit{a\textsuperscript{r}\textsuperscript{d}\textcircled{d}\textcircled{o}}) and that which is flowing in a channel (n\textsuperscript{\textacute{a}\textacute{e}v-t\textacute{a}k}). 39. About the characteristics of specified works which are contiguous in a place between two frontiers (\textit{mar\textsuperscript{\textcircled{z}d\textcircled{o}}}). 40. About a decision as to a sheep \textit{free} from unlawful influence—and so also \textit{as to one under} unlawful influence—which goes to the pasture of others with thievish intention, neglecting its own; and \textit{as to} that which \textit{does so} not with thievish intention. 41. About the quantity which \textit{one has} to provide, in the duration of a day and night, on admitting to pasture \textit{and} corn, in the case of an ox without defect (a\textsuperscript{\textacute{n\textacute{a}-g\textsuperscript{\textcircled{a}n\textcircled{o}}})), or \textit{of} another kind, or a horse, or a sheep, or a goat, or a pig, or an animal of any other kind.

42. About the distance of a residence of mankind from a river flowing in a channel. 43. About the period for letting a sheep graze at pleasure in a pasture, \textit{and} that for restraining \textit{it}; the time for not

---

\(^1\) These six words should, perhaps, be appended to the next clause of the sentence.

\(^2\) By providing fuel and other necessaries.
cutting trees, and that for little slaughter of sheep.
44. About an article of clothing which is associated
with defence, for fear of enemies, and becomes quite
a good omen (sukûn) among mankind, being imperceptible and appropriate. 45. About a tree with
stem uprooted, where and how it is allowable.

46. About a leader's causing a march of whatever
kind, the people being in motion through fear, and
they drive the sheep which are with the army on
account of molestation; also making the sheep
decide as to the pasture near to the road within
reach, the pasturing of the first of the species of
sheep, and letting them forth to pasture in succession
unto the last, and the reason of it.

47. About a person who is of note¹ on account
of wealth, and whatever is on the same subject.
48. About this intermixture of with-the-stream and
against-the-stream, with banks and without banks,
and waters running and down-pouring (nîyâpân), on
the road; that is, which of the waters, running or
down-pouring, is to be earlier reverenced by him who
is returning from the road, and the reason of it.
49. About the subordination of the disciple unto the
priest, as to eating, drinking, and plenty, goodness
and preciousness; and whatever is on the same
subject.

50. About that which occurs when foreigners
come to the frontier of Irân, and shall do damage to
Irân; and the frontier governors and fellow-cham-
pions have to repel the foreigners by fighting, to
save the Irânian people and property which were

¹ Reading mîn sakhûnag. Another guess would be min
nîrân-i (for nîsân-i), in which case the translation would be 'a
person free from indications relating to wealth.'
to be made foreign; and whatever is on the same subject.

51. About the advantage of punishing a violent thief by the members of the assembly, that owing to reliance upon the actions and convictions of the ancients, that owing to forming many priestly assemblies, that owing to providing a disciple for a priest, that through passing away after being high-priest, that through doing so without being high-priest, and that of much information on similar statements prior to any other resources.

52. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

---

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

1. One section of the first thirty of the Sakādūm contains particulars about reward by command of the religion, the bridge judgment of the destroyers of the well-commanding, and the provision for their destruction. 2. About the importance of a man, after fifteen years of age and when he has heard that there is a law which is good, having sought that law by having enquired about it. 3. About a man’s scrutinizing an action before doing it, when he does not know whether it be a sin or a good work,

---

¹ Corresponding to the eighteenth word, yīm, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the nineteenth Nask in other Rivāyats. This name, which is here written like Zaki-hat-min, should probably be Zīk-āft-tūm, meaning ‘the most intimate concerns,’ as the Nask refers chiefly to personal and family law; but it is called Askāram, or Sakadām, in the Rivāyats, which also state that it contained fifty-two kardah, fargs, or vērast; thus agreeing with the total of the sections mentioned in Chaps. XXXVIII, XLII.

² It is possible to read yēdatō, ‘sacred being,’ instead of dādō, ‘law.’
and when it is possible for him to set it aside and not to do it.

4. About advice as to **having** entered into a house in the night by the light of a fire, or when one has noticed it in this place, though he goes elsewhere; also the watchful destruction of an injured person, or animal, or garment, and the retribution for the injury. 5. About the extent of any glitter of the sparks (**zakhsh-1-1** parkân), and the width and height of the doors of the constructed work of that appointed place of the fire.

6. About a new-born child, as to how one has to provide its place, connected lawfully with illumination\(^1\), more particularly for the first three nights. 7. About bringing a fire to **drive** away the overpowering fiend, and making the child taste first the Hôm-juice, so far as collected within its precincts (**varân**), and, secondly, the butter of **Maidbok-zarem**\(^2\) which is to be brought forward for it; also the watchfulness of the father and mother over the child, and the extent of their retiring (**navistanô**) from the two sides of the **new-born**. 8. About lawfully-made places of several kinds for the child, the limits and manner of the mother’s giving milk to the child, and whatever is on the same subject.

9. About carrying forth holy-water, or even a cooking-pot, to a fire, where the hands are purified and thoroughly washed; and the sin owing to an un-

---

\(^1\) To protect it from the demons who are supposed to be specially dangerous during the first three nights.

\(^2\) Equivalent to ‘mid-spring butter,’ the Av. **maidhyô-zaremaya**, ‘mid-verdure,’ being the season corresponding to the middle of the second Parsi month, which was early in May when the year commenced at the vernal equinox (see Bd. XXV, 6, 2r).
purified hand, not thoroughly washed, carrying them forth. 10. About the preservation of the cooking-pot, and the rest of one's operations with the fire, from defilement; but when, through want of care, defilement occurs, by the inexperience of any one bringing it to the fire, he who is careless is thereby contaminated, and the cooking-pot is properly placed in its position.

11. Arranging about properly-made bed-places (gāsvārakō) in a house, those for children and those for adults; also a decision about a case when a carpenter (dārgar) shall make a bed-place properly which one's own judgment considers improperly made, and when both consider it improperly, or when both consider it properly made; and more of whatever is on the same subject.

12. About what is the mode of producing seeing properly; and, when not seeing properly, the oculist (dādpān) to intrust with it is he who informs people, who wish for it, how to extract the defect of sight; if not, the people go on and hurt; also the penalty for hurting, and whatever is on the same subject.

13. About the insubordination of those accustomed to work (kār-khūgarān) to women and children; also that of a grown-up man who has been giving no food three times in succession; he, too, it is who advanced the fourth time, because, owing to giving no food a fourth time, the man is he who has to accomplish work unrestrictedly; and whatever is on the same subject.

---

1 See Chap. XVII, 6.

2 This passage appears to refer to that quoted in Farh. Oīm, p. 38, ll. 8, 9; though the latter part of Chap. XLI, 19 is more applicable to ll. 4–8 of the same page.
14. About the care of a pointed thing, that is, how it is to be carried to a dwelling in the world, how it is to be deposited, and the sin owing to keeping and depositing it otherwise. 15. And about every garment and utensil, even including such as a scum-pot, an hour-glass, and a dining-tray; that is, how they are to be deposited in the dwelling, and the sin owing to variously placing and taking care of them. 16. About a door which is properly made; how it is when it falls down, and a wound arises from it, the carpenter being innocent regarding it; and how it is when he is guilty.

17. About washing the head, the care of the water and the religious ritual therein, and whatever is on the same subject. 18. About the period for arranging the hair, in which they shave the hair. 19. About the shaving of a child the first time, and the ritual which is taught for it; the performance of shaving by an instructed barber and with a sharp razor, which is the appointed practice as regards the razor of adults, and that also for children with the children's razor, because it is settled healthfulness; his whetstone (sôn), and also the care of the razor. 20. About the number of the positions of a man, in which a barber can perform shaving, and that of the positions of the barber; and whatever is on the same subject.

21. About each one of those who are custodians (ktrük-kârânô), and the rules of the market; also their abstaining from wounding each other with a pike (têkh), or other implement, with which they

1 Or gâmak may mean 'a cup.'
2 Reading min gûnâgítâ.
shall perform their duty; likewise the sin owing to heedlessness. 22. About giving forth a pointed thing lawfully, and a wound owing to not giving it forth lawfully; lawfully taking and giving away a plate of broken victuals (pa'd'khûr), and a wound owing to doing it unlawfully; and whatever is on the same subject. 23. About the appointed place (dâd-gâh) of a horse-course and its distance from the middle of a town, the nature of the horse-course, the training (farhâng) and masters of manoeuvres (pa'dân-i farhângânô) when in it, the shooting of arrows on the horse-course, and the wound which occurs to man or animal, how it is when culpable, and how it is when not culpable. 24. About admitting a listener; where, why, and how he is to be admitted; and the guilt or innocence as regards a wound owing to him.

25. About the mode of making a sacred thread-girdle \(^1\), and the harm from an unusual formation of it. 26. About lawfully tying it, without the culpability (vazagîh) of unauthorised action; also when they do not tie it lawfully, but the girdling is knotted (virâqî-attô) and twisted owing to culpability (vazagânîh); and whatever is on the same subject.

27. About lawfully scratching with the nails, and the harm from unlawfully scratching. 28. About lawfully attending to a fire on the road; and, when one arrives at a ford through water, the sin which arises, as to fire, from not lawfully caring about the fire.

29. About warriors who mingle together in panic (mazangîh) and darkness; injury happens to one

\(^1\) See Dd. XXXIX, i n.
from the other, and the statement of the account published is that there was a state of terror; also whatever is on the same subject. 30. About the march of an army which is in fear, and that which is in a state of fearlessness which is the distinction of the army of Iran from those of foreigners. 31. About lawfully and habitually requiring a share, and the harm from unlawfully and unhabitually requiring it.

32. About carrying firewood, brought away from the hills, into the house; depositing it at first by the tongs (dast-pānakō); watching, turning, and inspecting it, and carrying it away to the fire; that is, how to do it lawfully, the sin owing to unlawfully performing it, and whatever is on the same subject. 33. About lawfully warming bull’s urine 1 by the fire, and the sin when it is not lawfully done.

34. About selecting a pasture, one ranked above the others; that is, how to do it lawfully, the sin when one shall do it otherwise, and, owing to that, he is really injured, or occasions injury. 35. About what is the mode of construction of a lawfully-formed farm-house (dast-kādakō), the dwelling of the people, and the place of the beasts of burden and cattle; also the sin when one shall construct it otherwise, and, owing to that, he is really injured, or occasions injury.

36. A decision about a case when one person has lawfully to force away a beast of burden from a control unlawfully exercised, and another person intrudes unauthorisedly, and vexes the district authorities (pad-dīhānān). 37. Also when being done un-

1 Intended for ceremonial purification.
lawfully, and the beast being away from its control unlawfully exercised, the other person intrudes lawfully; and when both persons act unlawfully, or when both act lawfully. 38. About lawfully tying, whereby things are hung up; and the sin when, through an unlawfully-tied fastening, anything is injured, or occasions injury. 39. About unlawfully keeping horses in a stable (âkhûr), and the sin owing to the unlawfulness. 40. And, as regards the cutting of trees and shrubs, where and how it is lawfully done, and the harm and sin owing to not lawfully cutting. 41. About the mode of washing clothing, and the sin owing to different modes. 42. About the mode of walking in, and the sin owing to unusual walking in. 43. About the custom of a man of the sagacious (dânâkvarân) on passing through water, and the harm and sin owing to acting otherwise.

44. About the kinds of canals (nâl)\(^1\) and fords, from those for two men passing, up to those for many; the dimensions of those which are large, and how much they are each separately sunk into the ground, without collecting water, when the ground is hard, and how much when it is soft. 45. The extent of their outer\(^2\) banks, and the inspection as to the banks when the water is brackish, warm, and flowing; how far when outside of the water, and how far when in the water. 46. When it is brackish, cold, and flowing; or brackish, warm, and stagnant; or sweet, warm, and flowing; how far when in the water, and how far when outside. 47. And, when

\(^1\) For irrigation.

\(^2\) Reading vîrûnag, but the word is miswritten nîrang-í.
brackish, cold, and stagnant; or sweet, cold, and flowing; or sweet, warm, and stagnant; how far when in the water, and how far when outside of the water. 48. What is the customary operation as regards the inspection of the banks; how is the stagnation (astīṇīdanō) within a pool dammed up (zarēh-stānō-aē), and the stone-work inside, from the canal which is for ten men passing, up to that for many; and how is the damming up inside of the canal, the stagnation within the pool dammed up, or the reedy jungle (vēsakō) when distributed and it becomes tall.

49. What are the mode and means of maintaining the supervision of a canal; which is that which one should maintain over the water of the canal when half is distributed, or, when not, one-third; and which is that when one-third is distributed, or, when not, one-fourth; a supervision which is animate or inanimate, and after those which are inanimate means are provided¹, the former animate ones are then at rest; and the harm and sin when they shall act otherwise. 50. And, as regards the same, what is the mode of passage of animals of various species, by swimming across the water; and the sin, owing to acting otherwise, when harm occurs. 51. About the trampling down at a ford through water, when one is newly completing it, and when the water is brackish and flowing, when it is brackish and stagnant, when it is sweet and flowing, and when it is sweet and stagnant; the reason of passing through on it, and such and such ways for proceeding at

¹ In the shape of sluices for regulating the supply of water for irrigation.
will thereon; so, also, observation as to the water which has remained behind for flowing, and the harm and sin when one does not properly observe it, but walks on.

52. About two of the warriors who meet together on the road, which of them was busy about the protection of his horse, and which about the preparation of food; also the usage and other things in similar matters. 53. The sin of having eaten food for refreshment on the road, that is, how the custom is a sin when they can act otherwise.

54. About the remedies for sheep and beasts of burden which reinfuse fresh life; and the extent of keeping the sheep, goat, cow, mare, ass, pig, and woman with the male. 55. About beasts of burden, sheep (anûmâänô), and women, for whom, on account of contraction of orifice, there is a use of means for making it not painful (atûtakô). 56. About the extent of the distance of a male beast from the female when it is necessary to be watchful. 57. About the distance that a man has to remove an ox that has destroyed some concealed hay (barkasag giyah) which is the hay of others, when they quarrel with him; how it is when it is allowable to bring the ox back to his home; and whatever is on the same subject.

58. About the security of a man from the death (ašš) of his fathers, and danger having arisen for him from a mouth of bad omen. 59. About the sin of a father owing to a child, when, being given by him to an ill-behaved person, he calls it and, when

1 Instead of khar va-khazûrâ, the MS. has khôr va-zak-ras.
2 Assuming that minênamakô-1 stands for apênamakô-1;
it comes, **there** may occur the sin of unlawfully terrifying sheep, and the beast of **burden** is beaten; **and** whatever is on the same subject. 60. About bringing\(^1\) a plant which is a medicinal herb, **and** whatever is on the same subject.

61. About a sociable feast (ham-myâzdîth) with idolators, that is, how it is **when** held authorishly, and how it is when **it** is not; **and**, when **one** gives the sociable feast, how it is **when they are to be considered** unhonoured, and how it is when they are to be considered more honoured even than the Irânians. 62. And about the broken victuals which the idolators **have eaten and** drunk therein.

63. About the proportion of meat with the bread in atonement for deprival of food\(^2\). 64. About an ordeal which is severe, and **one which is not severe**; **and** the evidence of acquittal from the achievement thereof. 65. About the secrets of the religion, **and** the sin owing to **their** being disclosed (gushûftô). 66. About the sin of speaking evil words to the wives of others. 67. About the extent of the most inferior house, village, community, **and** province; **and** that of the most superior. 68. And about what **was** the mode of residence of Frashôstar and Gâmâsp\(^3\) in a plundering (lâîskar) army, and their habits.

---

the copyist having mistaken **ap** for **az**, and substituted the Zvâris equivalent **min** for the latter which he supposed was a separate word.

\(^1\) Or 'abstracting.'

\(^2\) See Chaps. XVII, 6, XXXVII, 11.

\(^3\) Two brothers who were contemporaries of Zarâtûst. Frashôstar was his father-in-law, and Gâmâsp was prime minister of king Vistâsp.
CHAPTER XXXIX.

Sakādām Nask.

1. One section is the Hāktādāniṣṭān ('code of sequestrations'), particulars about a statement of seized property, the retention thereof, and how was the confinement of that which was animate; how it is when one keeps it in a shepherd’s-dog’s care, and how it is when in the sequestrator’s care (hāktādāko-dārth). 2. And when it is a seized horse of the warriors, how to keep it when it is not possible to retain it in confinement of any kind, and the damage which has arisen therefrom; what is the danger to occasion by it, how it is when the shelter (srāyīsṇā) ¹ is on all sides, and how it is when on one side; while the trust, when there is shelter, is in the extent of the shelter, how much and of what kind is the shelter.

3. When it is a seized beast of burden, after its coming into the possession of the sequestrator (hāktādak-dār), for how long he has to order work for the reasoning thought of the herdsman, and how is that of the sequestrator, in like manner, before he quite attains to his share; even through his own reasoning thought the work is authorisedly ordered, and how and in what manner is the ordering of his work. 4. And when the seized animal has offspring, in what mode he has to milk it, as well as the nourishment of the young, and whatever is on the same subject; also the sin owing to doing it unlawfully.

5. About the sequestrator when the beast of burden seized comes into his possession, how it is

¹ Av. thrā.
when its special reputation is altered, and how it is when it comes with utility and advantage for him. 6. About the seizer's keeping a sheep, which is seized, in his flock; that is, how the custom is produced, owing to its milk being for the sacred feast, and the notification of the feasts is owing to the seized sheep; when, too, it is not possible to keep it in the flock, what is the mode of confining it; and when it is not possible to keep it in confinement, what he has to do with it. 7. About the wool of a sheep which is seized; that is, how it is when the shearing is even before the various times specified, and the sin of shearing when it is before the time specified, or one shears when there is no reason for shearing. 8. About the lambing (gurûsidō) of the sheep seized, and the sin owing to its not lambing.

9. About sheltering (srudanō) the seized animal in the most public place in a house, village, community, or province. 10. About the sin of the shepherd when, without saving it for the sequestrator, and through the guilelessness of the sequestrator, he shall carry away a female; and the sin which is owing to the offence as regards unlawfully beating and wounding it, before it is seized for the buyers of meat (khûr-kharānō), and other offences regarding it. 11. About the time appointed, between the shepherd and the sequestrator, for leading and bringing the female, belonging to the sequestrator, to the place for which the time is appointed; in the case when the shepherd arrives and the sequestrator does

---

1 Instead of hakīdakō, 'seized,' the MS. has the very similarly written word avēzakō, 'pure.'
2 Compare sṛayīsnō in § 2, and srūdan in § 11.
not, how that which belongs to the sequestrator is to come into the possession of the sequestrator, and when; when it is the sheep or beast of burden of a sequestrator\(^1\), how it is to come into the possession of that sequestrator; when the sheep or beast of burden which is seized dies in the possession of the sequestrator, how and how long he has to shelter (srûdan) the young ones (gurûs) and wool of the same several sheep; and the sin when he does not shelter them, or does it otherwise.

12. About a sheep \(^2\) which is mingled among the flock of any one that is in sequestration, how it is when the shepherd, and how it is when the shepherd's dog, is its own; and when it is mingled among any flock owing to sequestration, how it is when the shepherd, and how it is when the shepherd's dog, [who is its own]\(^3\) goes to another flock; how it is when the first flock-owner, and how it is when the second, is its own. 13. About the killing of a seized sheep by a shepherd's dog for necessary provisions; that is, how it is allowable, and in what mode it is to be done.

14. About him unto whom the sheep or beast of burden which is seized is delivered when it comes into a district; and the sequestrator's informing the governor of the district, in whose herd the sheep or beast of burden which is seized remains, as to the species, colour, and form of it\(^4\). 15. Watching over

---

\(^1\) Perhaps another sequestrator is meant.

\(^2\) The first case seems to be that of an unseized sheep in a seized flock, and the second that of a seized sheep in an unseized flock.

\(^3\) The words in brackets are supplied by guess, to fill up a blank space left by the repairer of the MS. on one of his patches.

\(^4\) Reading va-darand-ī denman.
a man with sheep, who is in a disabled state of illness owing to a wound received in his duty as regards slaughtering; the case when he is concealed from a passer-by (amat nihān min vidâr) and there is protection, when he is an eater and there is no protection, when he is not eating and there is protection, and when he is not eating and there is no protection.

16. About the distraction\(^1\) of a sequestrator as regards a sheep or beast of burden which is seized, when it is one out of four varieties\(^2\), and when one out of three; when he nourishes it for half a year, and when for the duration of a year; when that which he obtains is a young one, and when that which he obtains is large, where and what is a shelter for it, and, as to the care of it, how it is when in a grain vault (kīgārakō-1), and when it is under a tree; how it is when in a damaged cellar (varkhō-1-i kūstakō), and how it is when in a cage (pangar-1) which is not incomplete, but is broken, or is not incomplete and is sound, or is complete and sound.

17. About treasure which they find in the surroundings of a dwelling, and that which they find within the limits of the dwelling of any one. 18. About buried treasure when it is found by the side of a

---

\(^1\) Reading hāzakō, but it is possibly a contracted form of ayāvakō, 'gain.'

\(^2\) If it were allowable to omit this word, āyūnaakō, 'variety,' and to substitute 'gain' for 'distraction,' the sentence would stand as follows:—'About the gain of a sequestrator as regards a sheep or beast of burden which is seized, when he nourishes it for one-fourth, when for one-third, when for half a year, and when for the duration of a whole year.' This seems more intelligible than the text as it stands in the MS.
road, and the ground is hard, how it is when it is one finger-breadth below, and how it is when it is two finger-breadths; as well as (ham-gûn) when the ground is soft, how it is when it is two finger-breadths below, and how it is when it is three finger-breadths. 19. When it is found within the road, and the ground is hard, how it is when it is two finger-breadths below, and how it is when it is three finger-breadths; and when the ground is soft, how it is when it is three finger-breadths below, and how it is when it is four finger-breadths. 20. When it is in an ascent or descent, there where one turns out from the road, and the ground is hard, how it is when it is below up to the instep, and how it is when it is up to the middle of the leg (patîstân); and if soft, how it is when it is below up to the middle of the leg, and how it is when it is up to the knee. 21. When it is in a stream of water, and the ground is hard, how it is when it is below up to the knee, and how it is when it is up to mid-thigh; and when the ground is soft, how it is when it is below up to mid-thigh, and how it is when it is up to the testicles. 22. When it is in a ford through the water, and the ground is hard, how it is when it is below up to the testicles, and how it is when it is up to the navel; and when the ground is soft, how it is when it is below up to the navel, and how it is when it is up to the mouth. 23. And when it is in a kitchen (âskhânô), the middle of a garden (van), or a sheepfold (pâh-hastô); that is, how it is when it is not a permanent residence (âfrâz-mânîsnô) of any-

1 Supposing that Pâz. âavad is intended for âfrapad.
2 That is, up to the shin.
body, and how it is when it is a permanent residence.

24. About him who nourishes a sheep which is seized; that is, how it is when it is out of his store, and how it is when he nourishes it as it arrives.

25. About a dispute as regards a sheep that is seized, when one person says it was born of the colour of the mother, and another one says it was of her form, both being true; or one person mentions a single characteristic truly, and another one mentions many characteristics of it untruly; the cases when they mention its peculiarities otherwise, and in what manner; and whatever is on the same subject.

26. About a sheep seized, which has to pass on through the loftiest places in which there is lawfully shelter; and how there are three years, three existences (ahvôn), three places, nine occasions, and also many other regulations on the same subject.

Chapter XL.

Sakādām Nask.

1. One section is the Ziyānakistān (‘code of the injured’), about anything which is animate—and that which is inanimate—injured through lawfully living, giving, receiving, or delivering back; the duty of protection and care for both kinds; the nourish-

1 The utility of these minute details was probably to determine how long the treasure had been buried, and for what purpose, and whether there was any possibility of the rightful owner being still alive.

2 Reading darand-f denman.

3 Supposing that pēs stands for pāh.
ment, extension, sustentation, stimulation, establishment, consolation, and also gratification of an animate being; and the retribution for sin due to unlawfulness as regards the same matters.

2. About an example of a damaged gift, in the case when one gives the thing to a poor (gadãk) person at an appointed time, and when at one unappointed; and in the case when one gives him an increase, where and what is the increase. 3. A decision about a shepherd when they shall bring him back an animal\(^1\), when damaged, before its subdivision; what he obtains for the damaged animal when not delivered back at the time of subdivision; when the duty about it is dictated by a religious man, and when he keeps it in his own possession.

4. About property which is inanimate, whose subdivisions, each separately, when one keeps them in use\(^2\), and when in reserve (armêstô), are greater and less in value; that is, through so much effecting of penance (avâkangîsnô) worthily, or through so much bringing of interest; and the capital is the same in value, the increase being the growth of dividends.

5. About the reason why the sin of an injured person becomes innocent through not delivering back a damaged article\(^3\); and many opinions, on the same subject, are provided for our benefit.

---

1 Probably one sold by him to a butcher.
2 For trading, or pious purposes.
3 Suffering wrongs without complaint being meritorious.
Chapter XLI.

Sakādām Nask.

1. One section of the last twenty-two is the Vakhshistān ('increase code'), particulars about the progress of increase. 2. About atonement, surrender, and compensation for anything, through dispelling it by compensating, atoning, and surrendering to him whose own it is; the period thereof not being appointed. 3. When he, whose origination of compensation, atonement, and surrender is his own, has appointed the period thereof, the growing of the sin actively, after the appointed time, is increase.

4. About increase¹ which is active (kardakō), and that which is existent (zistakō); how it is when the existent becomes quite active, and how it is when both are suppressed (armēstī-alt). 5. About the extraction of increase upon increases which they may occasion up to an equality; where and which it is. 6. About a righteous gift; that is, how it is when overwhelmed by impoverishment, and how it is when its increase still proceeds.

7. About the progress of interest (vakhsh) upon effective wealth, when there is interest for it, and the interest thereon accumulates; also that which does not progress; how it is when the debtor (āvām-hōmōnd), even on bringing back the wealth, is opulent, and the lender (āvām nafsman) is opulent on asking for it; how it is when each is not opulent, and the debtor was not opulent on asking for it; and how it is when the lender (āvām khvēs)

¹ As this word is written vakhs (=nās) it is doubtful whether vakhsh, 'increase,' or vinās, 'sin,' is intended; and the context is insufficient to solve the doubt.
is opulent on asking for it, and the debtor is not opulent through the wealth.

8. About where and when the life (ziśṭanō) of the lender has once passed away, how it is when the loan is to be issued anew at the end of the issue (ziḥšnō), and how it is when it has existed in force, through the one issue by the deceased, and the interest accrues. 9. When the debtor passes away, how it is when he puts the interest into the property of any one through adoption, and how it is when it is the interest of the possessor of the wealth in both worlds.

10. About the peculiarity of retribution, the self-retribution of one liable to retribution for others, and the limit of one’s own retribution. 11. About the penalty (tāvān) of him who, purchasing animals for impregnation, gives each a bad male; when they are not pregnant, and when they may produce; and whatever is on the same subject. 12. About the time of allowing the admission of the male to the beast of burden, sheep, and camel, and the time of consignment to each separate male for whom reception remains; the case when it is the time for admission of the male (gūśn-hīlīḥ), and the case when it is such a consignment as when the period, which is really originating with the admission of the male, has continued. 13. When, on account of no consignment to the male at the proper time, the female goes on unimpregnated, and there is no pregnancy of the cow, mare, camel, sheep, goat, or pig, each separately, how much the penalty is; also the sin they commit.

14. About the camel, mare, cow, or sheep, unto whom there is damaged milk, void of butter (akarag), owing to the appointed time one postpones; also the
average and least milk of the mare, cow, goat, and sheep, that is, the measure of their one milking, each separately. 15. About the camel, that is, how much is its production of hair in a year, and the extent that the camel is surpassing therein among cattle; of them is also the ass that they allow to be seized upon for as much value as that of the oxen, and the mode of beating them up. 16. Where and how it is when the females of the camel and horse are a multiplying (afzūnā) tending to dissatisfaction; the increase even of increases of the ox, sheep, and goat progresses, and of them how much less is the multiplying of the female—which is an increase of increases tending to dissatisfaction, where it is extending over them—to be produced than that of the male.

17. The camel which is injured on the road, beyond the end of the appointed time, when they keep it at work unlawfully and the road is bad, when at work unlawfully and the road is good, and when comfortable at pasture, where seizing upon it becomes tending to dissatisfaction in several ways, and they are severally buying it when really invigorated, or at a price.

18. For how much increase of increases he stands up who is buying also an invigorated dog, or pig, at a price; and when it is that the increase and increase of increases remain undeveloped in them, as it does whenever property, on which the interest of the residue and income accumulates, is still for the children of the well-destined.

1 Páz. aōsanghen, both here and in § 18, no doubt for Av. aoganghem, as in Chap. XX, 58, the Av. ṣg and ṣs being much alike.
19. About him whose supplies some one is silently (agōpō) buying up, and the seller and important holder is quite bereaved, so that the bereaver has plenty for one deprived of food on a summer's day, and plenty for him who is so also on a winter's day (dim-ikīk); also the supplying of mankind and fire lawfully, in the beginning, for a summer's day and night, and that for a winter's one. 20. About clothing when it is that which one strips off for donation. 21. About the penalty for a first deprival of food, and the sin of it; also the penalty of the second and third, up to the tenth.

22. About a plaint and defence as regards a debt and its interest, and the decision thereon; also how it is when, for keeping up the repayment, debts upon debts are cancelled so far as the continuance of interest; and whatever is on the same subject. 23. About the uselessness of supplies which are not authorised by the religion. 24. About buying a slaughtered sheep when the seller is bereaved by the delivery; also to how many sheep, in the two previous years, the increase and increase of increases thereof had specially to attain. 25. About where and what is that which would not conduce to increase, and what is that which would. 26. About the special sin and offence, the use of the milk, heart, and wool, the spreading about which tends to dissatisfaction, the increase of increases, and the good

---

1 See Farh. Oim, p. 38, ll. 4-8, and compare Chap. XXXVIII, 13.
2 Reading barā-zegtalūnt a kō, which word has been corrupted by the repairer of the MS.
3 Reading dīl, but the word can also be read sar, 'head.'
figure of any one sheep, and the regulation of every one.

27. About how the debtor has to announce the nature of the loan, which the lender, through irritation, does not approve; and, when the debtor has provided for a triple issue, when for a double issue, and even when he has for a single issue, the first year is free from begging his own time. 28. About the debtor and what he repays, when each year is announced and he does not assent; and how it happens, as regards the debtor, through many repayments, and all the postponements of the lender.

29. About causing the confiscation (pādīrāngaṁrīḥ) of a human being (gēr̥pīh), and its cessation owing to worldly work, where it is for one month, or, thence onwards, for a second, a third, a sixth, a ninth, or a year at worldly work, and where it is regarding several human beings; the production of gain which accrues upon that single human being; and whatever is on the same subject. 30. About the confiscation of a cloak (guḍād) in the winter, and of a skin-bag for holding water (maṣkōṁ āvādānō) in the summer; about whom they are appertaining to, on the passing by of the first ten nights, where it is after the bringing out of the cloak at the beginning of winter, and of the water-skin at the beginning of summer; or prior to the length of a month previous,

---

1 Supposing that madam stands for maman; the two words being sometimes confounded.
2 Who allows the debtor a longer time for repayment.
3 Literally ‘bodily form.’ The seizure of a slave of the debtor to work off the amount of the debt is evidently meant.
4 Reading va-saṁśnō instead of the very similarly-written nīkēśīṁnō, ‘explanation,’ of the MS.
severally, to the end of the winter as regards the cloak, and to the end of the summer as regards the water-skin; that is, for how much gain upon that one cloak, or water-skin, is the retribution of the confiscator to whom it is appertaining; and whatever is on the same subject.

31. About the increase of grains, and that of sheep with the progeny, milk, and wool that they may severally produce. 32. About the confiscation of clothes and implements by delivering them back to him who specially reckons many as his own; that is, how the produce (vakhsh) increases when he orders their use imperfectly, how it does when he does so not imperfectly, and how it does when he keeps them in inactivity. 33. About the produce of land on which grain is cast, and of that on which it is not cast (va-zak-ı an-madam ramıtuntô), when by delivery thereof it is self-exhausted. 34. And so also the produce of ornaments of gold and silver, and of red-coloured things, with many regulations on the same subject and what is connected therewith.

---

1 This seems the more probable meaning if we are to understand that the confiscation has been actually carried out at an improper season; but, if we suppose that it is avoided on account of the season, it would be better to translate as follows:—‘For how much gain upon that one cloak, or water-skin, is the confiscator, to whom it is appertaining, to be compensated.’

2 Possibly referring to the seizure of articles sold by a dealer, but not paid for.

3 The form an of the negative prefix is here used because the Zvâris an-madam is replaced by the Pâz. an-avar in pronunciation.
Chapter XLII.

Sakādām Nask.

1. One section, the Varistān (‘ordeal code’), contains particulars of that which, when it becomes manifest in any one, is indicative as to witchcraft; the bringing of remedies for the person who is rendered sickly by a wizard; the execution of the wizard, what the religious rite is in the legal proceedings, and the case when there is a religious rite in the legal proceedings. 2. About the case when, for want of legal proceedings, he is executed without the religious rite; and what it is when he dies through his own destruction of some one.

3. About the accomplishment of an ordeal by which, through the power of the spirit, there arises a manifestation of acquittal or incrimination of those maintaining inconsistencies as to witchcraft, destroying a righteous man, or other concealed instigations of sin; the time of its performance, and the place of hurtfulness of its continuance. 4. About the place of accomplishment; in what manner is the selection (fragārāndānā), limitation, and preparation of the abode in which the ordeal is performed; that which is to be carried forth to that abode, and that of which the carrying thereto is to be avoided; who is to be admitted to that abode, and who is not to be admitted; and that which, when it occurs there,

1 We should probably read ‘ and about the case when,’ supposing that mamān stands for madam, the reverse of what occurs in Chap. XLI, 28.

2 That is, when there is no evidence of the crime beyond the suspicions, real or assumed, of the accusers.
is a disturbance of the work, they separate (vangel) therefrom.

5. About those belonging to the place of ordeal (varistânîkân) and other officials there, the rites and customs therein, the ceremonial to be celebrated in the abode, and the invocation of the sacred beings for assistance. 6. What is the mode of performing the hot and cold ordeal; how is the leading forth of the accomplishers thereto, and of what Avesta is their uplifted recitation; how is the accomplishment of the hot and cold ordeal, and the manifestation of the acquitted and incriminated thereby; and many statements (gôkân) on the same subject.

CHAPTER XLIII.

Sakâdâm Nask.

1. One section is miscellaneous: about having sought an assistant who is brought, that is, in what mode it is proper; and the payment of an assistant who is a member of the community (dâhm)\(^1\), and also that of a foreigner (an-Aîr), in the same affair. 2. About how the coming of a man to confinement and fettering is through his own wealth, and whatever is on the same subject. 3. About confession through one, two, and three statements; and whatever is about it. 4. About the contempt of a disciple for a priestly master, which is an annoyance to him; the property belonging to the master, and the squandering that occurs in it.

\(^1\) The contradistinction here indicated between dâhm and an-Aîr is an important confirmation of Geldner's definition of Av. dahma as 'Vollbürger oder Mitglieder' (see Studien zum Avesta, 1882, p. 14).
5. The sin that is its own penalty through being liable to penalty, and the transgressor whose penalty is owing thereto; when they would unlawfully bring a penalty upon one liable to penalty, or one thereby inflicts a penalty upon him, of which one is aware that he is not capable (patûkô); and the time which one liable to penalty has for the payment of that penalty of his is until his attaining to opulence, when, after the appointment about the penalty, he becomes capable of an atonement. 6. About the accumulation (gângîth) of sin through the expedients of the wrathful (garâmakân), which are connected with much destruction of the righteous. 7. About the sin owing to which, among those that are wrathful, he who has drunk from a well on a road, or path, conceals the water for the sake of concealment.

8. About the sin of a judge who pronounces the sinner to be in innocence, and the innocent to be in some sinfulness. 9. About a judge acquainted with the law for ten years, him who is for eleven, him who is for twelve, him who is for thirteen, him who is for fourteen, and him who is for fifteen; that is, their decisions, each separately, on several specially prominent objects of acquaintance with the law, as regards decision and judgment.

10. About a daughter whose religious control, during the life of her father, resides in her mother for the joint life of the mother, but for the authorised giving her away there is the father. 11. About a daughter who is unprovided with a husband, and

---

1 See Chaps. XX, 74, XXII, 21.
2 Reading râf instead of lâ, 'not.'
who has no father and no mother, nor yet any of the brothers of the departed parents, and it is not even allowable to give herself away into guardianship by a husband.

12. About property which is bequeathed by will on passing away; that is, how it is when given, and how it is when it does not exist. 13. About the privilege of a father in giving property to his children according to his wish, and a son who is irreverent towards his father, so that some of the property of the father goes to the worthy mother; also when they would make irreverence towards the father the imputed characteristic (bâkht nîsânî), where a decree about the property of the father is decided upon; and whatever is on the same subject, as regards the extent of irreverence of the son towards the father, and the sin of it.

14. About the sin of a son who is accepted, when he recoils from that acceptance; the accepter of a living, or even a departed, father is so because it is the will of the people, and also for the worldly fame of a soul of the departed; and the ceremonial and obeisance are, moreover, for those of them within their own dwelling, owing to letting forth their generosity, and they shall provide them.

15. About the production and arising of even that property which a liberal person has not seen, if there be any one who has not lived liberally.

---

1 As aâgh also means 'where,' it is rather uncertain whether the irreverence is supposed to be the cause, or the effect, of the special provision for the mother which afterwards becomes a source of litigation.

2 An adopted son must be meant.

3 Supposing that min stands for mûn.
16. About the production and arising of something of the property of a damsel, even when she gives it by design only to him who is worthy.

17. About a damsel whom an idolator (dēvtyast) carries off from her own master, and would give to a Maeda-worshipper; that is, how it is justifiable for the Maeda-worshipper, having had that damsel in his possession, to seek a son by her, so long as the guardianship of the woman is with that man. 18. About a mother being guardian over a living father, owing to their having a son. 19. About the proper completion of a provision—that was for the decision of the supreme judge, on various statements, and was never otherwise—which is the provision of him who is a high-priest of the religion.

20. About the sin of a father through not satisfying the menstrual excitement of a daughter who has attained the capability of having a son (berman radīh); what it is when, through not satisfying the menstrual excitement of the daughter, he is sinful; and how it is when the daughter herself is sinful; also the symptoms of attaining the capability of having a son.

21. About where and which is that sin on the committal of which inadvertently one attains to deliverance thus, when it comes to his knowledge it is through a determined renunciation it goes away from its source; also which is that committal inadvertently which does not occur through him who is intelligent. 22. About the four more heinous forms of demon-service (sēdā-yazakih), and the three worst sins wherein they shall perform them; the ten existences that are furtherances, and the nine that are destroyers, of the world.
23. About a true statement through which, when one utters it, he is wicked and worthy of death. 24. About driving the bestowable benefit of the spiritual existence away from the world, when he who is destroying a righteous man walks openly in the world; how one section of the spirit's earth is that of a people\(^1\) destroying the righteous man, and the complaint of the spirits of fire, water, and plants, owing thereto; also how the bestowal of the allotment of a leading man is upon his inferiors. 25. About the three kinds of righteous men; one that is greater than water and earth, animals and plants, one that is equal to them, and one that is less; and what is the arrangement of—as it were—the conjoined formation of those who are somewhat outside of the three kinds.

26. About the grievous bridge-judgment for carrying forth dead matter to water, or to fire, with which there is evidence; and the heaviness of the spirit due to dead matter in the water. 27. The good work of him who brings the dead matter\(^2\) of man or dog,

\(^1\) Some neighbouring nation of unbelievers is probably meant, such as the Byzantines; as we must always recollect that the compiler is summarizing the contents of the Pahlavi commentary written in Sasanian times (see Chap. I, 3).

\(^2\) See Chap. XXVII, 4. It appears from this section that the dead matter of an evil creature, such as a snake or frog, was considered to pollute the water as much as that of a good creature. § 28, however, admits the expediency of killing noxious creatures in the water when it is impossible to take them out beforehand; and this is in accordance with Vend. V, 35–38 (W.) which teaches that an apostate defiles no one when dead (any more than a dried-up frog that has been dead a year), because he defiles while living. This rule was evidently intended to remove all scruples as to killing such creatures, but it applies to them only when recently killed; hence the necessity of removing them, from any place liable to
or that of the serpent or frog, out of the water. 28. About the destruction of the serpent and frog, and other aquatic noxious creatures, in the water when it is only thus possible, and carrying them out from it when it is possible. 29. About the gratification of the spirit of the world, and the vexation of the demons, owing to the destruction of them.

30. Where and what are the tokens of the good management and well-operating drinking-party (tōṣṭih) of a neighbour not of the same district (ahamshatvō nazd). 31. About the sin of him who, after joining a drinking-party from sunset (hū-frāshmōk-dādō), pulverizes the road (rāh tekhnunēdō), keeps the door opened, and would unlawfully make an uproar.

32. About Aūharmazd having produced the bodies and members of animals—through having created the body of the sole-created ox with satisfaction, as assistance for mankind—because they are repeated for protection, and also for the ceremonial for sacred beings specially declared. 33. About the reason of making offerings (aūstōfrīdō) to the sacred beings, for the increase of power of the allotters of destiny in the allotment of destiny; the connection of that acknowledgement (padīrisnō) and of the benefit and advantage of the recompense thereof; the proper maintenance of that acknowledgement, through the means and efficacy of the spiritual bridge-judgment of sin, and the fear of worldly disaster and harm from not properly maintaining the perpetual acknowledgement in force pollution, as soon as possible after death, common sense being preferable to logical consistency.

1 Supposing that vōp stands for khūp.
(dēn patūkīh), and from the setting up even of ruin thereby; the reasonable control of the offering to each one of the sacred beings therein is for the skilful member of the community (hūnarīk dāhm) of whatever kind, and is not produced by intrusting the consecration to the violent, more particularly to those whom one specially enumerates; the sin and retribution owing to having given it to those who are of that class; and more upon the same subject.

34. About the damage and injury of the world owing to greed (āzō) and its fellow-miscreations, and him who is their supporter and abettor, the idolator (dēvīyastō), also the wolf of many kinds and noxious creatures of various species; because the occurrence of their fiendishness is due to the original fiend, and the means for strengthening their fiendishness are derived from the destruction of all mankind and the other primary worldly creations which are aiding mankind. 35. Advice to mankind about smiting and destroying the evil domination (dūskhshasarinīdanō) of the world by those injurers, and the merit manifest for themselves therein; the object and spiritual reward for smiting and killing each one of the wolves and noxious creatures, and, as regards the same reward, the perfection of that for destroying a two-legged wolf; and whatever is on the same subject.

36. About advice as to not reverencing the evil spirit and demons, whereby the observing (var’zō) of the several ceremonies and gratifications of the sacred beings would be more particularly irregular in any manner whatever, and the damage and

---

1 A term applied to an idolator.
harm owing to those who are irregular and ill-observant, through being inclined for that irregularity and ill-observance, would become an oppressive presidence (paḍgahih) of the demons over the creatures; also the vice of clamorous talking (drâyân gôgith) and the damage owing thereto, and the pleasure of the demons due to the same and other things which are irregular. 37. Advice about the reason, habit, and primitive practice of not chattering, and other good customs, during eating and drinking; the gratification of the sacred beings owing to that primitive practice of good customs by mankind, and the unself-devoting (a-khvêś-dâk) is he who is not maintaining it.

38. Through the ceremonial of which sacred being is the greater welcome (mâhmânôtarîth) of a high-priest and of any good work of each one of the five periods of the day and night; the reward and advantage owing to celebrating the ceremony of each of them separately in its own period, and also other means and regulations in the same statement.

39. It is righteousness that is perfect excellence.

Chapter XLIV.

1. The Vendîdâd² contains particulars of Âiharmazd having produced the pleasure of mankind by

---

1 Whereby the devotions are disturbed, or rendered ineffectual.
2 Corresponding to the nineteenth word, drîgûbyô, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the twentieth Nask in other Rivâyats. In the Dînkard its name is semi-Zvâris, either Gvîd-shêdâ-dâd or Vîk-shêdâ-dâd, the Av. dâta vîdaêva, 'law opposed to the demons.' In the Rivâyats it is called Gud-dêv-dâd, Vendîdâd, or Vîndâd, and is stated to consist of twenty-two kardah, or fargards, the number it still contains. It is generally considered that the Vendîdâd now extant is a collection of frag-
that place where they specially make a residence, and the advantage from the same production. 2. About the formation of sixteen perfect places specially enumerated, and also the adversity which has happened to each separately.

3. About Aûharmazd's disclosing the religion first among mankind to Yim; its non-acceptance by Yim owing to attachment (asrûnôth) to the religion of the ancients; and the acceptance of other things to develope, extend, and improve the world thereby. 4. About the reason of the needfulness of making the enclosure that Yim made (var-î Yim kârd), the command and instruction by Aûharmazd to Yim, the making by Yim just as Aûharmazd commanded and instructed, and whatever is on the same subject.

5. About what the comfort of the spirit of the earth is most owing to, what its discomfort is more particularly owing to, and from what its greatest gratification has arisen.

6. About the sin of pollution owing to carrying a corpse by a single person, relating, however, to that which a dog has not seen.

7. About the food, ments, but it is evident, from the close correspondence between the author's description and the present contents, that this fragmentary state of the text existed in his time; and there is every probability that any mutilation that exists in the text occurred before Sasanian times. The author, however, sometimes omits to mention subjects that are repeated, so it is just possible that some of these repetitions are of later date. He also makes no allusion to the twelfth fargard (see § 51 n).

1 Vend. I, 2 (W.).
2 Vend. I, 3-20.
3 See Chap. XIII, 6-8.
4 Vend. II, 1-19.
5 Vend. II, 22-43.
6 Vend. III, 1-13, 22, 23, 34.
7 Vend. III, 14; the latter clause referring to the commentary on Pahl. Vend. III, 48 (Sp.).
clothing, and place of him who becomes polluted and worthy of death through a corpse, on account of carrying it alone (aëvakō-barīh rái) 1. 8. About how the several precautions of mankind and other pure creatures are taken, as regards a corpse 2 which has become polluted by another corpse 3.

9. About the pleasure of the spirit of the earth owing to sowing and tilling, and its vexation owing to not sowing and not tilling; the blessing upon the sowers, and the advantage and merit owing to sowing, on account of particulars about the nourishment and protection of the religion thereby 4. 10. About the destruction of the demons which arises from the sprouting, growing, and ripening of corn; and the good success of mankind from the eating of it 5.

11. About the sin of burying a corpse through sinfulness, and for how much time is the uselessness of the ground in which the burial may be performed 6. 12. About the power of the good religion for wiping away sin from human beings 7.

13. About the sin of deceiving by an avaricious person (paistically) as regards what he has consumed and given, and the grievousness of other breaches of promise; the danger, even in the worldly existence, from maintaining him, and the retribution it is important for him to make 8.

1 Vend. III, 15-19.
2 The person polluted in this manner being considered as unclean as the corpse itself.
3 Vend. III, 20, 21 and perhaps some commentary on Pahl. Vend. III, 71 (Sp.) now lost.
5 Vend. III, 32, 33.
6 Vend. III, 36-40.
7 Vend. III, 41, 42.
8 Vend. IV, 1-16.
14. About where there is steadfastness in the religion there is also a manifestation of this: when one becomes liberal—as to every benefit that exists for him—towards those of the same religion who come forward with a request. 15. About the extent of sleeping in the day and night, and other matters as to occupation which occurs daily.

16. About the grievous sinfulness of having taken a false oath, so that, apart even from the testifying retribution of the property, the oath taken thereon has also an efficacy very much for the accusers, which, on account of Mitrô, Srôsh, and Rashnû, is an awful destroyer and adversary for one's own person, wife, child, and property; also the grievous bridge-judgment which is an appendage to one's own soul.

17. About the sin of bringing firewood, with which dead matter is mingled, to a fire; and this too, that is, how and when one is innocent therein.

18. About a ditch (gôl), which is not always a stream (nâvô), when the water has to pass through it, and also that which is always a stream, when one wants to increase the water therein, how often and how one

---

1 Vend. IV, 44. 2 Vend. IV, 45.
3 Av. Mîthrô, the angel of the sun's light, friendly to man, and, hence, insisting upon the fulfilment of every promise (mîthrô). He is supposed to keep an account of all breaches of promise (see Dd. XIV, 3), and to mediate between the departed soul and its accusers (see Mkha. II, 118), in doing which he co-operates with the angels of obedience (Srôsh, see Chap. IX, 3 n) and justice (Rashnû, see Chap. XX, 153 n) who estimate and weigh its good works and sins, and decide upon its fate at the bridge of judgment.
4 Vend. IV, 46, 50–55. 5 See Chap. XXVII, 4 n.
has to inspect them for fear of dead matter having been there.

19. About death which is by reason of water or fire, and does not occur through the supremacy of water or fire, but is owing to the demons. 20. About the great advantage owing to rain, and connected with raining on dead matter and the bodily refuse of depositories for the dead. 21. About the greatness and goodness of the law opposed to the demons for cleansing, as compared with other utterances.

22. About pollution owing to bodily contact (hamkerpaḳih) with a corpse, and to bodily contact with him who is in bodily contact with a corpse. 23. About the wicked villain who is an unrighteous apostate alive, and abstaining from association (avâḳih) with him. 24. About how long is the time of pollution of a house in which a dog or human being passes away, the carrying away theretofore of anything going thereto, and the avoidance of it; the place into which any one goes out, the feeding, and other things in that house within three steps, and whatever is on the same subject. 25. About a woman whose child dies in the womb, and which becomes dead matter; and whatever is on the same subject.

---

1 Vend. V, 5–7; but the last clause refers to a Pahlavi commentary found only in the manuscripts.
2 Vend. V, 8, 9.
3 See Chap. XIX, 3.
5 The Vendidad itself, see § 1 n.
7 Vend. V, 27–34.
8 Vend. V, 35–38.
9 Vend. V, 39–44 (W.), and commentary on Pahl. Vend. V, 134 (Sp.).
10 Vend. V, 45–56.
26. About useless and polluted clothing, that which is cleansed for six months. 27. About the grievous sinfulness of irregularly letting forth clothing, as much as a single double hem, upon a corpse.

28. About how long is the time of the uncultivated state of the land—free from admitting water and being sown—on which a human being or a dog passes away; the inspection of the whole land on account of the risk of dead matter having been there, and afterwards admitting water upon it; the sin when, through not exploring, dead matter is in that place, and the water comes on to it; and whatever is on the same subject.

29. About how to bring a corpse out of the water, the extent of the pollution of the water around the corpse, the purity after bringing away the corpse from it, and whatever is on the same subject. 30. About where the bodies and bones of the departed are deposited, and whatever is on the same subject.

31. About how soon is the rushing of the fiend of corruption (nasus drugdo) upon a human being or dog that has passed away at the appointed time, and upon one who has done so before the appointed time through the defectiveness (ahugagith) of the worldly existence; where the clothing of this one is which is useless, and which and how is the washing

---

1 Av. khshvas maungho; Vend. V, 57-59 (W.), and commentary on Pahl. Vend. V, 167 (Sp.).
2 Pāz. dhovana which is here assumed to be equivalent to Pers. do bun. It is probably a reading of the Pahlavi word ṣṛ or ṣṛ in Pahl. Vend. V, 169, 172, which has been variously read as gūgan, 'a dirham,' dūkō, 'a spindle,' or yūkō, 'a rag;' the last of which would best suit the context here.
3 Vend. V, 60-62.
4 Vend. VI, 1-9.
5 Vend. VI, 26-41.
6 Vend. VI, 44-51.
of that which is for washing. 32. About the heinous pollution and grievous sinfulness of devouring dead matter, or of bringing it to fire or water through sinfulness. 33. About the winter, the demon-produced terror, the spider and locust, sickness of many kinds, and much other evil, which become threatening in the world owing to the formation of dead matter. 34. About how to cleanse wood, corn, and fodder from the dead matter which comes upon it.

35. About medical treatment with spells, the knife, and herbs; how to test a medical man, the fee for curing, and whatever is on the same sub-

---

1 Vend. VII, 1–5, 10–16. Nothing is said about VII, 6–9, 17–22 (which passages are merely a repetition of V, 27–30, 57–62), but this omission may be owing to the fact that these passages are so abbreviated in the MSS. as to be easily overlooked, especially by a reader of the Pahlavi version only.


3 Pahl. tanand va-mâk (≡ mēg), evidently equivalent to the Av. sūnā madhakhayauska of Vend. VII, 26, which are rendered by tān mēgō-ḵ in the Pahlavi version. The identity of Av. madhakha with Pahl. madag, or mēg, Pers. maṣg, mala'ḵ ‘a locust,’ has long been recognised (see Darmesteter’s Études Irannienes, II, p. 199). But the meaning of Av. sūn = Pāz. tān has been merely guessed to be ‘a mosquito,’ the Avesta word having been transcribed as sīn, or sīn, in the prose Sad-dar, LXXII, 2, and explained by the Persian gloss pāsah, ‘a gnat or fly,’ by some copyists, while others have read sān (for sīn) and have substituted its synonym sāl, ‘a year,’ or have read bīs, ‘a poisonous herb,’ instead of pāsah. With regard to the word ǰnō tanand, ‘spider,’ in our text, it may be observed that it has descended from a much older copy of the Pahlavi Vendīdād than any that could have been consulted by the author of the Sad-dar, and it is easy to see how an original Pahl. ǰnō could have been read ǰnō in Pāzand by later copyists of the Vendīdād.

4 Vend. VII, 26, 27.

5 Vend. VII, 28–35.
ject\(^1\). 36. About the place on which a corpse is fettered (garovi-aitō), and also that in which it is buried through sinfulness; and in how much time it becomes pure, in each case separately\(^2\). 37. About the much lodgment of the demons there where a corpse is buried (nikān), and the merit of laying open (āskārinīdanō) the place of burial (nikānth) of a corpse\(^3\).

38. About the duration of not drinking by a woman who has miscarried (visistakō); also her not feeding on the liquid of that which is watery food\(^4\). 39. About the washing of a metallic, stony, or any other cup-like article, upon which dead matter has come, and which is not pronounced useless\(^5\).

40. About the animal (gōspend) that has eaten dead matter, and the plant with which dead matter is mingled\(^6\). 41. About the sin of holy water being brought to water which is tainted with dead matter\(^7\).

42. About the house (khānō) in which a dog or a human being passes away\(^8\). 43. About how large and how one has to make the vault (kadakō) for the sake of a corpse in a dwelling (mān), carrying the corpse to it, when the time comes to expose and avoid it, and whatever is on the same subject\(^9\).

---

\(^1\) Vend. VII, 36–44.  
\(^2\) Vend. VII, 45–50.  
\(^3\) Vend. VII, 51, 52, 55–59, which refers to tombs and mausoleums (uzdaēza uzdistā) and not to the legal dakhmas, or depositories for the dead. §§ 51, 52 are described after the others.  
\(^4\) Vend. VII, 60, 67–71. The contents of VII, 61–66 are not mentioned, being abbreviated in the MSS. as a repetition of V, 46–51.  
\(^5\) Vend. VII, 73–75.  
\(^6\) Vend. VII, 76, 77, where, however, plants are not mentioned.  
\(^7\) Vend. VII, 78, 79.  
\(^8\) Vend. VIII, 1–3.  
\(^9\) Vend. VIII, 4–25.
44. About the baseness (garas)\(^1\) and grievous sinfulness of the decree (vīgrīth)\(^1\) of death, unnatural intercourse\(^2\). 45. About a dry corpse which has been dead throughout a year\(^3\). 46. About the merit of having brought unto purity a corpse-burning fire, a fire burning bodily refuse, or of an encampment (sarāy-īkō)\(^4\); also those which artificers, each separately, keep in use one has to secure, when the work is done, for the appointed fireplace (dād-gās)\(^5\).

47. About washing the polluted who have been in bodily contact with a corpse, or moving it; divers preferences as to the purifier, the rite of washing, and the reward of purifiers, worldly and also spiritual\(^6\). 48. About the shining of the sun, moon, and stars alike discontentedly upon the polluted\(^7\). 49. About the gratification of all the creatures of Aūharmacēd by the purifier, when he produces purification for the polluted and suchlike beings (āngunt-aftān); also his reward\(^8\). 50. About the strength and aid which are given to the fiend of corruption (nasūs drūgō) by him who does not understand purifying, and yet would accomplish it; also the sin thereof at the bridge of judgment\(^9\). 51. About the triumph of the Yathā-ahū-vairyō\(^10\) in smiting the fiend and in healing\(^11\).

---

\(^1\) Both these words are blotted and doubtful in the original MS.
\(^2\) Vend. VIII, 31, 32.
\(^3\) Vend. VIII, 33, 34.
\(^4\) Or it may be sar aṣpō, 'a troop of horse.'
\(^5\) Vend. VIII, 73–96.
\(^6\) Vend. VIII, 35–72, 97–107, IX, 1–39.
\(^7\) Vend. IX, 41.
\(^8\) Vend. IX, 42–44.
\(^9\) Vend. IX, 47–57.
\(^10\) The Ahunavair formula is so called from its first three words (see Chap. I, 7 n).
\(^11\) Vend. IX, 45, 46, X, 1–20, XI, 1–20 may probably be all alluded to in these few words; but nothing is said about the twelfth fargard. This omission is singularly in accordance with the fact
52. About the species of dogs; the worthiness of the shepherd's dog, the village dog, and others also; how to maintain and nourish (srâyînidânanô) them with nourishment, and the sin owing to killing or even improperly maintaining them, each separately; and whatever is on the same subject.  
53. And this, too, when a dog becomes useless (abôn) or hurtful, what is to be done with it, and how it is to be kept.  
54. About authorisedly killing the dog-wolf.  
55. About the thirty-one dispositions among dogs, which are just as among the three special professions and divers others of five descriptions.  
56. About the grievous sinfulness of killing a water beaver, and statements (gôkân) of the penalty.  
57. About the sin which gave an Iranian to foreigners (an-Aîrânô).  
58. About the sin for those three males who have debauched a woman that the same fargard is omitted in all very old copies of the Vendîdâd with Pahlavi version, in which, although the fargards are numbered, the thirteenth immediately follows the eleventh. The Kopenhagen MS. No. 2, in which the twelfth fargard occurs with a Pahlavi version, is said to be a revision of the Vendîdâd text compiled in the last century, and other copies of the Pahlavi twelfth fargard have been derived from this revised text. The omission of this fargard in all the old MSS. cannot be satisfactorily attributed to the loss of some folios in an older copy, because no fargard is likely to fill exactly a certain number of folios; the loss must also have occurred very shortly after the last revision of the Pahlavi text, to account for the author of the Dînkard not finding the Pahlavi of this fargard in the ninth century.

Vend. XIII, 29-38.  
Vend. XIII, 41-43.  
Vend. XIII, 44-48 which detail the thirty-one particulars in which dogs resemble people of eight avocations, three of which are the professions of priests, warriors, and husbandmen.  
Vend. XIII, 50-56, XIV, 1-18.  
Vend. XV, 2.  
Reading va/zak 3, but it may be va/zak-aê, 'for the other.'
who is pregnant, or the wife with a child at the breast, or a daughter of others; and the sin owing to similar sin\(^1\). 59. About the guardianship and nourishment which it is important to provide for a child that is seen to be improperly protected, or for a dog when it is born without a guardian; and whatever is on the same subject\(^2\).

60. About menstruation, the heinousness of its pollution, and how much one has to abstain from it\(^3\). 61. The cleansing from the menses, the time of the cleansing, and the nature of the cleansing of any person or thing polluted by the menses, or that which becomes inefficient thereby; and whatever is on the same subject\(^4\). 62. And about the grievous sinfulness of having sexual intercourse with a menstruous woman\(^5\).

63. About the deadly bridge penalty of those who have not sustained the judges\(^6\). 64. About the care of the hair and nails, and the sin owing to want of care\(^7\).

65. About the apostasy of him who is bringing a mouth-veil, a vermin-killer, various sacred twigs\(^8\),

---

\(^1\) Vend. XV, 8–16.

\(^2\) Vend. XV, 17–45, though the last clause may include the remainder of this fargard.

\(^3\) Vend. XVI, 1–7, 13–16, also XV, 7.

\(^4\) Vend. XVI, 7–12.

\(^5\) Vend. XVI, 17.

\(^6\) Vend. XVI, 18 = XVII, 11.

\(^7\) Vend. XVII, 1–10.

\(^8\) Pahl. padām (Av. paitidāna, Pāz. penōm). It 'consists of two pieces of white cotton cloth, hanging loosely from the bridge of the nose to at least two inches below the mouth, and tied with two strings at the back of the head. It must be worn by a priest whenever he approaches the sacred fire, so as to prevent his breath from contaminating the fire.' (Haug's Essays, p. 243, note 1.)

\(^9\) Av. khrasfrāghna, an implement for killing snakes and other noxious creatures; it may be made of any material, but a leathern whip is recommended.

\(^10\) Av. baresman, a bundle of slender rods, formerly twigs of
or a goad or scourge, which is exceptional, and maintains that it is that which is necessary. About the disapproved one, and the bridge-judgment upon him, who sleeps on through the whole night, so as not to accomplish his proper duty. 67. And the approval and reward of him who does not sleep over religious observances, so as to accomplish his proper duty. 68. About the progress of secretly-advancing ruin (sêgô) through that exhibitor of evil religion who wears no sacred thread-girdle, and his not wearing it as it were by law.

69. About the proper duty and great value of the Parôdarsh bird, and the great good work that gives it a morsel of meat which is the size of its body, the liberalization of the primitive temperament through righteousness for the righteous man. 70. About the hurry of the fire for kindling for the untroubled watching of the night, and the merit owing to law-

particular trees, but now thin metal wires, usually from five to thirty-three in number according to the nature of the ceremony. These rods are tied together by a central girdle, passing three times round them and knotted just like the sacred thread-girdle round the waist of a Parsi; but this girdle is formed of six thread-like ribbons split out of a leaflet of the date-palm and twisted together. The bundle, when properly purified, is laid upon the crescent-shaped tops of two adjacent metal stands, whence it is taken up by the officiating priest, to hold in his left hand during certain recitations.

1 Av. astra and sraosha-karana, implements for scourging and punishing sinners and criminals.
2 Vend. XVIII, 1–4. 3 Vend. XVIII, 5.
4 Vend. XVIII, 6. 5 Vend. XVIII, 8–10.
6 ‘The foreseer’ of the dawn, an epithet of the domestic cock.
7 Pahl. râdînîdanô-f mûnâk-f kâdîmîn.
8 Vend. XVIII, 13–17, 23–26, 28, 29.
fully kindling it; also the blessing of the fire on mankind, when pleased and untroubled.  

71. About the four special sins by which the fiend receives vigorous pregnancy, and the atonement for each separately.  

72. About the grievous sinfulness, trouble, lamentation (navīktīḥ), and harm that proceed from a courtezan; also the advantageousness of her destruction.  

73. About the retribution for the sin of having sexual intercourse with a menstruous woman.  

74. About the combat (kūshiṣnō) of the evil spirit with Zarātūst, the victory of Zarātūst therein, and whatever is on the same subject.  

75. About Zarātūst having enquired of Aūharmaṣd how, and by what means, one has to confound the evil spirit and other demons, and his reply.  

76. About the gratification of Vohūman, the archangel, owing to the washing and bringing back to use of polluted clothing; also praise unto Aūharmaṣd for his narrating the care of the clothing.  

77. About the reward which they give up to a human soul for the sake of kindness, and whereunto how is the attainment to exaltation of him who is given it.  

78. About the going of Vohūman to meet the souls of the righteous, the notification of their position, their announcement for reward, and the contented progress of the souls of the righteous to their [home], to the throne of Aūharmaṣd and

---

1 Vend. XVIII, 18–22, 26, 27.  
2 The Av. drug is feminine.  
3 Vend. XVIII, 30–59.  
4 Vend. XVIII, 60–65.  
5 Vend. XVIII, 66–76.  
6 Vend. XIX, 1–10.  
7 Vend. XIX, 11–14.  
8 Vend. XIX, 20–25.  
9 Vend. XIX, 27–30.  
10 This word, mēhan (Av. maēthana), has been omitted by the
the archangels, which is made of gold. 79. About the terror of the demons owing to the scent of the righteous, and the fear that arose among them owing to the birth of Zaratūst.

80. About the great powerfulness of plants of a poisonous character for the forcible keeping away of much adversity; the production of entire species (pūr sarādaḵō) of plants by Aūharmazd for the curing of the creatures from disease (aḵyakīh); the success of the Gōkerenō plant—which is the white Hōm—in curing, as compared with other plants; and the diligence of Aūrmān in the medical treatment of the world.

81. Information about the ritual (nīrang) through which the violence of the fiend was minimized at the original creation; and the great powerfulness of the Aūrmān supplication, the Ahunavair, and other

repairer of the manuscript, when noting, on his patch, the words he had cut out.

1 Vend. XIX, 31, 32.
2 Vend. XIX, 33, 43-47; no notice being taken of the invocatory passage 34-42.
3 Pahl. btsḵīhār, Av. visḵīhāra.
4 Reading nīrūgīk which suits the context better than nīrangaḵ, 'ritualistic.'
5 Av. gaokerena, a mythical tree, or plant, supposed to grow in the ocean, where it is guarded by ten enormous fish, and, at the time of the renovation of the universe, the elixir of immortality is expected to be prepared from its twigs mingled with the fat of a mythical ox (see Bd. IX, 6, XVII, 1-6, XXVII, 4, XXX, 25).
6 Av. Airyaman, a spirit whose powers of healing, chiefly by spells, are celebrated in Vend. XXII; and who is invoked in Yas. LIV, a spell that concludes the recitation of the Gāthas.
7 Vend. XX, 1-12.
8 The Airyama-ḵyō (Yas. LIV), or invocation of Airyaman, quoted in Vend. XX, 11, XXI, 20, XXII, 23.
9 See Chap. I, 7 n.
Gāthic Avesta\(^1\), for restraining the demons from destroying the world of righteousness\(^2\).

82. It is righteousness *that* is perfect excellence. It is the excellenc*of* righteousness *that* is perfect.

---

**Chapter XLV.**

1. Of the three divisions of the Ḥādokht\(^3\), as it exists in its 133 sections, the first is *of* thirteen\(^4\) sections, *and contains* particulars about the nature of the recital of the Ahunavair\(^5\), which is the spiritual benefit from chanting it aloud, and whatever is on the same subject\(^6\). 2. Advice about selecting *and*

---

\(^1\) Yas. XLVI, 7 and XLIV, 16 b–e which are quoted after the other spells in each of the last three fargās of the Vendīdād.

\(^2\) Vend. XXII, 1–25, XX, 13–15, XXI, 18–23, and probably the rest of XXI.

\(^3\) Corresponding to the twentieth word, dadād, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the twenty-first, and last, Nask in other Rivāyats. Its name occurs in the Avesta, in the form hadhaokhtā, and it is called Ḥādukht in the Rivāyats, which also state that it contained thirty kardah, or fargās, which differs considerably from the number stated in this chapter. Yts. XXI, XXII are traditionally supposed to belong to the Ḥādokht, but there is hardly a trace of either of them in this chapter. Yt. XI is also distinguished by the same title.

\(^4\) As the total of the 13 + 102 + 19 sections (mentioned in §§ 1, 11, 13) is 134, instead of 133, there must be an error in one of the four numbers given in the MS. This clerical error can hardly have been made in writing 19, and is unlikely in 102; but 133 may possibly stand for an original 134, though the writing of 13 instead of 12 is more probable. The Rivāyats give no assistance in settling this question, as they all divide this Nask into 30 kardah. On the whole, it will be safest to read 'twelve,' instead of 'thirteen,' until some better authority becomes available.

\(^5\) Compare Yt. XI, 3.

\(^6\) It is just possible that this may refer to Yt. XXI which, though specially alluding to the recitation of the Ashem-vohû, or praise of
keeping a spiritual and worldly high-priest, performing every duty as to the high-priest, and maintaining even those of various high-priests.

3. About the twenty-one chieftainships, spiritually through Aûharmazd and materially through Zarâtûst, through which the ceremonial of the sacred beings and the government of the members of the community (dâhmânô ráyînîdârîh) exist. 4. About the duties in the five periods of the day and night, each separately, and the bridge-judgment of him who shouts out in the ceremony of a season-festival; likewise of him who does not provide the preparations for the feast of a season-festival, and who also becomes worried (sûdakô) in other ceremonials of the sacred beings.

5. About how to consider and what to do with a sacerdotal leader and a man of the superior classes (pîsakîkânô), him who atones for unimportant sin, and him who does not atone even for that which is important; and whatever is on the same subject. 6. About the means through which membership of the community (dâhmîh) is prepared. 7. About the manifestation of virtuous manhood, and the merit and advantage from well uttering the words of blessing at eating and drinking food and drink, and from despising the inward talk of the demons.

righteousness, also mentions that of the Ahunavair in its § 4. With regard, however, to Yt. XXII, there seems no possibility of identifying its text with any portion of the Hâdõkht Nask as described in this chapter.

1 See Chap. XXIX, 9.
2 Reading barâ drâyêdô, but it may be barâ girâyêdô, 'is zealous.'
3 See Chap. VII, 1.
8. About the recitations at the five periods of the day, the ceremonial invocation by name of many angels in each separately, and great information on the same subject.

9. The worthiness of a man restrained (vandak) by authority, the devotion of life and body to the sacred beings, the good rulers, and their examination and satisfaction; also the blessing and winning words which are most successful in carrying off the affliction that is owing to the fiend. 10. About all-pleasing creativeness and omniscience, every precedence, leadership, foresight, worthy liberality, perspicacity (vēnākīh), and all proper cause and effect of righteousness; the individuality (khūdīh) of righteousness, the opposition to the demons of Aūharmazd’s law, and also much other information in the same section.

11. The middle division is of 102 sections containing particulars about spiritual and worldly diligence, the leadership of the diligent and their mighty means, all the former deeds of righteousness. 12. Righteousness kindling the resolution is the reward of merit, each for each, and is provided by it for that which one mentions thus:—‘It is the Hādōkht which is the maintenance of righteousness, so that it may make righteousness more abiding in the body of a man.’

13. The last division is of nineteen sections containing a trusty remedy, that is, a remedy whose utterance aloud by the faithful is a chief resource (afzārtūm) for the creatures of the sacred beings.

1 Assuming that pēsāgīh stands for pēsāgīh.
2 Assuming that pēs vēnākīh stands for pēs vēnākīh.
14. Also the nature of sayings full of humility (pûr-pâstîth), well-favoured, most select, and adapted for that which one mentions thus:—‘I reverence that chief, the beneficent and eminent Hâdôkht, out of which is the sustainment of the strength of every word of Zarâtâst they trust in.’

15. It is perfect excellence that is righteousness.

Chapter XLVI.

1. The Gâthas of the Yâst¹, as the first offspring of the Ahunavair, are a recitation of the source of sources of the religion, and in the compass (parvastârîh)² of the Gâthas, every word (mârîk)

¹ Corresponding to the twenty-first word, vâstârem, in the Ahunavair, according to B. P. Riv.; but it is the first Nask in other Rivâyats. In Chap. I, 9, 12 it is called Stôd-yast, ‘praise-ritual’ (Av. staota yēsnya); and Stûd-yast, or Yast, in the Rivâyats, which also state that it contains thirty-three kardah, or gûrat. In Sls. XIII, 1 we are told that Visâi-ê-ameshâ-spentâ (Yas. XIV, 1) is the beginning of the Stôtân-yasnd; and, if we look for its end, we find Yas. LVIII, LIX both ending with special reverence of ‘the whole collection of the Stôtân-yasñân.’ We may therefore conclude that Yas. XIV–LIX, with its supplementary passages in Vîsp. V–XXIV, contains the whole of the Stôd-yast. But from this we must deduct Yas. XIX–XXI which are the first three fargârds of the Bakô Nask, Yas. LII which is an interpolation, and Yas. LVI, LVII which are the Srôsh Yasts, lesser and greater; we must also consider the Yasna Haptanghâiti as a single section, in accordance with its treatment in Bk. IX, Chaps. XII, XXXV, LVII; and much of the Vîspêrad may not belong to the primitive text mentioned in § 3. Making these necessary deductions we have exactly thirty-three hâs of the Yasna left for the Stôd-yast, as stated in the Rivâyats.

² This word can also be read fravistârîh (Av. fra+vid), ‘interpretation,’ or frôstârîh, ‘handing down.’
in it is the origin of a word. 2. The word ahû¹ of the beginning² is of a like kind with ahyâ³, the beginning of the Gâthas; the end word, which is vâstärem⁴, is of a like kind with vahyô⁵, the end of the Gâthas; and the whole—which, though its nature is of one kind, is distributed (vakhtô) in what is selected therefrom—is stored up (avar-gâdô) in this compendium⁶ of all parts of the Mazda-worshipping religion.

3. Likewise the purport (avort-hastân)⁷ of its verse (gâh), and the particulars of the primitive Vïspêrad⁸ are to procure homage and praise, oblation and invocation; and the blessing⁹, which is regulated by the sagacity of the creator, is adapted for the spiritual illustration of the lodgment of the ceremonial of the sacred beings therein. 4. All

¹ The Ahunavair begins with the words yathâ ahû vairyô. The word ahû, in the MS., is written ahî as usual in Iran.
² Assuming that barâ stands for bûn.
³ The first Gâtha, or sacred hymn, begins with the words ahyâ yâsâ nemanghâ (Yas. XXVIII, 1 a). There is, of course, no connection but that of sound between ahû, 'a spiritual lord,' and ahyâ, 'of this;' nor is there any other between the concluding words vâstärem, 'a protector,' and vahyô, 'better,' though the phrases in which these latter occur are of a very similar character, which fully justifies the comparison made in the text.
⁴ The Ahunavair ends with the words yim drigubyô dadad vâstärem.
⁵ The last Gâtha ends with the words yâ erezhegyôî dâhî drigaovê vahyô (Yas. LIII, 9 d).
⁶ The Gâthas apparently.
⁷ Or avar-gâstân, 'disseminations.'
⁸ The Vïspêrad service consists of the Yasna ritual with certain additional passages intermixed, which passages are called the Vïspêrad because the earlier ones invoke 'all the chiefs' (vîspê ratavô, Visp. II, 3) of creation.
⁹ Possibly Yas. LV.
three are provisions for the first and last presentations\(^1\) which one utters by means of the Stôd Yast.

5. It is perfect is the excellence of righteousness; it is perfect excellence that is righteousness; with the copy revised (râyînîdô).

\(^1\) Probably referring to Yas. XIV and LVIII.
DÍNKARD.—BOOK IX.

CHAPTER I.

1. Satisfaction (shnôkhar) to the creator Aûharmazd, and obeisance to the Mazda-worshipping religion.

2. The ninth book (babâ) is about the Hâs and Fargârd's of the various Nasks; the object of procuring the division of those portions which exist being owing to the quantity of what is in each one of the Nasks; also an explanation of a suitable selection therefrom, such as is an epitome (nisangâg-1) of the abundant detail therein.

CHAPTER II.

Sûdkar Nask.

1. Glorification for the Mazda-worshipping religion which is the ordinance of Aûharmazd opposed to the demons.

2. Of the Sûdkar there are twenty-two fargârd's,

---

1 From this point to Chap. XXXI, it the text is also found in a second MS. (K) which is independent of the MS. B brought to Surat in A.D. 1783, the original of all the Bombay copies.

2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 20, 23. The contents of these are detailed below, in Chaps. II—LXVIII, so far as the first three Nasks are concerned.

3 Referring to Chap. LXIX.

4 The first of the Nasks and second of the Gâthic division (see Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 9, 12). As the Stôd-yast (the first of the Gâthic
and the first fargard is the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô¹, just as the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô formula is as it were the beginning (bûnîh) of the religion, and from it is the formation of the Nasks which, though about the first six sciences (dânîsînô), have also demonstrated the existence of the highest of other sciences in its own place.

3. And here it speaks about the power and success owing to uttering the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô formula² at the beginning of actions. 4. One utterance when one wishes to say anything to any one; one when he wishes to beg of any one; and one when he goes to work. 5. Two when he wishes to confer his blessing. 6. Four when it is for the homage of the chiefs of creation (radô-franâmiṣnîh), or the ceremony of a season-festival. 7. Five when it is for carrying off the fiend. 8. Six when it is for power; and six when it is for the success of a battle. 9. Seven when it is for the ceremonial of

division, but the last of the general list of Nasks) contained the text of the Gâthas, so the next three of the Gâthic division contained commentaries, or homilies, upon that text, written with different objects in view. The purpose of the Sûdkar was apparently (as its name imports) to extract useful instruction from the text, and to illustrate it with legends and remarks. A separate fargard is devoted to each hâ of the Gâthas, beginning with the three sacred formulas, and including the united Yasna Haptanghâiti and the Aîryaman. The connection between the commentary and text, though usually traceable, is not always very clear; but that is a common characteristic of homilies in general.

¹ The Ahunavair (see Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7). This fargard explains the use made of this formula, and the benefits derived from it.

² As a spell, or appeal for success. The text of §§ 4–15 has been independently handed down by tradition, with a few variations, in Sls. XIX and the Persian Rivâyat of Bahman Pûngyah.
the archangels, or when one wishes to perform the ceremonial of the archangels. 10. Eight when it is for the ceremonial of a guardian spirit of the righteous. 11. Nine when one wishes to cast seed into his land. 12. Ten when one wishes to allow procreation. 13. Eleven when one goes to ask for a wife. 14. Twelve when one expects to go up on a mountain. 15. Thirteen when one wishes to go to an inhabited district (rûdastâk-1); twelve\(^1\) when he goes out pathless; and one\(^2\) when he wishes to proceed by a ford through the water.

16. About the place where one has to utter the first Yathâ-ahû-vairyô for smiting the demons. 17. About the good results (dahisnân) of a suitable recital of the words of the Ahunavair, the summary of everything for Zaratûst to utter. 18. And about the fact that, through chanting forth every single word of the Ahunavair with a virtuous intention, a demon is disabled, and there is protection of person and property from the adversary.

19. About the division of the twenty-one Nasks, likewise, according to the first, second, and third lines (gâs) of the Ahunavair\(^3\). 20. About the increase of the creatures owing to the liberal thought, word, and deed of a righteous person; owing to the priests having become numerous, and the reverence of him who is making them numerous; and owing to the perpetual meditation of righteousness and the existence of its recompense.

21. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

---

\(^1\) Sls. XIX, 14 has 'thirteen.'

\(^2\) So in both MSS., but ov ov, 'or,' is more probable than ov ov, 'and one.'

\(^3\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7.
CHAPTER III.  
Śūdkar Nāsk.

1. The second fargad, Ashem-vohû 2, is about the praise of righteousness which is the reward of the religion, and the want of praise at the bridge of judgment owing to enmity (pātyānīh) to righteousness.

2. Of righteousness perfect is the excellence.

CHAPTER IV.  
Śūdkar Nāsk.

1. The third fargad, Yēnḥē-hāṭām 3, is about

---

1 This chapter is omitted in K by mistake.
2 This second sacred formula is recited by the Parsis even oftener than the Ahunavair, and consists of twelve Avesta words, as follows:—

Ashem vohû vahisetem asṭī,  
urtī asṭī; urtī ahmāī  
hyād ashāī vahistāī ashem.

This may be translated as follows:—‘Righteousness is the best good, a blessing it is; a blessing be to that which is righteousness to perfect rectitude.’

But the Pahlavi version explains it as follows:—‘Righteousness is perfect excellence [righteousness of any excellence is good]. Happy is that righteousness and happy also that virtuous man who is a causer of righteousness, the righteousness that is perfect [that is, he shall accomplish duty and good works].’

3 This third formula is chiefly recited at the end of most of the hās in the Yasna, and consists of fifteen Avesta words, as follows:—

Yēnḥē hāṭām ād, yēsne paitī, vanghō  
mazdau ahuro vaēṭhā, ashād halā,  
yœunghāmālā, tāśkā tauskā yazamaidē.

This may be translated as follows:—‘Of whatever male of the
the formation of mankind by slow increase, and, when they live on for fifty years, their slowly becoming dust; the coming of death even to him who is very pleasantly living, as regards mankind, at the climax (barînô) of his life; and the happiness of the worldly existence is given only to the worthy, on account of their love of righteousness; the rest are passed by. 2. And also this, that he who is produced by the demons, or is proceeding to the

existences, therefore, Ahuramazda was better cognizant, through righteousness in worship, and of whatever females, both those males and those females we reverence.'

The Pahlavi version explains it as follows:—'Whoever of those existing is thus in worship as regards a good being [that is, shall celebrate a ceremonial for that good being who is Aûharmazd the lord], Aûharmazd is aware of it, owing to the accompaniment of righteousness [and being acquainted with the reward and recompense of whatever are, severally, the duty and good works that any one has performed, he grants them]. I reverence those of the assembly, males and females [the archangels; because the male of them are good, and the female of them].'

The Pahlavi translator evidently read vañghô in the first line of the text, as printed above, and not in the second, as in the present MSS.

1 So in K, but B has 'seventy.' The text seems to allude to the beginning of old age, of which three grades are mentioned in the Avesta (Vend. III, 19, 20): the hannô, zaûrûrô, and pairistá-khshudrô. The Pahlavi version defines the age of each grade, but the ciphers given are corrupted in the MSS. extant. The Far. Ofm, p. 5, ll. 9, 10, gives fifty years as the age of the zarmân (Av. zaûrûrô), seventy years as that of the hannô (Av. hanô), and ninety years as that of the pâdîrânô-shûsar (Av. pairistá-khshudrô); but whether this arrangement of the ages is compatible with the different order of these epithets in the Avesta is doubtful, though it shows that old age was considered to begin at the age of fifty years.

2 Reading sañô-aitô according to K, though the word can also be read segô-aitô, 'are ruined;' in B it can be read gañôgi-aitô, 'are impoverished.'
demons, or has committed falsehood, is the opulent person who gives nothing to a worthy supplicant.
3. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

CHAPTER V.

Sūdākar Nask.

1. The fourth fargard, Yānīm-manō, is about where a gradual development (dēr-zahīsnīh) of that which is for the future existence is best; and, secondly, that which occurs now when the wisdom, instructed eloquence, diligence, and energetic effort, which are the utilizers of life, are with one, and these five misusers of it—greediness, want of energy, indolence, defilement, and illicit intercourse—are not with one. 2. This, too, that these five defects existed in Dahāk, and owing to that, moreover, Frēdūn is irritated with him, and smites him in revenge for Yim.
3. About the heinousness of these four vices, which are drunkenness, knavish companionship, apostasy, and selfishness, and the grievous results therefrom. 4. And this, too, that Yim drove away these four vices from the world, and then was able to prepare immortality. 5. About avoidance of him who, through any statement, is producing a thief as an orator (akhūn), and of acquiescence with a hasty unoratorical statement of a companion. 6. And this, too, that he who propagates very evil commands in the world gives stout-heartedness to the fiend.

---

1 The first two words of the introduction to the first Gātha (Yas. XXVIII, 0), here written yānīm-manōkō in Pahlavi.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 8.
3 Ibid. § 6.
7. About the clamour of a poor distressed one for a perfect remedy, and the repelling derangement (lakhvår-pafshîrisînîh), unacceptableness, unblessedness, and want of Gåtha lore of the distresser arisen from the clamour of the distressed one. 8. About the connection of satisfying distress on true and reasonable complaint, and the reasonable complaining of true complainers, by him who has been an inferior judge, and gradually up to the highest adjudicator who is Aûharmåd.

9. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

CHAPTER VI.

Sûdœkar Nask.

1. The fifth fargard, Khšhmaibyå¹, is about the forgetfulness of a father for a son, a son for a father, a brother for a brother, a friend for a friend, a husband (mânpatô) for a wife (nârîk), and a wife for a husband in a measurable time, through excess and festivity (khang); and the unforgetfulness of the spirit of the Gåthas for so many reciters and chanters of the Gåthas. 2. About the complaint of the spirit of the Gåthas when a high-priest, although priest of the country-folk (dehîgânô), passes away in an out-district², and the body of that man does not come back to his own land; whatever is relating to that, and, besides that, what is to be born in that

¹ The first word of the second hâ of the first Gåtha (Yas. XXIX, 1), here written khšhmôâîbê (B) and khšhmâîbê (K) in Pahlavi.

² Reading aûzdêhîkîh (from Av. uzdâhyu); in Sls. IX, 2, 3, where this passage is evidently referred to, this word has been erroneously read aûzdâyakîh and translated ‘idolatry.’
land, and the oppressiveness of apostates which arises. 3. About the superior power of the spirit of the Gāthas, and also that of liberality, in preserving the soul from hell.

4. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

Chapter VII.

Śūddhar Nask.

1. The sixth fargard, Ad-tā-vakhshyâ, is about the perfection of the five excellences: the first through righteousness, the second through virtuous offspring, the third through land producing vegetation, the fourth through flocks of sheep, and the fifth through training in industry. 2. About the distribution of fortune to the diligent; and of destitution to the indolent. 3. About the acquirement of fortune singly sitting, two-fold even walking, three-fold hastening, four-fold even running, five-fold even carrying on a horse, six-fold even driving on a road, seven-fold by understanding legal proceedings, eight-fold by good protection even of wealth, nine-fold by intelligence and diligence in the cultivation of land, and ten-fold by providing the teaching of the bounteous texts.

4. About the grievous sorrow of an aged man, owing to the indolence of any one in youth. 5. About the four things through which, when a man has

---

1 The first three words of the third hâ of the first Gâtha (Yas. XXX, 1), here written atō-tā-vakhshiyâ (B) and atā-vakhshâ (K) in Pahlavi.
2 The liturgy (mānsar-spēnd).
amassed them in his youth, he becomes very pleased in old age: first, virtuous learning; second, productive wealth; third, a good wife; and fourth, a prosperous dwelling. 6. About the five storeholders\(^1\) of perfect excellence: industry, diligence, contentment, guileless understanding (nirikht-hushth), and provision of means.

7. About abstaining from sitting with drunkards.

8. And this, too, that he does not drink varieties of wine (mâê-gunaganô) with the approval of the sacred beings, who becomes a viciously-disposed assailant and annoyer of others, and a disturber këpunidâr) of duties, through drinking varieties of wine. 9. And this, too, that thou shouldst eat that which is your food where there is a suitable place. 10. And where it is eaten by thee it should be lightly, it should not be heavily, so that, when it is eaten by thee, a good work is performed, and there is abstinence from sin. 11. And, so that what thou eatest shall be immortally joyful to thee, where there are poor, provide them a share, and the poor will bless thee; and, as to a poor man who is righteous, the opinion is that his blessing is best.

12. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

---

**Chapter VIII.**

*Śūdkar Nāsk.*

1. The seventh fargard, Tâ-ve-urvátâ\(^2\), is about

---

\(^1\) Reading gang-dânô; or it may be dûzagânô, 'seals,' though this is less likely, as a plural form is rarely used with a numeral.

\(^2\) The first three words of the fourth hâ of the first Gâtha (Yas. XXXI, 1), here written tâ-va-ratô in Pahlavi in both MSS.
the exhibition to Zaratûst of the nature of the four periods in the millennium of Zaratûst 1. 2. First, the golden, that in which Áûharmazd displayed the religion to Zaratûst. 3. Second, the silver, that in which Vistâsp 2 received the religion from Zaratûst. 4. Third, the steel, the period within which the organizer of righteousness, Áûrpâd 3 son of Mârâspend, was born. 5. Fourth, the period mingled with iron is this, in which is much propagation of the authority of the apostate and other villains, as regards the destruction of the reign of religion, the weakening of every kind of goodness and virtue, and the disappearance of honour and wisdom from the countries of Irân. 6. In the same period is an account of the many perplexities and torments (zakhâmî-hastanô) of the period for that desire of the life of the good which subsists in seemliness. 7. Perfect righteousness is excellence.

---

Chapter IX.

Sûndkar Nask.

1. The eighth fargard, Hvaêtumaiti 4, is about the abstinence of mankind, for special propitiation, from being unreliant upon religion, on account of reverence for the evil spirit 5; that from the habit of

---

1 Compare Yas. XXXI, 14; Byt. I, 1–5.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XI, 1–3.
3 See Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 22.
4 The appellation of the fifth há of the first Gâtha (Yas. XXXII) which begins with the words a hvyâkâ hvaêtus; it is here written khvata màftô in Pahlavi in both MSS.
5 Compare Yas. XXXII, 3.
being ungirdled, on account of reverence for Andar\(^1\) and that for Sōvar\(^2\); that from walking with one boot\(^3\), on account of reverence for Tāûrvō and Zārtbō\(^4\); that from being harmfully inquisitorial, on account of reverence for Akatāsh\(^5\); and that from the habit of being without a serpent-scourage, on account of reverence for all the demons\(^6\).

2. About the hungry intention (gusnakō-minānīnīth) of him who eats\(^7\) and drinks chattering; the delight of the demons on that account; and advice as regards not speaking a word during eating and drinking.

3. As to the praise and gratification of the sacred beings before eating and drinking,

---

\(^1\) Av. Andra, or Indra; one of the arch-demons produced by the evil spirit, and the special opponent of the archangel Ashavahist; he seduces from virtue and opposes the use of the sacred shirt and girdle (see Bd. I, 27, XXVIII, 8, 10, XXX, 29; Ep. I, x, 9; Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 1).

\(^2\) Av. Sauru; another of the arch-demons and the special opponent of the archangel Shatavārā; he encourages anarchy and drunkenness, and opposes the use of the sacred shirt and girdle (see Bd. I, 27, XXVIII, 9, 10, XXX, 29; Ep. I, x, 9).

\(^3\) Probably equivalent to 'walking in stockings,' though some think it means 'walking barefoot.' It is sinful on account of the risk of pollution from stepping on impurities.

\(^4\) Av. Tauru and Zairissā; two more of the arch-demons and the special opponents of the archangels Khûrdad and Amûrdad; they produce and diffuse poison, and are propitiated by walking with one boot (see Bd. I, 27, XXVIII, 11, 13, XXX, 29; Ep. I, x, 9).

\(^5\) Av. Akatasha; 'the fiend of inquisitiveness, who makes the creatures look away from proper things' (Bd. XXVIII, 20), and appears to be closely connected with the demon Aeshm, 'wrath.'

\(^6\) See Bd. XXVIII, 21, 22, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XVIII, 2.

\(^7\) B omits 'eats.' Talking during eating is sinful because the eater has muttered an inward prayer, as a protective spell, the good effect of which would be destroyed by speaking aloud (compare Bk. VII, Chap. XLIII, 37).
and also on finishing; and the purity of the mouth owing to its praise of righteousness. 4. About him whose ownership of any good work, that they may perform, does not attain to the best existence, on account of not possessing a high-priest by habit.

5. About the period of the ceremonial of Srōsh, the righteous, being mostly on the passing away of the first half of the night, and the announcement of him who is the celebrator (yaṣṭār) is for his protection from the fiend spirit. 6. The period of the ceremonial of Rashnû and Āstād is mostly after that, in the jurisdiction (raḍīh) of the Aūshahin, and the announcement of him who is the celebrator is abundance of grain. 7. The period of the ceremonial of Mitrō of the wide cattle-pastures, and of the spirit of the pleasure of eating, is mostly in the

---

1 K has ‘protection.’
2 That is, its muttering the Ashem-vohû formula which is recited thrice, as a conclusion of the inward prayer (see Dd. LXXIX, r n).
3 Or it may be ‘he,’ as the optative 3rd plural is often used for the singular; but it is a doctrine of the religion that a person who causes good works to be done by others, as he does when he employs a priest to perform ceremonies, is as much the owner of the good works as the actual performer is (see Sls. X, 22, 23 for cases of less direct agency).
4 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. IX, 3, XLIV, r6, and Pahl. Yas. I, 22.
5 As an offering, referring to the verb nivaēdhayēmi, ‘I announce or invite,’ with which most of the clauses of Yas. I commence.
6 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XX, r53, and Pahl. Yas. I, 23.
7 Av. Arṣṭâd, ‘rectitude,’ a female angel who assists the soul on its way to the other world (see AV. V, 3).
8 The period from midnight till dawn (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XXIX, 9).
9 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XLIV, r6.
10 Av. rāma ḫvāstrem, Pahl. rāmīsṇō khvārōm, who cooperates with Mitrō (see Pahl. Yas. I, 9).
jurisdiction of the Hâvan, and the announcement of him who is the celebrator is a flock of sheep.
The period of the ceremonial of Ashavahist, and also of the fire of Aûharmaesd, is mostly in the jurisdiction of the Rapithwin, and the announcement of him who is the celebrator is an assemblage of righteousness. The period of the ceremonial of the lofty lord of females, the descendant of waters, and also of the water created by Aûharmaesd, is mostly in the jurisdiction of the Aûzáærin, and the announcement of him who is the celebrator is a troop of heroes (vîrân ramakû). And the period of the ceremonial of the guardian spirits of the righteous, of the females with troops of heroes and years of pleasant dwelling, of the might which is well-formed and handsome, as well as victorious and created by Aûharmaesd, and of the fighting which is in the ascendant, is mostly in the jurisdiction of the Aiwisrûthrim, and the announcement of him who is the celebrator is the origin of all excel-

---

1 The period from dawn till noon, and in winter it extends into the afternoon (see Bd. XXV, 9-14).
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVII, 14, and Pahl. Yas. I, 12.
3 The afternoon till 3 p.m. during summer (see Bd. XXV, 9-14). Here written Rapisvag.
4 Av. berezatô ahurahê nafedhrô apâm, Pahl. bûr’zand khûdâî nekedân-t ûvânô nápê (see Pahl. Yas. I, 15).
5 The evening from the middle of the afternoon till dusk (see Bd. XXV, 9; Sls. XXI, 4-7).
6 See Pahl. Yas. I, 18, 19.
7 The period from dusk till midnight; here written ayîzîk-srûksrîm. It will be noticed that the periods for the ceremonials of the beings here detailed correspond with those with which their names are connected in Yas. I, 3-7, II, 3-7, III, 5-9, IV, 8-12, VI, 2-6, VII, 5-9 (W.).
lence, and the produce of all manifestation of righteousness.

II. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

CHAPTER X.

Sûdâkar Nask.

1. The ninth fargard, Yâthâîs, is about the devilry, the blighted destiny, the complete pollution, the grievous stench, the heinous sinfulness, and the annoyance to all spiritual and worldly virtue of the sodomite. 2. The atonement for grievous sinfulness and the appropriation of great good works by him who is a molester, and the awful sinfulness of him who is a propitiator, of that sinner. 3. Of the seven one mentions as evil, who are accounted equal to the evil spirit in vileness—such as Azâ-î Dahâk in witchcraft, the serpent Srôbar in violence, Vâdâk in producing evil progeny, Tûr-î Brâdar-vakhsh in destroying a righteous man, and an apostate in grievous sinfulness—the permitter and performer of

---

1 The first word of the sixth hâ of the first Gâtha (Yas. XXXIII, 1), here written yâsâîs in Pahlavi in both MSS.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. XIII, 8, XXXV, r3, and Dd. LXXII, 2–9, which last chapter contains further details regarding these seven heinous sinners, probably derived from the actual text of this ninth fargard of the Sûdâkar Nask.
3 The mother of Dahâk (Dd. LXXII, 5), the same as Udaî in Bd. XXXI, 6; for her viciousness see Dd. LXXVIII, 2.
4 Pahl. saryâ hunô-dahakîh, which last word indicates an original Av. hunusta (see Pahl. Yas. L, 10 b).
5 Both MSS. have Aharmanô, but this differs only in its last letter from aharmôk, 'an apostate,' which is the reading of Dd. LXXII, 9 and more suitable to the context.
unnatural intercourse are unique in heinous sinfulness.

4. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

Chapter XI.

Śūdkar Nask.

1. The tenth fargard, Yā-śhyao thanā, is about the complaint of the spirit of fires to Aūharmašd owing to seven descriptions of people. 2. First, owing to domestics considering it as contemptible and in an unresisting state (agangāth), molesting it immoderately, and making use of it with unwashed hands; also the damsel who has introduced fire into the sole of her foot, and the bursting of the blister (āvilag); and a weapon brought out into its splendour. 3. Second, the complaint owing to the carriers of fire from that abode [where the provision of care for fire is as a law to them, to that abode] where the provision of care for fire is not as a law to them. 4. And there, owing to the arrival and preparation of the demons, it lay stupefied, like a powerful youth who is feverish and in a languid state; and its cure from that sickness (ayōyakāth) was by bringing forward to it their pure sandalwood, or benzoin, or aloe-wood, or pomegranate, or

---

1 The first two words of the seventh, and last, hā of the first Gātha (Yas. XXXIV, 1), here written yā-shyādosnō in Pahlavi in both MSS. This fargard may perhaps be considered as a homily upon Yas. XXXIV, 4.

2 The words in brackets are omitted in B by mistake.

3 The traditional equivalents of the four sweet-scented vegetable substances, Av. urvāsna, vohū-gaona, vohū-kereti, and hadhānaēpata, which are mentioned in Vend.VIII, 2, 79, IX, 32, XIV, 3,
whatever there was of the most odoriferous of plants. 5. Third, the complaint owing to the hussy\(^1\) unto whom it happens, through menstruation, that the stench and filth owing to the menstruation is brought to it (the fire); and its sickness and stupefaction owing thereto are as written above. 6. Fourth, the complaint owing to the hussy who, dropping her knee on to the fire-stand, arranged her curls; the falling of damp and moisture from her head, with the hair and filth therefrom, into the fire; the consumption of it discontentedly, and the sickness and stupefaction owing thereto. 7. Fifth, the complaint owing to the father, or guardian, of a child for not keeping the child away from the fire; and the bodily refuse and other unlawfulness that come upon it from such children. 8. Sixth, the complaint owing to the adversity which the unpurified infidel (agdēnā) may bring upon it, by blowing the breath of his mouth upon it in directing its use, and it becomes incalculable. 9. Seventh, the complaint—which, one says, is more awful and more grievous—owing to those who use it as an ordeal for a falsehood, and, when it is made evident thereby as to the acquitted and convicted, they become of a different opinion about it.

10. At the place of complaint that which is polluted is put forward together with that which is pure, and the increase of it (the fire) is through lawful and unlawful operation; its burning alone

XVIII, 71 as acceptable fuel for the sacred fire, or scent for fumigation; their Pahlavi names are merely corruptions of these Avesta words.

\(^1\) The word gēh, 'courtezan,' is used here and in § 6 merely as a general opprobrious term for a woman.
and increasing are such as when both would be as a necessity for it, and undesired and rapid burning and increasing\(^1\) are those which are polluted by burning and insatiably consuming; and in that which is an operation unlawfully—the burning alone and increasing being [such as when]\(^2\) both would be as a necessity [for it]—the increase is troubled.

11. This, too, he\(^3\) says: 'I am not of the world here, and from here I will extricate myself, from the earth up to the sky; I am also thy son\(^4\), more to thee\(^5\) than any of the other creatures.' 12. And Aûtharmazd spoke to him thus: 'So thou shouldst stand over the fire, in thy proper duty as [a spirit\(^6\)], carrying that club; [it is a substantial means, because I produce it, through which] thou turnest off [the whole bodily existence], some to the endless light, and some to the endless darkness.'

13. This, too, that he who shall provide care for fire has paid the greatest reverence unto Aûtharmazd.

14. The propitiation of the righteous is the best thing, and their vexation is the worst; when pleased they favour one, and it is the law of the sacred beings that they promote; [when vexed they wound, and it is the demon that they restrict.

15. It is righteousness that is perfect excellence.\(^6\)

---

\(^1\) As in the case of a destructive conflagration.

\(^2\) The words in brackets are supplied by guess, to fill up a blank space left by the repairer of B on one of his patches. In K the passage is shorter, and stands as follows:—'and in that which is unlawful operation it is troubled by the increase.'

\(^3\) The spirit of fires mentioned in § 1. This dialogue seems to be a quotation from the original Pahlavi version of the Nask.

\(^4\) Fire being called 'the son of Aûtharmazd.'

\(^5\) Both MSS. have 'me' by mistake.

\(^6\) The passages in brackets are omitted in B, evidently by mistake.
Chapter XII.

Sūdhar Naks.

1. The eleventh fargard, the Yasna, is about the assembly of the angels of the spiritual existences on account of the complaint of fire; and the complaint of fire in the assembly, with its statement of this, too: 'I am not of the world here, and from here I will extricate myself, from the earth up to the sky, and there I will shine on to the earth of seven regions, like the moon and sun and even the divinely-produced stars when they shine with their own light.'

2. The words of Aûharmazd about the just complaining of fire as regards the contamination of the creatures, the impossibility of keeping the fire undisturbed, and satisfying the fire concerning the creation of the creatures for the worldly existence, along with the disturbed condition of fire, too, owing to the impossibility of maintaining the uncreated state which, with the freedom from disturbance of fire also, was better; likewise proclaiming the care of it.

3. And the speech of the fire was thus: 'If there be not that one mode whereby I may thus shine, owing to those that have acted according to my request, thou art aware, O Aûharmazd! there

---

1 The Yasna of seven chapters, Av. yasna haptanghāiti (Yas. XXXV, 3–XLI, 6), here written asnō (for yēsnō) in both MSS.

2 The spirit of fires, after repeating to the heavenly council the complaint he had already made to Aûharmazd alone, concludes with the same threat as in Chap. XI, 11.

3 B gūmekhtakīh (K gūmekzakīh) implies deterioration by an 'intermingling' of evil.

4 K omits these last four words by mistake.

5 That is, if he cannot desert the world, owing to the necessity of stopping with those who act properly.
are some among the creatures that I cannot grant so much to; therefore carry me away, O Aûharmaêzd! then give me away there! and be thou carrying me away into the midst of Aûrán-vêg!'

4. The propitious fire is from the creator Aûharmaêzd, and it is produced by him in a dwelling, without being handled (bara sûdakô), by aid of bringing together. 5. And so he spoke in words thus: 'Such is thine own growth, thou who art my fire! in every dwelling where thou comest, and in every village, every community, and every province; and as exalted as thou are the water and plants, and he, too, who is a guardian spirit of the righteous, when they shall bring forward holy-water for delivering up to thee; and, when they shall bring forward to thee firewood which is dry, a person—through the light which he observes—has spoken of it thus: "This is the Gûsn-asp fire."

6. About so much reward of the hewer and inspector and kindler of the firewood—when all three shall do it for the sake of affection—as they

---

1 The primeval home of Mazda-worship, the abode of Yim, and the scene of Zarathustra's first promulgation of the religion, the Aîryanem vaêgô of the Avesta (see Vend. I, 1, 3, II, 21; Bd. XX, 32, XXXII, 3). 
2 Pahl. afzûnîk; the spenista ('most bounteous') fire of Yas. XVII, 11, XXXVI, 3. According to Pahl. Yas. XVII, 67 it 'stands in heaven before Aûharmaêzd in a spiritual state.'
3 Or it may mean 'being rubbed out,' that is, 'by friction;' but compare the use of the word sûdakîh in Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVII, 19.
4 Referring probably to the establishment of a sacred fire by bringing together every possible variety of fire that can be obtained.
5 Merely as a formal offering, or for purifying the fire-stand, not for mingling with the fire itself.
6 One of the three original sacred fires, which is said to have
are possessing righteousness. 7. About the character and reward of the washer (āsnātār) and the producer of the purity and cleansing of that which the fire has dropped¹, of the introducer of the firewood and the washer upwards², of the stirrer of the fire and the carrier-away of the firewood, who are strictly directed; the lawful work done with a cooking-pot and such-like, and the sin of him who is a disturber of it. 8. About the destroyer of that which the fire has dropped, and the introducer of damp firewood into it. 9. About the blessing of fire for people by whom it is satisfied.

10. About advice as regards not bringing to the fire that which is due to theft, or the power of extortion, and the grievous bridge-judgment³ of him who is bringing it; also the defilement (ālūdān) and hurting of the fire from that which occurs when he likewise consecrates his hoard (hanbarisnō), owing to the corruption by the demons⁴ thus arisen. 11. This, too, that it is owing to want of attention to fire when it is not at every menstrual excitement they produce, in a woman assisted by a propensity been established, in the time of king Kaï-Khūsrō, upon the Asnavand mountain in Ātūr-pātakān, not far from Lake Kēkast (see Bd. XVII, 7; Zs. XI, 8-10).

¹ B srākhtō, K srakhtō, both here and in § 8; compare Av. srask.
² Pahl. frāz āsnātār must mean one who washes in the mode defined by the Av. frasnāiti, as distinguished from upasnāiti, in Vend. VIII, 98, 99, Ep. II, iii, 2; this mode is explained as lālāṅk, ‘upwards,’ and distinguished from the frādgūnō, ‘downward mode,’ in Ep. II, iv, 2.
³ B inserts ‘thus arisen through the demons,’ the same phrase as concludes the section.
⁴ K has ‘owing to a single word of the demons,’ by substituting aevak gōbisnō for āhūkinisnō.
for a son (pûs raḏîh), that the progeny is a son.
12. And about the penalty for the progress of other impropriety which occurs to fire; also about the person who has attained to the guardianship of fire and does not lawfully control it.
13. About an admonition to Zaratûst as to consecrating to the sacred beings anything whatever which one eats, and not eating what is unconsecrated. 14. About the wish of the evil spirit that no one shall be performing (vadîdûnân-âdô) worship and obeisance to the sacred beings, and that the people shall possess no ruler and high-priest, so that no desire of theirs shall arise for any virtuousness. 15. About an admonition as to indispensably worshipping the sacred beings with the best ceremonial, that of a priest (âsrûkô) without sin; or with an average one, that of a priest whose sin is not more than one Aredûs without a basis (a-bûn); or with the lowest one, that of a priest whose sin is not more than one Khôr on a basis (pavan bûn). 16. Whoever, in a village of Mazda-worshippers, has not chanted the sacred hymns after fifteen years of age, through sinfulness, is as a dog they have thrown provisions to, and it has occurred for a basis of the sin of unseasonable chattering; also the inadmissibility of his soul by Mânsarspend.

1 Assuming that p a stands for pavan.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. XX, 64, XXXI, 39.
3 A sin twice as great as an Aredûs (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXI, 39).
4 The sin of talking while eating, praying, or any other occasion when a prayer (vâg) has been taken inwardly, as a spell, and is not yet spoken out.
5 A personification of the liturgy, Av. māthrā spenta, 'the bounteous text.'
17. About the coming of Ast-vîdâd, at all times, to mortals whom death has reached, and also whom it has not. 18. About the ideas of the wicked, that the best existence does not exist, that the production of the renovation of the universe does not occur, that there are no dead whom they raise up thereby, and it is not that change one attains. 19. This, too, that is false, for the same reason they observe, being wicked; because the best existence exists, there occurs a production of the renovation which is good, they raise up the dead thereby, and thus one attains that change.

20. About an admonition as to not making lamentation and weeping over those passed away; and, after the passing away of every righteous one of the religion to the spirits, one is not to augment the distress of the very spirit of life by making lamentation and weeping over the departed. 21. And this, too, that the guardian spirits of the righteous claim no lamentation and weeping after their own ceremonial and the blessing of righteous men. 22. This, too, that the body of every one is not of like will with the soul; food is the desire of the body, and also a store of wealth; righteous action is the desire of the soul, and also the gifts which they give away.

23. About an enquiry of the righteous Zaratûst as to who it is who has banished (àpârînídô) all goodness and perfection from his own self, but thinks them not banished, and does not complain of

---

1 Av. Astò-vîdhîtu, one of the demons of death (see Bd. XXVIII, 35; Dd. XXXVII, 44).
2 Those who have attained old age, the natural time of death.
that loss. 24. And the reply of Aûhrarmazd, that it is he who is deceived by his own tongue through the utterance of words, so that, through speaking falsely, he has become worthy of death. 25. This, too, that for him it is the weapon of the evil spirit; even so complete mindfulness is the reign of Spendarmad, and thus a liar is more a power for the religion when a man, on account of dulness of thought, gives no reply, so that he may not speak falsely through dulness of thought.

26. This, too, that he worships the demons with thousand-fold holy-water, who establishes him who is not a member of the community in the Zôti duty, sooner than him who is a wise Zôti. 27. And this, too, that thou shouldst fetch him who is a member of the community for the Zôti duty, not him who is not a member of the community, for thus thy advance is to the supreme heaven (garód'mânô). 28. Also this, that a bad Zôti is worse from the Zôti duty.

29. This, too, that which is the earliest controller (aûkhtâr) of sin is thought which is subdued, then forgiveness, then shame, and then listening; and, afterwards, through the sinfulness of the fiend.

---

1 B has 'and there is no complaint of the loss.'
2 K živinídô.
3 The female archangel who has special charge of the earth and virtuous women (see Sls. XV, 20–24); she is a personification of Av. spenta ârmaiti, 'bountiful devotion,' of which phrase the latter word is translated by Pahl. bûndak-mînisîh, 'complete mindfulness.' See also Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3, and S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 393, 396.
4 K adâhm; B has khêshm, 'wrath,' here, but not so in § 27.
5 See Bk. VIII, Chap. VII, 5, 9.
6 B has 'he who is a controller of sin is Vohûman, owing to thinking of the spirits, which is subdued.'
7 K has only 'through sinfulness.'
one becomes a promise-breaker. 30. This, too, that they shall bring every man who is a wounnder before the convocation composed of any priest who is a controller of recitation (sráyisnō ayûkh tār), any priest who is of the district (âdehik), any priest who is of an out-district (aûzdehik), and any priest who is the man’s own kinsman.

31. ‘Thus say I unto thee, O Spîtâmân! let there be no breach of promise; neither when the conversation, that they would make a support, was with the wicked, and there is no great judiciousness in it; nor when it was with those of thine own religion, the righteous, as to anything of great judiciousness; because both of them are promises, both with the wicked and the righteous.’

32. It is the excellence of righteousness that is perfect.

CHAPTER XIII.

Sûnkar Nask.

1. The twelfth fargard, Ustavaiti, is about the exaltation of Zarâtûst through the satisfaction of water, and the hope of all creatures for him. 2. And about the impure recitation of a text, when the text is not uttered by a high-priest. 3. This, too, that the text which a man who is corrupted may

---

1 This admonition occurs repeatedly (see Chap. XX, 5; Yt. X, 2; AV. LII, 7).

2 The appellation of the first hâ of the second Gâtha (Yas. XLIII) which begins with the words uštā ahmāi yahmāi uštā; it is here written aûstavāîtō in Pahlavi.

3 Assuming that mûnh, ‘which,’ stands for amat; the Pâzand of both words being practically the same. Or, it may be, ‘also him who does not utter the text through a high-priest.’
offer is an impropriety (adînâth) for that which is an uncorrupted place. 4. This, too, is declared, that a greedy man whose belly is filled by accumulation—and the end of every sin is, to him, only for the gratification of the body—one considers just like a gallows to which there is a foundation (sîpô) of every impurity. 5. This, too, that a bird (vâê) practises that habit (sân) even that it kills those outright which have become large in our midst, which are the serpents produced by the demons. 6. This, too, that for invocation (azbâyisnô) of the sacred beings thinking with speaking, speaking with acting, and acting without deceitfulness are effectual.

7. About the pure goodness of the archangels, and the union of their thoughts, words, and deeds together; their bountifulness, nurturing, and protection are the cause\(^1\) of the prosperity of the world.

8. About the production of Zaratûst by Aûharmazd with a goodness like his own. 9. This, too, that whoever gives anything to the disciples of Zaratûst, his reward and recompense are just as though the thing had been given by him to Zaratûst\(^2\).

10. It is perfect excellence that is righteousness.

---

**CHAPTER XIV.**

*Stûkhar Nask.*

1. The thirteenth fargard, Tâd-thwâ-peresâ\(^3\),

---

\(^1\) B omits sân, 'the cause of.'

\(^2\) Compare:—'Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me.' (Matthew xxv. 40.)

\(^3\) The first three words of the second hâ of the second Gâtha (Yas. XLIV, 1), here written tâd-spâ-pêres in Pahlavi.
is about the strength and mightiness of the spirit of the sacred cake. 2. This, too, that every night the demons rush from hell into the world, to injure and cause the death of the creatures; and, when people consecrate a sacred cake, that spirit descends to attack and keep back the demons, and to engage in combat with the demons ninety-nine times during every night; he also smites and stupefies them, and keeps them back from destroying the world.

3. This, too, that any one whatever of those men who utter these words in prayer becomes righteous, except those men who shall contentedly, or wishfully, carry out a command for evil deeds, and they deceive (sustend), or make others deceive, by statements proposed to them; and whose evil thoughts are thus more than their good thoughts, their evil words more than their good words, and their evil deeds more than their good deeds. 4. About carrying off the reliance produceable that a sin worthy of death is the obliteration (fraz mushtanō) of other sin, like an awful and mighty wind when it sweeps swiftly over the plain.

5. Of righteousness the excellence is perfect.

Chapter XV.
Sūdkar Nask.

1. The fourteenth fargard, Ad-fravakhshyā, is

---

1 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXIX, 2.
2 K omits ‘from hell,’ and B omits ‘night.’
3 Meaning probably Yas. XLIV.
4 A favorite metaphor derived from the Avesta text (see Pahl. Vend. III, 149; Mkh. LII, 19).
5 The first two words of the third hâ of the second Gâtha (Yas. XLV, 1), here written ad-fravakhshê (B) and ad-fravakhshâ.
about Aûharmasd's showing to Zaratûst the terrible condition of the soul of Keresâsp\(^1\); the dismay of Zaratûst owing to that terrible condition; the sorrowful speaking of Keresâsp as regards the slaying of multitudes, for which mankind extol him, whereby abstentions from sin occurred; and the recognition of him by the creator, Aûharmasd, as smiting his fire. 2. The supplication of Keresâsp for the best existence from Aûharmasd for those exploits when the serpent Srôbar\(^2\) was slain by him, and the violence of that adversary; when Gandarep\(^3\) with the golden heels was smitten by him, and the marvellousness of that fiend; when the Veskô progeny\(^4\) who were descendants of Nivîk and Dâstânîk were slain by him, and the grievous harm and disaster owing to them; and when the mighty wind\(^5\) was appeased by him, and brought back from damaging the world to benefiting the creatures; and for that which happens when owing to confinement\(^6\), Dahâk becomes eager, rushes on for the

---

\(^1\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 12; S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 369–382.

\(^2\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXV, 13.

\(^3\) Av. Gandarewa of Yt. V, 38, XV, 28, XIX, 41; the 'watery demon' of Mkh. XXVII, 50.

\(^4\) Reading hûn Veskô, the Av. hunavô Vaeskaya of Yt. V, 54, 57, who were enemies of the warrior Tusa; but the hunavô of Nivika and of the Dâstayâni were slain by Keresaspa (see Yt. X, 41). It is also possible to read khûnô-dâkô, 'blood-producing.'

\(^5\) When it becomes a storm-demon, the vâtô-daêva of Vend. X, 14, instead of being the angel of useful wind.

\(^6\) In the volcano, Mount Dimâvand, where he was confined by Frêzûn in olden times, and whence he is expected to break loose hereafter (see Bd. XII, 31, XXIX, 9; Byt. III, 55–61).
destruction of the world, and attempts (girâyêdô) the annihilation of the creatures; when he (Keresâsp) is roused to smite him, and to tame that powerful fiend for the world and creatures.

3. The enmity of fire to Keresâsp, through the distress which he occasioned to it, and the keeping of him away [from heaven; also the friendship of Gôs-aûrvan for him, through the prosperity which he occasioned to it, and the protection of him] from hell. 4. The petition of Zarâtûst to the fire to have compassion upon what was owing to Keresâsp's sin; the compliance (hângâftânô) of the fire with that petition, and the departure of the soul of Keresâsp to the ever-stationary existence.

5. Of righteousness perfect is the excellence.

CHAPTER XVI.

Sûckar Nask.

1. The fifteenth fargard, Kamnâmeza, is

1 The words in brackets occur only in K; their meaning is, however, given in the Pahlavi Rivâyat accompanying Dd. and quoted in S.B.E., vol. xviii, pp. 379, 380. The enmity of the fire to Keresâsp was owing to its having been extinguished (when kindled upon the serpent Srûbar) by the upsetting of Keresâsp's caldron, as described in Yas. IX, 11, and Yt. XIX, 40.

2 Av. gûs urva, 'the soul of the ox,' the spirit which departed from the primeval ox when the evil spirit attacked it; she is supposed to be the heavenly protector of all animals, and is also called Drvâspa (see Yt. IX, 1; Bd. III, 14, 18, IV, 2–5; Sls. XXII, 14).

3 A locality intermediate between heaven and hell, where the souls of those whose sins and good works exactly balance remain in a passive and immovable state till the resurrection (see Sls. VI, 2; Mkh. VII, 18, XII, 14; Dd. XX, 3).

4 The appellation of the fourth, and last, hâ of the second
about the arrival of Ast-vîdâd 1 upon the spot, and the insecurity of any one from him; also the non-continuance of the mortal body and decaying (farsâvand) wealth of any one of the mortals summoned is death 2. 2. And this, too, that Ast-vîdâd shall carry off all mortals by that awful and proclaimed marvel, and they are not saved from him 3; each one, indeed, saves only that which is the soul.

3. This, too, that the soul alone sees the reward and bridge 4 of the spiritual existence, and embodied it does not see such things; if, when embodied, it could have seen like that, then it would not have committed the sin really originating with it, even for anything whatever of the ease and comfort of the worldly existence, nor shrunk (mansîdö) from the first good work.

4. About the hideousness and frightfulness of the body of man after death, and only that which is considered by every one the most precious of desirable things is undecaying (afarsâk). 5. As regards the casting away of the dust, and also living people, that which is more nearly connected therewith is

Gâtha (Yas. XLVI), which begins with the words kâm nemôî zâm; it is here written kannamėzö in Pahlavi.

1 See Chap. XII, 17. The connection of the demon of death with Yas. XLVI is that the first few words of that hâ are supposed to be repeated by the wicked soul in despair after death (see Yt. XXII, 20, W.; Mkh. II, 159; AV. XVII, 7).

2 K has marḏûm, 'human (?)'

3 B has the whole of this first clause thus:—' And the unconsumed (apakhshînö) property of him who is surprised by the invisible marvel that he shall endure, they have not saved from him.' This marvel is probably the supposed casting of a noose by Ast-vîdâd, around the neck of the dead to drag him to hell, which only the righteous are able to cast off.

4 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. XIV, 8, XXIV, 10.
uninhabitableness\(^1\) and its duration. 6. And when, too, this way, the consciousness is in the vicinity of the body\(^2\), and the dog and bird go forth for the dismemberment of the body, the frightening of the consciousness by them is like \textit{that of} a sheep by a wolf; also \textit{its} disputing with the dog and bird about the dismemberment of the body, the reciting (mārdānā) of words spiritually \textit{at} first repelling them, thinking the body is alive. 7. And, afterwards, when the body is dismembered by them, the hastening of the consciousness to the vicinity of the dismembered body, just like a female (dēnūḍakō) sheep when it hastens on to \textit{its} young ones; and \textit{its} noticing—with grievous unhappiness\(^3\) for the body—and recounting where the features (dēmagānā) of that body were in happiness, and to what misery it has now come. 8. And, when that body became sinful in \textit{its} lifetime, about its not accepting, during that lifetime, that which the consciousness repeatedly well-endeavoured to promote for that body, as regards abstaining from sin and practising good works.

9. This, too, that thy time of worldly happiness \textit{has} occurred, and that of misery is long. 10. This, too, that the people who live on, in the worldly \textit{existence}, a hundred years are less than those who do not live a hundred years; the progress of a lifetime, little by little, and the rushing on of a lifetime; wife and property and the rest of worldly \textit{things} all

---

\(^1\) Corpses are to be deposited in an uninhabited place (see Vend. VI, 44–51, VII, 45–50; Dd. XVIII).

\(^2\) Compare Dd. XVI, 7.

\(^3\) Pahl. ashādīh in K, but B has ayādakīh, 'remembrance.'
leaving you at once, and coming to another person. 11. And this, too, that—when mankind mostly keep up any statement (nisang-ik)b or register (aēvar'gō) which they have drawn out (nasi-hēnd)¹ about ordainable supplies in a friendly or inimical (patyān-mōnd) way, which is more particularly expedient for them—a supply, suitable for the discreet, of the rest of that which is constantly desirable, is to be extracted therefrom, and one is to keep up its preparation with his own.

12. About the seven immortal rulers who are produced in the region of Khvanīras², and also about the ordaining of their glory and the goodness, too, of their assistants living and privileged in both existences. 13. The tree opposed to harm ³ is on Afrān-vēg⁴, in the place of most excavations (frēh-nigānān gās). 14. Gōk-patō⁶ is in foreign⁶ coun-

---

¹ Or 'they offer up (ūzda hēnd).'</n
² See Bk. VIII, Chap. VIII, 2. And, regarding these seven rulers, compare Bd. XXIX, 5, 6; Dd. XC.
³ The many-seeded tree in the wide-formed ocean, whence the seeds of all wild plants are brought by the rain (see Yt. XII, 17; Bd. XXVII, 2, 3; Mkī. LXII, 37–42).
⁴ See Chap. XII, 3.
⁵ Gōpatshah in Bd. XXIX, 5, XXXI, 20, 22; Byt. II, 1; Dd. XC, 3, 4; Gōpaštōshah in Mkī. LXII, 8, 31; and Gōpaštō in Mkī. XLIV, 35. All these forms of the name imply that he was a king, or master, of oxen; and Mkī. describes him as a Māsdā-worshipping minotaur on the sea-shore, probably the Caspian, or the river Oxus, as Bd. makes him a brother, or nephew, of Frāsīyāv the Turānian. His country is called Szukavastān in Bd., and Gōpatō in Dd.
⁶ Pahl. an-Afrān which corresponds with the position of Szukavastān being between Tūrkhistan and Kīnīstān, as stated in Bd. XXIX, 13, and that of Gōpatō being coterminous with Afrān-vēg, as in Dd. XC, 4. But K, by omitting the negative prefix, places it
tries. 15. Pēhshōtanū, son of Vistāsp, is in Kangdez the hundred-moated (sad-gandak), wherein there are a myriad spears (drafsh), those of the exalted who wear black marten fur, who are righteous listeners of the religion, out of the retinue (akharth) of Pēhshōtanū, son of Vistāsp. 16. Frādakhshṭō, son of the mortal Khûmbikš, who is predominant on the waters flowing in channels. 17. Ashavāzd, son of Pûrûdakhshṭō, who is predominant over the most manifest among uplands, the plain of Pēsinās.

18. Barāzak the causer of strife. 19. 'And the eighth Kayān who was renowned, O Vistāsp! it is

within the countries of Irān,' and Mkh. makes Gōpaštō a chief of Airān-vēg.

1 Av. Peshōtanu, commonly written Pēshyōtanū in Pahlavi.
2 A fortified settlement, to the east of Irān (see Bd. XXIX, 10), formed by Styāvaksh (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 14) who was first cousin of Vistāsp's great-grandfather (see Bd. XXXI, 25, 28, 29).
3 Who are expected to be led into Irān by Pēhshōtanū in future times, when he is summoned by the angels to restore religion to the world after the conflict of the nations (see Byt. III, 25–42).
4 K has 'Frādakhshṭō, son of Khûmbik the son of Hōshāŋ.' He was evidently the Fradhākhṣṭi Khūnibya of Yt. XIII, 138, who might have been considered as a descendant of the Haoshyanγha mentioned before him in Yt. XIII.
5 Av. Ashavazdangh Pourudhākhstayanaha of Yt. V, 72, XIII, 112.
6 Said to be in Kāvulistān where Sāma Keresāspa lies asleep till summoned to kill Dahāk in the latter times (see Bd. XXIX, 7, 11; Byt. III, 59–61). It may be connected with the vairī Pisanangh of Yt. V, 37, where Keresāspa offered sacrifice, and with the Pīsin valley south-east of Qandahār; but Chap. XXI, 20 seems to place it between Māzendarān and Irān, and Mkh. LXII, 20 also describes it as near Mount Dimāvand. Its name is variously written Pēsinās, Pesānsih, Pēryānsat, Pesāndas, Pēsānjgas, &c.
8 Kavi Haosravanagh (Kaḥ-Khūsrōū) is the eighth and last in the list of Kavis, or Kayāns, in Yt. XIII, 132; and was celebrated for
he whom one calls Kał-Khūsrūt, who produces even an advance of thy religion of the Mazda-worshippers, and also understands about it; who gives my good practices further blessings, so that the world maintains my doings with benedictions.'

20. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

Chapter XVII.

Sūdkar Nask.

1. The sixteenth fargard, Spentā-mainyû, is about effecting the bridge-judgment of sinners, as declared by revelation. 2. About performing the ceremony (yastō) for a man and a woman, and it is ordered for the woman before the man; the fitness for the supreme heaven (garād'mānīkīh) arisen through the liturgy (yastō) to be recited itself, or through purchasing heaven in the worldly existence.

3. About the immunity of the soul from hell through the righteousness of having respectfully given a horse of a good race, the land of a cultivated field, or a virtuous woman, to a righteous man; and also the woman who gives herself in marriage to

his opposition to idolatry (see Yt. V, 49, 50; Bd. XVII, 7). This section appears to be an actual quotation from the Pahlavi version of the Nask, professing to give the words of Zarathustr.

1 K has dēhīk, 'a provincial.'

2 The first two words of the first hā of the third Gātha (Yas. XLVII, 1), which are converted into the Pahlavi appellation Spēndmaftō.

3 By providing for the performance of the proper ceremonies for the benefit of one's own soul.
the righteous man; and that liberal good work increases from time to time, and from day to day.

4. About the bridge penalty of him who is a mourner (navíntdár) and self-wounder in the three nights after a death, and how it is as though they who are living should again pour melted ore on a human being. 5. About the punishment for a woman who gives herself in marriage to a righteous man, and comes away from him; such as when a hedgehog should be constantly going in and coming out by her sexual organ; and the cutting off of her way from the best existence. 6. About the non-deliverance of a soul of the wicked from hell till the future existence. 7. About the punishment of the wicked there is this, too, it is as though a sheep which is alive should be remaining tied by the legs, head downwards, and there should be a specific exudation of its toes through running at the nose.

8. About the Gāthas for an ordeal of the spiritual existence, which is concealed in every mode, being without a footing (apá-pástakō), as it were, for him who is a righteous chanter of the Gāthas.

9. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

---

1 Pahl. vidanānāg vidanānāg, a hybrid equivalent of zamānak zamānak (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXV, 6 n).
2 B has 'relapses.'
3 Compare AV. LXX.
4 Pahl. aθaš angustī ṣahīh-1-i māyagānīk pavan viṇś-taṅ aṭ. For māyagānīk, 'specific' (which occurs, however, in Bk. VIII, Chap. XX, 166), we can read māsānīk, 'tumorous or coagulating,' or we may consider it equivalent to mūyisānīk, 'lamentable.'
5 Compare the reference to the ordeal by fire in Pahl. Yas. XLVI, 6; the earlier part of the chapter is also somewhat of a homily upon the references to the wicked and righteous in the same hā.
Chapter XVIII.

Sūdkar Nask.

1. The seventeenth fargard, Yēzi\(^1\), is about where he is who shall commit any of these five sins\(^2\), and, thereby perverted from the religion, has diminished his own life and destiny\(^3\):—A human being when he contentedly reverences a demon in spiritual lordship (ahûth) and priestly authority (radîh), one steadfast in religion when he so reverences one unsteadfast in religion, a teacher when he so reverences one who is no teacher and ignorant, one acquainted with the Gāthas when he so reverences one unacquainted with the Gāthas and unintelligent (anashnâs)\(^4\), and a helpful one when he so reverences an unhelpful and unwise one.

2. This, too, where also they are who unlawfully slaughter a sheep, or beast of burden, which diminishes their life and destiny. 3. And so, too, those also who think scornfully of Aûharmazed, O pure and righteous Spîtâmân! and their own religion, the strength of the righteous and thy disciples.

4. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

---

Chapter XIX.

Sūdkar Nask.

1. The eighteenth fargard, A\(d\)-mâ-yavâ\(^5\), is

---

\(^{1}\) The first word of the second hâ of the third Gâtha (Yas. XLVIII, r), here written yezîk in Pahlavi.

\(^{2}\) B omits 'sins.'

\(^{3}\) Or 'glory.'

\(^{4}\) So in K, but both MSS. give this clause imperfectly.

\(^{5}\) The first three words of the third hâ of the third Gâtha (Yas. XLIX, r), here written a\(d\)-mâ-îyûbô in Pahlavi.
about the pregnancy of the demon from him who has eaten and chattered in sinfulness towards Khûr-dad and Amûr dad, or who makes water when standing, or who heedlessly sees his semen. And the hussy who spills (gûyêdô) anything after sunset (hûk-frâshmôk-dâd), or who scatters a morsel (dânar) of food to the north, at night, without a recitation of the Ahunavair.

3. This, too, that only the soul is constantly desirable for the body, even through this alone, that this perishable body [is a worldly state of righteousness, and, by rousing up (lâlâ-payamišnîh) when thou wouldst sleep on, the righteousness] is on the advance when thou wouldst have retreated; and

---

1 Av. haurvatât, ‘completeness, or health,’ and ameretât, ‘immortality;’ the archangels who have special charge of water and plants, respectively (see Sls. XV, 25–29), and are said to be injured by the sin of talking while eating and drinking those things (see Chap. IX, 2).

2 Thereby polluting more ground than is necessary (see Sls. X, 5).

3 See Chap. XI, 5 n.

4 K does not mention the latter sinful action. The reason of the sin of such actions is that they may be considered as offerings to the demons (who are supposed to come from the north and to be powerful at night) unless protected by the Ahunavair (see Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7) used as an exorcism (see Sd. XXX, 1, 2; Sls. X, 7, XII, 18).

5 B has ‘even through the assertion that this is corporeal and perishable.’ The passage in brackets occurs only in K.

6 This appears to be the most probable reading of the word which occurs again in § 5, where it is written lâlâ-ûpayamišnîh in K, which form is also found in Hn. I, 23, where it translates Av. ustryamnô. For the latter member of this compound see also Chap. XX, 6, 7. For the syllable yam we might substitute gam or gãm without much alteration of meaning, or even dam if we translate by ‘fanning up, exciting.’
the righteousness, in arising, is like thee in every coming and departure; through fetching and delivering the breath it shall become good reward, abundant reward, and the reward of righteousness.

4. When the body shall act so, the soul is rejoiced and shall utter a blessing for the body thus: 'Happy may it be for thee, O perishable body! whom I have made tall, and whom I have brought near to the best existence.' 5. And when the body shall not accept the progress (afrâs) of the soul, and says it is evil progress on rousing up, evil progress on advancing, [and evil progress upwards, the soul is a demon]\(^1\) and shall offer [lamentable]\(^1\) words thus: 'Evil art thou, O perishable body! whom I made dwarffish (gasûk), and whom I have brought near to the worst existence.'

6. About where there are unaccustomed (avêsakû), imperfect, and secret signs of short life, and the healthfulness of uttering the Ahunavair\(^2\) and Ashem\(^3\) for it. 7. This, too, that, when thou wouldst squat for making water, thou recitest the Ahunavair, and the Ashem, afterwards, when thou wouldst stand up; so that any demon, or fiend, shall least injure thee. 8. And when thou wouldst go in unto thy wife (nâřâk), thou recitest first the Ahunavair, and the Ashem, afterwards, when thou wouldst be coming together\(^4\); for so thou wouldst be making that, too, which arises—which is thy son—more righteous and

---

1 The words in brackets are omitted in K.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7.
3 See Chap. III, 1; here, and in §§ 7, 8, it is expressed by Pahl. aharâyîh, 'righteousness,' being an abbreviation of its usual appellation, 'praise of righteousness,' in Pahlavi.
4 Pahl. 'amat andarg hakhtô vadîðûnân ât.'
more successful through the Ashem. 9. This, too, that, when thou wouldst go into a house, thou shouldst be offering homage, and do thou utter the Ahunavair, for the spirit of the house and for everything of the material existence of the righteous which is and was and will be in that dwelling.

10. Also about the corruption (tavastanö) of the wicked, and the calamity (sûr) which is unjustly distributed by them in the realm ¹.

11. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

---

CHAPTER XX.

Sûdkar Nask.

1. The nineteenth fargard, Kad-môi-urvâ ², is about where the souls, when they come together, extol the soul of him who was a virtuous high-priest, a friend of the soul, because he did not injure it, and guarded it from hell.

2. About the darkness, the intensity (bûr’zvô-hômanîh) and far-reaching bottomlessness of the blackness, and the absence of goodness in hell; and the proximity to stenches, close concealment ³, sleet-pelted clambering (pîsnakød-bålînîh), frozen ad-

¹ Like Yas. XLIX this fargard begins with special references to the wicked, and returns to them towards the end.

² The first three words of the fourth, and last, hâ of the third Gâtha (Yas. L, r), here written kad-môk-ravakô in Pahlavi.

³ Compare AV. LIV, 5–8:—‘As close as (tang-iô) from the ear to the eye, and as many as the hairs a horse has in his mane, so many in number the souls of the wicked stand, but they do not see, nor do they hear a sound, one from the other, and every one, therefore, thinks that he is alone.’ For a description of hell see also Dd. XXVII.
vancing; painful condition, distressed state, and awful fear of those in hell. 3. This, too, that is thrown open (lakhvār rámítunād) over it, from the Dātti peak ¹, which is in Atrān-vēg, to Albūr'z ², and below the middle of which is the gate of hell, is the Kīnvaḍ bridge ³ which is the route (vīdār) of every one, righteous or wicked; the width across the route of the righteous is a breadth of nine spears, each one the length of three reeds, but the route for the wicked becomes like the edge of a razor.

4. 'Thus say I ⁴ unto thee, O Spītāmān! that the man of truth steps forward over the Kīnvaḍ pass, even the far-famed happy bridge; for Āstād ⁵, the good promoter of the world, and Mītṛō ⁶ of the vast cattle-pastures save only the man possessing truth from that distress, as though they were a regiment (sipāh) a thousand strong. 5. So I say unto thee, O Spītāmān! that thou shouldst not become a liar unto Mītṛō, neither when thou wouldst converse with the wicked, nor when thou wouldst with those of thine own religion who are righteous; for both of those are promises, both with the wicked and the righteous; there is a promise, O Zarātuṣṭ! even of a wolf with young animals, but that which is a

¹ Or Kākād-ī Dāṭī (see Pahl. Vend. XIX, 101; Bd. XII, 7).
² Av. hara bērezaiti, the range of lofty mountains supposed to surround the world (see Bd. V, 3–5).
³ Here called Kīnakō-pūhal, and Kīṣ-vidārg in § 4; for a fuller description of it see Dd. XXI, 2–7. Allusion is made to it in Yas. L, 7.
⁴ Aūharmanē, speaking to Zarātuṣṭ. The whole of this paragraph appears to be quoted verbatim from the original Pahlavi text of the Nask.
⁵ See Chap. IX, 6.
⁶ See Bk. VIII, Chap. XLIV, 16.
lascivious (gêhîk) promise is more awful, O Spitâ-
mân! 6. So I say unto thee, O Spitâmân! that thou shouldst not seize a wanton (gêhîk) for use—
that is, do not make her thy wife—and with com-
pulsion (âpayamiṣnîth) of her 1—that is, do not let
thyself lie with her. 7. And if thou shouldst seize
a courtezan for use, and with compulsion of her,
thou mayst not dismiss her afterwards, neither in
adversity, nor in prosperity, neither on account of
fondness for self, nor for life; because he who seizes
a courtezan for use, and with compulsion, and shall
dismiss her on account of fondness for self, or for
life, becomes thereby a breaker of promises to the
house, village, community, or province, that gives
her life (valman zîvînêdê), and to the soul that
animates her 2.

8. So breaking the promise comes upon the chil-
dren that are theirs, through evil teaching; and he
who is wicked is lying down without children at the
bottom of hell. 9. That is, there is nothing what-
ever of 3 happiness for the wicked, that happiness
which is produced abundantly by him who is Aû-
harinâzd.

10. Perfect righteousness is excellence.

1 Or, perhaps, 'with approach to her' (see Chap. XIX, 3 n). If âpayamiṣnîth were read, it might mean 'aspiration, or attach-
ment' for her.

2 This implies that the woman, being a notorious sinner, cannot
reasonably complain of bodily injury on being dismissed; but her
soul and the community are grievously injured by her being thus
driven into further sin, and for this injury the man's soul will be
made responsible.

3 K has 'none even of this.'
CHAPTER XXI.

Sûdkar Nask.

1. The twentieth fargard, Vohû-khshathrem\(^1\), is about the oppressive actions of the sovereignty which Dahâk\(^2\) exercised over the earth of seven regions, and the forward progress of his commands owing to a surrounding of terrors.

2. About Dahâk's enquiry of the members of the assembly, regarding the reason of the affliction of the collected people, after the cutting up of Yim\(^3\) and the accession (khûdâyîh) of Dahâk; and the people's saying, in reply to Dahâk, that Yim had kept away want and destitution, hunger and thirst, decay and death, lamentation and weeping from the world, besides the cold and heat of the immoderate mingling of the demon with mankind. 3. And this, too, that\(^4\) 'a giver of comfort was Yim—that is, those things were produced by him which are the comfort of mankind—and he was a giver of desire for them, so that his happiness was through the gratification produced—that is, mankind gratified him through virtue. 4. And Aûdak\(^5\), who made

---

\(^1\) The first two words of the fourth Gâtha (Yas. LI, 1), here written vohûk-khshatar (B) and vôhûk-khshatar (K) in Pahlavi.

\(^2\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 8.

\(^3\) As mentioned in Yt. XIX, 46; Bd. XVII, 5 ('when Yim was cut up by them the fire Frôbak saves the glory of Yim from the hand of Dahâk') and XXXI, 5. Regarding Yim see Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 6–8.

\(^4\) What follows, as far as the end of § 7, appears to be quoted verbatim from the original Pahlavi text of the Nask.

\(^5\) The demon Uda who tries to make people talk when they ought to be silent (Bd. XXVIII, 19), and who seems to be identified
Yim the splendid and rich in flocks—who was struck down by you through violent assault—unauthorisedly desirous (varak\textsuperscript{1}) and eager for the world, produced want and destitution, distress and greed, hunger and thirst, and the sanctifier\textsuperscript{2} of Wrath the wounding assailant, Want without pastures, Terror, Destruction the secret-moving; Decay the decrepit\textsuperscript{3}, and the seven arch-demons\textsuperscript{4}. 5. And this, too, that those who look for a son are made devoid of pregnancy by thee; evil-destined is the monster (sipist) self-made, the uncompleted demon that it is impossible to seek a remedy for, who does not extend (lā vālēd) from himself, that is, no lineage proceeds from him. 6. And thou art a sheep that is a wide-traveller, and keeps the dog away from mankind; thou hast snatched away from us the bright radiance of Yim the splendid and rich in flocks, who came out on every evil contingency, at the approach of

(in Pahl. Vend. XVIII, 70) with the fiend who confesses her amours to Srōsh, and is said (in Bd. XXXI, 6) to have been the mother of Dahāk, there named Udāf or Aūd, but more commonly called Vadāk (see Chap. X, 3; Dd. LXXII, 5, LXXVIII, 2), whence possibly the matronymic Vadākân (Mkh. LVII, 25, the Av. vaḍhaghana of Vend. XIX, 6) of that monarch. The text here appears to allude to an amour with Yim.\textsuperscript{5} Av. vara; or it may be a miswriting of varāk, ‘astray’ (Av. vareta).\textsuperscript{6} Pahl. ažišn-hōmōnd, ‘one holding ceremonies,’ alluding to Dahāk himself as the progeny of Aūdāk.\textsuperscript{7} These five demons are Aeshm, Nīyōz, Saham, Sēg, and Zarmān in Pahlavi, who, with the exception of Saham, ‘terror,’ are described in Bd. XXVIII, 15–17, 23, 26.\textsuperscript{8} The seven arch-demons are the six mentioned in Bd. I, 27, XXVIII, 7–13, XXX, 29, whose Avesta names are Akem-manō, Indra, Sauru, Naunghaithya, Tauru, and Zairīka (see Vend. X, 9, 10, XIX, 43), together with either Mithaokhta or Angramainyu himself (see Bd. I, 24).
every winter, or scorched by extreme heat, so as to act for the benefit of his place. 7. Thou art intelligent, O Bēvarāsp! do thou even tell how this opinion is so, that a bad ruler is a thing which is so bad; he who is a good ruler is our desire, we will give the revenue of taxation (bāhar-i madam-dedrūnismith) to him, and anything which is necessary for good government when he shall achieve it.

8. About the smiting by Frēdūn, for the sake of killing Dahāk; the striking of his club upon the nape of the neck (piltk), the heart, and even the skull; and Dahāk’s not dying from that beating.

9. Then smiting him with a sword, and the formation (vaštand) of noxious creatures of many kinds, from the body of Dahāk, at the first, second, and third blow. 10. The exclamation of the creator Aūharmazd to Frēdūn thus: ‘Thou shouldst not cut him who is Dahāk, because, if thou shouldst cut him, Dahāk would be making this earth full of serpents, toads (khan-galāk), scorpions, lizards, tortoises, and frogs,’ with the mode of binding him with awful fetters, in the most grievous punishment of confinement.

11. This, too, that when Azā Dahāk was bound, the report of the same proceeded thus through all the regions, which are seven, that down-stricken is Azā Dahāk, but he who smote him is Frēdūn the Āspikān, the exalted and mighty. 12. And in the

1  K has only ‘who came out at every place to act for its benefit.’
2  ‘With a myriad of horses,’ a title of Dahāk.
3  See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 8, 9.
4  Or, perhaps, ‘the reins.’
5  In Mount Dimāvand (see Chap. XV, 2 n).
6  Av. Āthwyāna, a patronymic derived from Āthwyya who,
tenth winter those particulars were believed, and thus they spoke, that it was owing to\(^1\) Yim that Az-î Dahâk is now smitten by them, because the tidings which are good are not yet gathered unto all the regions, which are seven, and those which are evil do not mention Az, nor demand the virtuous maiden (kârâtîk) with importunity, nor even coveted wealth\(^2\). 13. This, too, that, when information came to him of women, or property, that seemed to him desirable to possess, they were then admitted by him into a golden cage\(^3\), and that, which was completely impregnable (ârîstô), came on through immaterial space (mainôg-divâkîh) to the den (grêstakô) of Az-î Dahâk.

14. This, too, that, though\(^4\) he who smote him was his brother, or descendant, or kinsman, or any one whatever of his nearest relations, it did not seem to them as that which is grievous, and it was not thought of in their minds, so that it did not occasion them even a reminiscence again; and thus they talked, that if a householder be he that smote, he is one for whom all the fires of the religion are suitable, but that householder being a monarch, he that smote is one who is every way their ruler. 15. This,

---

\(^1\) Or min may mean ‘apart from.’

\(^2\) Demands often made by Dahâk, as stated in § 13.

\(^3\) Pahl. sůlak-hômând, ‘something having apertures;’ compare the sůlâk-hômând which translates Av. sufrâm and suwrâya in Vend. II, 7, 18, 30, and has sometimes been understood as a ‘signet-ring.’ Also compare § 19 below.

\(^4\) Assuming that mûn, ‘who,’ stands for amat, as in Chap. XIII, 2.
too, that at every place where he came on, and upon which his horse's hoofs (safō) fell, the dense fire from them was for the protection of the horse's body. 16. This, too, that through his confused (gāmēzakō) practising of good deeds arose even the evil deeds of Az-ı Dahāk.

17. About those of the Māzendarān country having consulted, after the smiting of Dahāk, as to turning (gāstanā) to Khvanīras, and driving out Frēdūn therefrom, and as to the residence offered by the same place through the great number fallen; also, on account of their tallness, there are parts of the wide-formed ocean that come up to their mid-thigh, there are others that are up to the navel, and the deeper places are up to the mouth. 18. And, when they have come to this region, their producing grievous harm and destruction to the poor, and the coming of the people with complaints to Frēdūn, and their speaking thus: 'Why didst thou smite Az-ı Dahāk, who was a good ruler as to prerogative, so that danger was kept away by him, and an inquisitor (vīgōyīdār) from him protected this region from those of the Māzendarān country?' 19. And they also said this, about the vileness of the Māzendarāns, and the wretched state of the people of this region as regards them, that is, they then speak thus: 'Since their habits are thus, since they

---

1 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 9.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. VIII, 2. Māzendarān was considered to be outside of Khvanīras because it is separated from Irān by lofty mountains.
3 The Caspian is probably meant here, being considered a portion of the circumambient ocean.
4 K omits 'to the poor.'
are filthy (dōs-hōmōnd)—that is, dirt (karak) is theirs—possessing holes\(^1\) (sūlak-hōmōnd)—that is, holes are theirs—*and* having appellations (karītu-nīsnō-hōmōnd)—that is, they call to one another—we men (vīr) think, *and* consider upon this, that they also are human beings.'

20. About the encountering of Frēdūn with those of the Māzendarān country on the plain of Pēsānīgas\(^2\), and disputing with them thus: ‘You are of the Māzendar country, *and* I (anmanō) have destroyed Āz-ī Dahāk by the swiftest ruin, *him* who was a grievous sovereign of every one, demons *and* men; for that smiting of him I am produced by Aūharmāzd more overpowering than his limbs made paralyzed by his own enmity, and then you destroy this country of mine, you who are of the Māzendar country.’

21. And the Māzendarāns thought slightingly (sapūkō) of Frēdūn, *and* spoke in a tone of derision thus: ‘Should it be so, that thou destroyedst Āz-ī Dahāk by the swiftest ruin, *him* who was a good sovereign of both demons and men, and thou art produced by Aūharmāzd, for that smiting of him, more overpowering than his limbs, even then we *will* settle in this *place* and *will* stay in this *place*; and *it* is not thou that *art* exalted, who *art* an overgrown (kābed-ārōyisnō) huge sheep with the speech of a hero among other people, *and* we would not admit thee here.’

22. This, too, that ‘nevertheless they afterwards fled, and the victorious Frēdūn pursued them to the

---

\(^1\) Burrows, caves, and similar underground habitations are probably meant.

\(^2\) See Chap. XVI, 17.
foremost upland, and his nostrils flamed upon it so that they split it through; from his right nostril is the cutting and sharp scorching of the ice that has fallen and of all the cold of winter; and from his left nostril is the cutting and sharp scorching of the rock that has fallen, which is similarly burning to a fire the size of a house, carrying the dust from the feet of the male ox, Barmâyûn, of the obstructed victor, the mighty Frêdûn. 23. And he made it rush up on the ascent, whereby they are made figures of stone, and they who are of the Mázendar country are destroyed by him through the smiting of fifties, the smiting of hundreds, the smiting of thousands, the smiting of myriads, and the smiting of multitudes innumerable.

24. 'Thus there are destroyed by him, the victorious and mighty Frêdûn, two-thirds of those of the Mázendar country, and one-third came out beaten and sick; and never afterwards, O Spîtâmân Zarâtûst! have they who are of the Mázendar country marched upon this region of Khvanîras, and it has not been imagined by them, even in thinking about it, that they should go there, except those whose names were thus, Spîtyôs, son of Spânsnâyôs, and Arezrâspâh, son of Spânsnâyôs, who have wan-

---

1 This appears to have also been the name of a brother of Frêdûn (see Bd. XXXI, 8).
2 B omits 'the smiting of thousands.'
3 Compare Yt. V, 54, 58, 117; Pahl. Vend. VII, 137, 139.
4 Literally 'we.'
5 K has 'the two.'
6 These first two names are only in K, because B repeats here a previous phrase by mistake. The second name is written Sânsnâyôs here, but is spelt correctly on its next occurrence.
7 These two sons of Spânsnâyôs were the spiritual chiefs, or
dered (tagt'dö) in search of wisdom and have proceeded unto Frashôstar¹ of the Hvôbas².

25. Perfect excellence is righteousness.

---

**CHAPTER XXII.**

**Sûdkar Nask.**

1. The twenty-first fargard, Vahîstôisti³, is about where the best prayers⁴ of the good religion are: unto Mitrô⁶ once every night for dismissing and lessening Wrath in the whole world, and a second time for doing so with Lethargy; a third unto Srôsh⁶ the righteous, and the fourth is the Dâhmân Áfrîn⁷ for further gifts and increasing gifts; and the most supreme high-priests, of the two northern regions, Fradadâfsh and Vidadâfsh. They are named Spîtiôdî Aûspôsinân and Aêrezrâspî Aûspôsinân in Bd. XXIX, 1; and the statement that they came from Mâzendarân, made in the text here, identifies that country with the two northern regions. The names of these two high-priests are evidently derived from the Avesta genitives Spîtiôs Uspâsnaos and Erezrâspahê Uspâsnaos in Yt. XIII, 121, persons concerning whom it is only stated that their fravashis, or guardian spirits, are to be reverenced.

¹ See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68.
² Av. Hvôva, the family name of Frashôstar, Gâmâsp, and several other ancient personages (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XXIX, 25).
³ The appellation of the fifth Gâtha (Yas. LIII) which begins with the words vahistâ isti̇s; it is here written vahistôk-istô in Pahlavi.
⁴ The Pahlavi explanation of Av. vahistâ istis.
⁵ See Bk. VIII, Chap. XLIV, 16.
⁶ See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3.
⁷ 'The blessing of members of the community.' The Dâhmân Áfrînagân consists of Yas. LX, 2–7 with Âf. I, 14–18; but the Áfrîn is another formula, otherwise called 'the Áfrîn of the seven Ameshâspends,' and it is uncertain which of the two is meant here.
preservative of them was the Dâhmân Áfrîn. 2. And this, too, that the most admirable of shapes of women was Hûmât of the noble family of Vistâsp, of horses the splendid horse of Vistâsp, of oxen the male ox Barmâyûn, of sheep the very much celebrated sheep that is fat, white-jawed, and star-spotted, with its upper half in a manufacture (pasakhtakô) embroidered with gold and the topmost part yellow; and yet not one of them attains an equality to even a single thousandth part of the glory of a righteous man, a member of the community, by whom the Dâhmân Áfrîn of the good is uttered. 3. And this, too, as much as its goodness for the man and his wife is its evil for a villain and his paramour.

4. About the exercise of sovereignty by Kâl-Ús, with triumph, over the earth of seven regions; the advancement of his commands, by the people of the creation, more swiftly than a wave of the hands; the construction of his seven dwellings (mân) in the midst of Albûr, one of gold, two of silver, two

---

1 Av. (gen.) Humayau of Yt. XIII, 139.
2 See Chap. XXI, 22.
3 Reading frêh-ôkhtar (for frêh-ôkhtar), as Bd. XXIV, 3 states that 'the black sheep which is fat and white-jawed is the chief of sheep.' It might be 'the sheep of Frashôkhtar,' and this name might be a miswriting of Frashôstar, but we have no record of any such sheep of his.
4 It is easy to trace a connection between §§ 1, 2 and Yas. LIII, 1, and between § 3 and the Pahl. version of Yas. LIII, 6 a.
5 Av. Kava Usa (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 13).
6 K has 'by demons and men.'
7 Probably the origin of the legends of the seven halting-places of Rustam and Isfendiyär in the Shâhńâmah.
8 Here meaning the mountain-range south of the Caspian (see Chap. XX, 3).
of steel, and two of crystal (āvginakīnō); the restraining of the many Māzōnīk demons¹ who are the ruin of the world, and confining them to their own duty; the arrival at those dwellings of his, and the swift winding (vāfīnīdanō) around those dwellings, of a person whose strength is overpowered by decrepitude, and the approach of whose life to departure from the body has taken place; the reduction (khūsānī-hastanō) of the decrepitude thereby, and the return of his strength and manhood, that is, a command is given by him thus: 'Keep no people away at the door!' and he might make a domestic of fifteen years of age.

5. Afterwards, the consultation of the demons about the death of Kāt-Ūs, and the coming of Aeshm² to Kāt-Ūs, approving his death, and, therefore, making him wretched in his mind about the great sovereignty which was possessed by him over the seven lands, and causing him to long for the sovereignty of the heavenly region (āsāmānō gās) of the archangels³. 6. And, owing to the seductiveness of Aeshm, and the other demons who remained his co-operators for that undoing, Kāt-Ūs was even engaged in opposing and molesting the sacred beings. 7. Also his not returning across Albûr'z, but rushing upwards, with many demons and wicked people, unto the outer edge of darkness⁴;

¹ Av. Māzāinya daēva, the idolators of Māzendarān.
² The demon of wrath (see Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3 n).
³ §§ 5–9 are evidently a summary of the original form of the legend of Kāvus's attempt to reach the sky, otherwise described in the Shāhnāmah.
⁴ Where the endless light commences. Reading par-i tōm; or it might be 'to the utmost,' if we read frētum as equivalent to frēhtūm.
and the reason of the glory of the Kayâns\(^1\) becoming a figure of clay on that border. 8. The previous separation (madâm rëgë-hastâno) of Kâl-Ús from the troops, and his not turning from that ill-advisedness even on renewed strife aloft\(^2\) with the supreme sacred beings. 9. Afterwards, the creator’s calling back the glory of the Kayâns to himself, the falling of the troops of Kâl-Ús to the earth from that height, and the flying of Kâl-Ús to the wide-formed ocean\(^3\).

10. This, too, it says, that, besides him, some one\(^4\) flew behind him, thus associated with him; and after him flew Nêryôsang\(^5\), the promoter (frêh-dâdâr) of the world, for diverting that person from him. 11. And the cry of him, the unborn Khûsrôî, who was thus associated with him, like that of a regiment (sîpâh) a thousand strong, was thus:

‘Thou shouldst not smite him, O Nêryôsang, promoter of the world! For if thou shouldst smite this man, O Nêryôsang, promoter of the world! there will not be afterwards obtained, for acquirement, a

---

\(^1\) K omits ‘of the Kayâns.’ It is the royal glory of Yt. XIX, which descended from heaven and accompanies the faithful rulers and champions of the religion, successively (see Chap. XXIV, 3).

\(^2\) B has ‘pitying strife;’ khvâparîk being written instead of avarîk.

\(^3\) Meaning the Caspian, as in Chap. XXI, 17.

\(^4\) It will be seen, from what follows, that this was the fravashi, or guardian spirit, of his future grandson, Kaî-Khûsrôî. Every being and object belonging to Aûharmazd’s creation is supposed to have its spiritual representative, created before the universe and perpetually existing (see Bd. I, 8; Mkh. XLIX, 23).

\(^5\) Av. Nairýôsangha, an angel who is supposed to be the usual messenger of Aûharmazd to mankind (see Byt. III, 25, 26, 59, 60). K has only ‘besides him and behind him flew Nêryôsang.’
thorough destroyer of the high-priest of Tūrān; because owing to this man will be born him whose name is Siyāvakhsh, and owing to Siyāvakhsh I shall be born, who am the Khûsrōī who will entice the most heroic one of Tūrān—who is mostly the destruction of champions and troops—to the numerous heroes of the religion, so that I may accomplish the destruction of his champions and troops, when I would occasion a distant flight of the sovereign of Tūrān. Through these words the guardian spirit of Khûsrōī delighted Nēryōsang, the promoter of the world; and, on these words, the latter was releasing him and that Kāṭ-Ūs who thereby became discreet.

13. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

---

CHAPTER XXIII.

Sūdkar Nask.

1. The twenty-second fargard, Airyaman, is about the meeting of Kāṭ-Khûsrōī and Vāē, the long-continuing lord next to the renovation of the

---

1 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 15.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 14.
3 A single particular hero appears to be meant, although this is not quite certain.
4 Assuming that mūn, 'who,' stands for amat, as in Chap. XIII, 2.
5 The appellation of Yas. LIV which begins with the words ā airyemā ʾisḥyō; it is here written afrēmānō (B) and afrēmanō (K) in Pahlavi.
6 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 14.
7 Pahl. vāē-ī dērāng-khûdāī=Av. vaya dareghōkhvadhāta who is mentioned as a good spirit in Ny. I, 1. There are, how-
universe; and Kai-Khûsrôî's asking Vâê, the long-continuing lord, about his smiting so many of the ancients who have been the highest of mankind in splendour and glory. 2. The reply of Vâê, the long-continuing lord, about his smiting them; and, upon that answer, Kai-Khûsrôî's taking Vâê, the long-continuing lord, and transforming him into the shape of a camel, mounting him, and going, with the Irânian levies (hang'amanôîkân), to the place where the immortal Haoist, son of Geurva, lies in strength, and his letting him lie; also his going beyond (kâdmon) him to the place where Tûs, the banisher of strife, lay in strength, and his letting him also lie; and his going beyond him to the place where Kai-Apîvêh lies, and his letting him also lie.

ever, two Vâês (see Dd. XXX, 4; Mkâh. II, 115), the good Vâê who assists the departed soul, and the bad Vâê who opposes it; the former is closely connected with the angel Râm in Yt. XV, 0, 58, and the latter with Astô-vîdhô-tu, the demon of death, in Vend. V, 8, 9; Bd. XXVIII, 35. They appear to be personifications of the upper and lower air, respectively; the former being considered pure through its connection with the sacred beings, and the latter impure through contamination by the demons. Possibly the legend about Vâê in our text may have been suggested by the words vayû-beredubyô and vayôî in Yas. LIII, 6, 7; in which case, this fargard must be considered, to some extent, as a continuation of the preceding one. According to Dd. XXXVI, 3 Kai-Khûsrôî was made to pass away by Vâê.

1 Compare Av. Yûsta Gâurvayana of Yt. XIII, 118. But Yôîsta Fryâna, of Yt. XIII, 120, is one of the immortals mentioned in Byt. II, 1; Dd. XC, 3.

2 Reading hang, which can also mean 'a cave;' but we can likewise read hûg, 'spiritual life.'

3 Av. Tusa of Yt. V, 53, 58; he is one of the immortals mentioned in Bd. XXIX, 6; Dd. XXXVI, 3.

4 Av. Kavi Apîvanghu of Yt. XIII, 132, XIX, 71. He was son of Kai-Kavâd, brother of Kâl-Üs, and great-grandfather of Vîrtasp's grandfather (see Bd. XXXI, 25, 28, 31, 34).
3. His proceeding beyond them, and meeting on the road with that beneficial victor Sôshâns\(^1\), and being asked by that beneficial victor thus: 'What man art thou who sittest aloft on Vâê, the long-continuing lord, so that thou makest Vâê fly, the long-continuing lord transformed into the shape of a camel?' 4. The speaking of Kaï-Khûsrôî, in reply to Sôshâns, thus: 'I am Kaï-Khûsrôî.' 5. The extolling of Kaï-Khûsrôî, by Sôshâns, as regards his having extirpated the idol-temples on the shore of Lake Kêkast\(^2\), and his smiting the wizard Frâslyêv\(^3\).

6. The glorifying of the Mazda-worshipping religion by Kaï-Khûsrôî; the coming of the powerful being Keresâsp\(^4\), club in hand, advancing towards them at the dwelling of that wizard Ges\(^5\); the standing up of Tûs, the banisher of strife, and his calling to Keresâsp for reliance upon the Gâtha lore and for union with them; and the praising of righteousness\(^6\) by Keresâsp, and his throwing away the arm-breaker.

7. As to these, too, it says that so those men come together for producing the renovation of the universe who are mentioned in this fargard, and also in other places, and are all experienced and eminent

---

\(^1\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIV, i.4.
\(^2\) Apparently the present Lake Urumiyah (see Bd. XVII, 7, XXII, 2; Mkh. II, 95).
\(^3\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, i.1.
\(^4\) See Chap. XV.
\(^5\) Written \(\mathfrak{U}\), but the reading is uncertain; possibly the name may be connected with 'the Veskô progeny' in Chap. XV, 2.
\(^6\) Reciting the Ashem-vohû formula, as a token of adherence to the religion.
doers, and all powerful and brave; and they shall produce the renovation through a desire for an existence undecaying, immortal, hungerless, and thirstless for ever and ever everlasting.

8. It is perfect excellence that is righteousness.

CHAPTER XXIV.

1. Of the Varstmânsar 1 there are twenty-three fargards, and the first is the Aēthropaitis 2, on the asking of Zarâtûst, by Maídôk-mâh 3, about the nature of the birth of Zarâtûst, and his coming to the religion. 2. And the reply of Zarâtûst about the combative coming together of the life-causing and death-causing spirits at his birth 4. 3. This, too, that when the fellow-villagers 5 of her who bore him saw his head 6

---

1 The second of the Nasks and third of the Gâthic division (see Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 9, 12). It is a second commentary on the Gâthas, devoting a fargard to each ha of the Gâthas and to each Gâthic formula, as in the Sânûkar Nask, but beginning with an extra fargard about the birth and calling of Zarâtûst. Its chief object appears to be the quotation of texts, both from the Gâthas and from sources no longer known.

2 Here written aṣrapâītûs (B) and aṣrapâītîs (K) in Pahlavi, which, no doubt, stand for Av. aēthropaitis, Pers. hêrbad, 'a Zoroastrian priest.' This name may either refer to the general subject of the fargard, or have been the first word of its Avesta text; as it seems not intended to quote any section of the Yasna, although the guardian spirits of the priests are reverenced in Yas. XXVI, 7, 8, before commencing the recitation of the Gâthas.

3 Av. Maídhyô-maungha; he was first cousin of Zarâtûst, and also his first disciple (see Bd. XXXII, 2, 3; Zs. XI, 10 n).

4 B has 'at the birth of his life.'

5 B has ham-visagîh, K ham-disagîh.

6 Assuming that vâgânô stands for vâg'dânô, which word occurs in § 4, according to K.
they considered it the shoulder of Aredvâksûr, and his chest and back those of Aharîsvang, and when they saw his full bosom they considered it that of the spirit of liberality; and by his side was the Kayân glory to rub (mûstanô) his bosom.

4. The speaking of Zarâtûst spiritually, on the grievous bringing forth of his head, thus: 'As a spiritual lord is my desire, do thou who art the Zôti speak forth to me;' and the reply from Aûhar-mazd thus: 'So shouldst thou be the priestly master as regards whatever righteousness I speak forth with righteous intelligence; thou art of very much value, thou art very righteous, thou art most intelligent, and thou wilt state the religion of the Mazda-worshippers to creatures of every kind.'

5. Through that saying an arrow reaches spiritually unto the demons, just as from a mighty chief warrior of Kat-Vistasp, like him in a mountain dwelling (garânô mân) who has shot an arrow for an attack (pâtô-pisnô) opposing those in coats of mail. 6. The evil spirit grumbled (dandîdô) to the demons thus: 'Evil has it become for you who are demons, but

---

1 B omits 'the shoulder of.'
2 Av. Aredvîsûra of Yt. V, a title of Anâhita, the female angel of the waters.
3 See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3.
4 Pahl. aûrûkspar = Av. uruthware.
5 Av. Râta, who is associated with the archangel Speûta-Ârmaiti in Yt. II, 3, 8; Srî. I, II, 5, and with Ashî Vanguhi in Yt. XXIV, 8.
6 Av. kavaêm hvarenô (see Chap. XXII, 7).
7 B has 'whenever his birth occurred.'
8 This, with the first clause of the response, is the Pahlavi version of the concluding formula of Yas. XXVI, 11, without the extra Pahlavi glosses.
9 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. XI, 1-4, XIII, 15.

Q 2
you are unobservant.' 7. Even so Zarâtûst pro-
claimed life free from the control of the demons,
when this same saying was uttered by him, thus :
'As a spiritual lord is my desire,' and, at the falling
of the demons upon Zarâtûst for his destruction, an
incarnation (tanû) of its spiritual existence stood
opposed to them, in that weapon proceeding from
Zaratûst, to keep them back.

8. And he spoke again thus: 'The religion of the
benefiters progresses there in him who, through good
actions, has joyfulness owing to his righteousness;'
and, through that saying, an arrow reaches spiritually
unto the demons, equal to ten of that which was
first spoken, and, at the falling of the demons upon
Zaratûst for his destruction, it stood spiritually
opposed to them, and that weapon proceeding from
Zaratûst kept them back.

9. The third utterance of Zarâtûst, on the bringing
forth of his arms, was thus: 'That which the first
existence produced is to be so practised, with atten-
tion, through actions to be concealed by him who is
a priestly authority (radô);' and through that saying
an arrow reaches spiritually unto the demons, equal
to one hundred of that which was first spoken, and,
at the falling of a demon upon Zarâtûst for his death,
it's spirit, as a sacred being, kept the demon away
from Zarâtûst.

10. And, when the whole body of Zarâtûst was
brought forth, trouble (âsipô) fell among the demons,
and the demons rushed back to hell in haste; light

---

1 This is the Pahlavi version of Yas. XXXIV, 13 b, without the
glosses.

2 This is the Pahlavi version of Yas. XXXIII, 1 a, b, without the
glosses and incomplete.
increased among the creatures, and every creature of the beneficent sacred being is pleased and talked of virtuous conduct. 11. And Aûharmazd took away Zaratûst with joyfulness to provide security for him, and Arekdvîksûr, Ahartsvang, and the primitive and Kayân glory in the body of Zaratûst spoke to Zaratûst of its production by Aûharmazd thus: ‘Thou shouldst think of him who is wise.’ 12. Thereupon Zaratûst spoke spiritually, in reply, thus: ‘I am a Mazda-worshipper, I profess the Mazda-worship of Zaratûst; and this means that I am an apostle of Aûharmazd, and am sent by Aûharmazd.’

13. And Aûharmazd spoke to Zaratûst thus: ‘As to the sacred beings of the worldly existence, do thou beg companionship from them; but as to the demons, do thou long for (dôsh)² separation from every one of them; practise good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, and abstain from evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds.’ 14. Also about vigilantly reverencing the sacred beings, and the reward thereof; not strengthening the vile, nor weakening³ the good; expounding for the disturber of religion (dênô-padrêsh), and producing liberality for the accepters of religion; and not turning away from the religion on account of fondness for body and life.

15. The accepting of such advice spiritually by Zaratûst, and his glorifying Aûharmazd, for crea-

---

¹ This is the Pahlavi version of part of Yas. XII, 7, 8 (XIII, 25 Sp.) without the glosses.
² B has ‘hope for’ (nyôsh).
³ Assuming that nizôrînîdanô (K) stands for nizârînîdanô; B has zôrînîdanô, which is synonymous with the previous nîrû-kînîdanô, ‘strengthening.’
tiveness, sovereignty, and all goodness, and the primary archangels and other good creations, each separately, for their own special glory. And, afterwards, the grumbling of the evil spirit maliciously, at that vexation, thus: 'I have produced, for the annoyance of any upholder of that religion of thine, 99,999 wizards, 99,999 wolf-worshippers, and 99,999 apostates.'

17. Aûharmazd spoke to Zaratûst thus: 'Maintain this religion steadfastly, for through the assistance of this religion I, who am Aûharmazd, will be with thee, and the omniscient wisdom becomes thine, and extends to thy disciples, Maîdôk-mâh, Parshad-gâvô, Sênô, Kaî-Vistâsp, Frashôstar, and Gâmâsp, the teacher of public observance and will to the righteous, besides many of the people who are diligent and even those who are idle, and their good works and praise will be owned by thee.'

---

1 Or it may be 'in his own particular soul (nisman).'</p>

2 Pahl. rêsîhîdârôûh, which B omits.

3 This term, gûrg-gazakô (= Av. vehrkayâza), does not occur in the extant Avesta.

4 See § 1.

5 Av. Parshad-gau of Yt. XIII, 96 (compare Pâz. Parsadgâ of Bd. XXIX, 5). This name can also be read Fradâdayânô and be compared with Av. Fradhidaya of Yt. XIII, 97.

6 Av. Sêna of Yt. XIII, 97, who is said to have 'first set forth upon this earth with a hundred disciples.' Further details about him are given in Chap. XXXIII, 5. In the third and seventh books of the Dînkard his name is written Sênôv (for Sênôk or Sênôë) which has been read Dâyûn by Peshotan (Dk. pp. 308–314 of English translation), as pointed out by Darmesteter in his Textes Pehlevi relatifs au Judaïsme, p. 3, n. 2. In Dk. VII he is said to have been a high-priest who was born in the 100th year of the religion, and died in its 200th year.

7 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68.
wise about the worldly display of the religion to Zaratûst by Aûharmazd, the accepting of the religion by Zaratûst through recitation and faith, and the reverence of the Ahunavair¹ by Zaratûst.

19. Also about Aûharmazd having created the creatures in the spiritual existence, and their allotment out to the worldly existence, the superiority of the righteous man as compared with other creatures, and, among mankind, of him who is relying on the provisions of the law and its unchangeableness from goodness, and who is a teacher and provider of teaching as to the pre-eminent existence of the good religion of the sacred beings.

20. And a summary about the bringing together of that fire which is the residue of a fire in a house, for the reverence of that water which is nearest to the dwelling, and of any spirit of a kinsman; and as to him who leaves that fire, water, and spirit, and, on account of a similar desire, venerates another fire, water, and spirit, but none of them can accept that ceremonial, and the acceptance of that man's ceremonial by the others will have occurred just when the former three are revered by him.

21. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

---

CHAPTER XXV.

Varstmânsar Nask.

1. The second fargard, Yatha-ahû-vairyô ², is about the worthiness, as to worldly and spiritual virtue, in a ruler and in the production of a high-

¹ See Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7.
² The Ahunavair (see Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7) upon which this fargard is a commentary quoting some text on the subject in § 2.
priest’s efficiency; and they have been suitable for leadership and priestly authority with whom there is an existence of it; also other talent through which sovereignty and priestly authority are appropriated, and which the ruler or high-priest himself possesses.

2. ‘My wish (dôsh), O Zaratûst! is that thou be in spiritual lordship and priestly authority, because thou art, O Zaratûst! provided with a spiritual lord and possessing priestly instruction—that is, they consider thee, too, as high-priest—and it is because thine is the accomplishment of rites, that thou art quite preserved when there is an encounter of the demons with thee—that is, a dispute of apostates with thee.’

3. It is non-possession of a ruler and high-priest, or non-possession of a ruler, that became the nature and law of the demons; and the maintenance of Aûharmazd and the archangels, as ruler and high-priest, and the dominion of Aûharmazd are combined with beneficence.

4. This, too, that through righteousness a priestly instructor (raudô) is a ruler at will, a sage and benefactor, a cherisher and cleanser (âsnîdâr) of the poor; also the fitness for the supreme heaven (garôdmânîkîh) of all those who are accepting the religion which proceeds from Zaratûst.

5. Of righteousness the excellence is perfect.

Chapter XXVI.

VarstmAñsar Nask.

1. The third fargard, Ashem-vohû, is about

---

1 K omits these five words, and B has a blank space for the letters khûd in khûdât, ‘ruler.’

2 See Chap. III, 1 n.
admonition as to the praising of righteousness, which is itself the production of true awe of Aûharmazd, the perfection of existences, the better state of prayers\(^1\), and the greatest assemblage of righteousness, good breeding, humility (avôpatagth), awe of the spiritual existence, extreme joyfulness, and comfort and enlightenment of soul. 2. Also the equipment (padmûkth) of him who is practising as a high-priest is righteousness and the maintenance of the worship and obeisance for the spirit of righteousness.

3. Of righteousness perfect is the excellence.

---

**Chapter XXVII.**

*Varstmnars Nask.*

1. The fourth fargard, Yênhê-hâtâm\(^2\), states that Aûharmazd spoke to Zarâtûst the Spîtâmân thus: 'Utter the words of the ceremonial and obeisance for us who are Aûharmazd and\(^3\) the archangels, because they are, O Zarâtûst! thy ritual for water\(^4\), ritual for plants, ritual for a guardian spirit of the righteous, and ritual for an angel of a spiritual existence, or who is even appointed for a worldly existence.'

2. And Zarâtûst spoke thus: 'I will utter the words of Aûharmazd, which are opposed to harm

\(^1\) K omits 'of prayers.'

\(^2\) See Chap. IV, i n. The texts quoted in this fargard appear to be no longer extant.

\(^3\) B omits 'Aûharmazd and.'

\(^4\) K omits 'ritual for water.'
and are the ordinance of Aûharmazd, those of the ceremonial and obeisance for you who are archangels.'

3. Of righteousness perfect is the excellence.

---

Chapter XXVIII.

Varstmânsar Nask.

1. The fifth fargard, Yânîm-manô¹, is about the beneficence and worthiness of Zaratûst, through the virtuousness of his thoughts, words, and deeds²; the priority of Aûharmazd³, and the first possession of obeisance (nîyâyîsnô) to him; the mindful performance of obeisance to the sacred beings, and all the merit of obeisance to the sacred beings; the excellence of receiving a righteous man, of bringing fire together, and of maintaining the good religion; the elementary (khâm) wisdom⁴ of the creator, and the consideration of every duty towards his will and creation; the outward indication as to propitious discrimination and of what is done by those who are propitious; and the existence of every kind of self-attraction by Zaratûst towards the religion, from first to last, through the complete reasoning thought that arose solely through obeisance to the sacred beings.

2. This, too, that 'thou art come to the supreme heaven (garôdmân)⁵, O righteous Zaratûst! thou

---

¹ See Chap. V, i n.
² See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, o.
³ Ibid. 1 b.
⁴ Ibid. r c.
⁵ Ibid. 4 a.
art aware of the deeds, O Zarátúst ! which were practised by those in the bodily existence, and which still they practise, and the sacred beings have placed upon mankind acquiring the power of good works.' 3. And about the wonderfulness of the supreme heaven there is this, too, that whoever is in that abode is not any one that passes away after his birth; at the time of the renovation of the universe the supreme heaven is lowered down to the star station 1, the earth being up to there, and Vohúman 2 is summoned for every purpose to the conference, and, when they call him, Mitvä's 3 investigation as regards the existence of righteousness is on the spot; through the coming of that archangel 4 of true statements for assistance, and through the co-operation of the other archangels and Srôsh 2 the righteous, is the overpowering of the vexing of distressers 5; and the assistance of the archangels for Zarátúst was when he went forth for disabling the vicious law of Irân. 4. Concerning Zarátúst there is this, too, in the words of Áhármazd, that is: 'Thou art our own, O Zarátúst! and this liberality to thee is ours; anything one gives to thee is given by him to us;' also the announcement to Zarátúst, and the bringing of him to Vistâsp 6 for his assistance and likewise the strength 7 of his sovereignty for him.

1 The lowest grade of heaven (see Sl. VI, 3 n).
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3 for both angels.
3 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XLIV, 16.
4 Vohúman.
5 See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 6 c.
6 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XI, 1; and compare Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 6 b, 7 b, c.
7 So in K, but B has 'also his announcement on being brought to Vistâsp, and Zarátúst was an assistance to him and the strength, &c.'
5. The discipleship and veneration of Frashõstar\(^1\) also, and the laudation of Frashõstar for making the religion progressive and for its true transmission in the words of Aûharmazd; also the whole righteousness of those whom Frashõstar attracted to the religion.

6. About the laudation of Zaratûst there is this, too, that is: 'Thou art not astray from us, neither in life, nor in enquiry, nor in openly announcing, even when demonstrating\(^2\) the religion to others, nor in anything whatever, \(O\) Spitâmân! from us who are archangels; and the donation of benefit to suppliants is the food, and the clothing for us, who are in the ceremonial of the sacred beings, is unworn (asû dakô)\(^3\).'

7. About guarding a friend, managing an unfriendly person, and affording a person shelter for the sake of protection, justice, and rectitude\(^4\); also the unworthy condition of that man who, requiring to perform those duties and good works that are important, shall perform those that are trivial. 8. And this, too, that is: 'Thou art likewise aware, and thou also understandest it, \(O\) righteous Zaratûst! through the sagacity of my wisdom, which was the first among existences\(^5\), and which is also so unto the last existence.'

9. Righteousness is excellence that is perfect.

---

\(^1\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68, and compare Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 8 b, c.

\(^2\) K has 'when thou wouldst demonstrate.'

\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 10 c.

\(^4\) Ibid. xi a.

\(^5\) Ibid. xi c.
CHAPTER XXIX.

Varstmánsar Nask.

1. The sixth fargard, Khshmaibyá, is about the complaint of Gōs-aúrvan to Aúharmaed, when she sat at the creation in the assembly of the archangels, as regards the abundant disease and misery which she saw spiritually would come upon her in a bodily existence, through beating, slaughtering, and wounding, stealing, plundering, and presenting, by him of vicious actions and worse desires, as a bribe to him who is an evil-ruling villain (mar), and the operation thereof: the bad ownership, wrongful investigation, false evidence, and making captive (vardakō), by him who is wrathful and oppressive through greed and envy, from the warm cowshed and the effective and diligent guardianship of the herd's dog (pasūs-haūrvō), to that which is a cold and hastily-constructed place; or by him who is seeking meat with a merciless hand through making her distantly separated from her young. 2. Also their explanation and extenuation (kâstanō), and the causing of misery of many kinds thereby, 'which is no affliction to them when the wind that is cold, or even that which is hot, comes upon me; which is no affliction to them when the untimely offspring of

---

1 See Chap. VI, 1n; it is here written khshmāibā (B) and khshmāibē (K) in Pahlavi.
2 See Chap. XV, 3; Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 1.
3 Or it may be 'fining and beating,' as K has kûstanō.
4 B has 'when some of that which is cold,' writing āttō for vâdō in this first clause, and amat min for amatam in the first and third clauses.
my womb being cast away, they slaughter me; and is no affliction to them when the serpent, the leech (khun-garâl)¹, or even the foulest of noxious creatures gnaws me.' 3. And the petition of Gôs-aûrvan was thus: 'Do not appoint me to a worldly existence and that awful misery, or, if thou appointest me to a worldly existence, produce it for me without life (aû-zûstânîhû), so that I may be without feeling and may want that distressing² pain; it is created for the mighty, through whose assistance there is a capability of affording protection to me, even though the Kaî and Karap³ exist.'

4. And, together with the just complaint of Gôs-aûrvan, and the compassion of the archangels as to that complaint, there is then the creation of the creatures, among whom the greatest and best⁴ is mankind, for fighting and subduing the destroyer, even though joined together with a complaint of wounding and affliction like that of Gôs-aûrvan, and Gôs-aûrvan arose with greater judiciousness than an absence of creation even with freedom from disturbance by the Kaîs⁵; on account of the necessity of preparing for the living of mankind through the assistance of cattle, Gôs-aûrvan was produced for the material bodily existence and assistance of mankind. 5. And, on account of little feeling for her worldly misery, the breeding (mâyîntîdanô) of cattle was the arraying

¹ Doubtful.
² K has 'ill-passing.'
³ See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXV, 13 n.
⁴ B has 'of whom the best.'
⁵ The obnoxious tribe, or class, mentioned in § 3. After the word 'affliction' K completes the clause to this point as follows:—'just as Gôs-aûrvan arose with greater judiciousness than an absence of creation even with an adversity of the primitive tendency.'
of strife; the advancement of the Masda-worshipping religion of Zaratůst in the world by Gôs-aûrvan, on the production of Zaratůst for the assistance of cattle; and the preservation of cattle and other good creations through complete satisfaction at the progress of the religion.

6. This, too, was said to Gôs-aûrvan, that is: ’I assert unto thee the passing away of devastation, that is, the existence of a remedy for the misery owing to the evil spirit, for which no creature would be produced by me—me who am Aûharmaṣd—when a remedy for the misery owing to him had not been known to me.’

7. This, too, that the wish of the evil spirit was thus: ’Thou shouldst never produce a creature, O Aûharmaṣd! and there should be here no spiritual lordship, no priestly authority, and no desire for perfect righteousness, or necessity for duty and good works.’

8. The enquiry of Gôs-aûrvan, thus: ’For whom am I appointed and formed?’ and the reply to her, thus: ’For him who is diligent and moderate.’

9. Also the friend and nourishment (srâyisnô) begged for cattle by Gôs-aûrvan, the righteous man produced for the assistance of cattle by Aûharmaṣd, and the sweetness in water and plants for the nourishment of cattle, so that he is privileged to feed and keep cattle who gives them pasture in reality, and is also diligent in the production of cattle, that is, he gives them pasture, and is thereby proclaimed a cattle-guardian (pasûs-haûrvô) for them who makes the cattle fully develope; and also

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 6 a.
2 Ibid. 1 a.
3 Ibid. 6 c.
4 Ibid. 2 b.
he who gives the wicked Wrath, the foreigner, a beating, so that he may make him stupefied. 1o. The development of cattle by Aûharmazd, advice to mankind as to moderate eating, and the grievous bridge judgment of him who has unlawfully produced distress for the cattle whom Gôs-aûrvan is kindly regarding, with loving eyes, in the spiritual existence, in bodily contact with (ham-kêrpô-li) the arch-angels and in bodily contact with the light of the sun, so that her hands are more powerful; she who replies to the sacred beings, and the sacred beings reply to her.

II. About the statements of Aûharmazd there is this, too, that is: 'I am a calculator of those words by which they assert that the existence of worldly beings is for the sake of that of both existences; I am aware of the actions which are practised by those in the material existence, both demons and men; of whatever they practise I am the decider and lord, and it is such as my will requires, even for the last change of existence; and I look upon all that with that wisdom and sagacity of mine which was, which is, and which ever will be.'

12. The formation of a reward for worldly beings by Aûharmazd, through the propitious liturgy (mânsârsôpênd) which has become the precursor of the benefactors; that is, their high-priest, who has

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 2 c. 2 Ibid. 7 b.
3 Pahl. kâmakô-dôlsar = Av. vousurû-dôithra, an epithet of Râta, 'liberality' (see Chap. XXIV, 3), and Saoka, 'prosperity,' but here applied to Gôs-aûrvan.
4 Some words in § 10 occur also in Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 3.
5 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 4 a. 6 Ibid. 4 b.
7 Ibid. 4 c. 8 Ibid. 7 a.
a propitiousness and intelligence that are all-beneficial, is he with the liturgy. 13. And about the uniqueness and incomparableness of Zaratūst among mankind, through his desire for righteousness and his understanding the means of defeating the destroyer and teaching the creatures.

14. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

---

CHAPTER XXX.

Varstmnasr Nask.

1. The seventh fargard, Ad-tâ-vakhshyâ, is regarding the maintenance of the worship and obeisance of the religion and the spirit of the liturgy; and this, too, that the spirit of the ceremonial of him who is a right-thinking, intelligent, and wise man is quickly mixed up with the light of the sun, and connected with the accomplishment of the wishes and the joy of the archangels.

2. About the choice of will by mankind, and the existence of a way to reward through their decision.

3. About advice to mankind as to seeking that position in which it is possible to remain long with fondness, and as to reciting and teaching the revelation of the sacred beings.

4. And, from the statement of Zaratūst, about the shouting of the demon Arēsh to mankind, thus:

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 8 c.
2 See Chap. VII, 1 n; it is here written at-tâg-vakhshē in Pahlavi in both MSS.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 1 a, c.
4 Ibid. 2 c.
5 See Chap. XXXI, 6; the demon of envy, or malice, called Arēshk, or Arashk, in Bd. XV, 18, XXVIII, 16.
'Aûharmazd and Aharman have been two brothers in one womb\(^1\), and out of them the archangel\(^2\) liked that which is evil\(^3\), through what occurs when the understanders of it have mentioned the worship of the demons and this, that, after it, you should present cattle to the planetary bodies and the demons.'

5. About the falsity of the demon Aresh, the separate origin of light and darkness, the goodness of the material existence of light for determining what is done, and the evil of that of darkness.

6. The grumbling of the evil spirit thus: 'I am he whose thoughts are evil, O beneficent spirit! he whose words are evil, and he whose deeds are evil\(^4\); what is dark is my garment which is very thick, with lower corners where, so far as many go, it is still darker\(^5\); evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds are my food, and I love those of them who are in that place through evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds.'

7. And the speaking of Aûharmazd thus: 'I am he whose thoughts are good, O evil spirit! he whose words are good, and he whose deeds are good\(^6\); the sky is my garment, which was first produced from that substance of the worldly existences which is created as the stone above all stones\(^7\), that is, every jewel is set in it; good thoughts, good words, and good deeds are my food, and I love those of them who are in that place

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 3 a. This materialization of the Gāthic text, here reported as the utterance of a malicious demon, corresponds very closely with the statement of the Armenian Eznik quoted in Haug's Essays, p. 13.

\(^2\) That is, the arch-demon who was archangel of the demons.

\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 5 a. \(^b\) Ibid. 3 b. \(^4\) Referring to hell.

\(^5\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 3 b. \(^6\) Ibid. 5 b.
through good thoughts, good words, and good deeds.'

8. This, too, that true discrimination is not for them, the demons\(^1\) astute in evil; and they never truly discriminate whose will is that of Akôman\(^2\). 9. And about the sickening (vîmârûnîdanô) of the patron spirits of mankind, by the demons\(^3\), through the deceit of man towards man owing to the deceit of the demons; and the approach of mankind to evil proceedings on the part of the spiritual lordship, through those patron spirits\(^4\).

10. Also the sending of monarchy and the wisdom of religion, by Aûharmazd, for the preservation of the creatures; the recurrence of the mission\(^5\) whereby there are injury and affliction for the demons and sovereignty again for Aûharmazd, and they possess the reward of Vohûman\(^6\) and what is required by the sacred beings; and the predominance of man over demon, in the end, the good over the evil, and the righteous over the wicked; also about the nature of those who are producing the renovation of the universe. 11. This, too, that is a declaration: 'They are those, O Zaratûst the Spîtâ-mán! who shall produce the renovation, they have escaped (gi rekhtô) among the existences, they are

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 6 a.
2 Evil thought (see Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3).
3 See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 6 c.
4 The ahû, or patron spirit, having become diseased and incapable of true ahvôth, or spiritual lordship, through the action of the demons.
5 Reading lakhvar petamī-hastanô (or petam gâstanô) which probably refers to the later missions of Aûshêdar, Aûshêdar-mâh, and Šôshâns (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 12–14).
6 See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 8 b.
vigilant\(^1\) in seeking righteousness, and gentle-voiced; and, as regards righteousness in thought, they convert into righteousness anything virtuous which belongs to them.\(^2\) 12. About the statement of those praised it is recited that it is thus mentioned in the Gâthas: 'So we are with those who are thine—that is, we are thine own—by us this renovation is to be produced in the existences.\(^3\) 13. About the perpetual convocation held by the archangel regarding the production of the future existence.\(^4\)

14. This, too, that he is an extender of the days of those who defeat the army of the fiend and clothe themselves with deeds of shining light, and also those of a virtuous body, who are these: the priest, the warrior, the husbandman, and the man who is a ruler; with whom are Aharîsvang\(^5\) and the spirit of liberality (rådîh); they meditate with good thoughts (hûmanînîth)\(^6\) and joy, and, with pleasure to themselves, they give the world into the guardianship of Aûharmazd, and also of Ashavahist\(^7\), when they possess the religion of Aûharmazd as a ruler. 15. This, too, that he, whose thoughts are through a high-priest who possesses a patron spirit, always thinks that which is virtuous, and his sagacity increases.\(^8\)

16. And about advice to mankind as to three things, through which the renovation and happy progress of the creatures arise, namely, seeking the

\(^1\) Pahl. zên-hâvand=Av. zaênangha.
\(^2\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 9 a.
\(^3\) Ibid. 9 b.
\(^4\) Ibid. 10 a.
\(^5\) The female angel of perfect rectitude (see Bk.VIII, Chap. IX, 3).
\(^6\) See Chap. XXIV, 3.
\(^7\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 10 b.
\(^8\) Ibid. 10 c and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVII, 14.
\(^9\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 9 c.
true religion, abstaining from injuring the creatures, and striving for the benefit of mankind.

17. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

CHAPTER XXXI.
Varstmansar Nask.

1. The eighth fargard, Tá-ve-urvátá, is about advice as to reciting the revelation, the information therefrom for the faithful, about which they have to report to the unfaithful, by mentioning conspicuous specimens and explanatory knowledge, and by thinking of anything whatever which they have to accept, or even which they have not to accept; also, for one called to the religion, the advantage owing to the attraction of mankind to the numerous actual discipleship of the religion, and the increasing greatness materially, and further reward spiritually, owing to the numerous discipleship; and the progress of the religion of Aûharmazd even among the irreligious (adênôân) and actual apostates.

2. This, too, that the life of the creatures of Aûharmazd and also all other benefit are owing to Aûharmazd and the inclination (kâmvarikakô) of Aûharmazd thereto; moreover, reward and recompense come from Aûharmazd. 3. And the creatures of Aharman proceed from Aharman, all misery is owing to Aharman, and Aharman becomes worse and more oppressive and a further producer of misery when they worship him.

1 See Chap. VIII, i n; it is here written tâg-va-rató in Pahlavi in both MSS.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, i a.
3 B omits these last eight words.
4 K has akdênôân, 'infidels.'
5 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, i c.
6 Ibid. 2 c.
4. About the continuance and arranging of both spirits as to their own creations (stl) and the self-acting of their own appliances; the achievement of each one through his own natural resources and through the trifling (gadagānīk) operation of the other; the spiritual lordship and priestly authority, true confession and the progress of the good religion, being from Aûharmaζd, and, through enmity to the creatures of Aûharmaζd, Aharman is contesting these. 5. Aûharmaζd, for setting aside that contester, is the producer of true intelligence, and gave language and also the ritual of ordeal\textsuperscript{1}; the invocation of the sacred beings\textsuperscript{2} for assistance, and the arrival of an angel for the assistance of the invokers; the overcoming of their affliction, the production of their immunity and even righteousness, and also of that good ruler\textsuperscript{3} who is a reminder of Aûharmaζd, and the restoration of bodies, which is the hope of all good creations, are through the sacred beings being invoked for assistance and their arrival where the diffusion\textsuperscript{4} is that of virtuous knowledge through Vohûman\textsuperscript{5}, the good religion which is whatever may be the knowledge\textsuperscript{6} of all those who are, and were, and will be.

6. About the shouting of the demon Aresh\textsuperscript{7} to

\textsuperscript{1} See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 3 b, c.  \textsuperscript{2} Ibid. 4 a, b.  \textsuperscript{3} Ibid. 4 c.
\textsuperscript{4} K has 'ceremonial.'  \textsuperscript{5} See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 5 b.
\textsuperscript{6} K has hû-dânâkîh, 'sagacity.'
\textsuperscript{7} The demon of envy, as in Chap. XXX, 4. The occurrence of his dialogue with Zarâtûst in this place explains the word \textit{yûjâyû} which is found twice in Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 5 b, and has been read hû-vârîh, 'good judgment,' or hû-vaharîh, 'good fortune.' In the MSS. called Pt\textsubscript{4} and Mt\textsubscript{4}, in Geldner's edition of the Avesta, this Pahlavi word is both times separated into two thus: \textit{yûjû} which may be read avô Aresh, 'to Aresh,' and the whole
Zaratūst and the reply of Zaratūst as to the advice of Aūharmazd and whatever is on the same subject, just as revelation (dēnō) states it, that the demon Aresh spoke to him thus: 'Then the Franâmam, O Zaratūst! is applicable to the assembly of demons who sit in the same place three nights and four days on account of thee.' 7. Zaratūst enquired of him thus: 'O Aresh, thou most deceitful to me! what recompense would there be for it to me, if I should worship you in words?' 8. And Aresh, the most deceitful of demons, spoke to him thus: 'Thou wouldst become predominant among mankind, through producing at will among the existences just as is requisite for thyself; and thou wouldst become immortal, O Spitâmân!' 9. Zaratūst also enquired of him thus: 'O Aresh, most deceitful of demons! as to the people by whom you are worshipped, whether for the birth of a son, or even for a concubine sought for enjoyment, so that the favour is considered by them as your property, how can any one of them be immortal?' 10. And Aresh, the most deceitful of demons, could not tell him who had the more intelligence. 11. So Zaratūst spoke thus: 'I am for that being and I like him, that is, I am his

§ 5 b may be translated as follows:—'The gift of understanding through Good Thought is that which thou shouldst give unto me (that is, that wisdom thou shouldst proclaim to me as virtuousness), which is to me (through what pertains to it) that which is for Aresh (that is, through that wisdom which is virtuousness it shall become possible for me to give a reply to Aresh).' The reply here mentioned appears to be that given in § 11 of our text; and the name Aresh explains the word ereshi in the original Avesta text as meaning 'envy' and being equivalent to araska.

1 The Mazda-worshipper’s profession of faith, beginning with the word Av. fravarānē (Yas. I, 23)=Pahl. franāmam.
own and would transact his affairs, and I will recite the law and the benedictions of the sagacious Aūharmaṇzd, the gratifier of desires."

12. About the deliverance of all creatures through the liturgy, and, so long as it is continued by them, it is for the power through which the immortality of the separate creations is prepared in the renovation of the universe; the increase of the good creatures through the complete continuance of the liturgy, and the existence of purity and development of goodness in the world when he who is a good ruler arrives.

13. The arising of the spiritual creation, the first thought of Aūharmaṇzd; and, as to the creatures of Aūharmaṇzd, first the spiritual achievement, and then the material formation and the mingling of spirit with matter; [the advancement of the creatures thereby, through his wisdom and the righteousness of Vohūman being lodged in the creatures,] and all good creatures being goaded (zakham̄-hastan̄) thereby into purity and joyfulness. 14. This, too, that a complete understanding of things arises through Vohūman having made a home in one's reason (vār̄m).

15. About the great reward of him who shall produce benefit for cattle; also the deceitfully and seductively assuming of religion and colouring of thought, talking of righteousness and adopting evil practices, through the recitation of righteousness even hypocritically (davānsīhā-k); and an instance of the reward of an undutiful (avarśidār) apos-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 6 b.
2 Ibid. 6 c. The passage in brackets occurs only in K.
3 Ibid. 10 a, b.
tate. 16. About the work of the creator; and, for the completion thereof, the most eminent is understood to be when the world and religion were formed by him, when life was given by him to those possessing bodies, and he provides instruction and employment for it, and when spiritual life (hûkô) was given by him to the wishful man, so that he may more fully appropriate a share of the worldly and spiritual existences.

17. He who makes complete mindfulness lodge in his body consults complete mindfulness, and through the much investigation of his spiritual life (ah vô) and mind into the attraction of both spirits—that which is good and also that which is evil—each separately for its own appliances, and into the duties of the religion of Aûharmazd, is explaining the inefficiency of mankind, as regards the dissipation of their sin, because Aûharmazd is aware of all they practise, that which is public and that, too, which is concealed. 18. The great reward of him who is liberal of gifts (dâsar) from his own property to a

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 10 c.
2 Ibid. 11 a.
3 Ibid. 11 b.
4 So originally in B, but altered into ‘when,’ by the repairer of the MS., so as to agree with K.
5 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 11 c.
6 B has kâmak, ‘desire,’ with ‘the wishful’ in the plural, and this might agree better with Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 11 c, but not with the next clause in the sentence here, where both nominative and verb are in the singular.
7 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 12 c. This term is the Pahl. equivalent of Av. ârmaiti which is usually personified as the female archangel Spendarmad.
8 The MS. K is left unfinished at this point, merely adding the words expressed by ‘into the attraction of,’ in this translation. For the remainder of Bk. IX the only known MS. authority is B.
9 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 13 a.
righteous man; and this, too, that whoever gives him who is wicked a gift, for the sake of improper expectations, assists darkness and not light.

19. This, too, that the worst ruler is he of evil religion and evil deeds, who even for a bribe would not occasion happiness; he who is a destroyer of an innocent man; also the grievous state of punishment of that person, in hell, who shall make that wicked one a ruler. 20. And advice to mankind as to providing a judge and guardian over every dwelling, the probation of a man for appointment to that important duty, and the development of all creations in the world when its ruler is sagacious.

21. Also causing the disturbance (va-siklin-danö) of the evil spirit for satisfying a man who is rightly thinking, rightly speaking, and rightly acting; the opposition to a righteous man of a wicked one belonging to the evil spirit, who is an evil-reciting and improperly-disputing apostate; the enticement (lūsin-danö) of mankind to devious ways (āvārīhā), by an apostate, being more than that which attracts to the true way for a righteous man; and afterwards also, in the end, the defeat of the army of the fiend by him who is beneficial to mankind. 22. Advice to mankind about abstaining from the suite of him who is an apostate, not hearing and not solemnizing the Avesta and Zand of the sacred beings from him; also the evil behaviour (dūs-barisnīh), slander, strife, death, and fear in the world owing to apostates. 23. Advice to upholders of the religion about the means of thoroughly understanding aps-
tates, and preparing and keeping a weapon for them\(^1\), so that he who is authorised and fearless may be more eager for truthful speaking; and, when the religion of Aūhrarmazd is liked by him, his truthful speaking and other righteousness have then allured (kāmakīnīdō)\(^2\).

24. Also what happens in the three nights\(^3\), for the assistance and preservation of the righteous, through what is accomplished by the propitious fire\(^4\); and the progress of his lamentation who deceives and vexes a righteous man\(^5\), and is leading the wicked by their own besetting deeds to hell\(^6\). 25. This, too, that the complete worthiness which exists in Khūrdad and Amūrdad\(^7\) arises in him who maintains the prerogative which is his\(^8\) through virtuousness, who must become such a friend of whatever is his own spirit, through his actions\(^9\), as the creator is of his own creatures. 26. This, too, that whatever is thus in the world is perfect, when every one thinks, speaks, and shall act just like his spiritual lord and high-priest\(^10\); so that a good ruler is he with whom virtuous speaking arises, as well as proper action\(^11\). 27. And this, too, that the lodgment of Aūhrarmazd in the worldly existence is most in the person of that ruler\(^12\), and that lodgment in him is manifest.

28. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

---

\(^1\) Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 18 c.  
\(^2\) Ibid. 19 b.  
\(^3\) After death.  
\(^4\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 19 c and Chap. XII, 4.  
\(^5\) Ibid. 20 a.  
\(^6\) Ibid. 20 c.  
\(^7\) Ibid. 21 a and Chap. XIX, 1.  
\(^8\) Ibid. 21 b.  
\(^9\) Ibid. 21 c.  
\(^10\) Ibid. 22 a.  
\(^11\) Ibid. 22 b.  
\(^12\) Ibid. 22 c.
Chapter XXXII.

Varstimansar Nask.

1. The ninth fargard, Hvaetumaiti, is about the coming of three deceitful demons, and their making supplication (lag’ak-karīh) to Aūharmazd, so that he should consider and reward those aggrieved by him, and it would amount to strength for them in destroying the creatures. 2. The disgorging (akhvār’danō) of supplication by those demons clamorously upwards from an abyss, and the statement of one that he is the kindred that is undeceitful, of another one that he is the serfdom that is undeceitful, and of the third one that he is the confederacy that is undeceitful, was in these words, namely: 'We are those spirits when the kinsman, confederate, and serf do not break promises, one with the other; we are not really these that are no implements of thine, but our religion and law are thine, and we do thy will; we become assistants of him who is thy friend, and injurers of him who is thy enemy; and from thee we beg a position in the existence that is best, the reward that is a reward of the worthy.'

3. The reply of Aūharmazd to them was thus: 'You rush out, astute in evil, to the extremity (bûn) of that horrible gloom; so you are all from the demon, your race is really from Evil Thought, that

---

1 See Chap. IX, i n.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, i a.
4 See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, i c.
5 Compare Pahl. Vend. XIX, i 47.
6 Literally 'I am.'
is, your race is from there where Evil Thought\(^1\), as well as Lust the destroyer and also Greed the well-accumulating, \textit{resides}, and \textit{where}, moreover, Índar the fighter is the spirit of the religion of apostasy and further deceives the worldly \textit{existence} of mankind, as to proper living and immortal progress\(^2\), and first confines their thoughts. 4. He shall first do this, so that he \textit{may} restrain the thoughts of men from virtuous things\(^3\), and their further words and perverted further deeds from the ceremonial of us who are archangels; they further lose \textit{their} wisdom\(^4\), and further consider even as perfect righteousness that which is loved \textit{by} the demons; they utter the false words and consecrate with the worse deeds of mankind; \textit{and} with the holy-water which \textit{one} consecrates \textit{most} to \textit{you}, more falsely \textit{and} more arrogantly\(^5\) than that falsity and arrogance, do they enhance the greatest ceremonial, so that they shall make more of the most. 5. Owing to discord, through that love of you who are demons, they smite with destruction \textit{him} who shall not be a satisfaction to you in the presidency; \textit{and} the leader they take (\textit{girênd}) becomes a destroyer, so in the sequel, too, there is \textit{some one} that smites \textit{him}; even though they

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 3 a. For the demons here mentioned, Akômanô, Varenô, and Ázô, see Bk. VIII, Chaps. IX, 3, XXXI, 44; Índar is the same as Andar (in Chap. IX, 1), the arch-demon who perverts from virtue and despises the sacred shirt and girdle (Bd. I, 27, XXVIII, 8). With reference to the good old schism-hypothesis, that identified the Av. daêva Indra, or Andra, with the Sans. deva Indra, it is worthy of note that he is here represented as the pervading spirit of an apostate religion, and is termed the kûshîdâr, 'fighter, slayer.'

\(^2\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 5 a.

\(^3\) See Bd. XXVIII, 8.

\(^4\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 4 c.

\(^5\) Ibid. 3 b.
consider him as your follower, they shall occasion his destruction. 6. You are evil demons for a congregation when they speak of avoiding you, and worse for the ceremonial, or obeisance, when it occurs; that which becomes all clearness to the utterer of righteousness, in this existence, you utterly destroy; and the lodgment of complete mindfulness in the body is for admonition to human beings about abstaining from the demons.'

7. This, too, is stated, namely: 'Evil are you who are wicked and worship the demons with good holy-water and with words; through them the holy-water obtains evil recompense, even the hell that is horrible.' 8. This, too, he spoke, namely: 'Concerning those malicious demons I will first mention intelligibly to thee when they have come to the world, that is, first when they have rushed in, how their jurisdiction arose. 9. For thirty centuries those of my world were immortal and undecaying, O Zarâtust! but when the thirtieth century was accomplished, O Spîtâmân! the sweat (khvâe) produced by the demons then came on to my Gâyômard, for his affliction, so long a time as a man speaks forth these words of the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô, relating to the spiritual lord and priestly master. 10. And when he issued from that sweat he was shadowless, that is, darkness had entered; and the words of the formula (âyîn) relating to the spiritual lord and priestly master were spoken forth by me, and when

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 7 a, 8 a.
2 See Bd. I, 20, 21. But from § 10 it appears more probable that these are the three millenniums mentioned in Bd. I, 8.
3 Bd. III, 3.
4 Ibid. 19.
5 See Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7 n.
6 Bd. III, 20.
vástārem was uttered by me the demons then fell into the gloom.'

11. About the harm owing to the demons this, too, he spoke, namely: 'The destructiveness of the evil spirit is his evil teaching by statements to my creatures; and my riches (istō) plundered by him are the proportion of the production and possession of wealth for which a desire exists through Good Thought; that is, when they possess it with propriety it is desirable. 12. And mankind were gratified by that son of Vivanghau who was Yim, and cattle were gratified by him, producing thus the phrase "you are mankind" in words, O Zaratüst! when he spoke to mankind thus: "You are the mankind for cattle, that is, you who are mankind eat meat of your own subdivision, and through subdivision by you there is a superabundant occurrence of meat; you are mankind, neither for Greed (āzdō), nor for Envy (arēshkō), do thou throw away the warm entrails (taftōg rūḍik), nor do thou throw them away warm on account of custom (pīṣakō), now you slay for slaughtering, so that thus it may be beneficial for you and your servant."

13. This, too, is stated, namely: 'Even that man

---

1 The last word of the formula. In Bd. I, 21, 22 this utterance seems to be placed before the attack upon Gāyōmard, but until the complete text of the Irānian Bundahīs has been examined, some doubt as to the exact sequence of its statements may be entertained.

2 Pahl. ziflūnīd, for yiflūnīd, formed from the aorist of Ch. 5b; instead of the usual neflūnāst, formed from the preterit.

3 See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 9 a.

4 Ibid. 9 b. Instead of avōrdō, 'plundered,' B has the mis-writing spōrdō, 'consigned.'

5 Ibid. 8 a and Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 6.

6 Ibid. 8 b.

7 Alluding, perhaps, to the legend detailed in Bd. XV, 18, 19.
is produced for the destruction of mine\textsuperscript{1}, who is possessed \textit{by} the wicked evil spirit; the want of discernment of that man is a tedious life, in which the utterance of the praise of righteousness is the want of ceremonial of which a righteous man spoke \textit{thus}: "At \textit{the place} where their pasture is you are the mankind, the all-producer that fully develops \textit{them}, and the all-collector that would thoroughly set \textit{them} moving; in their pasture you are the mankind, \textit{and} they all remain\textsuperscript{2}; with hospitality \textit{for} the body they remain on account of their pasture, \textit{and} in fighting they strike \textit{their} heads together; you are the mankind of their pasture, it is expedient and you deprive \textit{it} of moisture\textsuperscript{3} through fire; as to other things, it was also you that made one altogether believe that untrue statement which is a lie—the possession of material \textit{existence by} life—owing to external seduction by the fiend who has come chiefly to you."

14. About the harm owing to the demons this, too, \textit{is stated}, namely: 'Their accomplishment of arrogance over these creatures of mine, \textit{and also} the unfitness for heaven (\textit{avahistih-ik}) of a righteous man, \textit{and} that, too, \textit{of} a valiant one, \textit{are due to} the burial of a corpse.' 15. This, too, namely: 'They who drag away a corpse\textsuperscript{4} are most hurtful for men, as regards the wealth of the religion in this world, \textit{and} as regards sheep and beasts of burden.' 16. This, too, namely: '\textit{As to} the people, assisted by

\textsuperscript{1} See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 10a.
\textsuperscript{2} Or, perhaps, 'and they remain astonished,' (\textit{va-sfpō mānēnd}).
\textsuperscript{3} Pahl. \textit{vīyēvānēnd} which, with \textit{vāstar}, 'pasture,' occurs in Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 10c.
\textsuperscript{4} They who carry a corpse alone, like the iristō-kasha of Vend. III, 15.
CHAPTER XXXII, 14-18.

one living in terrible difficulty, who deliver the corpse of a dead person, on a sheep or beast of burden, at a village where they shall convey it, they distress the fire and also the water flowing from the hills¹, likewise those liquids of the body which are ten², and those saps (aëvanô) of plants which are fourfold in thousands, that is, they come out a thousand at one time.'

17. 'They are giving more assistance when³ it is the corpse of a wicked person; concerning them, too, I tell thee, O Zarâtûst the Spîtâmân! that they shall arrive in the ninth and tenth centuries⁴ who are the spawn of the fiend (drûgô hûnôyâkô) and the cesspool (rîkhdår) of the evil spirit; even one of them is more to be destroyed than ten idolators (dëviyâstô) by him they shall make pure, that is, the people shall make him quite void of wealth who is a priest without recitation and commendation. 18. And they, who will be full

¹ Pahl. gêrân-tagîsnô = Av. hêbvainti in Yas. XXXVIII, 3 and Av. thraotô-stâd in Yas. LXVIII, 6, &c. It is the second species of liquid in Bd. XXI, 1.
² Only nine are mentioned in Bd. XXI, 1, namely: semen, urine, sweat, skin-fluid, tears, blood, oil, saliva, and milk.
³ Assuming that mûn stands for amat as in Bk. VIII, Chap. XXI, 10.
⁴ If these centuries are dated from 'the coming of the religion,' according to the incorrect Arabian chronology of the Bundahis, they extended from a.d. 393 or 435 to 593 or 635 (see Byt. III, 11 n). In the ninth century lived king Yazdakard (a.d. 399-420), surnamed 'the sinner' by the priesthood because he tolerated other religions, and the heretic Mazdak who was put to death in a.d. 528. In the tenth century the Muhammadan religion arose, and the Sasanian dynasty tottered to its fall. If it were not for the manifest errors in the Bundahis chronology, this passage in our text might be important for fixing the age of the Pahlavi version of this Nask.
many in the future, shall bring prostration upon him who is an innocent person, the husbandman who watches the frog of the ditch (zak-ı gilügö vazagh) so that he may keep it away from mankind; and they execute ill-contrived commands. 19. They also produce destruction for these of mine, and speak of the living state, to these of my religion, thus: "When living is an expediency it is in our way;" they are wicked, they dwindle through greatness and even terror, that is, they shall commit sin through leadership and vassalage\(^1\) who are smiting thee, and they speak folly who are smiting this pure religion of thine, O Spitâmân!'

20. 'They, too, who recite this thy revelation of the Mazda-worshippers, say that the distinction (nisōn) of those others from those who are thine, even those whom they hurt, is this, that they plunder, they also think scornfully of this thy ceremonial, and think scornfully of the obeisances (ntyâyisnô) and of both those blessings from me, the Avesta and Zand which I, who am the most propitious of spirits, spoke forth to thee. 21. They also injure the ceremonial of him who is perfectly righteous\(^2\), even the obeisance arisen from a disciple of Zaratûst the Spitâmân; and they chant that which is a settled effusion (barâ-hankhetûntô règîth) that is very evil, as a perfect deed for mankind\(^3\), which those of very evil deeds call joy\(^4\).'

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 11a.
\(^2\) Ibid. 11c.
\(^3\) Ibid. 12a, which has corrupted règîth into rēsh; the former, corresponding better with the original Av. raunghhayen, can be compared with Pers. rīsdâna, rērzîdan; or it might mean 'imposture,' compare Pers. rīgan.
\(^4\) Ibid. 12b.
22. ‘They seek sovereignty as a devouring (grehmakō), that is, they seek privilege for a bribe, and in their abode is he who is very evil in thought, that is, they seek with this design, that, for the hundred which another gives up, they may take two hundred away from the other; they destroy the best existence, they destroy their own souls, and they destroy the world of material beings. 23. Then they who are privileged shall convey that sovereignty of the Kīk and Karap, even those that are the worst-ruling who are in the country, unto him who is best-ruling in house, village, community, and province; and then both shall keep up an uproar, he who is well-ruling and also he who is ill-ruling, and he who is ill-ruling is beaten, and he is delivered up to the best-ruling ruler. 24. And then, among them, he who seeks for a devouring (grehmakō) of all that which is animate, as well as that which is inanimate, is he who is desirous of assault and complaint; and he who fears him who is a righteous man of mine allots him comfort, and is he who watches those who are an exposition of righteousness, and who would be wizards or witches, so that the authorities shall inflict punishment upon them.’

25. And this, too, is stated, namely: ‘The malice of many malicious ones demands that they shall inflict punishment on sinners when they put (padmūgend) life into the body, that is, they give life

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 13 a; the exact meaning of grehmakō (Av. gerehma) is uncertain, and the last verb is literally ‘I may take.’
2 Ibid. 13 b.
3 Ibid. 14 a, 15 a, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXV, 13 n.
4 Ibid. 13 c.
5 Ibid. 16 c.
back to the body; but for that purpose the metal, melted forth, arises full upon the earth, which does not wreak vengeance on him who is righteous, and does wreak vengeance on him who is wicked, when I, who am Aûharmazd, produce the renovation among the existences. 26. Thus, too, that which becomes a healthful world—a healthful one that is thus mine—never first becomes that further sick one which, apart from me, is even now the immortal and manifest place where vengeance exists; and they become also aware, through that sovereignty of mine, that, apart from me, even now immortal is the material world of righteousness.

27. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

Varstmânsar Nask.

1. The tenth fargard, Yathâis, is about the renovation of the universe in the words of Aûharmazd to Zaratûst, thus: 'I have produced the effector of the renovation, the causer of righteousness, Sôshâns, of whom mankind say that he does not come; and yet he will come, for the righteous, with that glory which becomes all-brilliance.'

2. About the scrutiny and consideration for moderation in a high-priest's performance of every

1 At the resurrection all men are said to be purified in melted metal which hurts only those who have been wicked (see Bd. XXX, 19, 20).

2 That is, the earth never becomes hell.

3 See Chap. X, 1 n; it is here written Yasââfs in Pahlavi.
duty there is this, too, that the desire of that non-assailant, who is a producer of benefit among kinsmen, among confederates, and among serfs, as regards anything whatever, is accomplishing the will, and is a friend, of Aûharmazd; and the spirit lodging in him is not deceived by him. 3. And advice about distance from him in whom similarity of disposition to the fiend and arrogance are oppressive, and who is scorning kinsmen, a sharp liar with serfs, giving offence (vêshîn-dahîsno) to confederates, careless of cattle, and unfriendly to the wretched.

4. About the bridge on which there is access to Aûharmazd, and he who reaches the best existence is visibly, or invisibly, proceeding while offering up (aûzdaâhân-sagîtûn). 5. And the teaching of the primitive faith to Zaratûst by Aûharmazd, who remained embodying the Ahunavair (ahûnavair-tanû) as the Zôti of the world; and at the time of the renovation Zaratûst, who was from the sons of Aêzemnô, is in the position of Zôti of the whole

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIII, 3 a, b.  
2 Ibid. 4 b.  
3 Ibid. 4 c.  
4 Ibid. 5 c.  
5 Ibid. 6 a. It is said, in Bd. XXX, 30, that Aûharmazd comes to the world as Zôti, or chief officiating priest, with Srôsh as assistant priest, just before the renovation. Here it is not absolutely certain whether Aûharmazd, or Zaratûst, is meant as Zôti on this first occurrence of the word.  
6 Reading min Aê-zemnôân pavan zôt gâs; Ayazem being an ancestor of Zaratûst, eleven generations back, the grandfather of Spitama, and the name being variously written Aiazemn, Ayâzem, Nayâzem, and Aizim in different MSS. Another reading is min 3 zamôn khûpô zôt gâs, 'from three-fold procreation, has the happy position of Zôti,' referring to the legendary account of Zaratûst's origin, as detailed in the seventh book of the Dînkard. The position of the Zôti is at the north end of the ceremonial area.
world; Vohúvastō, son of Snōē \(^1\), from the countries of those of the religion, in the post of Hávanân \(^2\); Ísvand, son of Varāz, from the countries of Tûrân, in the post of Ātarevakhhsh; Sênô, son of Hûmstûv, from the countries of the Sênân \(^3\), in the post of Frabarâr; and Vistâsp, who was from the sons of Nôdar \(^4\), in the post of Srôshâvâr'z. 6. About the power and triumph which that ceremonial becomes, even through the all-brilliance of the immortal renovation of the whole creation in that existence.

7. This, too, that the evil spirit\(^5\). . .

---

\(^1\) This and the two following persons are the Vohvasti son of Snaoya, Isvad son of Varâza, and Saēna son of Ahûm-stûd, of Yt. XIII, 96, 97.

\(^2\) In the great ceremonies of ancient times the Hávanân appears to have been the priest who attended to the Hôm-mortar, and his position was near the north-west corner of the ceremonial area; the Ātarevakhhsh was the priest who fed the fire, and his position was near the south-west corner; the Frabarâr was the priest who brought the necessary utensils, and his position was near the north-east corner; and the Srôshâvâr'z was the priest who kept general order, his position being at the south end, facing the Zôti at the north end. Besides these five priests, mentioned in our text, there were three others enumerated in Vîsp. III, 1; Vend. V, 58, VII, 17, 18, the water-bringer near the south-east corner, the washer on the west side, and the cleanser on the east side. In modern times the Zôti retains his ancient duties of chief priest, while the Râspî (Bk. VIII, Chap. VII, 5, 9) combines the duties of the seven others, being called by the Zôti (in Vîsp. III, 1) to take the place of each of them in succession.

\(^3\) Av. Sâininâm of Yt. XIII, 144, probably the people about Samarkand (see Bd. XII, 13 n, XV, 29).

\(^4\) See Yt. V, 98.

\(^5\) One folio of B is here lost, containing the end of this chapter and the beginning of the next. The passage missing was equivalent to about 100 lines of this translation, of which perhaps one-fourth belonged to this chapter and three-fourths to the next.
Chapter XXXIV.

Varastmânsar Nask.

... it is possible to come through virtuous deeds and through virtuous thoughts.'

n. And this, too, he spoke, namely: 'That Good Thought of mine proceeds and notices the thoughts of the embodied existence, and of the good words and the deeds he reports again those referring to me, as often as three times in the same day, both of those who are liberal to thee, O Spítâmân! and of those who are illiberal to thee.'

o. The struggling of the demons, for the putting down of all benefit from mankind, has not produced the obtainment of their capability for that benefit which arises for mankind through the future existence; so that that one evil is more grievous than every evil which the demons imagine for mankind, when the latter are frightened by them from the way of the sacred beings, and are wicked; and harder for them are the praisers of righteousness among the apostates and the rest of the creation, through their praise of righteousness, even when very many praise it.

p. About the progress of Ârmat and Târôkmat perpetually among the creatures, the disclosure of Ârmat to mankind, and of righteousness to Târôk-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 7 a.
2 Ibid. 10 c.
3 Ibid. 9 a, 10 b, 11 b. Av. ârmaiti, 'devotion,' the female arch-angel Spendarmad, entitled 'complete mindfulness' in §§ 7, 8. Târôkmat (Av. tarômaiti), the arch-demon of contempt and disobedience (Bd. XXVIII, 14), is her special opponent.
mat; the listening of that vile Târûkmat to falsehood, and the distance\(^1\) of righteousness from him who is vile is like that of a sheep fled (sîs\(d\))\(^2\) from mankind. 

\(g\). And this, too, that the evil spirit is beaten\(^3\) by complete mindfulness, in the struggle of those having mighty ones, just as a powerful man beats him who is a reverent creation (\(nîyâyîn\ dâhîs\(n\)ô)\(^4\); and the pure Zarâtûst is produced by Aûharma\(z\)d, as well as the power of Khûrdad and Amûrdad\(^5\), which acts forcibly for giving value (farg) and preparing the creatures.

\(r\). About the opposition of Aûharma\(z\)d to the demons\(^6\), and the valuation of the deeds of mankind which exist for greater jurisdiction\(^7\) and more advantage of the primitive good creation; and in any doubtfulness one is to perform the ceremonial of the sacred beings. 

\(s\). About cases where the good-will of the spirit of complete mindfulness makes mankind attain to the good religion; and their spiritual joy\(^8\) arises from the purification of their own religion through virtuous exercise of will.

\(t\). About the desire for a reward for anything whatever, and the great advantage owing to a reward of the desires of mankind; also the appropriation of the reward through the operation of the sacred beings:—'Even through the ruler (pâd) of that dominion of yours do I produce the renovation of the existences by my will\(^9\), I who am Aûharma\(z\)d.'

\(u\). Excellence is righteousness that is perfect.

---

1. See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 8c.  
2. Ibid. 9c.  
3. Ibid. 10c.  
4. Ibid. 8b.  
5. Ibid. 11a and Chap. XIX, 1.  
6. Ibid. 11c.  
7. Ibid. 12a.  
8. Ibid. 13b.  
9. Ibid. 15c.
CHAPTER XXXV.

Varstmānsar Nask.

1. The twelfth fargard, the Yasna\(^1\), is about the manifestation of good thoughts, good words, and good deeds by the religion\(^2\); the lodging of the religion in good thoughts, good words, and good deeds; and whoever possesses good thoughts, whoever has good words, and whoever has good deeds, by him righteousness and the reward of the righteous are possessed. 2. This, too, that neither is he, who is not to be born for Zaratûst, an issue from parents who are not righteous, nor yet is he, for him, who is a manifestation of the righteous.

3. This, too, is said, namely: 'Thou shouldst give a glad-thinking desire for a spiritual lord, and an easy-bodied constitution, to their minds, the religion which I spoke forth to thee; so that the greatest, best, and most beneficial of existences\(^3\), that are those which cattle are wanting from men, are water, pasture, and freedom from danger\(^4\); and those which men are wanting from cattle are also food and clothing.' 4. This, too, that that which mankind ought to give to the sacred beings is a power for completeness of control; and that which the sacred beings ought to give to men is ever that which is good for them. 5. And this, too, that thou who art Aûharmazd also suppliest it from those sacred beings, and thou who art Zaratûst also teachest it thoroughly to that best-ruling sovereignty\(^5\) and authority.

---

\(^1\) See Chap. XII, 1 n; it is here written yast in Pahlavi.
\(^2\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXV, 4–6.
\(^3\) Ibid. 9.
\(^4\) Ibid. 11.
\(^5\) Ibid. 13.
6. This, too, *is said*, namely: 'Let no one practise ill-perpetrated deeds, even though in a wilderness when far from publicity, nor in distress, *O Spitāman!* because Aûharmaezd, the observer of everything, is aware of them; and the rule is *that* just as any one whatever of the embodied existence thinks, speaks, *and* practises, so great is his punishment.'

7. And this, too, that the best ceremonial and obeisance\(^1\) are the ceremonial *and* obeisance of a righteous man.

8. About begging for life and receiving it, *there is* this, that *it is* customarily due to two methods (babā): one, through leadership of righteousness\(^2\), is that *through which it is* evident that *it is* owing to virtuousness; and one, through service of righteousness\(^3\), is that which is not an evidence that *it is* owing to viciousness. 9. About *the case* where virtuousness is producing authority over truth, and truth over the tongue, so that thou speakest words through the will of Aûharmaezd. 10. And this, too, *is said*, namely: 'I am the propitious spirit who *was at first* and *ever will be*, and am not really deceived by anything.'

11. About fire *being given* by Aûharmaezd for shelter and assistance *by* the protection of mankind; *its* maintenance and assistance *by* mankind; and the openheartedness of the spirit of fire for him who shall perform obeisance to it, and for him who *is* to perform obeisance to it\(^4\). 12. The work which is the greatest that exists, *and* is accomplished in the future existence\(^4\), whereby the creatures become pure,

---

1. See Pahl. Yas. XXXV, 19.
2. Ibid. 22.
4. Ibid. 6.
occurs through fire; and one prays for it for the sake of the requirements which mankind acquired from the sacred beings. 13. This, too, is said, namely: 'Since thou art thus, O Zaratûst! most propitiatory, that is, able to perform most for our pleasure, we are more promptly coming than Mânûšêhâr was able to come, when thou beggest of us who are archangels, O Zaratûst!'

14. About Aûharmazd's exhibiting the creatures in the future existence to Zaratûst. 15. And this, too, namely, the all-brilliance of the earth, the all-brilliance of the cattle, the all-brilliance of the plants, and the all-brilliance of every excellence which is a manifestation of righteousness. 16. About the worshipping of Aûharmazd by worshippers, through advancing in the religion of Aûharmazd's covenant (padmânô), which gave the world his righteousness; also the good protectiveness of his rule, and of the greatness therein, is owing to it, and the name of the ruler is Wisdom; likewise his ceremonial—performed while the creations owing to him live, when possessing bodies and possessing life—is a benefit to all the worldly and spiritual existences.

17. And this, too, is said, namely: 'Thou art our own, and also our confederate, O Spîtâmân! likewise unto us thou comest with the reverence that is good; thine, O Zaratûst! are the greatness and completeness in performance, so that they

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXVI, 9-14. For Mânûšêhâr see Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 10, 12, 18.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XXXVII (= V), 1, 2.
3 Ibid. 4.
4 Ibid. 3.
5 Ibid. 6.
6 Ibid. 7.
7 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIX, 13.
8 Ibid. 14.
9 See Pahl. Yas. XL, 1.
become thy greatness and completeness, that is, they are thine, O Zarathûst! and are boundless onwards from the middle, that is, we give thee a reward\(^1\) so enormous that, when thou shouldst stand in the middle of it, thou wouldst not see to its limits, the width of the earth, the length of a river, and the height of the sun\(^2\).

18. Zarathûst begged of Aûharga\(\text{m}a\)zd thus: 'Give unto me him who becomes a disciple of men\(^3\) of the mighty through meditation for the religion, of them who shall produce the actual progress of this my religion of the Mazda-worshippers, and who will also explain the good practices to this one of mine, even the blessings set forth by me in the benedictions they possess.' 19. And Aûharga\(\text{m}a\)zd spoke thus: 'I will give unto thee him who becomes a disciple of other men of the mighty; they are thy kinsmen and those confederates of theirs, and thine are their companions and their serfs\(^4\), who produce the progress of this thy religion of the Mazda-worshippers. 20. Mostly thine, O Zarathûst! are their worship and their homage; and, through their ceremonial and obeisance, the liberality of him who is worshipped is given to thee, and righteousness for the soul is with thee; also thy life exists owing to us, and likewise thy body\(^5\), O Zarathûst! 21. Forth to thee will I, who am the creator Aûharga\(\text{m}a\)zd, come in both existences\(^6\), as assistance; thou becomest worthy, O Zarathûst! through Khûrdad and Amûr-dad\(^7\), both of them, and through the gratification of

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XL, 3.
\(^2\) This expression for boundless extent occurs in Yas. LX, 4, Yt. XIII, 32.
\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. XL, 7.
\(^4\) Ibid. 10.
\(^5\) See Pahl. Yas. XLI, 7.
\(^6\) Ibid. 8.
\(^7\) See Chap. XIX, 1.
me, who am Aûharmazd, by those sayings and deeds which I, who am the most propitious of spirits, proclaimed unto thee.'

22. Zaratûst spoke thus: 'They have become applicants on him who is powerful with thee.'

23. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Thou becomest an applicant and powerful in the embodied existence.'

24. Zaratûst spoke thus: 'Be thou a gratification to us in the slow progress of life, thou most beneficent (hû-dahâktûm) of existences! that is, thou shouldst give to us.'

25. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'I will gratify thee, O righteous Zaratûst! in that best existence.'

26. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

Chapter XXXVI.

Varšmânsar Nask.

1. The thirteenth fargard, Ustavaiti 4, is about the great reward of him who, through virtuous procedure, may occasion the benefit of a man and of the religion of righteousness also. 2. This, too, that the maintenance of righteousness is through the practice of it.

3. About the tokens of a righteous man—that is, the evidence of him—and his reverence for duty and good works; also his imperceptible perversion (kastârîh)—that is, not a single sin is manifest

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLI, 10.
2 Ibid. 11.
3 Ibid. 15.
4 See Chap. XIII, 1 n.
5 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 1 a.
6 Ibid. 1 d.
in him—and he is an accomplisher of the stipulations of Vohûman\(^1\), good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, and a compraisal of every goodness in the propitiation of the righteous. 4. About\(^2\)

---

**Chapter XXXVII.**

**Varstmânsar Nask.**

...produced the dawn and noon-tide (aûsh rápis̄p)\(^3\). e. I fashioned sovereignty and the desired complete mindfulness together\(^4\), and produced, for more advantageous disclosure, a son (bermanar-aê) for a father\(^5\); the disclosure that discloses a male and the impregnation of a female, and in that disclosure a son was produced by me for the father, O Zarâtûst! f. So the evil spirit observed, and he called upwards from the abyss thus: 'O beneficent spirit! thou art the creator of all creatures, but I will make all thy creatures old, O beneficent spirit!

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 2 d.

\(^2\) Another folio of B is here lost, containing the end of this chapter and the beginning of the next. The passage missing was equivalent to about 100 lines of this translation, of which perhaps three-fourths belonged to this chapter and one-fourth to the next.

\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 5 d: aûshahînô va-râpis̄pînô = Av. ushau arem-pithwa.

\(^4\) Ibid. 7 b.

\(^5\) Ibid. 7 c. The verbal causative stem vindîn, 'cause to find, or obtain, disclose,' is twice spelt without its first letter, out of four occurrences; and bermanar is hybrid Zvâris for pûsâr, in which bermaïn = pûs.
g. About the religion becoming progressive in every one, through its renovation of the universe and its future existence, there is this, too, namely: 'This thy religion of Zaratûst is the width of the world, and righteousness is the best of religions; this thy religion of Zaratûst is the improvement of the world, which is first supplied by righteousness and complete mindfulness in the reason (vârôm) of those who recite this thy revelation (dênô) of the Mazda-worshippers, O Zaratûst! this thy good religion is the best which it is possible to provide with righteousness for one's own. h. Thou shouldst proclaim this to kinsmen and confederates, to priests and him who is most active in the country; as to those who will dispute this thy religion of the Mazda-worshippers, thou shouldst proclaim this over the earth of seven regions, unto that which is the furthest of houses, villages, communities, and provinces: “Do thou openly curse these who are heretical towards me, thou united Mazda-worship of Zaratûst, opposed to the demons, which is the ordinance of Aûharmazd!”'

i. Aûharmazd spoke thus: ‘I will exalt this which is beloved by thee, the religion of the Mazda-worship of Zaratûst, opposed to the demons, which is the ordinance of Aûharmazd. j. If this which is thine had not been further loved by me, the Mazda-worship of Zaratûst, that is opposed to the demons and is the ordinance of Aûharmazd, would have lapsed into disaster (vinâsînô), so that the pro-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 8 c.  
2 Ibid. 11 d.  
3 Ibid. 13 c.  
4 Assuming that nafrînô stands for nafrînô.  
6 See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 19 d.
fession of the religion of the Mazda-worshippers would be destroyed, that is, the religion would not have become progressive, and no one would be after the benefitters. k. But, owing to that love, O Zaratûst! the religion of the Mazda-worshippers becomes progressive even then up to the production of the renovation of the universe, even then until the perpetual life of the existences, even then till the raising up of the dead, and even then up to the full atonement of the spirits.'

l. About being despised in hell; the wicked are scornful to a wicked one, and to the spirits apart from the wicked; and it is the creator who, even after saving the others from hell, and the three nights stewing in hell, is to cause the preservation of them also—after those three nights—from that misery, and every one attains to happiness. m. This, too, that Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: 'How have the ignorant demons, O Aûharmazd! ever been good rulers? How do they think of them in the world thus, that their happiness arose from them?' n. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'They have been demons, O Zaratûst! and evil-ruling; not well-ruling, even for a reward, do they produce the work of righteousness.'

o. Perfect righteousness is excellence.

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 15 d, 17 d.
2 The three nights' final punishment of those worthy of death, to be inflicted at the time of the resurrection (see Bd. XXX, 13, 16).
3 See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 20 a.
4 Ibid. 20 e.
CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Varst mânsar Nask.

1. The fifteenth fargard, A d-fravakhshyâ, is about the seven perfections of the admonitions of the religion. 2. First, association with the beneficent spirit of the creator, through hearing, learning, and practising his religion; and this, too, that thereby arises the preservation of the good creation when the destroyer is separated (vângêd). 3. Second, about separation from the destructive evil spirit, and the contempt which is due to his arrogance and falsehood, the chief of all his vice. 4. Third, governing the temper by good thoughts, good words, and good deeds; and this, that, whoever of you does not so use this liturgy as thought and word, they will not allot him light, they will not allot him the best existence, and he is miserable up to the last. 5. Fourth, about the perfection of the nature of next-of-kin marriage, which is when it is a giving of one’s own (khûdîh-dahîsnîh); and the decision

---

1 See Chap. XV, in; it is here written ad-fravakhshê in Pahlavi.
2 Only six are numbered in our text, but the seventh seems to be detailed in § 9.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 1 a. 4 Ibid. 1 d, e.
5 Ibid. 3 a. 6 Ibid. 3 c, d. 7 Ibid. 3 e.
8 Ibid. 4 a. There is nothing whatever about next-of-kin marriage in the original Avesta text of this Gâtha, but the Pahlavi translators (in order to interpolate authority for such marriages) took advantage of the Avesta speaking metaphorically of Mazda as being father of Good Thought (Vohûman), and of Bountiful Devotion (Spendarmad) as being Mazda’s daughter; while they ignored the old tradition that Vohûman was created before Spendarmad (see Bd. I, 23, 26). A translation of the Pahlavi version of this Gâtha passage is given in S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 392, 393.

[37]
given about it, which is the goodness of one's own progeny for the manifestation of progeny; also the relationship, sturdiness, effectiveness, advantageousness, ownership, and giving in next-of-kin marriage. 6. Its first accomplishment was by the creator Aûharmazd in the fatherhood of Vohûman\(^1\) who was the first progeny, and from that arising of the practice (var'z-yeh evûnth) came the progress of the spiritual and worldly creatures and much connected therewith, such as the arising of splendour from light, radiance from splendour, and lustrousness from radiance, and the fully progressive diffusion and succession of mankind till the renovation of the universe; also, through spiritual and worldly passing on in the spiritual and worldly existences, Spendarmad's\(^2\) acceptance of the motherly glory was an ennoblement. 7. Fifth, about providing and maintaining the high-priests\(^3\) who are provided with a spiritual lord and possessing priestly instruction; the listening of his authorities of every kind to Aûharmazd, and the reward of the beneficent good works\(^4\) of the high-priesthood, are authority for Aûharmazd; and the reward of the good works of the high-priesthood is their relation to the best existence. 8. Sixth, about the praise, obeisance, and ceremonial\(^5\) for the creator Aûharmazd; and this, too, that further conference with Vohûman\(^6\) arises, and wisdom and advantage\(^7\) are taught by

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 4 c.  
2 Ibid. 4 d.  
3 Ibid. 5 a.  
4 Rather doubtful, as the repairer of the MS. has omitted the first two Pahlavi letters of kirfakö, 'good works,' when writing the word on a patch.  
5 See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 6 a, b, d.  
6 Ibid. 6 d.  
7 Ibid. 6 e, 7 a.
him thus: 'Thou shouldst be a supplicant for the immortal progress of the soul\(^1\), O Zaratûst! so that Aûharmazd may be lord of the creatures\(^2\), and the practice of propitiation by mankind may be that for him, also a proportion of the ordering of obeisance\(^3\).

9. About the sovereignty of Aûharmazd—\(^4\) even through the reward given at the bridge of judgment—which is in his good assemblies\(^5\), those of the restorer of the world, the destroyer of the evil one, and the benefiter.

10. This, too, is said, namely: 'Thou becomest, through complete mindfulness, O Spitâmân! a perpetual adopter (giriftâr) of this ceremonial of mine\(^6\).'

11. About Aûharmazd having given power\(^7\) to the creatures, the preparation\(^8\) of the power, and the contempt\(^9\) for the evil spirit and his appliances; Aûharmazd and the creations gave that contempt back to the evil spirit and the primary (kâdmon) demons who are those produced by the demons.

12. About the glorification of Zaratûst there is

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 7 c.
\(^2\) Ibid. 7 e.
\(^3\) Ibid. 8 a.
\(^4\) Ibid. 9 c. This appears to be the seventh 'perfection' mentioned in § 1.
\(^5\) Assuming that hû-hambâmîhû stands for hû-hangâmîhû, just as hambâm is a common variant of hangâm. It might also mean 'good times,' but it seems to represent the incorrect word amâvandîh in Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 9 e, which each of the four MS. authorities spells differently. Mf\(_4\) has hû-dandîh which, no doubt, stands for an original hû-zandîh, 'good community,' a fair translation of Av. haozâthwa, and well expressed by 'good assemblies.'

\(^6\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 10 a.

\(^7\) Ibid. 10 e, in which zakô-ī ought to be zôr-ī according to Pt\(_4\), Mf\(_4\), with which J\(_2\) partly agrees.

\(^8\) Assuming that nîvârûnô stands for nîvârdanô.

\(^9\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 11 b.
this, too, namely: 'Thou art beneficial, thou art high-priest and master, and through thee exists the religion which is propitious; thou art brother and companion of all the benefactors, and thus thy friend is Vohûman.'

13. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

Chapter XXXIX.

Varstmaânsar Nask.

1. In the sixteenth fargard, Kâmnamaêza, about departure to any land whatever, in renewed search of fortune, there is also this, namely: 'Do not stay away discontentedly from this thy ceremonial and obeisance, O Zaratûst! through love of us, when they do not satisfy thee—neither thy own, nor the confederate, nor the companion, nor the serf, nor the wicked tyrant—by whom those who are demons are wont to be worshipped. 2. And where and when thou art far from us, even then do not stand aloof from our affairs; and also when the affairs of the worldly existence shall not stand well for thee, even then thou shouldst reverence us and shouldst pay us homage.' 3. So also this, that the wish of the evil spirit is thus: 'Thou shouldst not reverence and shouldst not pay homage to the archangels; and here the people shall possess neither lordship, nor priestly instruction—that is, ruler and
high-priest—and their desire is not for perfect righteousness.'

4. And this, too, is said, namely: 'Of the contracted spirituity and deficient wealth, owing to the little progress of men who are self-gratifiers, thou art aware, O Zarathust! thou who art no seeker of this—that is, this want of opulence of thine—because thou dost not know it; but I perceive those words of complaint of thine, of which I demand an account from thee.'

5. And this, too, namely: 'Thou art aware of the gratification of desire by us who are archangels, and which we give for the gratification that thou bringest forth (zihiē); we also give thee the liberty which a friend gives to him who is a friend.'

6. About what occurs in future ages: the experienced (arvandân) who are beneficial through teaching and practising wisdom, and the thirst of youths is increased by them; by the assistance of complete mindfulness they improve the world of righteousness and produce distress for the fiend; and the advantage due to virtue extends to them.

7. And this, too, that he who is evilly oppressive has died off through his own deeds. 8. About always opposing villains with as much strength as exists, so that he who is a good ruler, whose high-priest is the bounteous liturgy (Mānsarspend), may become predominant over Wrath.

9. About the praise of the renovators there is this,

---

1 Assuming that tak stands for tang.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 2 b. 3 Ibid. 2 a. 4 Ibid. 2 c.
5 Ibid. 2 d. 6 Ibid. 3 a. 7 Ibid. 3 c.
8 Ibid. 3 d. 9 Ibid. 4 c. 10 Ibid. 4 d.
11 Ibid. 5 a.
too, namely: ‘Blessings on good understanding and also on Mitro, whose punishment of sinners they shall inflict for this consideration, that he is intelligent and friendly (mitro-pân).’ 10. And, about adjudication as to a kinsman (nafšman) of any one whatever, there is this, too, namely: ‘Through a revival of Rashnû, whoever is righteous and also whoever is wicked—that is, every one—is to be kept for judicial investigation.’ 11. This, too, namely: ‘A kinsman is to be considered as virtuous, by whom his own soul is preserved from wickedness.’ 12. And this, too, namely: ‘So thy high-priest is he whose own religion is pure.’

13. About the characteristics of the fiend, the broken-down (khas takō) Mānîn, and the destruction of the wicked who were listening to him, that which came from him who was monarch. 14. And this, too, namely: ‘The wicked one, who gives my world to that which the malicious Aharman has established as supremacy (lâlāth), is he who is a self-wounding demon that is set going for the death of the world of righteousness which he praises. 15. The cere-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 5 b. For Mitro see Bk. VIII, Chap. XLIV, 16 n.
2 Ibid. 5 c. For Rashnû see Bk. VIII, Chap. XX, 153 n.
3 Ibid. 5 d. 4 Ibid. 5 e. 5 Ibid. 7 e.
6 The arch-heretic who was born in A.D. 215–6, first preached his doctrines on the coronation day of king Shahpūr I (20th March, 242), and was put to death by order of Bahram I in A.D. 276–7 (see Nöldeke’s Gesch. der Sas. pp. 47, 412, 415). From the mode in which he and his followers are mentioned in §§ 13–16, it would seem that the original Pahlavi version of this Nask must have been made at a time when this heresy was still fresh in men’s memories, as it would have been in the first half of the fourth century, when Astarpād-i Māraspendān was collecting and revising the sacred books.
7 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 8 a. 8 Ibid. 8 b.
monial of righteousness is not such as that he praises, O Zarâtûst! the priestly authority of the worldly settlements (gêhânân) that he mentions thus: “In priestly authority and high-priestship I am better (sapîr) and am better suitable;” and not so, O Zarâtûst! is that excretion (mûtrisnê) ¹ he stirs up for mankind; that which he mentions to them becomes a perpetual effusion from him, and they who stirred up the excretion afterwards think it theirs, and that which is a perfect ceremonial of the demons occurs. 16. Through the opposing arrival of Srôsh ², the righteous, the ruler is in vexation with that person; that ruler who is a protection of these others through good emanation ³—not through evil living—and at every time a distresser of the wicked ⁴.

17. About the peculiarity of attracters to the religion, and the good works of those attracted ⁵. 18. About the signs of the last times, which are the millenniums of the sons of Zarâtûst.

19. This, too, that they cause disturbance (aâramênd) unto the sovereignty, and they who are Kals and Karaps ⁶, those even who are the most evil-ruling in the country—who by villainous deeds are those who destroy the existence of mankind through statements, and destroy their own souls ⁷—also destroy the material world which, confused by them,

---

¹ Compare Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 10 b.
² See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3 n.
³ See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 8 c, d. This last word (hû-zahîsnîh) ought certainly to be hû-zîvisnîh, ‘good living.’
⁴ Ibid. 8 e.
⁵ Ibid. 10 d, e.
⁶ Ibid. 11 a; also see Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXV, 13 n.
⁷ Ibid. 11 b, c.
is more beloved than righteousness; even the sovereignty is a scanty shelter, among the existences, from those whose command is villainous, when they produce that which is vicious and deliver their pupils (âmûkhatagânô) to that which is their end (āfdûm), to the fiendish abode. 1

20. And here, too, about the praise of the family of the Fryânaks 2 it speaks thus: 'Righteousness comes up, O Spîtâmân! from the descendants and posterity of Tûrân; when extracted by the Fryânaks it is stated, just as though it were by Tûrân; through the assistance of complete mindfulness they develope the world of righteousness and produce distress for the fiend; they likewise think about it with Good Thought, O Zaratûst! and thou shouldst bring forth (zâyês) their gratification from us, who are archangels, by words, that is, do thou demand it.'

21. This, too, is said, namely: 'This liberality which is for thee is for us who are archangels; by him who shall provide liberality for thee, it is provided for us.' 22. About the praise of Vistâsp there is this, too, namely: 'Kat-Vistâsp 7 has propitiated thee, among the existences, by liberal giving; that Vistâsp, whose coming forth to thee in distress is through the reign of Vohûman, has developed the material world of righteousness; thou

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 11 e.
2 A Tûrânian family of Mazda-worshippers, of whom Yôista is specially mentioned in the Avesta (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 18 n); and it appears from Dd. XC, 3 that Ashem-yahmâi-usta of Yt. XIII, 120 was another member of the same family.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 12 b.
4 Ibid. 12 c, and compare § 6.
5 Ibid. 12 d, e.
6 Ibid. 13 a.
7 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. XI, 1, XIII, 15.
shouldst think of him, the good companion, O Zarar-
ůst! the pure friend who is Kač-Vištāsp; such is
that Kač-Vištāsp, the active, who, when he praises
the religion, is attracting fellow-dwellers and converts
them, that is, he brings them on to the religion.

23. About attracting the Spītāmas to the religion
there is this, too, namely: 'Thou shouldst speak
thus to the Spītāmas: "Praise righteousness with
much homage about it mentally; and a concession
is to be discriminated by you, as well as whatever is
no concession; even for those deeds of yours right-
eousness is the reward given unto you, that reward
which is much given by Aūharmazed."'

24. About
the place of the four marvels produced by Aūharmazed in yonder world: there where is the reign of
Vohūman, there where is the hospitality of Aūharmazed, there where religion is along with complete
mindfulness, and there where are the souls of the
liberal.

25. About advice to Zararůst as to speech, made
for mankind, which is proportionate—abandoning
want of proportion—which is an appropriation of
liberality with humility and a wise proportion for
good works. 26. This, too, namely: 'To him who
gives himself mentally up to thee in discipleship,
thou also shouldst give up the best which thou hast
to give of thine own; and thou shouldst give wealth
to him who shall give wealth to thee, because so
thy soul would be perfect, O righteous Zararůst!
when it shall act thus.' 27. This, too: 'Thou

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 13 e. 2 Ibid. 14 c, d. 3 Ibid. 15 b, c, d.
4 Ibid. 16 d. 5 Ibid. 16 e. 6 Ibid. 16 c.
7 Ibid. 16 a. 8 Ibid. 17 a, b, c, e. 9 Ibid. 18 a, b, c.
shouldst select this religion of mine with wisdom and also with thought. 28. This, too, that as to him who has to act with the freedom from effort (apēsitūnagīh) of righteousness and owing to it, for the good works done by him the gift is good. 29. This, too, that whoever seeks by good works, and seeks good works by innocence, obtains freedom from harm (a-nāsīh); and whoever is liberal to the sacred beings is free from destruction (a-nasīnīsnō), owing to the liberality of the sacred beings. 30. And this, too, namely: These are the rewards I am aware of, which have been, which still are, and which ever will be.

31. Perfect excellence is righteousness.

Chapter XL.
Varstmānsar Nāsk.

1. The seventeenth fargard, Spentā-mainyū, is about this, that Aūharmazd produced the creatures through wisdom, and maintains them in truth. 2. This, too, that the best thing for every one is thought in a high-priest who is the tongue of a spiritual lord; in a high-priest, who has to maintain thought, no appliances of the body are to lie unto the spiritual lord on account of affection for the

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 18 e.
2 Ibid. 19 a. All but the last syllable of apēsitūnagīh is written by the repairer of the MS. on one of his patches, but the word is a strange equivalent for Av. haithīm.
3 Ibid. 19 d.
4 Ibid. 19 e.
5 See Chap. XVII, 18; it is here written spend-matō in Pahlavi, and is called the 18th fargard by mistake.
6 See Pahl. Yas. XLVI, 2 a.
7 Ibid. 2 b.
worldly existence. 3. Also that the spiritual lord is always true; of the tongue—when he (the priest) speaks falsehood with the tongue—are those words which he does not believe through the spiritual lord, and it is owing to this, too, when, of all the body, the tongue first dies. 4. 'I say unto thee, O Spótâmân! that thou shouldst speak with the tongue just as thou thinkest with the mind, and thou shouldst accomplish work with both hands in complete mindfulness.' 5. And this, too, that he who shall act thus is sagacious, and he is the father of righteousness through wisdom; and whoever would do that which has happened, thoroughly observes it on account of that which has not happened. 6. Also this, that in the person of him who shall do that which he understands, and asks again about that which he does not understand, the propitious spirit of wisdom is lodging.

7. About cattle being produced for the assistance of mankind, and the pastures of pleasure for the assistance of cattle. 8. This, too, that the archangels injure the evil demon and wicked people, but they do not injure righteous people and the sage. 9. This, too, is said, namely: 'In scanty opulence do not murmur (aḷ māṅg) owing to good works, and thus in great opulence much good work arises.' 10. This, too, that beneficence gives all to the good, and it is no further the villain whom the sacred beings maintain.

11. About the tongue of a true speaker being given for the satisfying (vīgārisnō) of disputants,

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLVI, 2 c. 2 Ibid. 2 d. 3 Ibid. 3 c. 4 Ibid. 4 a, b. 5 Ibid. 4 c. 6 Ibid. 5 b, c.
and for declaring who is acquitted or incriminated; and the ordeal that is a demonstrator, to acquit or convict, which he whose tongue is truthful has accepted—and it shall make his statement current—has developed its jurisdiction in the world, and diminished distress. 12. And this, too, is said, that he gives out fire for disputes, so that it may make manifest the acquitted and incriminated, when he in whom are his immense complete mindfulness, and also righteousness, is guardian of the ordeal; and, when many inspect it, that which is the ritual of the ordeal believes them wicked 1.

13. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

Chapter XLI.

Varstmnarsar Nask.

1. The eighteenth fargard, Yêzî 2, is about the existence of certain and doubtful evidence and indication as to the future existence 3 arising. 2. About the great dignity of the spirit of good works, and that also of the person doing good works through the lodgment of that spirit in him. 3. This, too, that they praise, recount, and practise the religion of Mazda-worship at the time of the renovation of the universe, that of which the demons through deceitfulness, and then also wicked mankind deceived by those who are demons, have said that it does not occur 4.

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLVI, 6 b, c, d.
2 See Chap. XVIII, 1 n; it is here called the 19th fargard by mistake in the MS.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 1 a.
4 Ibid. 1 b.
4. About the triumph of the sacred beings over the demons at the end of various periods. 5. First, that which occurs when, on account of the preservation of mankind from hell, they praise the religion of Mazda-worship; and that which occurs when Zaratûst the Spîtâmán, whose guardian spirit is reverenced, came to the obedient king Kaśl-Vistâsp 1. 6. Second, when the power and triumph of renewed sovereignty are again connected with the religion, and mankind, on that account, return to the good religion; and this occurs on the near approach of Aushêdar 2, son of Zaratûst, when the righteous Kitrag-miyân 3 arrives. 7. Third, when mankind contentedly praise the religion of the Mazda-worshippers, and this occurs as Aushêdar-mâh 4, son of Zaratûst, arrives. 8. And fourth, that which occurs when every one shall practise the religion of Mazda-worship with eagerness; at that time arrives the beneficial and triumphant producer of the renovation, Sôshâns 5, son of Zaratûst; and this becomes the consummation (sâr-hômûndîh) and supreme triumph of the sacred beings.

9. About enquiring of him who is acquainted with religion and a wise priest concerning the religion, and hearing of it from him 6; also well understanding it through wisdom. 10. About abstaining

---

1 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. XI, 1, XIII, 15.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 12.
3 A title of Pêshyôstanû, son of king Vistâsp, who remains immortal as chief high-priest of Kangdez, whence he is expected to come to restore the religious rites in Irân and the rest of the world (see Bd. XXIX, 5, Byt. III, 25–32, 36–38, 41, 42, 51, 52).
4 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 13.
5 Ibid. 14.
6 See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 3 a, b.
from the secret proceedings (nīhān-hūmōndīh) of a deceitful and seductive apostate. 11. This, too, is said, namely: 'Thou shouldst also not fall into the downcast imprisonment (nīkūn alakīh) through the teaching they deceive, where they thus mislead thee to the downcast imprisonment which is hell.'

12. About mankind attaining to the wisdom of an angel (yēdatō dānōgīh) through the grades of intellect, ability, and religion. 13. This, too, is said, namely: 'It is for that way when mankind cause the disturbance (siklinēnd) of that which is a vile religion for want of a way, when even this is produced from among the creatures, in which is the opening of a passage for mankind to him, where the evil spirit is dwelling and making thee surrender, and on account of the stupefying Akōmanō.' 14. This, too, that, through the sovereignty of sagacity, every one at last arrives at that way. 15. And this, too, that by him, who shall persistently perform good works or sin with fearlessness, it is to be hereupon considered that his performance is mindful, and that the best thing for mankind, after birth, is purification from sin.

16. This, too, that the food and maintenance of the priests depend upon the husbandmen. 17. This, too, that coveted is now the pleasure and strength of mankind due to the cattle of Khūrdad and

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 3 c.
2 The use of ą for ā sometimes occurs in MSS. from Irān. The word can also be read shavandagīth, 'existence,' but this meaning is less likely.
3 See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3 n.
4 See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 4 c.
5 Ibid. 5 c.
6 Ibid. 5 d.
Amûrdad\textsuperscript{1}. 18. About the oppressiveness of Wrath and Envy, and the destruction of both through complete mindfulness and possession of Good Thought\textsuperscript{2}. 19. And this is said, namely: ‘I made the religion of righteousness a combining desire (vôyak-\text{i} hâm-dahîs\text{nô} \textsuperscript{3}), and all mankind’s own selves are to be forced into that desire; also its involuntary seeking of immortality is the reign of the will of all mankind, and advantage always arises from it.’ 20. This, too, that the care of cattle is reverence of Aûharmand\textsuperscript{4}.

21. About the progress\textsuperscript{5} of righteousness there is this, too, that that greatness\textsuperscript{6} is generated therefrom, and its seekers—who are human beings—have demanded the supreme predominance in the best existence. 22. About the praise of the period of the renovation of the universe there is this, too, that, at that time, those who are doubtful about it are all disclosed to publicity\textsuperscript{7}; also the last reward and bridge judgment of the worthy. 23. About the lawfulness of that which occurs through the destruction by Vohûman\textsuperscript{8}, who is himself the spiritual lord of the arrangement, there is this, too, that the wicked,

\textsuperscript{1} See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 6 a, b; also Chap. XIX, 1.
\textsuperscript{2} Ibid. 7 a, b.
\textsuperscript{3} Ibid. 7 c, where, however, this last word can be read asamînîs\text{nô}, ‘unalarming’ (asahamînîs\text{nô} in Pt\textsubscript{4}, Mf\textsubscript{4}), and the corresponding word in Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 10 b can be read asamîsnô, ‘intrepid’; but, as these meanings are difficult to reconcile with those of the original Av. hithaor, hithâm, it seems more probable that the first syllables asam or asaham, should be read hisam or hisâm, a mere transcript of Av. hithâm.
\textsuperscript{4} Ibid. 8 a.
\textsuperscript{5} Ibid. 8 b.
\textsuperscript{6} Perhaps these two words, rûbâkhî, ‘progress,’ and râbâfh, ‘greatness,’ should be alike, but it is doubtful which is correct.
\textsuperscript{7} See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 9 b.
\textsuperscript{8} Ibid. 9 c.
at that time, become aware of their own wickedness, when their bodies are dissipated. 24. About the destruction of the good works of the wicked, also that of their own souls, that of their spiritual existences, and that of their material bodies. 25. And this, too, that at the time of the renovation of the universe occurs the approach of the wisdom of our sovereignty to that of the best of mankind, and that glory is put on by it through which the destruction of the bad and the development of the good arise; also the sagacity which exists in Vohu man extends to those who are its friends.

26. This, too, that there are those who are extenders of the days, and they are beneficial in the country; and their custom, where they have arisen, is an opponent of him who is a wrathful person. 27. And this, too, that they shall thereupon excite (lalā vaddūnānd) a brother and sister with mutual desire, so that they shall form a next-of-kin marriage with unanimity; and before midday they generate a sublime radiance, centred in the face, and trembling passion, and they make the radiance grow up, openly manifest, to an altitude of the height of three spears of the length of three reeds each; and

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 11 c.
2 Ibid. 11 d.
3 Ibid. 12 a.
4 Ibid. 12 d.
5 Reading as follows:—lalā zerkhūnd rōshanā pavan miyān rōd būland navendakō khrōs, but some of the words can be read otherwise, as in S. B. E., vol. xviii, p. 395, or with further variations; and it is doubtful if the verb is to be construed with the words that follow it, contrary to the usual Pahlavi rule, as there is no other trace of Avesta construction in this section. Neither the Avesta, nor the Pahlavi, version of this chapter of the Gāthas makes any allusion to the subjects mentioned in §§ 27, 28.
6 It appears from Dd. XLIII, 5 that this total of nine reeds would be about forty-eight human feet of fourteen finger-breadths
after midday they have learnt expulsion (rânakîh)\(^1\), and shall remove the fiend who was before a destroyer. 28. About those who girdle themselves where they shall perform their proper duty, and are thus all-beneficent for being seen.

29. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

---

Chapter XLII.

Varstmânsar Nask.

1. The nineteenth fargard, \(\text{Ad mâ-yavâ}^2\), is about the protection by a protector for the protection of the distressed ones of the renovation of the universe\(^3\). 2. About the impossibility of convincing those who have not attained to the fundamental reason (bûn kîm) of belief, before making them comprehensibly reliant upon the existence of the creator, which is the fundamental reason of belief.

3. About the grievous suffering (vîmârîh) of the religion owing to him who is a wicked judge, whose effusions (\(\text{rêzîdanö}^4\)) on the judgment seat are injudicious, malevolent, and enemies of wisdom; also his wounding is owing to truth, and his annoyance owing to the truthful, and the evil spirit is lodging in him; likewise the advantage to the religion and the great reward of just judges, and the introduction

---

\(^1\) The capability of expelling fiends.

\(^2\) See Chap. XIX, 1 n; it is here written \(\text{ad-mâg-yûv}^5\) in Pahlavi.

\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 1 a.

\(^4\) Ibid. 2 a, b.

[37]
(madam-barīṣnīth) of a desire for leadership in virtuousness. 4. About separation from the friendship of a wicked, ill-judging, unintelligent, and idle person, in whom wrath and envy are coiled up (avar-pēkō). 5. About the good government of securers of their own necks (kavarmāna) from viciousness, and the bad government of those repeatedly culpable (lakhvār-āhūgān) owing to viciousness. 6. And this, too, that the wicked themselves are wicked to their own and make them fit for hell, even as to those who are precious to them and more beloved than righteousness; and their reign, too, is a scanty protection (gaśūkō srāyīsnō).

7. About the praise of Zaratūst there is this, too, namely: ‘Thy sweetness and mildness are shown to the worldly existences, thy leadership of the religion is through Vohūman, and thou art well conversant with righteousness.’ 8. About the praise of Frashōstar’s ardour in the leadership of good works, in virtuousness, listening to instruction, and truthful speaking, and in pasturing (fshegth), cultivating the world, achieving benefit (sūdō tāshīdārīh), and not giving leadership to villains. 9. About the praise also of the energy and high-priestship of Gāmāsp. 10. About the protection of the good

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 3 b, c.  
2 Ibid. 4 a.  
3 Assuming that amat stands for mān, their Irānian equivalents being much alike.  
4 See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 5 a, b, c.  
5 Ibid. 8 a, b, c and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68 n.  
6 Ibid. 9 a, b, in which Pt4, Mf4 have tāshīdār instead of the khvāstār of K5, J2; regarding fshegth (=Av. fsheng’hyō) see Bk. VIII, Chap. XXII, 6 n.  
7 Ibid. 9 d and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68 n.
creations by Vohúman, and that, too, of the souls of the righteous by Spandarmad also. 1.

11. About the punishment of the wicked ruler who is seizing anything unlawfully in his realm. 12. Also about the grievous punishment of the wicked, evil-thinking, evil-speaking, evil-doing, heretical (dûs-dênô), evil ruler in hell. 13. About the reply of the archangels to Zaratûst, as to the reward begged by him, to make him satisfied about it. 14. It is righteousness that is perfect excellence.

CHAPTER XLIII.

Varstmânsar Nask.

1. The twentieth fargard, Kad-môi-urvâ, is about anything whatever being begged as provision for the soul, and as to the speaking of Shatraver to Zaratûst thus: 'Thou shouldst think thus, O Spîtâmân! that Aûharmazd assists thee.' 2. This, too, is said, that the creatures of Aûharmazd live through Khûrdad, are immortal through Amûrdad, possess complete mindfulness of Aûharmazd through

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 10 a, b, c and Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3n.
2 Ibid. 11 a, b.
3 Ibid. 12 b, d. In Pt4, Mf4, § b is as follows: 'Mûn Zaratûstô žgûn lak Vohúman;' being correctly limited according to the Avesta text.
4 See Chap. XX, 1 n; it is here written kad-môg-ravakô in Pahlavi.
5 See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 1 a.
6 An archangel who is a personification of the Avesta phrase khshathra-vairya, 'desirable dominion.'
7 For these three archangels see Chaps. XII, 25 n, XIX, 1 n, and Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3.
Spendarmad¹, and possess him as ruler through Shatraver.

3. About wealth being begged owing to virtuousness there is this, too, that, to him who, owing to virtuousness, begs that which is not allowed to him owing to the oppressiveness of the vile, or on account of some other opposition, they then give essentially that reward, in the spiritual existence which is greater and better than that wealth. 4. About the cattle suitable for that warrior who possesses virtuous habits and strength ², through the assistance of the will of the sacred beings and for the benefit of Irân and the defeat of the diminishing foreign force (kāstārīh-i an-Afrānō).

5. About the seizure ³ of mankind for the advancement and command of the sacred beings, so far as force is an assistant to them in knowledge due to the sacred beings ⁴; and their appropriation of the best existence through the advancement of that admonition and command.

6. About the assistance of the righteous, on the passage to the best existence, by the spirit of the wisdom of sovereignty, liberality, and truth, Aharîstvāng ⁵ and the angel Hôm ⁶.

7. About the reason of the three steps walked forward by the Zôti from the place of the Zôti, while uttering the Avesta (avistâkô-gôbisnîhâ), after the

¹ See note 7, preceding page.
² See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 3 a, c.
³ Ibid. 7 d.
⁴ This proviso implies some faint perception of the absurdity of trying to assist almighty beings by human force.
⁵ See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3 n.
⁶ A personification of the Av. Haoma plant, an infusion of the dried twigs of which is used in the religious ceremonial. Yas. IX and X are devoted to his praise.
end of the ritual for the fire, on delivering (parvâ-
ṣisnô) the offering of holy-water to the water\(^1\), being
the leading up of the archangels, always at the end
of an assembly of conference with Zaratûst, by three
steps from the earth to the sun station, through the
places of good thoughts, good words, and good deeds\(^2\).

8. Advice to Zaratûst also as to the nature of the
archangels; likewise a reminder to worship on their

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 8 a. This refers to the proceedings of
the chief officiating priest in the ceremonial, after the conclusion
of the Âtas Nyâyîs (Yas. LXII) and just before the beginning of
the Âbân Nyâyîs (Yas. LXV), during the recital of Yas. LXIV which
chiefly consists of a repetition of §§ 6–11 of this Gâthic hà (Yas.
L=XLIX of the Pahlavi version). These proceedings are detailed
in the rubrics, partially in J2 and more fully in Pt4, Mf4, as
follows:—After reciting Av. Yas. L, 7 d 'the Barsôm (Av. bares-
man, see Bk. VIII, Chap. XLIV, 65 n) is to be taken up from
the Mâh-rû, or crescent-topped Barsôm-stand, 'and one step is
to be set forth in the direction of the Frabardâr' (the imaginary
assistant priest whose station is near the north-east corner of
the ceremonial area, or to the left of the Zôti, see Chap. XXXIII, 5 n),
'at this place of taking up the Barsôm from the Barsôm-stand,
and of going on to the position of the Frabardâr, a beginning of
Yas. L, 8 a is to be made in walking towards the beginning of the
fire place, until Yas. L, 11 d is to be uttered;' in the following
manner:—After 'ma'd vau one step is to be set forth, and
homage to be offered to the holy-water;' after 'padâis one step,
and homage to be offered to the holy-water;' after 'yâ frašrûtâ
îzayau one step is to be set forth, and he is to go on to the
position of the Âbard' (the imaginary assistant priest whose
station is near the south-east corner, so that the progress of the
Zôti towards the fire is along the left-hand side of the ceremonial
area), and, after reciting the rest of the Gâthic text to the end of
Yas. L, 11 d, 'homage is to be offered to the fire, and he is to go
away to the position of the Zôti.'

\(^2\) The three lower grades of heaven, intermediate between the
earth and the best existence or supreme heaven (Garôdmân), and
situated in the stations of the stars, moon, and sun, respectively (see
account after separation from the sight of them. 9. And this, too, is said, that there arises therefrom a conception (ham-giriftārīh), by him whose disposition and character are sagacious, also as to the adaptation of his own deeds to that nature of his. 10. And about the good affinity of Zaratūst, even for abundance of good works, there is this, too, namely: ‘So, for all those deeds which thou hast to accomplish, and which are also accomplished, there is reward for thee through their righteousness, O Zaratūst!’

11. And about the advice to Zaratūst there is this, too, namely: ‘Thou hast to become reverent to them, so that mankind may become reverent to thee.’ 12. About considering the time of the days and nights as all for good accumulation in good works there is this, too, that whoever is diligent and always doing good works, and that whoever shall perform as many good works as is possible for him, is given as much reward as is his desire.

13. It is righteousness that is perfect excellence.

---

**CHAPTER XLIV.**

*Varstmánsar Nask.*

1. In the twenty-first fargard, Vohû-khshathrem, it is said by Aûharmazd thus: ‘I produced, O Zaratūst! the desire for a good ruler;’ and this, too, is said, that, when there is a desire for a

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 9 d.  
2 Ibid. 10 d.  
3 Ibid. 11 d.  
4 See Chap. XXI, 1 n; it is here written vohû-khshatar in Pahlavi, and is called the 22nd fargard by mistake.  
5 See Pahl. Yas. L, 1 a.
good ruler suitable for a share of the world, whoever is suitable for a share of the world [is a development of that character also, owing to the share which is given him, and by him who is himself also developing the character, by giving him a share]\(^1\), giving the share is producing a helper (vig\textit{ī}d\textit{ā}r), production of a helper is a perfect action\(^2\), and superiority of action is owing to thought and speech.

2. About the place where the best wealth is the produce of water, earth, and plants; also its best supplication is lamentation for the religion, and the sovereignty is liberality. 3. About favours being begged from the sacred beings, even with words controverting the response of the sacred beings; the favours for the worthy are to be contended for worthily. 4. About the connection of the power of intelligent remembrance and wise discrimination, one with the other. 5. About the attraction of the mercy of the spirit and leadership\(^3\), together, into the supreme heaven (\textit{g}ar\textit{ā}d\textit{mān}d\textit{ā}'), for observation regarding the good creatures.

6. About the begging and teaching of that intelligence which is with the increase of good works; also the imperceptible acquirement\(^4\) of wealth occurs thereby. 7. This, too, that whoever gives himself up, with humility and reverence, to him who is a high-priest of the true religion, is proficient (\textit{f}ar\textit{'-\textit{z}ān\textit{ā}kt-\textit{ātt}d\textit{ā}'}) in the religion\(^5\); and the benefit produced by him, for him who is good, is the liberality

\(^{1}\) The passage in brackets was at first omitted in the MS. by mistake, and subsequently interlined and written in the margin with a different ink.

\(^{2}\) See Pahl. Yas. L, 1 c.

\(^{3}\) Ibid. 4 a.

\(^{4}\) Ibid. 5 a.

\(^{5}\) Ibid. 5 c.
which is provided for the sacred beings\(^1\). 8. About Aûharmâsît having created water, plants, animals\(^2\), and the law of the primitive religion for the nourishment, arrangement, and succession of the creatures.

9. About the comfort of the spirit of the liturgy of the religion when he who is a man of credible wisdom and superior disposition utters it\(^3\).

10. This, too, that the wicked one who does not believe the deception that he teaches to others, which is his through his own spiritual lord, yet, when he teaches multitudes (kâbedân), is convinced by it, attains—as the end of that teaching—eminence (paûgâhîh) for bare-faced deceit (barâh-nâkô frâdqîh), public falsehood, and disjointed belief.

11. And about mankind being bodily prepared also for the future existence by fire and melted ore\(^4\); in the worldly existence the acquitted and incriminated, as regards the law, have become thereby manifest\(^5\), and, in the future existence, the torment of the wicked and the gratification of the righteous\(^6\). 12. About Vohûman and Ashavahist being invoked\(^7\) for assistance also in danger from the wicked, and about appropriating the best existence through righteousness alone. 13. And this, too, that a happy coming of men to the supreme heaven exists for the righteous, but no\(^8\) coming of any one from the wicked.

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. L, 6 a.
2 Ibid. 7 a.
3 Ibid. 8 c; nêvagtâr is written by mistake for nêvaghtar, 'superior,' in the MS.
4 Ibid. 9 b and Chap. XXXII, 25.
5 Ibid. 9 a.
6 Ibid. 9 c.
7 Ibid. 10 c.
8 Assuming that râûî stands for lâ.
14. About the enmity of the Kaiti sodomite (vā ēpō) Akht, the heretic of the dark existence, to Zaratūst; and the causing of disturbance (sikli-nīdanō), by him and the wicked of similar kinds to him, among those who follow Zaratūst is extreme, and the primeval hellish existence is for them.

15. About the closing of the abode of the Kaiti and Karap from virtuousness; and this, too, that they do not develope the worldly existences, nor attend to the spirit, but they contract the world and dissipate the spirit.

16. About the worthiness of the sovereignty of Kai-Vistâsp, on account of great ability and activity, apart even from superintending.

17. About the praise of Frashōstar for his having given Hvōbō in marriage to Zaratūst, the praise of Hvōbō for her complete reverence of Zaratūst, and admonition to Zaratūst as to making Hvōbō privileged for the post of house-mistress.

18. About the praise of Gâmâsp for begging fortune and for wisdom in appropriating the excellence of the primitive righteousness; also his affection for the sovereignty and for the recitation of revelation, in which there is assistance of Zaratūst through command of Vohu-

---

1 See Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXV, 13 n.
2 See Pahl. Yas. L, 12 a.
3 Akhtyō duzdau temanguhau of Yt. V, 82; the wizard Akht of the tale of Yost-i Fryânō.
4 See Pahl. Yas. L, 14 c.
5 Ibid. 14 a.
6 Ibid. 14 b.
7 Ibid. 16 a and Bk. VIII, Chap. XI, 1.
8 Ibid. 17 a and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68.
9 Ibid. 17 b. Av. Hvōvi of Yt. XIII, 139, XVI, 15; she was daughter of Frashōstar and wife of Zaratūst.
10 Ibid. 17 c.
11 Ibid. 18 a and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68.
man. 19. About the praise of Matdôk-mâh for his accepting and exercising—and on account of his exercising—the upholding and propagation of the religion; also the yelling, united assault, evil food, and other affliction owing to the wicked in the earlier half of the night, which is that which Žaratûst had, for a like reason, to bear; and the reciting of the law of Aûharmazd, for the joy of the sacred beings, and his appropriation of the best existence.

20. About the abounding of Zaratûst in complete mindfulness of the origin of learning, and its development by him; both the object and the advantage of knowledge—which is the reigning of Vohûman in the body—being the means of developing the world in righteousness.

21. About the perfection of the ceremonial and obeisance of Zaratûst, and the superiority of his recompense; also advice to him as to worshipping Aûharmazd pre-eminently, and the primeval angels by their own names according to their greatness.

22. It is the excellence of righteousness that is perfect.

Chapter XLV.

Varstmânsar Nask.

1. The twenty-second fargard, Vahistôisti, is about the perfection of the prayers of the good religion, and information thereon.

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. L, 18 b.
2 Ibid. 19 a and Chap. XXIV, 1.
3 Ibid. 19 c.
4 Ibid. 21 a.
5 Ibid. 21 b.
6 Ibid. 22 a.
7 Assuming that avartfâh stands for avartarîfâh.
8 See Pahl. Yas. L, 22 b.
9 Ibid. 22 c.
10 See Chap. XXII, 1 n.
11 See Pahl. Yas. LII, 1 a.
2. About the glory of a family of some houses that has come to the Spītāmas\(^1\), even before the coming of Zaratūst; the knowledge and habit of organization and priestly authority of those arising from that family; the existence therein of houses, villages, communities, and districts; its attracting and exalting mankind, from vice to virtue, by propriety of words and actions; and it convinces those of the world even till the arrival of the good religion. 3. And this, too, that the existence of Kaś-Vistāsp—that desire of Zaratūst\(^2\)—and of Frashōstar of the Hvōbas\(^3\), is owing to it.

4. About the praise of Pōrūkāst\(^4\), daughter of Zaratūst, for loving the good religion with wisdom and acting by the advice of the religion, having given herself contentedly in womanly service (zanōīh) to Zaratūst\(^5\); her complete accomplishment

---

\(^1\) The family from which Zaratūst, Malbōk-māh, and Pōrūkāst were descended. Its name originated with Spītāma, an ancestor of Zaratūst nine generations back. Compare Chap. XXXIX, 23.

\(^2\) Perhaps we ought to read 'the Spītāma Zaratūst,' substituting Spītāmak for kāmak, 'desire,' which latter word is written on a patch by the repairer of the MS. who must have found the original word defective. See Pahl. Yas. LII, 2 c.

\(^3\) See Chap. XXI, 24.

\(^4\) See Pahl. Yas. LII, 3 a. Av. Pouruāista who became the wife of Gāmāsp, prime minister of king Vistāsp.

\(^5\) Ibid. 4 a. It seems unlikely that zanōīh means 'marriage' here (the term being applied to her relation both to Zaratūst and Gāmāsp), unless we were to suppose that she married Gāmāsp after her father's death, which the phrase akhar min Zaratūst, 'after Zaratūst,' might possibly imply. And if zanōīh means merely 'womanly service' here, its Zvāris equivalent nēsmanīh, applied to the seven sisters of Ardā Virāf in AV. II, 10, may also not imply marriage, which is a view already suggested in S. B. E., vol. xviii, p. 398 n.
of duty and reverence for him, and, after Zaratûst, her also performing womanly service (zanîh) and reverence for Gâmâsp\(^1\); likewise her great reward from Aûharmaezd for religiousness and self-devotion (khvêsth) to the sacred beings. 5. About the praise of Hûtôs\(^2\) for the arising of the progress of the Mazda-worshipping religion through her, by the growth of righteousness and smiting of the primeval fiend; also the good works and advantage which have arisen in the world from her great possessions, and her equal praise and grand position here and in yonder world.

6. About the characteristics of those who are preparing the end of time and arranging its period there is this, too, namely: 'They are a manifestation of those, O Spitamân Zaratûst! who shall cause this renovation in the existences; they are observant, little afflictive in tormenting, and fully mindful, so that, when milk reaches them, they thoroughly digest it; they have no fear and accoutrements (afzâr), nor yet do they mention false and irreverent (anàstô) statements concerning those who are righteous through imploring righteousness.'

7. About the characteristics of those disturbing the end of time and opposing its period there is this, too, namely: 'They are a manifestation of those, O Spitamân Zaratûst! who are destroying the existences\(^3\); they are swiftly remedied, that is, they become very quickly devoted (khâîdô) and are in

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. LII, 4 b.
\(^2\) Ibid. 5 a. Av. Hutaosa, the wife of king Vistâsp, see Yt. IX, 26, XV, 35.
\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. LII, 6 c.
the torment of the vicious and grievous abode; they are not fully mindful, so that it is not possible for them to digest milk, their fear is inevitable (aḵār), and they mention even false and irreverent statements concerning those who are righteous through imploring righteousness.

8. About the craving for the fiend, the assistance of the fiend, and the gratification of the fiend by him who is an apostle of the demons, and his rendering the creatures of Aḏharmazd helpless even through the want of progress (anasaḵišnō) which they lament; also the confusion owing to his speaking deceitfully in the world, and the connection with him of an awful and swift death, and the most grievous and hellish punishment. 9. About that wicked follower and assistant of theirs in defeating righteousness, and also in destroying the greater religiousness (frēh-dēnōth) of the world and making the soul wicked in the end.

10. About the occurrence of the dissipation of the glory of him who is a well-ruling man, and the pacification (āsūdanō) of the creatures of the world by the sacred beings, it says this, too, namely: 'The persuader to evil and the organizer of distress (veshišnō)—where they shall make pain and distress current in the world—are the weakener (nerfsinidār) and corruptor (ālāyidār) for the

---

1 Or it may be 'maintaining the affliction of the creatures,' if we read ēsārdārīh instead of aḵārgārīh.
2 See Pahl. Yas. LI, 8 d.
3 Ibid. 9 a. B has avēhīh vērenakīnīdār, but avēhīh, 'want of goodness,' ought to be dūšīh, 'evil,' which it resembles even more in appearance than in meaning, in Pahlavi letters.
righteous; it is the ruler that is righteous who smites them and opposes them—that is, restrains them from sin—and causes hatred for them through his will; that, O Aůharmazd! is this dominion of thine by which you give benefits (veṁgānō) to him who is justly living and poor.

II. It is perfect excellence that is righteousness.

Chapter XLVI.

Varstmânsar Nask.

1. The twenty-third fargard, Airyamān, is the Aūrmān supplication:—'That is the greatest, I tell thee, O Spitâmān! of the pure sayings of every kind, in so much Avesta lore, this is the best, because it is given forth by him who is a very eminent producer (madâm-kârtar) of sayings of every kind.

2. Which Aūrmān supplication they should recite who are beneficial, and the benefiter, through the recital of it aloud, O Spitâmān! becomes predominant.

3. The evil spirit, who is heretical (dûs-dênō), O Zarâtûst! with his own creatures, O Spitâmān! becomes buried in the earth; the evil spirit is among those buried in the earth—who are the demons—where their bodily form (kâlhpudō) is com-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. LII, 9 c.
2 Ibid. 9 d. Compare Chap. XLVII, 17.
3 See Chap. XXIII, 1 n; it is here written Âremanō in Pahlavi.
4 Pahl. sûd-hômûnd=Av. saôshyâs, referring to the future restorer of religion to the world, just before the renovation of the universe.
pletely shattered. 4. And up the dead are arrayed by it; through its assistance they give life back unto the body, and the embodied life they then possess is such that they do not die."

5. It is perfect is the excellence of righteousness; it is perfect excellence that is righteousness.

---

CHAPTER XLVII.

Bakô Nask.

1. Propitiation for the creator Aûharmazd and all angels.

2. The first of the twenty-two fargards of the Bakô¹ is the Ahunavair² of the Bakân³, about the production by Aûharmazd, before every creation apart from the archangel⁴, and on the solicitation of

¹ The third of the Nasks and fourth of the Gāthic division (see Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 9, 12). It is an analytical commentary upon the Gāthas and the texts associated with them in the two preceding Nasks, devoting a separate fargard to each hā, and selecting very short phrases, or portions (Āv. bagha), for explanation and comment; so short that it is usually difficult to identify them in their Pahlavi disguise. The first three fargards are still extant in Yas. XIX–XXI, and a translation of their Pahlavi versions will be found in the Nask Fragments at the end of this volume; but whether the Pahlavi versions, consulted by the writer of the Dīnkard, were identical with those in the present Yasna is uncertain.

² The name of the Yathā-ahû-vairyô formula (see Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 7). This fargard is still extant in Yas. XIX.

³ That is, ‘of the apportionments,’ or ‘of those analyzed.’

⁴ Possibly the archangel Vohûman, the first of the creatures, may be meant; although the Bundahîr places his creation after the recitation of the Ahunavair (see Bd. I, 21–23). That it was
the archangel, of the form of words (rastakō midlayā) which is the innermost and most comprehensive encompassment (parvand) and best-congregated embodiment (vēh-ramaktūm kerpo) of the intelligent omniscience of the religion.

3. The divisions of this germ of germs, and the origin of the other primitive sayings of the good religion, are the divisibility of the portions (bakō) of the Ahunavair. 4. The Ahū of the Ahū-vairyō of the Ahunavair is the first creature which, as regards the first, is specially that creature which is really derived from the creator Ahārmazd, and its adaptation is owing to mankind. 5. The thought (mit) that exists with the first is with the word that is Vairyo, his ‘will,’ which is in the second created existence (dāmth), which, as regards the first, is specially the primitive secondary state (dadīgarīh) of those who are specially characterised by it, who exist as it were with that character, and have become, in that way, in association with the second creature. 6. The conjunction of the first creature—whose origin (yehevûnisnō), which is the liturgy, is a co-existence whose origin had occurred—is the source for the saying; and the distribution of the portions thereof is the whole saying of a liturgical kind; also its name is Yathā-ahū-vairyō, the spirit through which it is set going is the lore of the religion, needful among the creatures, the creations arose through wisdom for that purpose, and they, too, were produced on the solicitation of

recited before the other creations is clearly stated in Pahl. Yas. XIX, 2–5, 17–20.

1 See Pahl. Yas. XIX, 24–27.
2 Ibid. 29.
3 Ibid. Pâz. mit=Av. maiti=manas.
the archangel\(^1\); besides this, that archangels are wise in speaking, and through wisdom are they archangels.

7. And this, too, about the same words, that the statement is the best-worded which is spoken, or to be spoken\(^2\); and the obscurity is not about the sound of the word-elements, but about the manifold nature of the actual meaning (ka\(\text{bedi}\)h-i san\(g\)-\(t\)\(\ddot{o}\)), which is the character of the statement, in the words of the epitome. 8. This, too, that mankind guard the soul from hell by learning, reciting, and practising it, and the body from death\(^3\) by likewise perpetually persevering therein.

9. This, too, that, as to the first apportionment of the Ahunavair, whose name is the Bak\(\ddot{a}\)n Ahunavair, when, thoroughly accomplishing it (ava\(\tilde{v}id\)\(\ddot{a}\)r) unanxiously (as\(\ddot{u}\)\(dak\)i\(h\)a), one chants it in a ceremonial, the good work is as when one chants a hundred authorities (ra\(\ddot{d}\)\(h\)) of the G\(\ddot{a}\)thas, thoroughly accomplishing them unanxiously\(^4\); and when, accomplishing it (\(\tilde{v}id\)\(\ddot{a}\)r) anxiously, one chants it, such a ceremonial amounts to as much as ten with any other authority\(^5\). 10. This, too, that, through the same apportionment, while one solemnizes the summing up of the first completion\(^6\), which is the St\(\ddot{o}\)\(d\)-\(y\)\(a\)st, as it becomes the rite of one newly initiated (navak-\(n\)\(\ddot{a}\)par)\(^7\), on that day

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XIX, 20.  
\(^2\) Ibid. 24.  
\(^3\) Ibid. 25, 26.  
\(^4\) Ibid. 6, 7. The MS. has \(\ddot{t}\)\(\ddot{o}\) instead of \(\ddot{t}\)\(\ddot{d}\) \(\ddot{r}\) \(\ddot{t}\) \(\ddot{d}\) \(\ddot{t}\), by mistake.  
\(^5\) Ibid. 8. The MS. has ‘unanxiously’ by mistake.  
\(^6\) Possibly Yas. LIX, 32–34.  
\(^7\) Commonly called N\(\ddot{n}\)\(\ddot{a}\)bar (see Sls. X, 2, XIII, 2; Dd. LXXIX, 4, 11, 12).
they make the soul of the solemnizer pass three times into the supreme heaven.\(^1\)

11. About the grievous sinfulness of imperfectly accomplishing (avidâr) the Bakân Ahunavair.\(^2\)

12. This, too, that it is made by him in subjection to Aûharmaṣd, as the first creature made, who gives the body in service to him who is the ruler, and in discipleship to him who is the high-priest of the religion; for this reason, because they are suitable for lordship and mastership in the worldly existence.

13. He who is the highest lord and master is the creator Aûharmaṣd, and, owing to the same reason, when it made their subjection that to the creator Aûharmaṣd, he has made it as the first creature made.

14. This, too, that it is taught by it to keep the body in the service of the king of kings, whose origin Aûharmaṣd keeps in his possession; for this reason, because, when his origin is kept in the possession of Aûharmaṣd, Aûharmaṣd is over his own if a good ruler is made; him who is thus prepared, when also the worldly existence is necessary for Aûharmaṣd, he maintains as ruler when the creation is instructed.

15. This, too, that the reward of Vohûman is appropriated (khvēsînîdô) by him who indicates anything which is virtuous, who also utters virtuous recitation, and who likewise teaches perfect abstinence from sin to mankind.\(^3\) 16. For this reason, because the indication of anything virtuous, the utterance of recitation wisely, and abstinence from

\(^{1}\) See Pahl. Yas. XIX, 9-11.  
\(^{2}\) Ibid. 12-15.  
\(^{3}\) Ibid. 28, 29.  
\(^{4}\) Ibid. 30.  
\(^{5}\) Ibid. 31, 32.
sin are, as *it were*, a lodgment materially in good people owing spiritually to the archangels, Vohûman *being* more particularly the instigator therein; and, owing to the same reason, he in whom there is a like proficiency is of like good works with Vohûman, and adapted to the good works arises the like reward.

17. This, too, that the dominion is given to Aûharmazd by him who may perform those works, is manifest from the phrase Tad mazdâ tavâ khshathrem, &c. and its meaning, which is this: ‘That, O Aûharmazd! is this dominion of thine, by which benefits (vehagânô) are given to him who is justly living and poor.’ 18. Which is a deliverance for this reason, because Aûharmazd created no dominion for the more particular preservation of the poor and the creatures of the worldly existence from the destroyer; but, for the purpose of control over the dominion of him whose strength of rule is the cause of preservation for the poor—which is continually the wish of Aûharmazd—the dominion is given to Aûharmazd.

19. And this, too, that, through preservation from the adversary, he has assisted his poor who have preserved friendship for the Spîtâmân; the adversity of the creatures is the advancement of religion, by supporting the religion; and a friend of the Spîtâmân becomes an assistant of the supporters of religion. 20. About the entrance (dèn yâtûn-dakhîh) of the destroyer of the creatures from without, and the helplessness of the beneficent spirit owing thereto.

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XIX, 35, Yas. LIII, 9 d, and Chap. XLV, 10.
2 Ibid. 36.
3 Ibid. 39.
21. About the girding on of this saying of the religion of Aūharmâzēd by the three degrees (padmân), which are good thoughts, good words, and good deeds; by the four classes, which are priesthood, warriorship, husbandry, and artisanship; and by the five chieftainships, which are house-rule, village-rule, tribe-rule, province-rule, and the supreme Zarâtûstship; and the one summing up (hàngerdîkîth) which is the liberality of the good ruler

22. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

Chapter XLVIII.

Bakô Nask.

1. The second fargard is the Ashêm² of the Bakân³; it is by it that perfect excellence is produced for every one who produces for any one else that which is suitable for him⁴; for this reason, because, for the sake of perfect production, there is much unprofitable production, but profitable production is suitably producing. 2. This, too, that the reward of every good work is given by it to mankind, which keeps mankind in diligence when it instructs⁵; because, as the business of all good works is that which instructs and keeps mankind in diligence, the reward of good works which man-

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XIX, 44–55.
² See Chap. III, 11; it is here expressed by its Pahlavi equivalent aharâyîth. This fargard is still extant in Yas. XX.
³ See Chap. XLVII, 2.
⁴ See Pahl. Yas. XX, 1.
⁵ Ibid. 2.
kind can appropriate by diligence is appropriated by it. 3. And this, too, that advancement is given by it to every good work 1.

4. He who is understanding good works, and yet a suppliant, has thereby made the learned foolish (dān akhān dānī dārī); whoever possesses authority through virtuousness 2 is more particularly for rewarding the doers of good works; whoever, too, can make true decision 3 and adjudication is more particularly for causing the bridge judgment of a criminal, and for thrusting him aside owing to the exhaustion of his good works; and whoever, too, can exercise mediation and wisdom is more particularly for the good government of the world.

5. Of righteousness the excellence is perfect.

CHAPTER XLIX.

Bakō Nask.

1. The third fargard is the Yēnhē-hātām 4: there is here taught by it the worship of Aūharmazd, which is the law of Aūharmazd, that is, its law is virtuous 5. 2. This, too, that the worship of Aūharmazd is occasioned by it, which is the asking for life for beings by mankind 6. 3. And this, too, that the ritual of the males and females of the righteous occurs through it, which is the obeisance for the archangels 6. 4. And the atone-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XX, 3. 2 Ibid. 4. 3 Ibid. 5. 4 See Chap. IV, 1 n; it is here written Yānhē-hātām in Pahlavi. This fargard is still extant in Yas. XXI. 5 See Pahl. Yas. XXI, 1. 6 Ibid. 2, 3.
ment for crimes (vagagânö), because it is a gratification, is all for Aûharmazd personally therefrom; and in connection therewith it amounts to a gratification for Aûharmazd.

5. Here one mentions three particulars¹ which are in one’s worship of Aûharmazd of every description. 6. One is when the design (dâdö) of the person is virtuous, because it is restrained by some virtuousness of thought; this is that which amounts to worship and obeisance for Aûharmazd personally. 7. One is when it teaches an asking for life for mankind, and its ordinance is the protection, nourishment, and other assistance and gratification of mankind; a friend of the primitive worldly creation of mankind produced it, and it comes into connection with the bridge judgment of mankind, for the worship and gratification of Aûharmazd. 8. And one is when one would celebrate the obeisance for the archangels, which is for the sake of strengthening the archangels, each separately, in their control of the business of preparing and managing the world; because it is declared by revelation that to worship is this, that the ceremonial may reach this bridge² in company with one (padvand), for the worship and gratification of Aûharmazd; the archangel who is to be strengthened by the ceremonial is one, and mankind are developed by the strength of the archangel.

9. Of righteousness perfect is the excellence.

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XXI, 3.
² The Xînvad bridge (see Chap. XX, 3).
CHAPTER LXIX, 5-L, 5.

CHAPTER L.

Bakô Nask.

1. Propitiation for the creator Aûharmaezd, and a scornful dole for the evil spirit.

2. The fourth fargard is the Yânîm-manô of the Bakô, about the praise of Zarâtûst, that is, his jurisdiction, invocation of blessing (yânô), and speaking in reply were such as are declared by the sacred text. 3. This, too, that that jurisdiction of his arose before the blessing, that is, this one decision is made by him about his own, that his own person is first made deserving by him through virtue, and then virtue is prayed for by him.

4. This, too, that he has attributed the source and result to Aûharmaezd, who gives joy to Aûharmaezd; for the source and result of various advantages and various joys are desirable for joy itself, as joy is the acme (rôësman) of every happiness of him whose joy has made an offering (âustôfrîdô) to Aûharmaezd, because his decision is this, that by him whose joy arises from that thing which is the will of Aûharmaezd, its source and result are attributed to Aûharmaezd. 5. This, too, that the good work, which is a gratification by lawful gratifiers, becomes appropriated by him who shall perform that which is truly reverent; even for this reason, because he who is a lawful gratifier of others, through true reverence, has intended to gratify through the practice of his reverence, and, when thus the gratifier of those persons, the good work of gratification

---

1 See Chap. V, 1 n.  2 See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 0.  3 Ibid. 1 a.  4 Ibid. 2 c.
by lawful gratifiers becomes appropriated. 6. This, too, that the wisdom of Vohûman\(^1\) is advanced by him who utters a discourse through Vohûman; for this reason, because the wisdom of Vohûman and its advancement are mostly through discourse. 7. This, too, that the plenteousness and satisfaction of cattle\(^1\) are taught by him who properly maintains the cattle which are in his possession; even for this reason, owing to the multitudes thus belonging to him who properly maintains the cattle which are in his possession, he gains his profit and pleasure therefrom, and others, who see that gain, are instructed, even as much as he, about the proper maintenance of cattle for their own profit and pleasure.

8. This, too, that benefit\(^2\) being given for the benefit of the worthy man is taught by him who keeps the benefit that is his as the property of the sacred beings; even for this reason, because he gives the benefit that is his unto the worthy man for the purpose of keeping it for the advantage of the sacred beings, and others are instructed about it. 9. This, too, that prosperity\(^3\) being given, in both existences\(^3\), to him who is generous and worthy is taught by him who gives benefit to a worthy man possessing body and life; even for this reason, because a worldly existence and a spiritual one are both his, also his worldly existence is in this existence, and the spiritual one in that existence wherefrom satisfaction for the giving of benefit arrives. 10. This, too, that by him who shall cause reverence\(^4\) of the good, even this is taught, that the sacred

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 1 c, where Pt4 and Ms4 have Vohûman instead of valman.

\(^2\) Ibid. 2 b.

\(^3\) Ibid. 2 c.

\(^4\) Ibid. 4 b.
beings gratify him who is practising their will; even for this reason, because good for him, by whom the reverence is practised, becomes the reply of satisfaction, and the throne of the sacred beings is certain.

11. This, too, that he who was at first has taught even this to mankind, that supplicants for the favour of the sacred beings gratify the sacred beings by being contented (padvâz); even for this reason, because the welcome of a sacred being, supplied by command from the religion, is a virtuousness in the world distinct from that, and the production of a course of generosity, from the sacred beings to mankind, arises really through the contentment of the favoured; and mankind thereby become freer from doubt, and believe more in the sacred beings.

12. This, too, that his soul is delivered, or will be delivered, into the supreme heaven, who has given something to him who praises the sacred beings and the good; even for this reason, because even through liberality as to wealth, and the production of a way to the supreme heaven, it is manifest that anything given to the praisers of the sacred beings and the good is a greater liberality.

13. This, too, that the reverence of those needing reverence is occasioned by him who teaches the sacred word (vâkakô) to the good; even for this reason, because he who is a good teacher of revelation (dênô) can bring it into use for the reverence, advantage, and joy of the sacred beings and the good.

14. This, too, that acquaintance with the religion of Aûharmazd is disclosed to his own by him who loves Vohûman; even for this reason, because true

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 4 c. 2 Ibid. 4 a. 3 Ibid. 4 b.
knowledge arises from the discrimination of pure wisdom, and the pure attainment of the most discriminative spiritual lord (ahvô) to the mind, through the purity that constitutes the way within the mind of a spiritual lord, the purity which becomes that way through the lodgment of Vohûman there.

15. This, too, that righteousness is taught by him who keeps his mind connected with righteousness; even for this reason, because his mind attains to an effort for authority, and, ridden by the effort, attains to its acquisition. 16. This, too, that by him who gives commands about the progress of the concerns of Aûharmazd, this is also taught to mankind, namely, when one sees the throne of Aûharmazd; even for this reason, because it is possible to see that throne through the complete progress of the will of Aûharmazd in the world; and whoever gives commands about the progress of the concerns of Aûharmazd, the will of Aûharmazd is necessary in him, the progressive share of those concerns for the people of the world being shown, which is seen even through that foundation of completeness that becomes the throne of Aûharmazd for mankind.

17. This, too, that by him who welcomes Aûharmazd in himself, matters only known by even a high-priest are then taught to mankind; even for this reason, because instruction and knowledge are mostly those through a high-priest, and by him who welcomes Aûharmazd in himself, a spiritual lord is then prayed for, who becomes glorious and praised for that which is to be taught, and mankind are taught by him. 18. This, too, that by any one good, who

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 4 c. 2 Ibid. 5 b. 3 Ibid. 6 a.
is a servant and pleaser of a good ruler, a good person may be brought forward, to him who is the ruler, for benefit; even for this reason, because a good man associates other good people with him in the benefit that happens to him, and his character, temper, and disposition are thus due to that; but when bringing himself forward to rulers, through reverence and gratification of the rulers, other good people may also be brought forward by him for that benefit. 19. This, too, that by him who shall virtuously make an accumulation, the way of prosperity from the sacred beings is disclosed to his own; even for this reason, because virtuous accumulation is provided through unnumbered (apêna vâdô) grants of a decider, and, when it is so, he becomes the treasurer of the sacred beings.

20. This, too, that by him who produces advantage for the archangels, the gift of him who is suitable for the sovereignty of the immature (khâm) world is solicited; even for this reason, because the advantage which is produced for the archangels being for the sake of his own, the advantage of the immature creation solicited—the supreme advantage of the primitive good creations—becomes a virtuous ruler. 21. This, too, that by him who is a praiser of an archangel, the good religion is praised; even for this reason, because the good religion is praise of the archangels, and the praise of the archangels is the good religion. 22. This, too, that the religion of the sacred beings is made progressive by him who shall make an offering (âustôfridô) to the

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 6 b.
2 Ibid. 7 a.
3 Ibid. 7 c.
sacred beings; even for this reason, because making an offering to the sacred beings strengthens the upholders of religion, and the progress of religion occurs through upholders of religion.

23. This, too, that by him who shall make mankind quite zealous (garemōkō) for doing good works, the reward of the good works is also made liberal for mankind; even for this reason, because the producer of the origin is also the producer of the result.

24. This, too, that above the multitude is the praise of the man who is assisting those of virtuous will, who is also the nourishment of the creatures through virtuousness, and whose accumulation is also owing to virtuousness; even for this reason, because whoever is assisting those of virtuous will is an increaser of virtuousness in the world, whoever is the nourishment of the creatures through virtuousness is a producer of the paternity of creatures, and he whose accumulation is owing to virtuousness becomes an improver of the world.

25. This, too, that by him who assists him who is ignorant (khašt), is given and taught to suppliants that which is suitable for them.

26. To assist him who is ignorant is this, such as forming the province, district, domain, and family; maintaining the abode and house of a follower of Vistāsp (Vistāspānō), the fortress and stronghold, and the homestead (khān) of the agricultural peasant; repairing a rugged road; building bridges over rivers; managing a river, aqueduct, or brook; populating desolate places; and doing other things, owing to which any retention (gṛift-aē) of the comfort and advantage of mankind in the world occurs.

27. And by him who shall do these things, the assistance even of him who is born afterwards,
the making of that which is a very advantageous thing suitable for mankind, and also the doing of this for others, are taught.

28. This, too, that it is revealed (kāshtd) of the spiritual existence that that which is wisdom is for Āûharmazd, for him who is wisdom—that is, it teaches that acquired wisdom is for him whose innate wisdom is good—even for this reason, because the spirit, this that has come into his possession, which is acquired wisdom, is given by it to the progeny of Āûharmazd, which is innate wisdom, to increase it; and Āûharmazd is gratified thereby.

29. Of a summary about the continuance that was, the progress of the material existence, and the continuance that will be\(^1\), there is also this:—about the continuance that was, which is the beginning, there are the essential thought and beneficent production of the good and evil material existence of its good goodness, and that of its evil viliness; about the progress of the material existence, which is intermediate, there are the dutiful doing of good works, righteousness, and having reward, the committal of crime, wickedness, and having the bridge penalty; and about the continuance that will be, which is the last, there are the government, with wisdom, of that supremely good one who is the origin of all the multitudinous creatures (vasīkān), the triumph of goodness over viliness, the admissibility of the good, the inadmissibility of the bad, and the purity of the restoration of the good creatures.

30. Of righteousness perfect is the excellence.

---

\(^1\) The three periods of the universe:—the past eternity, the present existence, and the future eternity.
CHAPTER LI.

Bakō Nask.

1. The fifth fargard, Khshmaibyâ, is about this, that complaint is made by Gôs-aûrvan that there did not exist any one who properly keeps the cattle that are in his possession; even for this reason, because cattle are increased by such, and others, through design (âhang) and a desire for that increase, act by his example and keep cattle properly; but the complaint of Gôs-aûrvan is that he does not exist. 2. This, too, that by him who gives orders about the advancement of the concerns of the sacred beings, the care of cattle is produced, and his soul attains to the sacred beings; even for this reason, because the care of cattle is a principal thing in the advancement of the concerns of the sacred beings, and also for the preservation of the soul. 3. This, too, that by him who keeps cattle with a controller (das-tôbar) who is a cattle-master, even a friend of him who is the creator of cattle is taught to the cattle—the cattle-master and he who is wise in the nourishment, protection, and multiplication of cattle—even for this reason, because when his cattle are kept with a controller who is a nourisher, protector, and multiplier of cattle, the friendship of a nourisher for the nourished, of a protector for the protected, and of a multiplier for the multipliable is also exhibited by him; and the design of the creator for the creation, through affection, is that of a nourisher for the nourished, of a protector for the protected, and of a multiplier for the multipliable.

1 See Chap. VI, i n; it is here written khshmaîbê in Pahlavi.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, i.
3 Ibid. 2 a.
4. This, too, that by him who maintains an animal with propriety, it is presented to the sacred beings; even for this reason, because when it is maintained by him with propriety, the will of the sacred beings drives him on, and when the will of the sacred beings drives him on, it is presented by him to the sacred beings. 5. This, too, that when one shall admit the male of animals at the proper time, the mastery (sardârinidanâ) of the animal is also taught by him; even for this reason, because the admission of the male of the animals is the essential business in the multiplication of cattle, and he who is a multiplier has also taught the mastery of the animals. 6. This, too, that by him who does not slaughter an animal until it attains to full growth, the formation of a store for cattle is also taught; even for this reason, because, from the increasing cattle produced, the profit of mankind arises, and on account of the liking of mankind for profit, they persevere more fully in cultivating cattle, and provide a store for them.

7. This, too, that it is he who is the more powerful of beings—that is, strength is what is more in use by him\(^1\)—whose proceeding is for him who is his own, so that he supplies that which it is necessary to supply; even for this reason, because needful bountifulness to one's own needy ones arises through lawful thoughts, lawful thoughts are provided by expelling greed, lust, wrath, disgrace, envy, and other fiends from the body, and a man expelling a fiend from his body becomes of efficient strength. 8. This, too, that he is a very powerful person, for invocation\(^1\), supplication, and attaining to good works,

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 3 c.
who possesses wealth for the high-priest of the priests, who shall also procure decisions and judgment always justly, and who likewise becomes humble and reverent to the good; even for this reason, because the wealth of multitudes of mankind is for maintaining the desires and pleasure of the body, for procuring decisions and judgment whereto their wishes tend, and for others becoming humble and reverent to them even when their design is vicious; but he who possesses wealth for invocation and connection with the wisdom of the religion, through the high-priest of the religion, and shall procure just decisions and judgment, and becomes humble and reverent to the good, is a putter away of that design and one who, through the putting away of that design, becomes a capable and very powerful person.

9. This, too, that every one is made to persevere at his proper duty, as to any excellent thing, by him who holds the reward of the diligent, as the sacred beings are proceeding with a pure needy one; for this reason, because the toiling of the body of a person at his proper duty is induced by a desire of reward. 10. This, too, that by him whose mouth (yông)¹ and its appliances are for virtue, the possession of Vohûman is then explained, through this mode, because the maintenance of the mouth and its appliances as virtuous becomes so, when, through protection and assistance of the good, and defeat and smiting of the vile, the reformation of the world occurs; and this, too, is so, when there is an existence of preparation of the friend of the good and the enemy

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 7 c.
of the vile, and of friendship of the good and enmity of the vile, through understanding good and evil; and the understanding of good and evil is through possession of Vohûman, and that possession of Vohûman becomes also an explainer of Vohûman.

11. This, too, that by him who gives commands about the progress of the concerns of the sacred beings, his own knowledge of every kind is also developed; even for this reason, because the command being necessary for the personal duty of the good, they also develop the knowledge of every kind for which that commanding of duty and its auspiciousness are suitable. 12. This, too, that by him who teaches the good, the good work is then appropriated which is also an assistance of Zaratûst through speaking of the religion; even for this reason, because, on account of those of the religion of Zaratûst who really constitute the renovation of the universe, the speaking connected with Zaratûst—through the teaching of the good and teachers not of the same religion—and the assistance through speaking of the religion become the good work appropriated.

13. This, too, that by him who gives anything to that person who praises the sacred beings and the good, a throne is appropriated in yonder world, even on the mention of it. 14. This, too, that by him who is teaching that which is for the propitious, the damage that is owing to want of resources in religion is shut out of the world; even for this reason, because, owing to that, he increases the resources of religion of every kind, and the ad-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 8 c.
2 Ibid. 9 b.

[37] Y
vantage therefrom, in the world. 15. This, too, that by him who is bringing him who is righteous forth to the rulers, for beneficence, the utmost assistance is then afforded; even for this reason, because an expectation of the utmost beneficence is further attached by him to the place of obtainment 1.

16. This, too, that by him who gives himself in service unto him who is the supreme king of kings, the way of good thinking 2, of the assistance of pleasure, and of the production of sovereignty by Aûharmazd is disclosed to his own; even for this reason, because the original reason of virtue is the worthiness of mankind owing to the creator and their service unto the creator, and, therefore, as he who is a well-ruling monarch is a creator in the worldly existence, and a recompensing (pādō-dahâk) leader of the creatures who steadfastly give themselves in service to him, it is then given by him to the creator also; and I teach, besides, that the origin of the virtue of worthiness, which is attached by the creator to his own, is the way that is stated above, and other virtue is also disclosed to his own thereby.

17. Righteousness is excellence that is perfect.

Chapter LII.

Bakô Nask.

1. The sixth fargard, Aû-tâ-vakhshyã 3, is this, that by him who is a wise upholder of the dignity

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 10 c.
2 Ibid. 10 b; we should probably read hû-mânîsnîh, 'pleasant dwelling,' instead of hû-mânîsnîh.
3 See Chap. VII, 1 n; it is here written at-takhshê in Pahlavi.
of a priest’s leadership, the priestly assembly\(^1\) wanted for performing religious rites (\(\text{dēnō}\)) is enlarged; for this reason, because the nature of the person, whose resources are bounty for the needy, eagerly becomes a causer of exertion for the teaching (\(\text{āmūkō}\)) of accomplishments. 2. This, too, that by him whose habits are virtuous the glorification of Aūharmaṣd\(^2\) is accomplished and taught; even on this account, for the sake of whatever advantage \textit{and} pleasure are due to virtue, they, indeed, whose habits are virtuous, glorify him, moreover, who is the creator of those virtuous habits, who is Aūharmaṣd himself. 3. This, too, that by him who speaks virtuous words the performance even of the worship of Vohûman\(^3\) is also taught; even on this account, because of the comeliness and desirableness of virtue, the good make it an example and speak virtuous words, \textit{and} virtuous speaking is the worship of Vohûman. 4. This, too, that the ceremonial which he whose way is virtuous shall accomplish becomes greater\(^4\) thereby; even for this reason, because the sacred beings come more particularly to the ceremonial of those of pure dispositions \textit{and} virtuous ways, and accept \textit{it}.

5. This, too, that he who is a producer of benefit for promoters of good works becomes an extender\(^4\) of the teaching of religion; even for this reason, because from producing benefit for promoters of good works \textit{arises} an increase of good works, from an increase of good works \textit{arises} further progress of the will of the sacred beings, from further progress of the will of the sacred beings \textit{arises} more progress

\(^{1}\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 1 a.  \(^{2}\) Ibid. 1 b.  
\(^{3}\) Ibid. 1 c.  \(^{4}\) Ibid. 2 a.  

Y 2
of the good religion, and from more progress of the good religion arises an extension of the teaching of the good religion in the world. 6. This, too, that by him who possesses authority through virtue, discrimination\textsuperscript{1} as to the regulation of duties is taught to mankind; even for this reason, because the possessor of authority through virtue is a man who becomes a decider and ruler, and mankind learn and practise to exercise the disposition, habits, and custom of rulers.

7. This, too, that he who is a giver of the needful to his own needy ones has given himself to Zarathûst; even for this reason, because the needful being given to one's own needy ones is the existence of true liberality, which is a compendium of the religion of Zarathûst; by him who is thereby ennobled (vâspûharaḵânt-aftō) the religion of Zarathûst is then put on, and whoever has put on the religion of Zarathûst [has given himself to Zarathûst. 8. This, too, that by him who\textsuperscript{2} gives the leadership [to him who is suitable for the leadership]\textsuperscript{2} even the wisdom of that man is increased; for this reason, because even the wisdom of the suitable, through which they accomplish that leadership, when the leadership comes to them, grows further with the glory of that duty.

9. This, too, that he who has to select the better of two ways, which are good and bad\textsuperscript{3}, is assisted

\textsuperscript{1} See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 2 b.
\textsuperscript{2} The words in brackets are the translation of a passage that was inserted in the MS. at the time the folios were patched. The original copyist of the MS. has evidently omitted a passage, but whether the repairer has made the insertion merely by guessing from the context (which is quite possible), or by referring to some other MS., is uncertain.
\textsuperscript{3} See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 3 b.
to do so by the benefactors' ordeal of fire and ore; even for this reason, because that is discrimination by the eye of wisdom, which is the way of good intention, and the benefactors are decisive declarers of acquittal and incrimination through fire and metal, the two good discriminators; and when the business is of a different kind, even then both are associates in discriminating, and are powerful connections of one another. 10. This, too, that he who shall do that thing from which advantage of the sacred beings arises, is empowered to discriminate truly that which is sagacious\(^1\) in thought, word, and deed; even for this reason, because from doing anything for the advantage of the sacred beings arises the reign of the will of the sacred beings in the world, from the reign of the will of the sacred beings in the world arises the freedom from danger of the temporal existence of the world, and the freedom from danger of the temporal existence of the world contributes also to the power of him who is sagacious in discriminating truly as to thought, word, and deed.

11. This, too, that by him who thinks of the affairs of Aûharmazd the eternity (hämâytkth) of Aûharmazd\(^2\) and also the consideration of his own eternity by Aûharmazd are thought of; even on this account, because mankind mind and serve Aûharmazd for the sake of even the hope\(^2\) of eternal benefit from him; and they who think of him, through the eternal benefit due to him, are themselves increasing that benefit which is eternal, and it is thought eternal by him that thinks of that eternal thing his own eternity. 12. This, too, that

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 3 c.  
\(^2\) Ibid. 4 c.
He who restrains a person from reverence of the demons, has diverted him from making the world sickly; even for this reason, because whoever has restrained a person from reverence of the demons, has diverted a demon from making the world anarchical and from making the world sickly. 13. This, too, that by him who shall practise liberalit benefit for the sun is caused, and by him who shall cause benefit for the sun benefit is caused also for the nature of the body of mankind; even for this reason, because it is declared that the sun has progressed through the radiance and glory of the liberal, and the nature of the body of mankind is preserved by the sun.

14. This, too, that by him whose desire is for anything virtuous, and who possesses authority through virtue, mankind are controlled to persist (māṇīṇī-dānā) in virtue for receiving a reward¹; even for this reason, because he whose desire is virtuous seeks happiness for every one—a pre-eminent desire for the happiness of human existence being the desire of mankind for virtue—and by him who requires that, and strives for it fully, so far as possible for him, any one whatever is brought to persist in virtue and to constrain the spirit for reward; and by him who possesses authority through virtue the continuance of mankind in authority and their persistence and instruction in virtue are attached to good works and are brought to reward. 15. This, too, that by him who possesses happiness through appropriation of the sacred beings mankind are attached to the sacred beings for receiving a reward²; even for this reason, because, on account of the possession of

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 10 b. ² Ibid. 10 c.
happiness through appropriation of the sacred beings, he possesses *it* through the assistance and gratification of the good, and mankind shall therefore make him an example; it also becomes a good work for them, *and* they adhere to the sacred beings for receiving a reward.

16. This, too, that by him who produces the benediction *of* him that is a conductor of investigation *and* a righteous judge, and who shall also occasion the reverence of the good, the teaching of the advantage of the righteous¹ is likewise performed; even for this reason, because the essentials (mādīgān) of the advantage of the world are two—one owing to justice, *and* one owing to generosity—and it is declared *that* the advantage of *him* who possesses the blessings of the judges is owing to the justice of the judges, and the advantage of *him* who is reverent *to* the good is owing to the generosity of the good in developing the world, and the righteous teach about *it*.

17. Righteousness is perfect excellence.

---

**CHAPTER LIII.**

*Bakō Nask.*

1. The seventh fargard, Tā-ve-urvatā², is *that* by him who possesses advantage through virtue, the world of righteousness is *freed from*³ destruction⁴; even for this reason, because the possession of advantage through virtue arises through the non-participation of the demons *and* the vile therein, and the participation of the sacred beings *and* the

---

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 11 c.
² See Chap. VIII, 1 n.
³ Assuming that man, *‘which,’* stands for min.
⁴ See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 1 b.
good; and, when one shall act so, the advantage of spiritual origin becomes more powerful through guarding the advantage from the destroyers. 2. This, too, that, by him who welcomes Aûharmazd in his person, apostates are likewise forced to make the religion of Aûharmazd progressive; even for this reason, because owing to the apostasy of apostates being a religion produced by Aharman, they are only able to make the religion progressive through the appellation of Aûharmazd; apostasy and priesthood, and the apostates and priests, are fraternal opponents, and whenever the priesthood and multitudes of the priesthood are triumphant, multitudes of the apostates of apostasy perish (aôshênd), and when the multitudes of the apostates of apostasy are bold, the priests of the priesthood are weak; and the priests are superior in power and success when their priesthood is properly limited, and their properly-limited priesthood, too—which can arise through mankind—consists in the welcome precedence of Aûharmazd.

3. About the completeness (spôrikih) of the priesthood in that quality now, when the priests of the multitude are the habitation (mêhônô) of Aûharmazd, and the power of the priests of the priesthood has increased, the valour of the apostates of apostasy is smitten, and the apostates are defeated by the abundant splendour of the priests, also their power as regards making the religion of Aharman progressive through the appellation of Aûharmazd is fettered, and they keep apostasy concealed.

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, i c.
2 Assuming that lâ, 'not,' stands for râf.
3 The passage in the Pahlavi commentary on this Nask, which
4. And then also they, with the appellation of priests, truly speak and teach the religion of Aûharmazd, and make it progressive, just as it is solemnized and made easy by them, even though the will of the sacred beings be unheard and undesired through apostasy.

5. This, too, that he proclaims the miraculousness of Aûharmazd$^1$, who shall appoint for ordeal that which is certainly a doubt; even for this reason, because, through accomplishing an ordeal, that which is doubtful is forcibly rendered visible (vênâvda-hâkt-âttô) to the eyes, as certain clearness, through the power of the spirit, which is itself a miracle of Aûharmazd. 6. This, too, that by him who shall make a public decision thereon, as to the acquitted and convicted$^2$, gratification is afforded to him whose maintenance of the dispute$^2$ is righteous; even for this reason, because the needful is delivered by him to its own requirer who thereby becomes even renowned. 7. This, too, that even the rite of ordeal [is produced]$^3$ by him [who is an advantage to the righteous; for this reason, because the rite of ordeal is for the advancement of the ordeal, and the religious ordeal] proceeds through sovereignty; these righteous are those of the good religion, and their advantage is that belonging to the multitude, which is the sovereignty now, and every one who is given for that advantage, to the

is here described, must evidently have been written shortly after some great triumph of the priesthood over some heresy, probably either that of Mânf, or that of Mazdak.

$^1$ See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 2 b. $^2$ Ibid. 3 a. $^3$ Ibid. 3 b. The words in brackets translate a passage inserted in the MS. at the time the folios were patched, like that in Chap. LII, 7, 8.
righteous of those of the good religion, becomes the performer of any rite of ordeal really produced, because the origin of that giving of advantage is even the rite of ordeal. 8. This, too, that by him who gives a priest and righteous man for propagating the religion, the rite of ordeal is also proclaimed; even for this reason, because the teacher and one rightly merciful (hû-âmûr'êtdâr) give\textsuperscript{1} the sacred text by which even the rite of ordeal is declared.

9. This, too, that he who recites the revelation of Aûharmazd, and who shall do it with exceeding goodness, becomes an increaser of wisdom; even for this reason, because the wisdom of a man increases in these two ways, either he speaks and teaches himself, or he exemplifies the excellence of a portion to the wise who become speakers and teachers of wisdom. 10. This, too, that his homage is for Aûharmazd, who thoroughly teaches a righteous employer of animals and human beings (kîrâ va-vîr) that he considers him as their controller (da-stôbar); because, since the productiveness of the completion of the creatures is produced through the nourishment of the creatures by Aûharmazd through his fulfilling his own productiveness, that righteous employer in the world is intended for the nourishment of his creatures, owing to that outward subjection and propitiation of theirs, and the righteous employer is connected with their subjection and propitiation for the creator.

11. This, too, that by him who gives thought to the religion of Zaratûst, the soul is given to Zara-

\textsuperscript{1} Assuming that yehevûnd, 'they are,' stands for yehabûnd.
túst; even for this reason, because with a man’s having given thought to the religion of Zaratúst is connected the receiving of his soul by Zaratúst for preservation from hell. 12. This, too, that by him who teaches the nature of the sacred beings to mankind, consultation with Aûharmazd is also further taught; even for this reason, because the nature of the sacred beings is consulting a spiritual lord, and becomes also the consulting of Aûharmazd.

13. This, too, that by him who keeps the produce of sheep as the property of Aûharmazd, a sheep is given to him who is diligent and moderate; even for this reason, because produce kept as the property of Aûharmazd is for being given for good works, being given for good works—is being truly kept as a beginning for the possession of produce, and a beginning truly kept is kept even through a sheep, as a beginning of excellence, in the control (dastôbarîh) of him who is a diligent and moderate shepherd.

14. This, too, that by him who is liberal to the liberal the increase owing to developers is brought into the world; even for this reason, because a liberal man, on account of even that gift given back to the worthy, becomes even for us—through the development of the world—him who is first praised therein with the sacred beings. 15. This, too, that whoever shall form a store for sheep, becomes an agent even in the development of sheep by the creator; because, on account of the increase of sheep through the existence of nourishment for them having arisen, whoever has arranged nourishment for sheep, becomes an agent even in the de-

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 10 a. 2 Ibid. 10 b.
velopment of sheep by the creator. 16. This, too, that by him who teaches inward prayer (vāhakō) to the good, it is also taught to eaters; even for this reason, because, everything connected with eating being declared by the religion, when the religion is taught by any one to the good, in which even that information is proclaimed, even eaters are taught about it. 17. This, too, that whoever maintains a sheep, or human being, as our property, is taught to maintain it through the high-priest of Zarātūst; even for this reason, because it is so maintained as the property of the sacred beings, when he maintains it as the property of Zarātūst.

18. This, too, that by him who gave predominance to those of the nature of Gāyōmard, the sovereignty also of those of the religion of Zarātūst is desired; even for this reason, because the religion of Zarātūst is the nature of Gāyōmard, and the nature of Gāyōmard is the religion of Zarātūst.

19. This, too, that when one is alone among rulers a way of speaking to the rulers such words as are really true is thereby provided; even for this reason, because the utterance of blessings by a solitary person is for advantage. 20. This, too, that by him who keeps the sovereignty which is his within the will of Aūharmazd, the best thing is done unto Aūharmazd; even for this reason, because a sovereignty is so kept within the will of Aūharmazd when he who is the ruler gives to Aūharmazd the individuality in which is the sovereignty, and when its proximity and closeness have given to Aūharmazd that thing which is best and supreme.

21. This, too, that when one teaches the sayings

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 11 b, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 1.
(vākakō) of the benefactors, the information which is owing to the religion is illustrated by him to his own; even for this reason, because the knowledge of religion, which is in īs causing liberality by him, is increased even by the repeated enquiry of disciples. 22. This, too, that by him who teaches an applicant the virtuous way and doctrine (pand) the liturgy is then taught; even for this reason, because knowledge arises through the virtuous course of the liturgy. 23. This, too, that by him who thinks of the affairs of virtue, the liturgy is maintained and taught with virtuousness; even for this reason, because the maintenance of the liturgy with virtuousness arises through virtuous thinking.

24. This, too, that whoever shall provide the nourishment of creatures with propriety, his Vohūman (good thought) is Aūharmazd’s progeny; and whoever properly maintains those which are in his keeping, his position becomes Aūharmazd’s fatherhood of Vohūman; even for this reason, because every proper nourishing is that in which the nourished becomes an offspring such as Vohūman unto Aūharmazd; and every proper protection of the creatures, over those which are protected by it, is a fatherhood such as that of Aūharmazd over Vohūman. 25. This, too, that by him who shall provide nourishment with propriety for the creation which is good, it is taught that the good creation was produced by Aūharmazd; even for this reason, because from the nourishment of the creation with propriety, together with the discriminating action of the nourisher, the goodness of the nourished is also

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 6 a. ² Ibid. 6 b.
³ Ibid. 8 a. ⁴ Ibid. 8 b.
evident, from the goodness of the nourished creation the goodness of him who is its creator is evident, and the creator of the good creation is Aûharmâd himself.

26. This, too, that whoever shall spiritually make Aûharmâd the ruler over his own person becomes a ruler as to actions; even for this reason, because whoever is making Aûharmâd ruler over his person is a leader of wisdom, a leader of wisdom is a decider taking account of sin and good works, taking account of sin and good works is abstaining from sin and practising good works, and owing to abstinence from sin and practising good works one becomes a ruler over actions. 27. This, too, that Spendarmad is given to Aûharmâd by him who is as reverent unto Aûharmâd as a daughter unto a father; even for this reason, because the Spendarmadic nature (Spendarmâdih) is provided by him for Aûharmâd.

28. This, too, that for him who thinks of the care of cattle there arises that wisdom which the control (patîh) of cattle gives; even for this reason, because the nature of the wisdom for a production of cattle is provided in mankind, and, when mankind apply their thoughts to seeking that wisdom, they obtain it. 29. This, too, that by him who is admitting the male to cattle at the proper time, the care of cattle is also thought of; even for this reason, because the admittance of the male becomes productiveness, and whoever would cause productiveness thinks also of nourishment.

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 8 c.
2 Ibid. 9 a, and Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3.
3 Ibid. 9 a.
4 Assuming that min, 'from,' stands for mûn.
30. This, too, that by him who has prepared himself for the priests the way to yonder\(^1\) world is taught; even for this reason, because the way to yonder world is declared by the religion, and its indicator is the priest; therefore, by him who is prepared for the priests, through discipleship, that way is known and is made known. 31. This, too, that in him who shall do that which is something that is an assistance to the renovation of the universe, thoughts of the bounty (dāhīth) of the creator arise; even for this reason, because creativeness is through thinking of the renovation, thinking of the renovation arises through the renovation, the renovation arises through anything which is done that is an assistance of the renovation, the doing of anything that is an assistance of the renovation is through thinking of sagacity, and thinking of sagacity becomes thoughts of the bounty of the creator.

32. This, too, that by him who loves the affairs of the archangels a heart and mind\(^2\), for not being misled from the way of the sacred beings, are recommended to mankind; even for this reason, because from the religion of the sacred beings being loved arises increasing power of the sacred beings, from the increasing power of the sacred beings arises their greater authority among mankind, and from the greater authority of the sacred beings among mankind arises the resistance of heart and mind of mankind, even in their not being misled by the very demons. 33. This, too, that whoever shall act with reverence to Vohūman sees the sin which is concealed in him mingled with good works there-

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 9 b.  
2 Ibid. 12 b.
by\(^1\); even for this reason, because reverence for Vohûman becomes submission (hêrîh) in virtue-
ness, with virtuous submission are connected free-
dom from Kîkship and from Karapship\(^2\), and with freedom from Kîkship and from Karapship is con-
nected one sound of life and eye, whereby he is an
observant decider, and atonement for sin arises
from good works.

34. This, too, that by him who shall provide
liberality for the liberal, the giving of a loan\(^3\) to
mankind is also taught; even for this reason, be-
cause liberal giving by any one is accounting for
his own debt, and he endeavours to repay it fully
observantly and with complete gratification; besides
that, the power of liberality becomes extendible
among mankind, and through loans and other gifts\(^4\)
of generosity (dahîsnîkîth) they become ardent.

35. This, too, that by him who pays homage (fra-
nâmêdô) to the affairs of Aûharmazd, as much as
he is able, the non-injury of the innocent is also
taught; even for this reason, because to intertwine
further (frôvâftanô) with the affairs of Aûharmazd,
as much as possible, is first to commit no sin and
to perform as many good works as possible, and
abstaining from the essentials of sin is non-injury
of the innocent. 36. This, too, that by him who
possesses a ruler and high-priest Aûharmazd is

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 13 c, where, after hûmanîh, J2, Pt4,
and Mf4 insert the following words: vinâs dên avô kirfakô
gûmîkhtô yekavisnûnêdô, madam aharâyîh ak sardâr hûmanîh.

\(^2\) Pahl. akîktîh va-akarapîh; see Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXV,
13 n for the two idolatrous priestly tribes here alluded to. On its
second occurrence the first word is corrupted into âkîs which
closely resembles akgîh in Pahlavi letters.

\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 14 b.
spiritually made ruler over his person\(^1\); even for this reason, because, through the requirement of Āūharmazd, the angels are lord and master of the worldly existence of that man.

37. This, too, that whoever decides duty and opinion becomes also an informer of others; even for this reason, because it informs others that he is possessing wisdom, and this is what is said, that 'the wisdom of a man is evident from his deciding as to affairs.' 38. This, too, that whoever shall provide nurture with propriety becomes also an indicator (dakhṣhakīnīdār)\(^2\) for others; even for this reason, because the happiness of the nurturer becomes also a happy indicator even for thee; and this, too, is what one says, that 'always good, happy, and free from serfs\(^3\) is he who is not a master of vagabonds (padō-i pūān).

39. This, too, that by him who is a ruler who, by a command given, appoints him who is liturgical (mānsarīk), and gives anything to him which it is desirable to give, the necessary demeanour for true and virtuous statements\(^4\) is taught; even for this reason, because the uttering of true and virtuous statements, in fearlessness\(^4\) of rulers, is owing to a well-established sovereignty, and their well-established sovereignty is more particularly through these two things, good commanding and helpfulness; when they establish that liturgical one by a command given it is good commanding, and when they give

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 16 a.
\(^2\) Ibid. 17 c.
\(^3\) Pahl. avārūnō; but, as freedom from servants is not exactly an Oriental idea of happiness, the word may also be read anālōnō, a possible variant of anālānō, 'unlamenting.'
\(^4\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 19 b.
anything to him which it is desirable to give the helpfulness is provided; also, owing to their good commanding, the helpfulness is a good establishment of the sovereignty, owing to a well-established sovereignty there is fearlessness also in uttering true and virtuous statements, and, owing to freedom from concealment in uttering true and virtuous statements, the necessary demeanour for true and virtuous statements arises. 40. This, too, that he who gives personal service unto the king of kings, and who considers the product (bar) as the property of Aûharmazd, is empowered for indicating the acquitted and convicted\(^1\) by the spirits, his indicators of the acquitted and convicted; even for this reason, because the person being given in service to the king of kings is the preparation (nîvârisnô) of subjection, and the product being considered as the property of Aûharmazd is to consider the innocence of its origin (bûn) and to make the product well-selecting (hû-kînakô) through virtuousness; owing to the progress of these two, the virtuousness in the world becomes great and increasing productiveness for all the good spiritual and worldly existences which are in it, even those who are angels indicating the acquitted and convicted.

41. This, too, that by him who becomes immortal progress\(^2\) for him who is immortally progressive, complete progress\(^2\) is given to him who is completely progressive; and its routine (dádzistân), too,

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 19 c.

\(^2\) Ibid. 21 a; amarg-rûbisnîh and hamâk-rûbisnîh are Pahlavi translations of Av. ameretâd and haurvatâd, as may be seen in Ibid. 6 b.
is even this, that by him who wishes\(^1\) to make that which is his own soul immortal, and would afford it assistance, every benefit is given to him who is a supplicant for every benefit and becomes a giver of every benefit which he begs, which becomes an assistance to him whom he asks in attaining thereto. 42. This, too, that whoever gratifies that which is enjoyment renders his soul immortal; even for this reason, because the soul subsists through good works, and good works are all those which gratify enjoyment. 43. This, too, that whoever keeps himself always in good works\(^2\) has produced perfection and happiness by any goodness and worthiness of his; even for this reason, because keeping oneself always in good works becomes perfect diligence in industry, within perfect diligence in industry is also comprised opposition to any harm whatever, and it is opposition to harm and perfect goodness that are worthy of every happiness.

44. This, too, that by him who possesses wealth as high-priest of the priests, predominance as their high-priest is maintained\(^3\) and taught; even for this reason, because the provision of sovereignty and its progress are really through wealth. 45. This, too, that by him who would act for the pleasure of others, owing to virtue, the growth and increase owing to Vohúman\(^4\) are produced; even for this reason, because that which has given virtuous pleasure is the nourishment of the creatures by the producer of increase and growth.

46. This, too, that by him who welcomes Áūhar-

---
\(^1\) Written yetibun̄d with mú above it as a partial correction into yesbe műn̄d which is evidently the proper word.
\(^2\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 21 a.
\(^3\) Ibid. 21 b.
\(^4\) Ibid. 21 c.
mazd in himself\(^1\), and teaches good works to mankind, every virtuous instruction is taught; even for this reason, because the welcoming of Aûharmazd in oneself is the non-committal of sin, and the teaching of good works to mankind is more particularly the performance of good works oneself; innocence and the practising of good works are the end of every instruction, and he in whom they exist becomes a teacher of every goodness. 47. This, too, that by him who shall occasion benefit through him who is a propagator of good works, the evidence of him who is well-informed\(^2\) is taught through one well-informed; even for this reason, because the chief evidence as to sagacity is to occasion benefit for the good. 48. This, too, that by him who gives commands as to the affairs of Aûharmazd, Aûharmazd is made welcome in his person\(^1\); even for this reason, because the throne of Aûharmazd in the worldly existence is more particularly in a ruler of well-commanding person.

49. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

---

**Chapter LIV.**

_Bakô Nask._

1. The eighth fargard, _Hvaëtumaiti\(^3\), is that by him who teaches wisdom to others the not being deceived by an apostate into confusing a righteous one (aharûbô-barîsth) is also taught\(^4\); even for this reason, because he who has taught is not deceived.

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 22 c.  
\(^2\) Ibid. 22 a.  
\(^3\) See Chap. IX, 1 n.; it is here written khvamaftô in Pahlavi.  
\(^4\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 1–4.
2. This, too, that by him who is as reverent unto Aûharmazd as a daughter unto a father, and who is also a gratifier of virtuous doers, Spendarmad\(^1\) is made one of the archangels, and one is also made to love her; even for this reason, because through that Spendarmadic one being reverent unto Aûharmazd, and the gratification of the good by him, the archangels love and preserve her Spendarmadic nature (Spendaramadígh). 3. This, too, that he who is loving Vohûman is taught by his wisdom not to destroy (nasâninídanô)\(^2\) the religion of Aûharmazd; even for this reason, because wisdom maintains the religion in virtue, and others are taught about it.

4. This, too, that by him who gives himself in discipleship unto the priests, and who asks again that which he does not understand, learning (âmûkô) is taught; even for this reason, because the asking for knowledge again by him who has given himself in discipleship to a wise priest, increases knowledge; and the friends of knowledge, therefore, make him an example, and shall practise asking again, that which they do not understand, from the disciples of the priests.

5. This, too, that whoever is in accordance with Zaratûst, through pure affection, becomes, in like manner, him who is giving strength to the will of the archangels and the commands of the good; even for this reason, because these two capabilities are of the special nature of Zaratûst. 6. This, too, that through the discrimination of him who loves Vohûman Aû-

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 2 c, and Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3.

\(^2\) Ibid. 4 c.

\(^3\) Ibid. 8 c. It is possible to read the verbal stem gôsh, 'hear,'
harmazd is gratified; even for this reason, because one loving Vohûman is loving wisdom and has taught wisdom, wisdom taught is discrimination, and the discriminator becomes a gratifier of Aûharmazd.

7. This, too, that whoever gives thought to the religion of Zaratûst is taught wisdom; even for this reason, because all the wisdom of the good religion is taught to him by giving thought. 8. This, too, that whoever has kept wealth in the control of Zaratûst becomes taught, and is one who is reverent to the benefactors; even for this reason, because whoever is reverent to the supporters of religion keeps wealth in the control of the supporters of religion, and, when kept by him in their control, it is kept by him in that of Zaratûst.

9. This, too, that his destiny is connected with himself who practises industry. 10. This, too, that his good works for arranging the creation become his own who has fully prepared his own person.

11. The excellence of righteousness is perfect.

Chapter LV.

Bakö Nask.

1. The ninth fargard, Yathâîs, is that by him who praiseth Aûharmazd his work in the Gâthic lore is taught; even for this reason, because the reason of the praise even of Aûharmazd is for his works, and by him who extols any work the performance

instead of dôsh (Av. zush); but this is hardly possible in § 2, and gôshîdanô is not the usual Pahlavi for 'to hear.'

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 9 b.
2 See Chap. X, 1 n; it is here written yatâyîs in Pahlavi.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIII, 1 a.
of that work is also taught; moreover the work of Aûharmaezd, which is the Gâthic lore, is pure goodness. 2. This, too, that by him who increases the propagators of good works priestly-controlled action (raďk-kûnisnth)\(^1\) is taught; even for this reason, because the advancement of merit and the action of priestly chieftainship are the two maxims (vâkakô) of one who, when there is reason, exalts progressive merit when he increases the propagators of good works; and when progressive merit is exalted priestly-controlled action is praised and also taught.

3. This, too, that what is worthy, and what is coveted for every worthy man, is produced by him for whom the command of the liturgy is the reckoning for him who is habitually sagacious; and this statement also indicates the explanation of rulers and all who are needing those of the world for one combined effort, who, in the immature world, have to trust a command that is at one time sagacious.

4. This, too, that personal assistance is liberally given (rådîntadô) to the creatures of the good beings by him whose deeds are an assistance of the renovation of the universe; and this statement, too, also indicates the great power of any good work whatever, because every good work, being an assistance of the renovation, becomes liberality to the immature (khâm) creation.

5. This, too, that whoever teaches to a son reverence unto his father has also appropriated the reward for reverence unto the creator for teaching that person; even for this reason, because express reverence unto parents and service to them are connected

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXIII, 1 b.
with reverence unto the creator and service to him.

6. This, too, that whoever is personally progress for him who is his own\(^1\)—that is, for any one whatever among those who are needing him—becomes the happiness of the creator who is the maker of the original good creations; and this statement also indicates as to whom it is, when, through him whose decision is progress—which arises through that which occurs when the decision is given that becomes for every one that which is needful for him—there is happiness that is concentrated. 7. This, too, that by him who is causing benefit for him who is a cultivator cattle\(^2\) are multiplied; even for this reason, because a gratifier of the performers of tillage is multiplying tillage, and cattle are the chief tillage of the world.

8. This, too, that the religion which is the way of righteousness is made his own\(^3\) by him who is a good thinker about the religion of righteousness; and this statement, too, also indicates the limit of reliance (astisnō) upon the good religion; because whoever is not a good thinker about the good religion, even though he be a reciter of revelation, becomes really an apostate; whoever is a good thinker, but not about the good religion, becomes really an infidel; and whoever thinks truly becomes a good thinker about religious righteousness and the statements in the good religion. 9. And about three statements, the bringer forward for all mankind is your submission to the sacred beings; one is of the produce (bar), one of the origin (bûn), and

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXII, 3 a.
\(^2\) Ibid. 3 b, c.
\(^3\) Ibid. 5 c.
one of the body and life; that of the produce is the exertion from which there is produce, that of the origin is the advantage for which the origin is requisite, and that of the body and life is the thought of the proposer (râyînîdâr), which considered both as submission to the sacred beings. 10. This, too, that connected with the sitting-place of the sage is the excessiveness of the pleasure¹ for those causing pleasure, for the upper classes (avarîgânô) of Iran, and for the energy (pâtûkîth)² of the diligent.

11. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

---

Chapter LVI.

Bakô Nask.

1. The tenth fargard, Yâ-shyaothanâ³, is that, for him who is practising good works⁴ as much as it is possible for him to do, an efficacious reason for the renovation of the universe is afforded assistance; even for this reason, when every good work is an assistance to the renovation, then—according to the declaration that whoever does much more good work is more assisting the renovation—by him who is practising good works as much as it is possible for him to do, an efficacious reason for the renovation is afforded assistance. 2. This, too, that the apostate⁴, who is the seduction of mankind, is injured by him who devotes himself to Aûharmazd; even for this reason, because he is dislodged and is elucidated

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XXXIII, 13 a.
² See Chap. XI, r n; it is here written yâ-shâôtnô in Pahlavi.
³ See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, r a.
⁴ Ibid. 8 a.
(adīvāgī-aitō rōshanī-aitō), and there arises a class of mankind who see the admission (parvānakīh) of the apostate into hell, and he is disabled when it is seen by them.

3. This, too, that by him who is eager for knowledge, knowledge is grasped and taught; even for this reason, because knowledge is taught through that which is the instruction of every science and the original desire for it, and mankind shall extol his knowledge; it is also coveted by them for being taught, and they mount and grasp it. 4. This, too, that to slay an apostate is taught by the good one who is united (hamī-ait) with a good man; even for this reason, because the destruction (aōsh) of Aharman arises from the union of the good. 5. This, too, that by him who is a disturber (vīshūftār) as to Vohūman the production of development through Vohūmanic rule is taught; sinners lawfully subjected to the bridge judgment (pūhalīnīdō) for Vohūmanic disturbance, and the command for it by rulers and high-priests, being a preparation for the development of the world.

6. This, too, that a great ordinance is taught by him whose ceremonial is for Aūharmazd; even for this reason, because a comprehension of Aūharmazd and serving him are the foundation of joy (parkān būn), and the ownership and concentration (hangerāikīh) of all good works are themselves the great ordinance of the faithful whose preparation is through the ownership, and their welcome is more particularly in the ceremonial; owing to the same

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 9 a. 2 Ibid. 10 c.
3 Ibid. 11 b. 4 Ibid. 12 a, b.
5 Ibid. 12 a.
reason, the original possession of the great ordinance of the ceremonial which is Aûharmazd’s own, and of other good works—even though relating to the ceremonial of Aûharmazd of every kind owing thereto—is necessary for the manifestation of the great ordinance, and is incorporated (hâm-tânû) with it when it becomes manifest as a great ordinance, or as more than a great ordinance; even then its extent (vâlînûnô) is over this joy. 7. This, too, that the performance (sakhârîh) of a ceremonial\(^1\) of the needy is a gift to the worthy of the creation, and a gift to the worthy of the creation is the attraction (hâkhârîh) of a ceremonial of the needy.

8. This, too, that the way of righteousness\(^2\), also that through which that way is seen, and likewise the reward of those lonely-labouring (aêvar’sîkân) therein are taught by him whose deeds are an advantage to the sacred beings; even for this reason, because the advantage of the sacred beings is the advantage of the multitude, and the advantage of the multitude, which is itself the religion of the sacred beings that is a guide, is the way of righteousness and also that through which is the reward of those lonely-labouring. 9. This, too, that even the reward of a teacher of professionals, which is the profit of the profession, is liberally given and appropriated for the professionals taught; even for this reason, because the business of the sacred beings has profited by the instruction (âmûkô).

10. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 12 a.
\(^2\) Ibid. 12 c.
Chapter LVII.

Bakō Nask.

1. The eleventh fargard, the Yasna, is that the whole of the good works which are to accomplish, and those, too, which are accomplished, are appropriated by the righteous man who teaches virtue to the righteous; even for this reason, of the good works which one accomplishes, and those, too, which are accomplished, there is all one store (anbār), from the work (var'zḏ) of the original good creation even to the renovation of the universe, and ever afresh the teaching of virtue by those who are righteous comes to the accumulation of the righteous and the accomplishment of that store, and they, too, are in possession of that store, in partnership with the other righteous. 2. This, too, that it is because he would do the best for his own, whose meditation of the liturgy is for those who are archangels, and who also maintains, for the assistance of the good, the strength which is his for the existences. 3. And this statement indicates the great participation of any one in that store, because when that store is really an accumulation of work on the way, for the partners in that store who have done more, and also those who have accomplished less, and remains, moreover, in the possession of them all, then, as to those accomplishing more of it, through the original possession of most of that work, and also through that which occurs when the accomplishers have attained to that plenty more particularly owing to their more labour, and likewise through the property, liberally,

1 See Chap. XII, r n; it is here written yastḏ in Pahlavi.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XXXV, 5.
3 Ibid. 4.
4 Ibid. 6.
largely, and lordly, of those accomplishing more, and the indigence, unafllictedly\(^1\), scantily, and subordinately, of those accomplishing less, it is reasonable to speak of that store as in their possession, and of their superiority as greatly over those accomplishing less. 4. This, too, that his work is good work whose liberality is for the archangels; even for this reason, because through a little labour for the sacred beings, which is itself that liberality, he contributes duty and good works.

5. This, too, that it becomes best for him, in both existences\(^2\), who teaches a wishing for living in diligence to mankind; even for this reason, because he is a preserver of them through the wishing for living, and his soul, through the diligence owing to him, attains perfection, here from mankind and in yonder world from the sacred beings. 6. This, too, that the ceremonial and obeisance of Aûharmazd\(^3\) are performed by him who is in the way of like thinking and like praising of the law of Aûharmazd with all the worshippers of Aûharmazd. 7. This, too, that he is in the leadership of his religion\(^4\) who makes the knowledge of religion ever afresh; even for this reason, because every item of knowledge which he provides increases some greatness of it. 8. This, too, that he is in the service of his religion\(^4\) who demands the knowledge of religion ever afresh; even for this reason, because so long as he demands more, he becomes nearer to a knowledge of religion.

---

\(^1\) Pahl. abēshīhā, but it should perhaps be avēshīhā, 'unabundantly.'  
\(^2\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXV, 9.  
\(^3\) Ibid. 19.  
\(^4\) Ibid. 22.
9. This, too, that mankind’s wishing for life is authorised (dastōvarīnīdō) by him who authorises the production of anything for mankind; even for this reason, because authority (dastōbarīh) over the production of anything is conjoined with that which is for the wishing for life; so that whoever production of anything is authorisedly, their life is free from any discomfort; and whoever wishing for life is authorisedly, his production of anything is also authorisedly. 10. This, too, that acceptance, hints, and words are given 1 to Aūharmazd by him who asks again, that which he does not understand of the religion, from him who does understand; even for this reason, because knowledge is completed through these three things: obtainment, hints, and speaking, and all three are asked again by him who does not understand. 11. This, too, that the words of Aūharmazd 2 are taught by him who teaches the acceptance, remembrance, and speaking of the religion; even for this reason, because this is the recital of that compendium (hangerātkih).

12. This, too, that the care 3 and reverence of fire are provided by him who is liberal to a fire as regards anything he supplies for the care and reverence which others shall provide for the fire, and he becomes equally rewarded for it. 13. This, too, that by him who teaches the religion of Aūharmazd with joyfulness 4, the care and reverence of fire are

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXV, 25.
2 Ibid. 27.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XXXVI, 1. This section implies that the attendant who feeds a fire with fuel supplied by others, obtains an equal share of merit with them.
4 Ibid. 4, 5.
provided as declared by the religion; even for this reason, because even that which is taught by him combines with the action due to that teaching. 14. This, too, that the obeisance to those requiring obeisance is arranged by him who loves Vohûman. 15. This, too, that fire is strengthened—for that work, achieved in the future existence, which is the greatest that exists—by him who invokes fire with the title of fire; even for this reason, because the title is put by him upon a nature that is laudable, and when invoked by him with that title the praised one is then strengthened by him.

16. This, too, that he becomes informed as to the religion of Aûharmaæd, who teaches the religion of Aûharmaæd with pleasure; even for this reason, because every knowledge is exercised and increased by teaching. 17. This, too, that Aûharmaæd is propitiated by the excellent sagacity of him who teaches virtuous words and actions; even for this reason, because sagacity has two parts, the speakable and the workable. 18. This, too, that the bodily form (kerpô) of Aûharmaæd is praised as perfection (nêvakôtûmîth) by him who elevates (bâlistînêdô) his own soul to the station of the sun; even for this reason, because that bodily form of Aûharmaæd exists, and becomes the loftiest and most perfect in the station of the sun.

19. This, too, that all excellence is purely produced for Aûharmaæd by him who has root in the

---

1 See Pahl. Yas, XXXVI, 5.  
2 Ibid. 6.  
3 Ibid. 7.  
4 Ibid. 11.  
5 Ibid. 14.  
6 Ibid. 15.  
7 Ibid. 16; the highest grade of heaven below the supreme heaven, which latter is called Garôdmân (see Sls. VI, 3 n).
possession of Aūharmazd; even for this reason, because, when a root is given to him, fruit is also produced by him, and all excellence is both root and fruit. 20. This, too, that Aūharmazd is invoked with the title 'lord' by him whom Aūharmazd calls; even for this reason, because the interpretation of 'Aūharmazd' is really with the words 'greatly wise lord' (mas dānāk khūdāi). 21. This, too, that the names of the sacred beings which are invoked are the praise glorified by any one, and by him who glorifies them they are named; even for this reason, because the names of the sacred beings are the glorification due to their names of praise. 22. This, too, that among those of the same class (ham-gōharān), when he shall do it for one race, benefit is produced by him for other races within that class; among those of the same races (ham-tōkhmakānān), when he shall produce benefit for one species, it is done by him also for other species within that race; and among the same species (ham sarādakō), when he shall produce benefit for one individual (kerpō), it is done by him for other individuals within that species.

23. This, too, that his personality (khūdīh) is the sacred beings' own, who maintains the rites with the assistance of the righteous. 24. This, too, that his own is in the guardianship of the sacred beings, whose vehemence is through Good Thought;

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXVII (=V), 2. 2 Ibid. 6.
6 Assuming that ṭōr atān stands for ṭōr ayinān, as mān atān is ungrammatical.
7 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIX, 15.
even for this reason, because his bravery is for the law. 25. This, too, that life is given to mankind by him who shall do that which is able to remain good for them. 26. This, too, that the friendship of Aûharmazd is appropriated by him who has Aûharmazd as a guardian, and perpetual guardianship is appropriated by him who teaches to mankind that thing which becomes their perpetual guardianship in yonder world.

27. This, too, that he causes righteousness who thinks of anything which is virtuous. 28. This, too, that he has caused the good commands and propitiousness of Aûharmazd, who gives his body and life to the sacred beings; and body and life are given to the sacred beings by him who affords friendship to the religion of Zaratûst. 29. And this, too, that to him who affords friendship to Aûharmazd it occurs owing to the guardianship of Aûharmazd; and that guardianship is perpetually connected with him who teaches to others that thing which always constitutes their companionship with the sacred beings.

30. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

CHAPTER LVIII.

Bakô Nask.

1. The twelfth fargard, Ustavaiti, is that the benefit of him who is reverent to the benefiters is the benefit of any one whatever; even for this

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XL, 7.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XLI, 6.
3 Ibid. 7.
4 Ibid. 17.
5 See Chap. XIII, x n; it is here written aûstâf tô in Pahlavi.
6 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 1 a.
reason, because the benefit of the immature creation is owing to carrying out the commands of a benefitting spiritual lord. 2. This, too, that whoever pleases superiors by submission, is pleased by inferiors. 3. This, too, that by him who gives thought to the religion of Zarathus, that which is best for his own in every mode is produced, because he has attained to the religion who is listening best. 4. This, too, that virtue is taught by him to all the creatures of the beneficent spirit, to the righteous whose stepping forth (fraavâmisnô) is for the righteous; even for this reason, because the creatures of the beneficent spirit are all of one nature, and the stepping forth (fragâmisnô) and hastening of the limbs of one body become those of the whole of that body. 5. This, too, that his spirit is connected with Aûharmazd, and his knowledge is accepted, who loves Vohûman; even for this reason, because the spirit who is the original spiritual lord of knowledge is Vohûman. 6. This, too, that just giving is taught by him whose words are through Vohûman; even for this reason, because the speaking of virtuous words becomes the teaching of knowledge in which there is also just giving.

7. This, too, that joy which is of long duration is produced for his own by him who brings forth strength through virtue, and who also assists him who is unborn; even for this reason, because joy which is perpetual increases by both. 8. This, too, that by him who is an assistance of those in the proper way, the proper way is taught to mankind.

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 2 a.  
2 Ibid. 2 c.  
3 Ibid. 2 d.  
4 Ibid. 2 e.  
5 Ibid. 3 b.
even for this reason, because he is making mankind long for that way. 9. This, too, that heat is given to fire by him who tells truth to the invokers; even for this reason, because the adversary—owing to the heat of the fire achieved by the indicator of truth—is more particularly subdued by the strength of that just one.

10. This, too, that the assistants for the renovation of the universe are the decrees of Vistâsp—which are through Vohûman—of Sôshâns and Kaî-Khûsrôf; even for this reason, because the fragments are possessing a renewer which is their own completion, and the completion—which is through the assistance of the renovation by Vistâsp—is through what occurs when the religion is set going by him, through which the renovation arises; and the triumph of the completion, which is through an ordinance by Sôshâns, is through what occurs when through the ordinance there is thus a decree which sets aside all distress from the creatures, and gives the ordinance to the whole material existence, that which is living and also that which is dead. 11. This, too, that whoever intrusts it with a command given—which command given intrusts him who supplies the command from revelation—and it worships what is

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 4 d.
2 See Bk. VIII, Chaps. XI, i, XIII, i5.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 4 e, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XIV, i4.
4 In the MS. the letters srô are omitted from this name which might, therefore, be read Kâyânag; but Kaî-Khûsrôf (see Chap. XXIII) is considered as one of the assistants of the renovation (Dd. XXXVI, 3), probably on account of his opposition to idolatry (Bd. XVII, 7).
5 Pahl. maman bâharândo kashtâr-hômônd-î nafîman spûrikîh.
necessary to worship, is thereby displayed among
the existences as the progeny of Aûhar Mazda\textsuperscript{1}.

12. This, too, that the defeat of the bad and the
acceptance of the good\textsuperscript{2} are taught by him who shall
provide a righteous gift for the worthy; because
both are therein. 13. This, too, that ability for even
the transformation of the creatures\textsuperscript{3} of Aûhar Mazda
is taught by him who loves Vohûman; even for this
reason, because the forward-dragging, and also the
backward-dragging, power—which is in mankind—is
qualified, through changeableness of will, for even
the actions of the Vohûmanic nature. 14. This,
too, that power is taught, to that spirit through
whom the creatures are changed, by him whose
wisdom is for that which is wisdom; even for this
reason, because that spirit is wisdom, and increases
in mankind through instruction. 15. This, too, that
by him who praises the religion like a disciple, and
who also teaches it like a priest\textsuperscript{4}, it is shown that
Sôshâns\textsuperscript{4} really comes; even for this reason, because
the religion, from the first praiser and teacher down
to the last praiser and teacher, is connected by dis-
cipleship and priesthood, and Sôshâns becomes a
disciple in the end, and the last priest.

16. This, too, that the wisdom of Aûhar Mazda\textsuperscript{5} is
 taught by him who shall supply decisions and adjudi-
cation from the religion; even for this reason,
because the decision of religion is the wisdom of
Aûhar Mazda. 17. This, too, that complete mindfulness,
so that they are not deceived\textsuperscript{5}, is taught

\textsuperscript{1} See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 5 b.\textsuperscript{2} Ibid. 5 d.
\textsuperscript{3} Ibid. 5 e; assuming that dâm-var'sîsnîh, ‘accomplishment
of the creatures,’ stands for dâm-var'disnîh.
\textsuperscript{4} Ibid. 6 d.\textsuperscript{5} Ibid. 6 e.
through wisdom by him who is as reverent to Aůhar-
mašd as a daughter to a father; even for this reason,
because the reverence of a daughter unto a father
arises mostly through natural sympathy (āhang-i
kitrīk), and through the intellectual complete mind-
fulness of the daughter.

18. This, too, that maintaining the destinies
(vakhtān) of the body through the command of
the creator is taught by him who teaches the
righteous man and the wicked one that thing which
becomes comfort to them, to the righteous man as
to his body, and to the wicked one as to his soul;
even for this reason, because he becomes a friend of
the creatures, a friend of the creatures is also a
friend of creativeness, and a friend of the creator
maintains body and wealth through the command of
the creator, and others are taught by him. 19. This,
too, that joy owing to him who is powerful is taught
him who is righteous only by him—that is, he is
conveying him to the rulers for benefit\(^1\)—who is an
assistance of him who is righteous through capa-
bility, that is, he shall do it through exertion of
power; even for this reason, because, when he has
provided as much assistance as it is possible for him
to do, his praise arises through that benefit which is
pre-eminent through his exertion. 20. This, too,
that the benefit of sovereignty for that which arises\(^2\)
is taught only by him who always thoroughly teaches
authority (patīh) up to dictatorship (vispō-far-
mānīh); that is, he teaches to others that thing
which always arises for them up to dictatorial autho-

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 8 c.  
\(^2\) Ibid. 8 d.
renovation of the universe through the control which is in the tree of germs.

21. This, too, that he becomes liberal to fire who shall perform work for fire that is its protection, and so it is taught about it through the obeisance by him whose liberality—that is his through the obeisance—becomes liberal, and whose declaration, that arises as to Vohûman, possesses wealth through virtue. 22. This, too, that this thinking as to righteousness is taught only by him—that is, he thinks—whose petition for righteousness is ever afresh. 23. This, too, that the religion is interrogated by him who is submissive to superiors and similarly situated (ham-gâk) to inferiors.

24. This, too, that the state of the present world (latammannâh) for the Mazda-worshipping religion is thoroughly taught where whatever becomes a progress of the religion is whatever is purification for mankind; even for this reason, because the want of progress of the religion is owing to the want of purification of mankind as to the fiend, and when a human being is purified from the fiend, the progress of the religion becomes different. 25. This, too, that pleasure is taught to him who is a friend.

1 Evidently the many-seeded tree of all germs, opposed to harm and called the proper-curing, energetic-curing, and all-curing; it is renowned in Afrân-vêg and grows in the wide-formed ocean near the Gôkerenô, or white-Hôm plant, which latter is one of the ingredients of the elixir producing immortality in the future existence (see Bd. IX, 5, 6, XVIII, 9, XXVII, 2, XXIX, 5).

2 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 9 d which Pt.4 and Mt.4 supply as follows:—Aêdûnô avô hanâ-i lak âtasp râdô hômônam pavan nêyâ-yismanô.

3 Ibid. 9 e.

4 Ibid. 10 c.

5 Ibid. 11 d.

6 Ibid. 14 a.
only by him—that is, he gives it—who is a pleasure to him who is a friend; and its routine is really this, that by him who causes pleasure to friends, his *having* caused pleasure is taught also to them. 26. This, too, that, owing to him whom Aûharmazed teaches joy, it is taught *that* gratification\(^1\) comes from Aûharmazed; even for this reason, because he is exalted, even in the worldly *existence*, through that joy which is supreme, and mankind are thereby taught.

27. This, too, that the augmentation of indications as to intellect is taught to him who is a vigorous-minded (*tûstô-minisnô*) man\(^2\), by him whose own progress is that towards his own sacred beings; even for this reason, because he fully considers, *and* delivers the decision, of his own powers, of those, too, of *his* contemporaries (*ham-budi-kânô*), *and* likewise of the chivalry (*kîrîh*) of the age; and others are taught about *it* by him. 28. This, too, that the spirit of Aûharmazed\(^3\) is expounded only by him—that is, he loves *it*—whose close exposition is of Aûharmazed; even for this reason, because he becomes similarly loved with Aûharmazed, so that\(^4\) . . . 29. And this, too, that the reward is taught in the publicity of the sun\(^5\) by him whose friendship is for the Spitâmân, which also increases in the day—that is, it is necessary to perform duty and good works in the day—but he does not put *it* aside the second day; even for this reason, because friendship for the religion is through kind regard;

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 14 b.  
\(^2\) Ibid. 15 c.  
\(^3\) Ibid. 16 a.  
\(^4\) Some clause appears to be omitted here.  
\(^5\) See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 16 d.
and duty in one day, only to put it aside for the second day, becomes affliction (vêsh) at the bridge of judgment; also the sun is the most kindly-regarding and swiftest of those visible.

30. Excellence that is perfect is righteousness.

Chapter LIX.

Bakô Nask.

1. The thirteenth fargard, Tad-thwâ-peresâ\textsuperscript{1}, is that the obeisance\textsuperscript{2} of the archangels is performed by him who is educated in the recitation for the archangels of one learned in the religion, which is when he has to understand the recitation and to maintain the recitation of revelation with propriety, which is when an enumeration, or form (âînâkô), as to the qualities of the archangels exists, which is the obeisance for the sacred beings. 2. For, on this subject, one mentions seven kinds of men\textsuperscript{3}, educated, or well-educated, or ill-educated, who are connected with it in statements by those of the world; the merely educated man, particularly also the physician, explains this which is not mentioned and does not occur, that it is well, or ill, disposed\textsuperscript{4}; the merely well-educated man, particularly also the physician, explains this which is mentioned and occurs, that it is well-disposed; the merely ill-educated man, and

\textsuperscript{1} See Chap. XIV, 1 n; it is here written tad-spâg-peres in Pahlavi.

\textsuperscript{2} See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 1 b.

\textsuperscript{3} These appear to be the four kinds of ordinary men, and the three kinds of physicians, detailed in the following clauses.

\textsuperscript{4} Khu (Pâz.) aγδυ dûsīm.
also the physician, explains this which is mentioned and occurs, that it is ill-disposed; and the merely uneducated man explains anything whatever that is really life. 3. One educated in the recitation for the sacred beings, who when—on account of the necessity of speaking evil about a learned man—he is mischievous (anâg), so that he keeps in viciousness, and has remained in the obeisance for the sacred beings, is called not ransomed (lā tākhtfīk).

4. One ill-educated in the recitation for the sacred beings, which is when it happens that he keeps in viciousness, becomes even an apostate who is acquainted with the religion. 5. One uneducated in what pertains to the sacred beings is of two kinds, either good and void of learning, or an evil one who is void of knowledge; the good and void of learning worships the sacred beings unobservantly with the proper rites, and the evil one who is void of knowledge thinks to worship the sacred beings unobservantly with improper rites, and has no means of trustworthy reliance upon the religion of the sacred beings and their obeisance. 6. And one well-educated in what pertains to the sacred beings, through the three words of the connected series (ham-padvandisnīh) which is good (khu) and learned, and through what pertains to the sacred beings, expounds faithfully the object of the obeisance for the sacred beings.

7. This, too, that, by him who teaches to mankind that thing which becomes their hope of eternity, mankind are taught to come to the religion of

---

1 Apparently khayā-k badly written in B.
2 Pāz. khu.
3 Probably 'good thoughts, good words, and good deeds.'
the sacred beings; even for this reason, because the Vohûmanic attainment\(^1\) to the religion of the sacred beings is to be required wisely for them, its requirement wisely for them is a benefit for the steadfast and becomes a consideration (mînîth) for them, and the consideration of the benefit of the steadfast is through hope of the eternity which is provided for the benefit, on account of which the hope of eternity—which is the basis—is the reason even of the acceptance of the religion.

8. This, too, that the perfection of the first among the existences\(^2\) is taught by him who has retentively remembered his words; even for this reason, because remembrance is the acme of every perfection.

9. This, too, that he becomes a nourisher of good works who shall perform good works publicly; even for this reason, because others are taught thereby, and good works increase in the world. 10. This, too, that by him who has fruit in the possession of Aûharmazd the development of the world in virtue\(^3\) is taught; even for this reason, because a lawful preserver and a producer of liberality arise through the fruit, they enlarge the root of the power of the angel of liberality, and pluck its fruit; the world is improved thereby, and mankind are taught about it.

11. This, too, that, through complete mindfulness, words and actions\(^4\) are truly taught by him whose ceremonial is for complete mindfulness; even for this reason, because there are both words and actions in the ceremonial.

12. This, too, that the sagacious creativeness (far'-zânak dâhîth) of Aûharmazd is taught, which is

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 1 e.  
\(^2\) Ibid. 2 b.  
\(^3\) Ibid. 2 d.  
\(^4\) Ibid. 6 c.
the exposition, to Aûharmazd\(^1\), of the production of the renovation; even for this reason, because the advantage of the sagacity of Aûharmazd is the consequence of its beginning, and its middle is through the power of the goodness and knowledge of him himself, and because it is destiny as regards the creations; and whoever possesses that power for the assistance of the renovation, is extolled for that sagacity, and people are taught thereby. 13. This, too, that the reward of Zarátûst is appropriated by him who decides about duty and opinion\(^2\); even for this reason, because, through that discrimination, he is similar to Zarátûst.

14. This, too, that the recitation of revelation is performed for mankind by him who extends the propagation of the religion\(^3\); even for this reason, because, owing to the gratification of virtuous practisers, virtue increases. 15. This, too, that the religion of Aûharmazd is made progressive\(^2\) by him who shall perform the ceremonial of Aûharmazd; even for this reason, because through that performance of his occurs the blessing of the provider of the rite (nîrângînîdâr). 16. This, too, that that perfectly righteous man of just judgment is protected from the annoying spirit\(^4\) by him who possesses the resemblance (ângûnâglîh) unto Vohûman that they behold and resources through virtue; even for this reason, because the vexation which is partaken by him (the spirit), owing to the just judgment among those of the nature (kîhârikân) of mankind, is redoubled (dûkâni-aitô) by their pleasure owing to the Vohûmanic resemblance, and the annoying spirit

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 8 b.  
2 Ibid. 17 c.  
3 Ibid. 15 d, 17 c.  
4 Ibid. 11 e.
is disabled (akârî-hênd)\(^1\) by that accumulated vexation which occurs for his annoyance.

17. This, too, that the exploits of the archangels are taught by him who is really capable in what pertains to the archangels; even for this reason, because they become the hope of a consoling (vêdvar) end, and are also indicative of the renovation of the universe, the hope of a virtuous end.

18. This, too, that the words of him who is Zaratûst, that 'people shall become supplicant,' are taught by him who is for the benefactors; even for this reason, because they who are benefactors, on account of an inclination for the religion, make others eager for the religion, and make them mount for prayer.

19. And this, too, that by him who gives anything to a righteous man, this is also done that some one else may give even to him who is vile; even for this reason, because a foundation of liberality is thereby prepared for him\(^2\).

20. Perfect righteousness is excellence.

---

**Chapter LX.**

*Bakô Nask.*

1. The fourteenth fargard, Ad-fravakhshyâ\(^3\), is that whatever is instruction is to be listened to\(^4\) here as much as is possible, and he who is not to be

---

\(^1\) The Pâz. equivalent of akârî-hômand.

\(^2\) Implying that he is himself vile who gives to the righteous merely to induce others to give to himself.

\(^3\) See Chap. XV, i n; it is here written ad-fravakhshê in Pahlavi.

\(^4\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, i a.
taught is allowed an opportunity for listening by Zaratúst.

2. This, too, that by him who would be a causer of procreation for performers of labour, the perfect nature of the performance of the first next-of-kin marriage\(^1\) is praised; because causing the procreation of performers of labour is the fatherhood of mankind, the proper fatherhood of mankind is through the proper production of progeny, the proper progeny of the producer is through the accomplishment of progeny among his own, according to the disposition of the first creatures, and the accomplishment of progeny among one's own is next-of-kin marriage; and that which occurs, when a causer of the procreation of performers of labour praises the fatherhood of mankind, is that next-of-kin marriage is also praised by him.

3. This, too, that by him whose creatures are in virtue, owing to his virtuous nourishment of the creatures, the performance of next-of-kin marriage\(^2\) is taught, and the virtue is his virtue; even on this account, because, for the sake of keeping the creatures in virtue, he allows (andāzēdō) for the virtuous disposition pertaining to the multitude, and that which is born he produces (daḥēdō) as lineage from the next-of-kin marriage pertaining to the multitude.

4. This, too, that Spendarmed is in daughterhood\(^3\) to Aûharmazd is taught by him whose wisdom is through complete mindfulness; even for this reason,

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yâs. XLIV, 4 a.

\(^2\) Ibid. 4 c. §§ 2–5 have been already translated, somewhat differently, in S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 395, 396.

\(^3\) Ibid. 4 d. For Spendarmed see Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3.
because *his* wisdom *and* complete mindfulness are within limits which are Aûharmaezd and Spendarmad, the wisdom *being* that of Aûharmaezd, the complete mindfulness that of Spendarmad, and the complete mindfulness *being* the offspring of the wisdom just as Spendarmad is of Aûharmaezd; and, owing to this, the assertion is reasonable that, by him whose complete mindfulness is connected with wisdom, it is taught that Spendarmad is in daughterhood to Aûharmaezd. 5. This, too, that thus the exercise of that daughterhood is taught by him whose righteousness is through complete mindfulness, and whose ceremonial is also through complete mindfulness; that is, he shall perform the ceremonial and other good works fully mindfully.

6. This, too, that mankind are attracted to religious good deeds by him who shall provide benefit for the people through actions *and* words; even for this reason, because those actions are religious good deeds, and, when instituted by him, others are also taught by him. 7. This, too, that reverence *for* Vohûman¹ is taught by him who shall make that which is contaminated obvious to the eye, so that what is dark becomes light; even for this reason, because the display of the work of Vohûman thereby has also taught the offer of reverence *for* Vohûman. 8. And this, too, that the ceremonial is taught with complete mindfulness ² only *by him* who teaches words and actions with complete mindfulness.

9. Perfect righteousness is excellence.

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 9 e. ² Ibid. 10 a.
CHAPTER LXI.

Bakó Nask.

1. The fifteenth fargard, Kamnamaëza, is about the reply of Añharmasd to Zaratús, as to that which was asked by him thus: 'To which lands do I step?' and it is thus: 'Do thou march (sagítûn) there where the man, in whose person righteousness is connected with complete mindfulness, is welcome; this, too, is where happy is he from whom there is no complaint.'

2. This, too, that mankind are made diligent in good works by him who produces progress for good works; even for this reason, because mankind attain progress in manifest duty who engage more particularly in good works. 3. This, too, that the teaching of religion is the public action which is prescribed by him who would produce exertion for the righteous, that is, benefit for those of the good religion; even for this reason, because the multitude (kãbedân) approach the religion, and are taught and practise it, on account of a desire for benefit. 4. This, too, that it is in a province of even exhausted production that it is taught by him who appoints a virtuous governor over the province; even for this reason, because a virtuous governor of a province becomes a teacher of ability and good works to those of the province.

1 See Chap. XVI, i n; it is here written kãmnamëzõ in Pahlavi.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, i a; reading val kadâr damîkân våmam (=gåmam, see Chap. LVIII, 4).
3 Ibid. 4 b.
5. This, too, that the good protection of fire¹ is taught by him whose words are through Vohûman, and who also would provide a time for the ordeal of that which is doubtful; even for this reason, because he whose words are utterable through Vohûman, and who would provide a time for the ordeal of that which is doubtful, teaches the provision of care for the operative fire, owing to that which occurs when what is accomplished, about one acquitted or convicted by the fire, is declared, and mankind shall provide more particularly for the brilliancy of the fire, and the wicked more for assistance and protection from it.

6. This, too, that whoever shall provide about him who liberally gives himself in discipleship² unto the priests, has thereby taught even by the mention of the high-priest; even for this reason, because the person being given in discipleship unto the priests, the religion practised by the high-priest arises also for mention, and whoever shall provide generosity for that person, has increased and also taught that action, which is religion, even by the mention made.

7. This, too, that men and women³ are taught as being given in discipleship⁴ to Zaratûst by him who keeps his own males and females in the control of Zaratûst. 8. This, too, that goodness is taught by him to those (valman) who are good, so that they produce it who give to that righteous one the worthiness which is through that wealth; the righteous one who is worthy is one of the good religion for whose production of the worthiness which is through that wealth it is sought, and that wealth which is

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 7 c. ² Ibid. 9 d. ³ Ibid. 10 a. ⁴ Ibid. 10 b.
coveted is wealth of little trouble and much advantage, through the goodness and idea of virtue of the giver to the account of him who is the accepter of the good worthiness. 9. This, too, that through his Kinvad passage (Kis-vidarg) it is taught that they shall step forth (frôvâmând)\(^1\); and by him who goes on through anything (êis) openly, when he has proceeded publicly on the right path, one passed away on the Kinvad passage is taught.

10. This, too, that by him whose ceremonial is through complete mindfulness it is taught that the world produces abundance through complete mindfulness\(^2\); even for this reason, because it is taught by him, through that disposition of his for the sacred beings (pavan zak-i valman yazdânô khîm), that the developed world is shown to be theirs; and here below it is fully taught by him, that Khûrdad and Amûrdad\(^3\)—that is, the sacred beings—produce it for the benefactors. 11. This, too, that thus he who is wicked, even he who is privileged, becomes unprivileged at that time when every one understands, that is, when righteousness is aloft. 12. This, too, that when he who is privileged is Vistâsp\(^4\), likewise he who is privileged is the righteous Zaratûst\(^5\), and so he who is the wicked Argâsp\(^6\) is unprivileged.

13. This, too, that creation is taught by him to

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 10 e, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 8.
\(^2\) Ibid. 12 c.
\(^3\) See Chap. XIX, 1.
\(^4\) See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 13 e.
\(^5\) Ibid. 14 a, which is supplied by Pt.4, Mf.4, thus:—Zaratûrtô mûn lak aharûbô dôstå.
\(^6\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XI, 4.
Arāhrmāzd, so that he creates, and this, too, that the archangels are taught by his will, whose contentment is through that of the archangels, so that he observes the conclusion in the affairs of the archangels. And this, too, that wisdom is taught to him who is Zarātūst—so that it becomes his—by him whose thoughts are for Zarātūst and for the religion of Zarātūst.

15. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

CHAPTER LXII.

Bakō Nask.

1. The sixteenth fargard, Spentā-mainyū, is that the religion is lodging in him who is himself wise, or becomes a hearer of the wise. 2. This, too, that the deeds of complete mindfulness are practised and taught by him who becomes himself completely mindful. 3. This, too, that whoever shall openly perform good works becomes a nourisher of good works.

4. This, too, that the spirit of fatherhood becomes lodging in him who nourishes the creatures with propriety. 5. This, too, that pasture is given to cattle is taught by him who shall provide care for cattle, because the giving of pasture to them with care is advantageous.

6. This, too, that all for his good who becomes a benefit to him who is good—through that which

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 19 e.  
2 Ibid. 19 b.  
3 See Chap. XVII, 1 n; it is here written spandmatō in Pahlavi.  
4 See Pahl. Yas. XLVI, 2 c.  
5 Ibid. 2 d.  
6 Ibid. 3 c.  
7 Ibid. 5 b.
has come to him—is every benefit which occurs to him who is good; all for his good every benefit is given to every one good by way of similarity in race, species, and nature, and every benefit is given in the way of complete giving which is possible for it.

7. This, too, that whoever shall justly inflict sentence and judgment, really according to the declaration regarding one acquitted or convicted, becomes praiseworthy; even for this reason, because the origin of the judgment is the ritual of the ordeal. 8. And this, too, that by him who gives to him who is wise that which is needful for him, an immense and strong foundation for learning is produced, and the knowledge in the world is augmented.

9. Perfect excellence is righteousness.

CHAPTER LXIII.

Bakô Nask.

1. The seventeenth fargard, Yêzi³, is that whoever maintains the benedicitions of the religion⁴, and shall uphold its commands, has thereby made even others learn it; even for this reason, because through this it is much more possible for him to attract others to the religion; and, as to the origin and means of attraction, the attraction is this, that he himself maintains the benedicitions of the religion, and the means of attraction are this, that he is an upholder of the commands of the religion.

2. This, too, that by him who shall perform the ritual of an ordeal which is accomplished, the Kin-

---

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XLVI, 6 b. ² Ibid. 6 c.
³ See Chap. XVIII, 1 n. ⁴ See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 1 d.
vad passage\textsuperscript{1} is made known; even for this reason, because those even who have accomplished what is a work of the spirit become witnesses, one about the other, as to the facts. 3. This, too, that by him who shall perform that thing whereby a change occurs from evil to good\textsuperscript{2}, even that change which is the renovation of the universe is made known, by means even of the evidence of a partial change as regards a perpetual change.

4. This, too, that by him who shall produce generosity for the tillers\textsuperscript{3} of the world it is then developed; even for this reason, because they become more diligent in tilling the world. 5. This, too, that by him who shall produce benefit for the poor, a development\textsuperscript{4} of the world is produced for them; even for this reason, because through that reason they increase more.

6. This, too, that the creature-forming (dāmith) of Aūharmazd\textsuperscript{5} is occasioned by him whose rule\textsuperscript{6} is for Aūharmazd; even for this reason, because he becomes a holder and attendant of good works. 7. This, too, that the devastation by Vohūman\textsuperscript{7} is taught by him whose rule is for Aūharmazd; even for this reason, because he smites sinners and destroys among villains.

8. This, too, that virtuous people are increased in a province\textsuperscript{8} by him who appoints a virtuous governor of the province. 9. This, too, that virtuous instruction is provided and explained by him who loves Vohūman\textsuperscript{9}. 10. And this, too, that vir-

\textsuperscript{1} See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 2 b. \textsuperscript{2} Ibid. 4 a. \textsuperscript{3} Ibid. 5 d.
\textsuperscript{4} Ibid. 6 c. \textsuperscript{5} Ibid. 7 d. \textsuperscript{6} Ibid. 8 a.
\textsuperscript{7} Ibid. 9 c. \textsuperscript{8} Ibid. 12 a, and compare Chap. LXI, 4.
\textsuperscript{9} Ibid. 12 b.
tuous deeds\(^1\) are set going by him who teaches learned sayings and virtuous deeds to him who is good; even for this reason, because the reception of the progressive supply of virtue by the learned becomes more complete.

11. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

---

**Chapter LXIV.**

_Bakô Nask._

1. The eighteenth fargard, _A\(d\)\-må\-yavå\(^2\), is that, through his complete mindfulness\(^3\), the teaching of mankind in virtue is by him, and they become properly intelligent\(^3\) through him, whose actions are those which are more daughterly, that is, as reverent unto A\(v\)harmazd as a daughter unto a father; even for this reason, because his display of the complete mindfulness which is instinctive (åsnîk) is through action, and that action, acquired (srûtîk) for the thoughts of mankind, is kindled by him and has become properly intelligent. 2. This, too, that proper intelligence of things arises for one completely mindful\(^3\), even for a daughter to a father, through that complete mindfulness which is instinctive, whereby that lust is excluded which is most violently revered by the male (kûs\(n\)ô), and, devoid of that, the reverence is assimilated (\(â\)ng\(u\)n\(i\)hîn\(i\)dô) most strongly to one’s reverence unto the creator.

3. This, too, that discrimination of the affairs of the sacred beings through wisdom\(^4\) is taught by him

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 12 c.  
\(^2\) See Chap. XIX, 11; it is here written _A\(d\)\-må\-yûv_ in Pahlavi.  
\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 5 c.  
\(^4\) Ibid. 6 b.
whose learning is in the affairs of the sacred beings; even for this reason, because discrimination of the affairs of the sacred beings is specially that which is advantageous in the end, and the advantageousness in the end is seen through learning; and, apart from that, he who is learned in the affairs of the sacred beings has taught discrimination of the affairs of the sacred beings through his wisdom 1.

4. This, too, that the joyfulness in righteousness is taught to Frashôstar by him—that is, he would make him ardent in the performance of duty and good works 2—who has thoroughly expounded Khûr-dad and Amûrdad to Frashôstar 3, that is, he maintains him as his high-priest. 5. This, too, that he who shall perform good works ever afresh, has taught him to become ardent in duty and good works 2. 6. This, too, that Aûharmazd supplies guardianship 4 to him who gives pleasure to Aûharmazd; even for this reason, because a giver of pleasure to Aûharmazd is any one who is a true servant of Aûharmazd, and Aûharmazd becomes the guardian of a true servant.

7. This, too, that they ever amount to a master of all commands 5 for him who is a benefit and sovereignty for that which arises; even owing to this reason, because, in establishing and arranging that which is an absurd (âs kûn) or a virtuous law, the command issued, which is another and further observation of the advantage of the creatures, prepares

---

1 Assuming that ar'gô, 'value,' stands for khîrâdô, which is very similarly written in Pahlavi letters.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 8 a.
3 See Chap. XIX, 1, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68.
4 See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 8 b.
5 Ibid. 8 d.
that which is ever an attainable benefit among the creatures, by means of which, even after symptoms of the life of one's body, it is governed through setting going the usage of that law, and is connected with his mastery of command and his sovereignty.

8. This, too, that Vohûman's having guarded the creature-forming (dâmîh) of Aûharmaezd¹ is taught by him whose rule is for Aûharmaezd; on this account, because he whose rule is for Aûharmaezd has taught the inclination for (pa'dîsâl) being guarded, on this account, because the inclination of the creatures of that ruler for being guarded by the power of goodness, and the creatures being guarded by the power of goodness have published the power of goodness, which is Vohûman, to the multitude.

9. Here is about the reply to Zaratûst concerning the wicked, thus: 'Upon arrival in the fiend's abode², through an immature (khâm) death, they are unprivileged, so that every misery is theirs, and it is not possible for them to seek a remedy.'

10. This, too, that the spirit of reverence comes through invocation to the assistance³ of him who is reverent unto the beneficers; even for this reason, because the spirits respond more particularly to that invoker who becomes their worshipper preponderantly (vâspûharakânîhâ); and for each one of the spirits there is preponderantly a form of worship, as the spirit of liberality is more particularly worshipped through helpfulness (vïgîdâr-dahîsnih), the spirit of truth through exact truth (hû-râstîh), the spirit of a promise through true promising (hû-mîtrîth),

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 10 a, b, and Chap. LXIII, 6.
² Ibid. 11 d.
³ Ibid. 12 a.
and the spirit of sovereignty through good sovereignty; and, even so, the worship of the spirit of reverence consists preponderantly in reverence unto the benefiters. 11. This, too, that he whose rule is for Aûharmazd becomes a supplicant for that which is coveted (istō) from Aûharmazd; even for this reason, because what is wisely begged from the sacred beings and rulers, for rendering one’s own self worthy, occurs as a benefit owing to the sacred beings and rulers.

12. About the reply of Aûharmazd to Zaratûst, when asked by him about his own, his confederate, and his serf, thus: ‘He is thine own, he thy confederate, and he thy serf, even when and where he is a righteous offspring who produces the progress of this thy religion of Mazda-worship, and recites it openly even unto him he knows, who provides the public benedictions, this good practice of thine, that is, he maintains what is provided by thee as benedictions.’

13. Perfect is the excellence of righteousness.

Chapter LXV.

Bakô Nask.

1. The nineteenth fargard, Kad-môi-urvâ, is that the sheep-nature (pâhth) is taught to him who

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 12’d.  
2 Ibid. 7 c.  
3 Ibid. 7 d.  
4 See Chap. XX, 1 n; it is here written kad-môk-ravô in Pahlavi.  
5 See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 1 b. The distinction made in the Pahlavi text, here and in § 3, by using the scriptural term pâh and the general word gôspend for the sheep, might perhaps be imitated in English by using the word ‘flock’ for pâh, but this would not express the meaning exactly.
is a sheep (gôspênd), even for this reason, because the sheep is still among sheep (pâh-îk dên). 2. This, too, that by him who provides pasture for sheep, mankind are nourished (srâyînîdô) through the sheep; even for this reason, because the nourishment of mankind is through the sheep, and that of the sheep through pasture. 3. This, too, that the sheep of the present worldly state is expounded to him who is a sheep (pâh) to Zaratûst, that is, he has Zaratûst as a high-priest; even for this reason, because still a sheep (pâh-îk) is a sheep.

4. This, too, that strength in virtue is increased and taught by him who produces joyfulness through seeking gradual development, so that he would do that thing which gives him joyfulness, that is, he would do that thing which becomes his long-continued joy; even for this reason, because increase of strength arises more particularly from pleasure, the pleasure that one is gradually attaining (dêr-padâl). 5. This, too, that by him who shall provide the ceremonial of the sacred beings, the joyfulness owing to the sacred beings is then connected with his own; even for this reason, because the coming of the sacred beings to it occurs.

6. This, too, that the wisdom of Zaratûst is taught and displayed by him who gives thought to the religion of Zaratûst. 7. This, too, that the tongue is instructed (farhânînîdô) in speech by him who becomes discriminating through wisdom. 8. And this, too, that preparation is taught to them who are beneficers of Zaratûst, or who are so of the religion; even for this reason, because, owing to

1 See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 1 b.
2 Ibid. 5 b.
3 Ibid. 6 c.
4 Ibid. 6 d.
that action, disposition, and attraction which are now theirs, they prepare mankind for the religion of Zarathustra. 9. This, too, that whoever teaches the virtuous way to others, they become his through the knowledge of being instructed; even for this reason, because through the enlightenment of that way, they see and act, and are thereby instructed.

10. This, too, that the obeisance\(^1\) for the archangels is performed by him who is a praiser of the archangels. 11. This, too, that assistance is taken\(^2\) from the sacred beings by him who gives to him who is a supplicant that which is dear to him, because he himself is made worthy by his assistance, and, when made worthy by it, it is then taken by him; and the supplicant is he who is not a supplicant through his mouth, but through worthiness, and what is dear is that which is good about him.

12. This, too, that its being within the day till dawn (\textit{val a\text{"u\text{"u}sh})\(^3\) is taught by him—that is, he would make it as a signal (\textit{dakhshak\text{"o})\(^3\)—who is in obeisance, so that he may not neglect till another day the duty and good works which it is requisite for him to perform within the day; even for this reason, because to cause the preservation of the dawn from debased incompatibility (\textit{h\text{"e}r h\text{"a}n b\text{"e}sh\text{"i}h}) of duties, it is made exalted by him over the duties.

13. This, too, that complete mindfulness is taught among the existences\(^4\) by him whose thought among the existences is that he shall perform that thing which is possible to remain good in the world, such as the provision of good sovereignty, orthodoxy, the

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 7 b.

\(^2\) Ibid. 7 d.

\(^3\) Ibid. 10 c.

\(^4\) Ibid. 11 c.
law of virtuous usage, and others, through which the dwelling, preparation, and living of mankind in the world arise, and the appropriation of any complete mindfulness of that performer is the exaltation which is his owing to that great performance.

14. It is righteousness that is perfect excellence.

CHAPTER LXVI.

Bakô Nask.

1. In the twentieth fargard, Vôhû-khshathrem¹, it is also stated by Aûharmazd to Zaratûst the Spîtâmân thus: ‘They who are now in sovereignty are privileged, the human being who is a wicked lying tyrant being not now in sovereignty; moreover, thou shouldst cause some one to thoroughly smite (bara vânîm-aâ) him who is causing deception in the embodied world by lamentation (sivan), and they cause the preservation of death, ruin, and falsehood because they would cause the preservation of his effects (mamânâs var aæ bôğînênd).’

2. And this, too, namely: ‘When the sovereignty should be given by them unto him who is good², they would be preserved through that sovereignty of his; moreover, thou shouldst cause some one to thoroughly smite him who is made deceitful by lamentation, and so also death, ruin, and falsehood.’

3. This, too, that by him who shall provide complete mindfulness³ for his own, righteousness is produced; even for this reason, because, through

¹ See Chap. XXI, 1 n.; it is here written vôhû-khshatar in Pahlavi.
² See Pahl. Yas. L, 1 a.
³ Ibid. 2 b.
complete mindfulness, the discerning eye of life, which is righteousness, is enlightened. 4. This, too, that the coveted thing (istō) which it is expedient for sovereignty to give away¹ is taught by him who shall provide sovereignty for him who is all-progressive (hamâk-rûbisnô); even for this reason, because the observation, consideration, and action of him who is an all-progressive ruler are about that which is coveted by the multitude and is an advantage for the sovereignty which it is expedient to produce.

5. This, too, that what is produced by the words of Vohûman² is taught by him who shall perform the ceremonial of the sacred beings with the thoughts of Vohûman; even for this reason, because, the mind being with the thoughts of Vohûman, the tongues of the faithful are habituated (khûkînîdakô) in the statements of Vohûman. 6. This, too, that innocence from discontinued (amând) good works is taught by him who remains in virtue; even for this reason, because they are atoned for by him even among important good works.

7. This, too, that the original causer of goodness is assisted in causing goodness by him whose fundamental gift (bûn dâhîsnô) among the existences is that he supplies that which it is requisite for him to give; even for this reason, because in a work, upon which one remains with a thousand men, when one man is bringing his own strength to the labour therein, the 999 other men are assisted by him in that work.

8. This, too, that the way of righteousness³ is

¹ See Pahl. Yas. L, 2 b. ² Ibid. 3 b. ³ Ibid. 13 c.
not concealed, but taught, by him who is a good considerer as to righteousness; even for this reason, because the sap and root of his righteousness are owing to undiverted thought. 9. This, too, that its being unnecessary to provide repletion for those who are cattle⁠¹ is taught by him who keeps cattle as a controller for benefactors; even for this reason, because they teach and command him.

10. This, too, that housewifery⁠² being performed is taught by that wife who shall joyfully pay reverence to her husband; even for this reason, because her housewifery is for the satisfaction of the husband, the satisfaction is through her reverence, and the reverence arises through joy. 11. This, too, that to love the religion through knowledge⁠³ is taught by him who is peaceful (padmânīk) and Vohûmanic to it; even for this reason, because Vohûmanic peacefulness is understood as religion. 12. And this, too, that the gratification of Aûhar-mazd⁠⁴ is caused by him who teaches for Aûhar-mazd.

13. It is righteousness that is perfect excellence.

---

CHAPTER LXVII.

Bakô Nask.

1. In the twenty-first fargard, Vahistôisti⁠⁵, it is proclaimed by the righteous Zaratûst, that the ceremonial is performed by him owing to whom our

---

¹ See Pahl. Yas. L, 14 b.
² Ibid. 17 c.
³ Ibid. 18 b.
⁴ Ibid. 20 c.
⁵ See Chap. XXII, i n.
worship is good thinking. 2. This, too, that Vohúman and the liturgy are lodging in the body of him in whose body the religion is lodging; and so is the spirit of goodness, which is peace (padmân).

3. This, too, that the good religion is taught in word and deed by him who shall achieve the giving of thought (mínisn-dáhîh) to Vohúman in the ceremonial. 4. This, too, that the archangels become lodging in the body of him who loves Vohúman; even for this reason, because their lodging is in light, purity, and perfume, and the body is illuminated, purified, and perfumed by Vohúman.

5. This, too, that mankind are made diligent in the performance of good works by him who shall provide gifts for the doers of good works. 6. This, too, that by him who loves the beneficial way, even others are put in the same way and taught.

7. This, too, that he gives his daughter in daughterhood to his fatherhood, who teaches to the daughter reverence towards her father; even for this reason, because she is made steadfast in daughterhood by him. 8. This, too, that the authority of Vohúman is taught by him who keeps the talent which is his for virtue; even for this reason, because from the authority of goodness arise the advantage and freedom from strife of the sciences (hûnarânô).

9. This, too, that a daughter is given to a father for womanly service (nësmanîh), and so also a wife to another man, by him who teaches reverence, towards father and husband, to the daughter and the other woman; and so, too, by him who instructs

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. LII, 2 d.
2 Ibid. 4 a. In § 9 (as in Chap. XLV, 4) there appears to be no confinement of the meaning to matrimony.
the wife of a man in housewifery; because the advantageous womanly service of a woman for a man arises through reverence towards her husband and good training in housewifery. 10. This, too, that even the reverence of a wife towards a husband is produced by him who gives a woman unto a man; because the giver of possession (khūḏ bāh) becomes praiseworthy even by the act of having given that possession.

11. This, too, that origin and effect (būn va-bar) are produced for Aūharmacd by him who gives what is necessary unto Aūharmacd and teaches perpetual preservation; what is properly necessary being the origin of the preservation which is the effect of what is properly necessary. 12. This, too, that dominion is acquired for the house of him who keeps the door of the house an opening for the wise; the house being the body, and the door of the house being the ear, eye, and mouth.

13. It is the excellence of righteousness that is perfect.

CHAPTER LXVIII.

Bakī Nask.

1. The beginning of the twenty-second fargard, the Airyaman,1 is the last question (frasnō) beyond the five Gāthas; it is taught for the dominion of Aūharmacd only by him—that is, it is making him ruler of himself—who shall do that which is declared by the passage:—Yā erezegyōi dāhī

---

1 See Chap. XXIII, 1 n; it is here written aūremano in Pahlavi.
drigaovē vahyō¹: who gives delights (vâyagānō) to him who is a right-living poor man²—preservation from the destroyer, and the consummation of every happiness.

2. It is perfect excellence that is righteousness.

Chapter LXIX.

1. About a selection from the whole Yast³ referring to the developer (vakhshinīdār-hōmōnd).

2. Those are beneficial who increase for the developer, that is, they shall occasion benefit (nēvakīh) for him who would occasion that benefit which is for others⁴. 3. Thus the righteous man who produces perfect thought is he who comes upon it through Vohūman⁵, and the benefit of him who is an open annoyer—⁶—the righteous man who is a smiter of the wicked, and who develops as to what is Aûhrarmard's and as to what is Zaratūst's—is that he slays in moderation.

4. Regarding him who is an oppressive man who is righteous, the reply spoken is thus: 'The reward of the smiter and developer—that man of whom one

¹ See Yas. LIII, 9 d.
² See Pahl. Yas. LII, 9 d, and Chaps. XLV, 10, XLVII, 17.
³ The twenty-first Nask, or original Yasna (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XLVI, 1). It is not very clear, from this chapter and from what is stated about it in Chap. I, 2, whether this selection was compiled by the author of the Dînkard, or by some earlier writer. So far as its statements have yet been traced, nearly all of them originate in the Gāthas, or in the Yasna Haptanghāiti; but § 45 quotes a passage from the Bakō Nask (Yas. XIX).
⁴ Compare Pahl. Yas. XLII, 1 a.
⁵ Compare Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 2 a, where J₂, Pt₄, Mf₄ have barā yehamtūnānē pavan Vohūman.
⁶ Compare Pahl. Yas. XLII, 8 b.
knows the smiting and developing—is the very evil reward of him who is wicked; just as his smiting, as an evil reward for him from those two spirits, is that very evil practice loved by him who is wicked; even for this reason every righteous individual is Gáthic, because, when privileged (pədəkʰšət), he who is wicked is thus he who is righteous, and also he who is privileged is unprivileged.

5. Zarátust proceeded with the smiting at the wicked, and as to that proceeding Aûharmaezd spoke thus: 'Thou shouldst thus proceed with smiting at the wicked by ordinance (dādistân), because thus they have thee and the righteous of every kind as ruler. 6. Also through my decree (pavanič man viγtir) one produces the ritual of ordeal, which realizes that which is real, so that one may make that which is dark fully light. 7. Thine, too, is so much the sovereignty of Aûharmaezd, thus through worship, that its requisite (khvāstakō) privilege is thus maintained through virtue, because thou, who art thus, art more unconfined (anākō.ndarray) to the world through the furtherance and development of righteousness; great, indeed, is he who trusts the righteous man for righteousness, and great is he who trusts the wicked man for wickedness.'

8. As to that utterance (farmāyisnō) Zarátust spoke thus: 'An open annoyer is the righteous man—the benefiter disclosed by Aûharmaezd—that loves the embodied world of righteousness, and demands its reverence (tarsakāyih) for the proportion of righteousness therein, that is, he knows the proportion of duty and good works.'

1 See Bk. VIII, Chap. I, 5 n. 2 See Chap. LXI, 11.
garding the worldly existence, the reply spoken is thus: 'That which is again contaminated (gûmîkhtêd) by the demons becomes abundant so long as that which is proper is again contaminated with the demons; and, so long as there is a developer, they subsist for their own substances, so that it is possible for them to seek benefit for their own, and they are smitters of the righteous.'

10. Regarding him who is a wise smiter, Sôshâns\(^1\) spoke in reply thus: 'It arises through his way when it is again contaminated.'

11. As to that mischief (drûgisnô) Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Happy is he from whom there is no mischief.' 12. Regarding\(^2\) him who has come, the Yim of splendour\(^3\), he spoke thus: 'He attains his reward who is no smiter and no developer, not privileged and not unprivileged.'

13. As to that disclosure (hâkisnô) Vohûman\(^4\) spoke thus: 'I aggrandize that spiritual lord and that priestly master who is my righteousness in person.'

14. As to that utterance Spendarmad\(^4\) spoke thus: 'So do thou perfect (barâ vadîdûn) him whose information subsists—a man that becomes wise—who is as an emblem of my religion; because he has worshipped that which is ours, so that he has retained property in our possession, through whose words there is a furtherance of the world of righteousness. 15. That is my arrangement, and that my wish—that is, what is necessary for me—and I

---

\(^1\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 14.
\(^2\) Assuming that lâ, 'not,' stands for râf.
\(^3\) Av. Yimô khshaêtô (see Bk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 6, 7).
\(^4\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3.
love that which thou fully understandest, that is, that arrangement which is righteousness; also whatever discourse and perfect performance, thou askest of us, O Zaratûst! in complete mindfulness, I now practise by the work of each hand; observe thoroughly that which I am performing, and thou, too, art accomplishing. 16. In worship thou, O Zaratûst! art liberal, who art liberal in ceremonial; for thee, whose body believes, controversy is not lavish (râd) for the sake of the wealth bestowed; the reward of Zaratûst the developer is for developing, the reward of Zaratûst the smiter is for smiting, and the reward of Zaratûst the smiter and developer is for smiting and developing. 17. At the bridge judgment of him whose name the fire calls for participation, as when they repeatedly pour the melted ore upon him in the throat, thou shouldst pray near him alive—him whose love is for virtue—so that he may perform duty and good works with fearlessness; with his desire, too, it is expedient to know that it is done by him on account of necessity.'

18. As to that utterance Aûhârmazed spoke thus: 'Such is the upward attraction (lâlâ-hangîsnîh) of Shatraver 1 for him who is ours.' 19. As to that question (frashnô) Aûhârmazed spoke thus: 'Such has happened to him who is ours through Vohûman; he ought to come to our religion through virtue. 20. Truly he, O Zaratûst! is privileged for the sovereignty, who confines his ears to this religion, that he may make it fully progressive; who is given immortality through this, and kind regard for the will of him who is the best of that religion of mine,

---

1 See Chap. XLIII, 1. It is here written Shatrôver.

C C 2
O Zarâtûst! and who assists the furtherance of this world of mine in righteousness.'

21. As to those of that other one\(^1\) Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'As regards that which is great evidence, when wicked they consider it as unattested for him who is wicked himself; and the thoughts\(^2\) of him, whose deeds are those of that other one, are due to Akômanô\(^3\). 22. Owing also to this, when both Khûrdad and Amûrdad\(^4\) are given to thee, it is in that way—when thou art of the propitious spirit and the best thought—that what thou understandest thou shouldst be accomplishing, and what thou dost not understand thou askest again.'

23. Of him whose wisdom exists (aîtô)—of Aûharmazd—he whose wisdom arises (yehevûnêd)—Zaratûst—enquired concerning him who is unreal (an-aîtô) and who does not subsist (yehevûnêd) hereafter, who has thus never become a material existence for those on the side of virtue, and does not subsist for them henceforth.

24. As to that reverse description (padîrakônisânînîh) Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Among men of every kind say unto the righteous who are smiting the wicked, that we improve the measure of any milk they propitiate, even by the holy-water which is the sustenance (barîsnô) of milk, in order to cause much happiness of life.'

25. As to that utterance Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'Happy is he from whom there is no complaint, and a life which is like this the text Gerezôi . . .

---

\(^1\) The followers of Aharman.
\(^2\) Assuming that mânisnô, 'dwelling,' stands for mânisnô.
\(^3\) See Bk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3 n.
\(^4\) See Chap. XIX, 1.
 CHAPTER LXIX, 21–27. 389

åkhśō ... 1 implores. 26. To thee, O Zaratūst! my protection is given in the reply of the Kem-nâ 2 which, before the companionship of Kaft-Vistâsp 3—that righteous friend of mine—was a published thing of those which are used, and of those such as it is requisite to use. 27. The talk of a man which is immoderate is false, everything immoderate is so for this reason, everything is not that which the good man possesses, because, when privileged, the wicked one is he who is righteous, and he who is privileged becomes unprivileged; he who is righteous is thus he who is wicked, and becomes him who is privileged and unprivileged, so that he is fully incriminated, and they shall carry off his possessions.'

1 Yas. XLVI, 2 c–e; its Pahlavi version (Pahl. Yas. XLV, 2 c–e) may be translated as follows:—'I complain to thee, behold it and this one, O Aūhrmat! (that is, seek a remedy for me); that pleasure is my desire, which a friend gives to his friend; through the instruction of Vohúman (when I am instructed in virtue) is the coveted thing of righteousness (thou shouldst give me).' The words in parentheses have no equivalents in the Avesta text.

2 Yas. XLVI, 7; its Pahlavi version (Pahl. Yas. XLV, 7 a–e) may be translated as follows:—'Who is given to me (and mine, my disciples) as protector by thee, O Aūhrmat! when that wicked (Aharman) retains malice for me in possession (that is, maintains malice with me? Who shall provide me protection), other than thy fire and Vohúman? (Because I know that they would provide me protection for your sake) when I nourish righteousness through deeds for them, O Aūhrmat! (that is, should I perform duty and good works, who shall provide me protection?) Thou shouldst proclaim to me that high-priest of the religion; (this thou shouldst state thus: “Maintain the religion as high-priest”').

3 See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 13 e, and Bk. VIII, Chaps. XI, 1, XIII, 15.

4 Compare Ibid. 14 a which is given in Pt4, Mf4, as follows:—Zaratûstō mûn lajk aharûbû dôstô.
28. Regarding the benefitters the reply spoken is thus: 'They are owing to the reward of the smiter and developer; those are beneficial whose smiting and developing are those of the developer Aûharmazed, who understands smiting and development.'

29. When through smiting by Aûharmazed, on account of the wicked, a question (frashnô) about it arose, the reply spoken, as to the smiting of the present world by means of him who is ruler, was: 'The reward which the judgment that is perfect teaches is thus, that he who is the smiter and developer, Sôshâns¹, shall make the decision.' 30. Zaratûst spoke in reply thus: 'He gives a reward.' 31. And that wise smiter, Sôshâns, spoke in reply thus: 'He shall inflict punishment.'

32. Even he who is an ox of many cattle has openly and publicly wailed this complaint² on account of the righteous one: 'How long is it till the time when a developer arises, even he who is an irresolute ruler (akâmakô khûdât)? How long is the time till he arises, until the wicked one who is a smiter and privileged corrupter is he who is unprivileged?' 33. Because, for the sake of producing resolution (kâmak-dahîh), he complains that, until the developer shall arise, even he who is irresolute is ruler, that is, until he who is the developer shall become privileged.

34. As to that complaint of his Aûharmazed spoke thus: 'Not so as by this complaint is the obtainment of spiritual lordship (ahûtkîh), for this reason, when they do not consider the ruler as a ruler, and there is no giving of priestly authority (radôîh) by any

¹ See § 10. ² Compare Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 1, 9.
righteousness whatever, it is requisite, on account of the many righteous, to speak henceforth, until the time when the developer arises, even of him who is an irresolute ruler.

35. On account of the many statements of the spirits, even as to thought, word, and deed, it is requisite to say that they shall always render an account until even some obtainment of a smiter and developer, privileged or unprivileged. 36. Some arise of whom it is requisite to ask this question (frashnò) while he who is righteous and he who is wicked are two witnesses, and they make the righteous one manifest by his evidence, or they molest him who is righteous by smiting. 37. Some arise when it is requisite to speak this reply during the smiting of the maintainer of strife and of the kinsman. 38. And some arise while that individual is loved, though a righteous one and a developer arise, and it is requisite to produce a provider of benefit on account of the many, both wicked and righteous, so long as a wicked one of the smiting which is maintaining strife is privileged.

39. Because, regarding the production of resolution, it is proclaimed that it is so that they shall fully understand that Aūharmæzd discriminates truly, and Aharman does not discriminate truly. 40. And that it is so that they shall fully understand that the punishment of the wicked is for teaching them that they will attain to the existence of darkness, that even to him who belongs to the ever-stationary they may give his reward, that they are for smiting the wicked one, that they are very powerful to give, that

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 6 b.  
2 That in § 32.  
3 That in § 34.  
4 The irresolute ruler.
they should kill the apostate, that one has to be converted from vileness to goodness, that he who would be wicked is made to believe by the tongue, that for the sake of proper nurture of the creatures next-of-kin marriage is provided, that the demons are despised, that thus he who is evil-ruling is wicked, and that they are approaching the place where Aûharmazd shall provide for the account of sin and good works.

41. They shall become more diligent in the performance of duty and good works, and abstain more from sin, always until one attains even to some acquirement for those in life and those in a lifeless state. 42. And they shall not inflict their punishment completely in the embodied state, and the fiend does not pity the worldly existence; every individual is counted up, and every one is fully completed for the affairs of Aûharmazd, but the fiend is not smitten, and they shall not fully inflict the punishment.

43. No one thinks thou shouldst remain for the propitious Aûharmazd, and no one completely presents himself; they attack through the fiend, and arise for the foolish one. 44. No one arises for the goodness of him who is good, but for the vileness of the fiend they destroy what is good, and do not understand evil and good; they recite the revelation for a wicked one, they do not bestow friendship for labour, but are for the evil-doer.

45. And the righteous one, who is the best of spiritual and worldly existences, becomes a privileged

---

1 By accumulating more good works than are necessary to balance one's own sins.
CHAPTER LXIX, 41–47.

developer, even he who is an irresolute ruler\(^1\); and so he who is wicked, even he who is privileged, becomes unprivileged, at that time when one gives the soul of every one unto the supreme heaven\(^2\), and when thou shouldst, every one, know that the affliction of the annoyers arises\(^3\), so that when, owing thereto, they beseech the sacred beings, it is only hell that they supply.

46. When every one shall provide the ceremonial of the archangels unworriedly, and when every one knows that Gōs-aūrvan complained\(^4\)—so that he who is the fashioner of cattle enquired thus: 'Whose is the guardianship of cattle?\(^5\) and 'Not without annoyance' was the reply of Ashavahist, 'that is, they shall inflict his punishment\(^6\)—every one also knows that in their light is joyfulness for the sight\(^7\).

47. When every individual (ko/lā aīs-1) becomes aware of the priestly authority of Aūharmaed\(^8\); and when every individual knows that his remedy for the devastation owing to the evil spirit is comprehensibly stated\(^9\); when every individual knows that Aūharmaed fashioned the propitiousness in the liturgy\(^10\); and when every one knows that the priest is perfect, that Aūharmaed enhances both of them in spirituality\(^11\), that Vohūman is the offspring of Aūharmaed\(^12\), that Spendarmad is Aūharmaed's own\(^13\), that all three of them are the life of him who

---

\(^{1}\) See Pahl. Yas. XIX, 58, XX, 10.
\(^{2}\) See Pahl. Yas. XXVIII, 4 a.
\(^{3}\) See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 1 a, and Chap. XV, 3.
\(^{4}\) See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 1 a, and Chap. XV, 3.
\(^{5}\) Ibid. 6 c.
\(^{6}\) Ibid. 2 a.
\(^{7}\) Ibid. 3 a, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVII, 14.
\(^{8}\) See Pahl. Yas. XXX, 1 c.
\(^{9}\) See Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 6 a.
\(^{10}\) Ibid. 7 a.
\(^{11}\) See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 7 c.
\(^{12}\) Ibid. 8 a.
\(^{13}\) Ibid. 9 a.
has wandered forth— that is, life is given by the thought and wisdom which are his own—and that the sacred beings are they who are supporting it.

48. When every one of this existence must act for the sake of that other existence, and knows how to act; when every one is a friend, through deeds, of the spirit which is his own; and when every one becomes a person supporting Aûharmazd. 49. When every individual knows that they give no reward to him in whose body a demon is lodging who is not listening; when every one shall make his own soul immortal; and when every one has advantage through possession of Aûharmazd.

50. When every one becomes a Zôti unsullied in righteousness; when every one gives a sacred cake to the archangels; when every one knows that co-operation is due to him who is their servant; and when they are together in soul. 51. When every individual gives his body; when every one proceeds to their ceremonial and glorification; when every individual knows that ' other than they ' is meant by naêkîm tem anyem; and when every one knows

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXI, 10 a.
2 Ibid. 11 b, c.
3 Ibid. 21 c.
4 Ibid. 22 c.
5 Compare Pahl. Yas. XXXIII, 4 a, XLIII, 13 c.
6 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 1 a.
7 Ibid. 3 a.
8 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIII, 6 a, and Bk. VIII, Chap. VII, 5.
9 Ibid. 8 c.
10 Ibid. 9 c.
11 Ibid. 10 c.
12 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 6 c.
13 Yas. XXXIV, 7 c, the Pahlavi version of which may be translated as follows:— ' I am aware of no one (above), other than you (that is, I know no one from whom my benefit is such as from you, and when they shall cause) righteousness (that is, they shall perform duty and good works, it) thus produces shelter for us.' The MS. has naêkîd.
that, through that sovereignty of his, the renovation of the universe is produced by his will among the existences.

52. When every one knows the elucidation (rōshanā) of the religion; when every one considers the religion as governor and serf; when every one knows that the manifestation of this ought to arise in him; when every one thinks Aūharmazd auspicious; and when every one knows that, when it occurs, benefit is produced, through resolute sovereignty, where and when it gives him a reward for the performance of the duty and good works they should call for. 53. When every one gives the sacred beings and the good a sheep; when every one knows that, for him whose righteousness is in action, immense and complete mindfulness arises; when every one thinks of much assistance from Aūharmazd; when every one speaks to restore his temper; when every one speaks to provide the ceremonial; and when every one produces that advantage by liberal giving. 54. When every one knows that one grants him the obeisance which is due to him when in a condition for the supreme heaven ( amat dēn garōdománīkith); when every one knows that it is done by those in the realm of Aūharmazd; and when every individual knows

---

1 See Pahl. Yas. XXXIV, 15 c.
2 See Pahl. Yas. XXXV, 22.
3 See Pahl. Yas. XLII, 7 a.
4 Ibid. 8 d.
5 Assuming that yehevūnēd, 'becomes,' stands for yeha-būnēd.
6 See Pahl. Yas. XLIII, 6 c.
7 Ibid. 7 d.
8 See Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 3 a.
9 Ibid. 6 a.
10 Ibid. 7 a.
11 Ibid. 8 e.
12 Ibid. 9 c.
that, so long as the religion of the first creation
shall exist (æ), this characteristic is to be considered
thus: Hvō zī dre gvau, &c.²

55. When every individual keeps no wealth for a
high-priest of the apostates ³; when every one knows
that, when above, there is righteousness ⁴; when
they shall make intercession ⁵ for every individual,
and when every individual becomes aware ⁶ of it;
when every individual sees that he is a father of
righteousness ⁷; and when every individual knows
that the propitious spirit is in him ⁸. 56. When
every one knows that, when a supplicant, he is more
a smiter of the wicked ⁹; when every individual
utters the salutation (niyāyisnō) of Aûharmaṣṭd¹⁰;
when every individual knows that that is our com-
fort ¹¹, and that it is Aûharmaṣṭd’s own creature ¹²;
and when every individual is taught ¹³, and every
individual joins in the perfect religion ¹⁴.

57. When every individual knows that Vohûman

¹ See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 6 c.
² Yas. XLVI, 6 c–e; its Pahlavi version (Pahl. Yas. XLV, 6 c–e)
may be translated as follows:—‘For he is wicked whose best
nature is for the wicked, and he is righteous whose homage (franāmīs)nō
in Pt4, Mf4) is for the righteous (in any doubtfulness, whoever
gives anything to the wicked is to be considered as wicked, and
whoever gives to the righteous is to be considered as righteous) so
long as the religion of the first creation, O Aûharmaṣṭd! (until the
time when Sōshâns arrives one is ever to be considered in this
way).’
³ See Pahl. Yas. XLV, 8 a. The MS. has ‘the righteous’ by
mistake.
⁴ Ibid. 12 a. ⁵ Compare Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 6 a.
⁶ Compare Pahl. Yas. XLV, 17 e.
⁷ See Pahl. Yas. XLVI, 2 d. ⁸ Ibid. 3 a. ⁹ Ibid. 4 d.
¹⁰ See Pahl. Yas. XLVII, 1 d. ¹¹ Ibid. 6 a. ¹² Ibid. 7 d.
¹³ Ibid. 12 c. ¹⁴ See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 9 c.
guards the creatures\(^1\); when every individual becomes privileged by will\(^2\) for the reward; when every individual knows that gain is through giving away\(^3\); when every individual transacts, \textit{or} shall transact, the affairs of the archangels\(^4\); and when every individual knows that when he who is intelligent speaks to him\(^5\), it becomes a possession for the benefit of righteousness\(^6\).

58. When, for equal meritoriousness, it is necessary to give sooner to Magian men\(^7\)—so that on account even of the Magianship of Kaṭ-Vistāsp \textit{he was} suitable for the sovereignty\(^8\), that Zaratūšt \textit{was} given a wife by Frashōstar\(^9\), that \textit{it was} the learned Gâmāsp\(^10\) that Aūharmazd gave—and that every individual shall provide the ceremonial of Aūharmazd\(^11\). 59. And when every individual knows that \textit{they are} the best prayers which are the words of Zaratūšt\(^12\), and, even so, his is a wise reward for those which are yours\(^13\).

60. It is perfect \textit{is} the excellence of righteousness; it is perfect excellence \textit{that is} righteousness.

---

\(^1\) See Pahl. Yas. XLVIII, 10 a, b.
\(^2\) See Pahl. Yas. XLIX, 9 c.
\(^3\) See Pahl. Yas. L, 1 b. The MS. has bûn, instead of barâ, by mistake.
\(^4\) Ibid. 3 c.
\(^5\) Ibid. 8 a.
\(^6\) Ibid. 8 b.
\(^7\) Ibid. 15 a.
\(^8\) Ibid. 16 a, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XI, 1.
\(^9\) Ibid. 17 a, and Bk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68.
\(^10\) Ibid. 18 a.
\(^11\) Ibid. 20 c.
\(^12\) See Pahl. Yas. LII, 1 a.
\(^13\) Ibid. 7 a.
DETAILS OF THE NASKS

FROM

OTHER SOURCES.
OBSERVATIONS.

1–5. (The same as on page 2.)
6. The manuscripts mentioned are:—
   B (written A.D. 1659), see page 2.
   B29 (written A.D. 1679), a Persian Rivâyat, No. 29 in the
   University Library at Bombay.
   DH (written A.D. 1813), a Din-vigîrgard in the library of Dastûr
   Hôshangji Jâmâspji at Poona.
   K35 (probably written A.D. 1572), a Dâdîstân-î Dinik, No. 35
   in the University Library at Kopenhagen.
   MF4, Pt4 (written about A.D. 1780), in the Mullâ Fîrûz Library
   and in that of Dastûr Peshotanji Behramji in Bombay, respectively,
   both copied from a Yasna with Pahlavi, written in Irân and brought
   to India about A.D. 1478, which was a descendant of an ancestor
   of J2 and K5, and independent of those two authorities.
   MH10 (about 150 years old), a Persian Rivâyat, No. 10 of
   Haug’s Collection in the State Library at Munich.
   O225, a Persian Rivâyat in No. 225 of Ouseley’s Collection in
   the Bodleian Library at Oxford.
FROM THE SELECTIONS
OF
ZÂD-SPARAM¹.

1. About the three divisions of revelation there is a condensed medium, beneficial and small, of whose subdivision one category (ragistakô) is collection together; that is, the Ahunavair² itself is a symbol of the Nasks.

2. First, the Ahunavair is apportioned into its three degrees (padmân), as shown in another chapter; and by a like system (ragistak) the Gâthas³, too, are into three, which are the three-lined, four-lined, and five-lined⁴; even so the Nasks

¹ Who was high-priest of Sirkân, in the south of Persia, towards the end of the ninth century, being contemporary with the last reviser of the Dînkard (see S.B. E., vol. xviii, p. xxvii). This extract from his Selections constitutes the 'particulars about the Gâthas and the connection of the Ahunavair with the Nasks,' mentioned in the final footnote to Zs. XI, 10. For the Pahlavi text the translator is dependent upon a single MS., copied from K35 when this latter MS. was complete, and said to be now in the library of Dastûr Jâmâspji MinochiHarji in Bombay.

² See Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 7.

³ The word gâsânô is usually written like dahisnô in the MS.

⁴ The three-lined stanzas of the Gâthas are 100 in the Ahunavaiti (Yas. XXVIII–XXXIV), 40 in the Yasna of seven hâs (Yas. XXXV–XL), and 22 in the Vohû-khshathra (Yas. LI), altogether 162 three-lined stanzas; the four-lined are one in the Ustavaiti (Yas. XLVI, 15), 41 in the Spentâ-mainyû (Yas. XLVII–L), and nine in the Vahistôisti (Yas. LIII), altogether 51 four-lined stanzas;
are denominated Gāthic, Hadha-māthric, and Law.
3. Then the Ahunavair is apportioned into six which they call half-lines (nēm-gās); so, too, the Gāthās are into six, which are called the Ahunavaiti Gātha, the Yasna, the Ustavaiti=Gātha, the Spentāmainyū (Spetamato) Gātha, the Vohu-khshathra Gātha, and the Vahistōisti Gātha; even so the Nasks are into six, as the Gāthas are into two, which are called one the Gāthic creation—which is the Yast—and one the rest of the Gāthic; also the Hadha-māthric into two, one the Māthra of the arranger—which is the Pākinō and Radō-dādō-aītō—and one the Māthra full of good tokens, which is the rest of the Hadha-māthra; and also the Law into two, one the law against the demons—which is the Vendīdād—and one the law of Zaratūst, which is the rest of the Law. 4. Then it is apportioned into twenty-one, such as the twenty-one words (mārik) of the Ahunavair; also the Gāthas are into twenty-one, which are the Ahunavair, the praise of righteousness, the performance of the good, and from Yānīm-manō unto Airyaman which, being

and the five-lined stanzas are the remaining 65 in the Ustavaiti (Yas. XLIII–XLVI); making the total of 278 stanzas mentioned in § 5. Yas. XLII is a later supplement to the Yasna of seven hās, and, in the MSS. Pt4, Mf4, it is headed as follows:—Avar vaharakō-i haft hādō Yastō yasinsīk būn, ‘the beginning of wor-

1 The MS. corrupts these two names into the one word āsna-
vatō by omitting the syllables aūsta.
2 The Stōd-yast, or first of the Gāthic Nasks (see Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 9).
3 The third and fourth of the Hadha-māthric Nasks (ibid. 10).
4 The fifth of the Legal Nasks (ibid. 11).
5 The three sacred formulas, Yathā-ahū-vairyō, Ashem-vohu,
accomplished (âkar’dō), are twenty-one; and the Nasks are twenty-one.

5. Then the Gâthas are apportioned into 278¹ stanzas (vêkêstō); and the Nasks also into 278 categories, every single category having borne a form like a single verse², as regards how much and how anything good is indicated, such as the Patkârradistân³, in which what is legally disputable is reported (pêdâkō); the Zâkhmistân⁴, by which the penalty of assault (zâkhw) is reported; the Stôristân⁵, by which the sin and amount of penalty for a wound, as regard beasts of burden and cattle, are reported; the Aratêstâristân⁶, by which battle is reported; the Pasûs-haûrvastân⁷, by which the customary keeping of sheep in control is reported; the Gûrdât-zarîntunistân (‘corn-sowing code’)⁸, by which agriculture is reported; the Varistân⁹, by which an ordeal being accomplished is reported; and others of a like description.

and Yêshê-hâtâm, with the seventeen hâs of the five real Gâthas, and either the Yasna of seven hâs, counted as a single item, or the Airyaman, will make up the twenty-one divisions (compare the names applied to each farâr of the Sûdkar, Varstmânsar, and Bakō Nasks in Dk. IX).

¹ See § 2 n; here the MS. has 288, by miswriting, in both occurrences of the ciphers.
² Doubtful; the text appears to be as follows:—koâ ragistakō-aê bûrqō saw mânak ak gâh.
³ See Dk. VIII; Chap. XVI.
⁴ Equivalent to Zatamistân (ibid. Chap. XVII), see Darmesteter’s suggestion (ibid. Chap. XVI, 8 n).
⁵ Ibid. Chap. XXIV; here spelt Stôritân by mistake.
⁶ Ibid. Chap. XXVI.
⁷ Ibid. Chap. XXIII; here written Pasûs-haûristân.
⁸ Ibid. Chap. XXXI, 30–32.
⁹ Ibid. Chap. XLII; here written Varistân.
6. Then the Gāthas are apportioned into 1016 metrical lines (gās), and the Nasks into 1000 Hās and Fargards, and, since the Hādōkht is the priestly master (raदो) of the Nasks, and the remedy (darmōn) which is a perfect statement about the master of the resurrection, the existence of its fargards about the other fargards is therefore 1000 remedies fully combined, being the corn and fodder that are shut up (bastakो) when, over that thousand, they supply one that is great, which in every way protects them from hail and rain, from the wind which is hot and that which is cold.

7. Then the Gāthas are apportioned into 6666 words (mārik), and as to the Nasks, too, their own 6666 ordinances (dādistanō) are therein severed.

8. And the 6666 words, which are in the Gāthas, are

---

1 See Sls. XIII, 50; that this number is correct may be seen from the details given in § 2 n.
2 See Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 20; here the MS. has ayūnō instead of hātō, by miswriting.
3 The sixth of the Gāthic Nasks (see Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 9).
4 See Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV, 13, where the word used is bēshāsō.
5 According to Sls. XIII, 50 the six Gāthas (including the Yasna of seven hās) contain 5567 vāt̄ak, 9999 mārik, and 16,554 khūr- dāk; which enumeration makes the meaning of mārik doubtful. In our present text, however, it must have its usual meaning of 'word,' as the number of 6666 words in the six Gāthas can be obtained by including the customary repetition of the first stanza of each Hā of the five real Gāthas, with the text of the Airyanman and of the introductions to Yas. XXVIII, XXXV, and probably the homage formula prefixed to each Gātha; also by considering each component of a compound as a separate word, and all verbal prefixes as separable; and by counting all enclitics except -kā, in accordance with the different modes of treating -kt̄d and -kā in counting the words of the Ahunavair. If the three sacred formulas were included, and the Airyanman and five homage formulas were omitted, the total would be nearly the same.
an indicator of the period from the adversary having come to the creatures, as far as unto the end of the six millenniums—each millennium being ten centuries—which amount to 60 single centuries—a century being ten tens—and up to the time when its cold and distress arrive, which become awful; the 600, including the excess as far as one ten, are years of the 6000 years which are the words of the six Gâthas that are the first indicator of the six millenniums; therefore of the 60 centuries are then the 600 and those which are added to them (zak-î ghal).

9. And after those 6000, which are the 6000 years, are the Airyaman of Ashavahist and the accompanying sayings (hâm-vâkô) which are at the end of the Gâthas; those are the 57 years of Sôshâns, and for the sake of them, too, are the Airyaman and from the praise of righteousness at its end to the consecration of the Airyaman, originally 57 words (mârik), because the praise of righteousness for the Airyaman is 12, and the consecration of the Airyaman is 21, of the original 57.

---

1 The three millenniums during which Aûharmaæd and Aharman had nearly equal influence, and the last three millenniums during which the power of Aharman diminishes (see Bd. I, 20).

2 Assuming that stands for .

3 Assuming that mânas, 'whose,' stands for amâtas.

4 As the cipher for 'one' precedes that for 'ten,' it may possibly mean 'one less than ten,' as in the Roman IX. At any rate, 6609 years with the 57 accounted for in § 9 make up the requisite total of 6666; but the mode of making this number correspond with the six millenniums is not very clear.

5 Yas. LIV, 1.

6 See Dk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 14; Bd. XXX, 7.

7 The Airyaman contains 24 words, its Ashem-vohû 12, and its consecration (Yas. LIV, 2) 21 words, making altogether 57 words.
DÍNKARO.—BOOK III.

CHAPTER VII.\(^1\)

The ninth question.

1. Another apostate enquired thus: 'When there is Māthra that is said to be all in the words of Aûharmazd to Zaratúst, whether it be in the words of Frashôstar and Gâmâsp\(^2\), or be in the words of Vohûman\(^3\) and the sacred beings, or be in words of theirs published before the time of Zaratúst, or even after that of Sênô\(^4\), is it to be considered by us, as to that which is relating to us, that what is the utterance of Aûharmazd to Zaratúst is only the Gâthic, and the rest is composed by Zaratúst and his disciples from the world, even statements due to a good inclination for conversion (vastakîh)?'

2. The reply is that the other Māthra which is separate from the Gâthas, if it be apart from the Gâthas, is still owing to the composition of the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô\(^5\); and the same separate Māthra, which is from a witness about it, is the evidence with Aûharmazd himself in vigorous omniscience and composition, and not owing to the knowledge of mankind, which shall not attain even to an atom of the atoms thereof. 3. The arising of the Māthra, through the speaking of many voices, is not all the speaking of Aûharmazd to Zaratúst through those

---

\(^1\) According to Peshotan's notation; the text followed is that of the MS. B, written A.D. 1659.

\(^2\) See Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 68.

\(^3\) This seems a more likely reading than 'Hôm' for the imperfect word ściysta.

\(^4\) See Chap. CXCVII, 6 n.

\(^5\) See Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 7 n.
voices, but the speaking of several separately, through which the speaking of the voice would be evidently that of Aûharmazd; that is this Mâthra. 4. And just as the speaking forth of Zaratûst and other good men, as well as evil ones, likewise of those who are demons, even as far as the evil spirit, is stated by Aûharmazd in public, that statement would become even that of the evil spirit and demons, and the Mâthra and Law against the demons would likewise become spoken by the demons. 5. And the Mâthra is all confined by Aûharmazd to Zaratûst through many voices, being an avowal of Aûharmazd to Zaratûst, and an existence which is not inconsistent (han-bêshin); just as the Gâthas, which even you admit to be, as a whole, confined by Aûharmazd to Zaratûst, are spoken through the voice of Zaratûst, be they through the voices of the archangels, be they through the voice of Gôs-aûrvan¹, or be they through the voices of other sacred beings, to all they are spoken by Aûharmazd to Zaratûst, and are not inconsistent. 6. But owing to the disposition of an apostate there is a longing scrutiny about his own statements, and evil-thinking scrutiny about the statements protecting the spiritual lord.

---

Chapter CLXI.

1. About one supremely² acquainted with the three³ codes (dâdô) of the Mazda-worshipping religion there is this:—One supremely acquainted

¹ See Dk. IX, Chap. XV, 3.
² Perhaps we should read avîrtar, 'more particularly,' instead of avârtar.
³ B has 'four' by mistake here, but not afterwards.
with the three codes of the Mazda-worshipping religion is he of the primitive faith whose insight into the good religion is even such that he knows how to discriminate and announce the statements (vākakō) of the Hadha-māthric and Gāthic from those of the Law, those of the Legal and Gāthic from those of the Hadha-māthric, and those of the Hadha-māthric and Legal from those of the Gāthas. 2. Also to the statements (vākakō) in the Law—which is superior ¹ knowledge about the worldly existences—is allotted (vakhtō) the worldliness of the Hadha-māthric and also of the Gāthic; to those in the Gāthas—which are superior knowledge about the spiritual existences—is allotted the spirituality of the Hadha-māthric and even that of the Law; and to those in the Hadha-māthra—which is superior knowledge about things intermediate between the spiritual and worldly existences—is allotted the intermediate matter (miyānīkīth) of the Gāthic and also of the Legal.²

CHAPTER CLXV.

1. About the purport of the evidence of the three codes of the Mazda-worshipping religion, one as regards the other, there is verbal evidence of the Gāthic from the Hadha-māthric and the Law, and about the Hadha-māthric and the Law from the Gāthas. 2. The purport, too, of the statement that occurs is this of a ruler putting aside the commands of an enemy—which are declared, in many passages (dīvāk) of the Hadha-māthric and even of the Legal, to be worthiness of death—the purport being in the words of a Gāthic phrase (nisang) that is

¹ See p. 407, n. 2. ² Compare Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 13, 14.
even this:—'He who is a good ruler is a desire and bringing on of fortune for me (valam)'.
3. All rulers also for the world have arisen for their own, and for maintaining him who is high-priest; they are submissive, and any one accomplishing their commands—which are putting aside the commands of their enemy—is, owing to their submissiveness, authorisedly maintaining his own person and wealth in the world thereby, and in the world there is no place, nor yet a share of anything therefrom, on account of which he becomes offended by the world.

4. The evidence of the Hadha-māthric and of the Legal about a Gāthic statement is the purport of these words in a Gāthic phrase, that ‘not for him who is rightly proceeding is there further ruin'; and the evidence from the Hadha-māthric is even this which states that ‘rectitude assists a man like a regiment a thousand strong'; also for the proportion of rectitude in his possession there is no disturbance whatever, and from the hurtful (vināsīgānō) from without he is thus protected, because fully-worshipping (pūr-yasān) performance is freedom from danger from the want of freedom from wickedness (a-adarvandīh) of the enemy, as regards benefit, through the doing of injury by him.

5. And on account of the superior knowledge of the spiritual existence, moreover, for the Gāthas, above the intermediate Hadha-māthric and the lower knowledge of the Law, the purpose of the Gāthic was for the statements of the Legal and the Hadha-māthric, and the provision of the Hadha-māthric

1 Pahl. Yas. L, 1 a.
2 Pahl. Yas. XXIX, 5 c.
3 Dk. IX, Chap. XX, 4.
and the Legal was evidently for the statements of the Gāthas.

CHAPTER CXCVII.

6. One is that, on account of him who gave the Legal, and is also the protector of a priestly master who is given over to the Hadha-māthric, and the Gāthic, through which the purity of the good creations arises, one is more steadfastly to aggrandise and develope them.

DINKARD.—BOOK IV.

1. Obeisance to the Mazda-worshipping religion which is opposed to the demons and is the ordinance of Aūharmazd.

---

1 This is the fourth of 'the ten admonitions of the righteous Sēnôv about the law of the Mazda-worshipping religion.' In the seventh book of the Dinkard it is stated that 'as regards the high-priests this, too, is said on the subject of Sēnôv, that one hundred years of the religion elapse when Sēnôv is born, and two hundred years when he passes away; he was also the first Mazda-worshipper with a life of a hundred years (100 khayā), and who walks forth upon this earth with a hundred disciples.' This last clause clearly identifies him with the 'Saēna, son of Aūhūm-stud, who first appeared upon this earth with a hundred pupils,' as stated in Yt. XIII, 97 (see Darmesteter, Textes pehlvis relatifs au Judaïsme, première partie, p. 3, n. 2).

2 This book commences with an account of the seven archangels, and, illustrative of the 'desirable dominion' personified in Shatraver, the fourth of them, a statement is made of the legendary history of the efforts made by the good rulers, from Vistāsp to Khūsrōī Anōsharavān, for the preservation of Avesta and Pahlavi.
2. The fourth book is matter for instruction from the statements selected, from the instruction of the good religion, by the saintly (hû-fravardô) Åtûr-farnbag\(^1\), son of Farukhô-zâd and leader of those of the good religion.

3. From the Selection of Customary Instruction\(^2\) there is \textit{this}.—\textit{Number} one is the actual original evolution\(^3\), resembling only himself \textit{and} not designed (kîmîk). 4. \textit{Number} two, the duplication of the first among those akin (khvêstîgân) owing to the consciousness of creation—which is the first—is Vohûman; but \textit{it} is his origin, concealed from the destroyer, which is the reason of the creation.

\[\ldots\]

10. \textit{Number} three is the original creature Ashavahist\(^4\)—due to development among those akin, one out of another—who possesses the third place among the archangels, for the reverence of the first.

\[\ldots\]

12. \textit{Number} four, the perfect sovereignty among

\[\ldots\]

literature. Most of this statement has been already translated at the end of Haug’s Essay on Pahlavi, from a less perfect MS. than B, but, as some of the accompanying text is obscure, it has now been necessary to translate the whole of it to ascertain its connection clearly, although only so much of this translation is here given as will indicate this connection in a general way.

\(^1\) Who held a religious disputation with the accursed Abâlis in the presence of the Khalifah Al-Mâmûn (A.D. 813–833), as stated in the Mâdîgân-î Gugastak Abâlis. He appears to have been the first compiler of the Dînkard, especially of its first two Books which are still undiscovered (see Dk. III, Chap. last, 9, in Introduction; Sg. IV, 107, IX, 3, X, 55). Dk. IV, V are taken from his statements, as well as a portion of Dk. III, Chap. CXLII.

\(^2\) Åyûnô åmûkô vîgînô, evidently the name of a treatise compiled by Åtûr-farnbag.

\(^3\) That is, Aûhar-mazd. \(^4\) See Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVII, 14.
those akin, is named Shatraver\textsuperscript{1}, the necessity of the stored-up (avar-gûdō) nature of a spiritual lord arisen from the reverence of the perfectly just doer Ashavahist, who is the third in arising from him who is the second, Vohûman, who is the first creature. \textsuperscript{19} So, too, the sovereignty of the religion is ever specially good sovereignty and triumphant, and the true religion is confident; the will of the sacred beings in the world is progress, and the comprisal of every knowledge is in the Mazda-worshipping religion; the correct attainment of its good sovereignty and their joint statement are together really on account of their concealed good protection and progressive production, one for the other. \textsuperscript{20} They strive for the powerful maintenance of the religious good monarchy of rulers, trusty in religion through practising Mazda-worship; the law of the rulers is custom, and their custom is religious.

\textsuperscript{21} Vistâsp\textsuperscript{2}, the king when he became relieved (pardakhtō) from the war with Ar'gâsp\textsuperscript{3}, sent to the chief rulers about the acceptance of the religion, and the writings\textsuperscript{4} of the Mazda-worshipping religion, which are studded with all knowledge through resources and learning of many kinds, and also the tongue of a Magian man (Magōt-gabrā), arisen in the very same instructed duty, it is expedient you should send (sedrânēdō) therewith.\textsuperscript{5} \textsuperscript{22} Now

\textsuperscript{1} See Dk. IX, Chap. XLIII, r.
\textsuperscript{2} See Dk. VIII, Chaps. XI, r, XIII, 15.
\textsuperscript{3} Ibid. XI, 4.
\textsuperscript{4} Haug's MS. omits this passage: val sar-khûdâyân madam padrōftanō-f dēnō firistakō, va-nipîtfrâ-f; and, even when it is supplied from B, a few more words appear to be still wanting.
Arezrâspô¹, and others from outside of Khvanîras², came to Frashôstar for religious enquiry, with complete intelligence for the most who did so.

23. Dârâī³, son of Dârâî, ordered the preservation of two written copies of the whole Avesta and Zand, according to the receiving of it by Zaratûst from Aûharmazd; one in the treasury of Shapîgân⁴, and one in the fortress of written documents.

24. Valkhas⁵, descendant of Askân, in each district, just as he had come forth, ordered the careful preservation, and making of memoranda for the royal city (shatrô shahag), of the Avesta and Zand as it had purely come unto them, and also of whatever instruction (âmûkô-k), due to it, had remained written about, as well as deliverable by the tongue through a high-priest, in a scattered state in the country of Irân, owing to the ravages and devastation of Alexander and the cavalry and infantry of the Arûmans⁶.

¹ Evidently the same person as Arezrâspâh (Dk. IX, Chap. XXI, 24), the supreme high-priest of the northern region Vîdâdâfsâh (Bd. XXIX, 1). In Dk. VII it is also stated that Spîôts and Arezrâspô came to Frashôstar, seeking information about the religion, 57 years after it had been received by Zaratûst who appears to have departed to the best existence ten years before.

² See Dk. VIII, Chap. VIII, 2.

³ According to Bd. XXXIV, 8 and the Persian Rivâyats, which teach a chronology of their own, this Dârâî was the predecessor of Alexander and reigned fourteen years; his father reigning twelve years.

⁴ It is hazardous to read ‘the royal (shâyagân) treasury’ because the name, which occurs seven times in the Dînkard, is five times spelt Shapîgân, and twice Shaspîgân.

⁵ Probably Vologeses I, who was a contemporary of Nero and appears to have been a Mazda-worshipper (see S. B. E., vol. iv, p. xxxiv).

⁶ The older Greeks were so called by the Persians in Sasanian
25. That (valman-1-i) Artakhshatar\(^1\), king of kings, who was son of Pâpak, summoned Tôsar, and also all that scattered instruction (âmûkô), as true authority, to the capital; Tôsar having arrived, him alone he approved, and, dismissing the rest of the high-priests, he also gave this command, namely: 'For us every other exposition of the Mazda-worshipping religion becomes removed, because even now there is no information or knowledge of it below.'

26. Shahpûhar\(^2\), king of kings and son of Artakhshatar, again brought together also the writings which were distinct from religion, about the investigation of medicine and astronomy, time, place, and quality, creation (dahîsnô), existence, and destruction (vinâsisnô), the submission of a wild beast\(^3\), evidence, and other records and resources that were scattered among the Hindûs, and in Arûm\(^4\) and other lands; and he ordered their collocation again with the Avesta, and the presentation of a correct copy of each to the treasury of Shapîgân\(^5\); and the settlement (astînidanô) of all the erring upon the Mazda-worshipping religion, for proper consideration, was effected.

27. Shahpûhar\(^6\), king of kings and son of Aûhar-mazd, instituted a tribunal (âvân âhankô karçdô) for the controversy of the inhabitants of all regions, times, because they came from the same quarter as the later armies of the eastern empire of the Romans.

\(^1\) The first Sasanian king, who reigned A.D. 226–240.

\(^2\) The second Sasanian king, who reigned A.D. 240–271.

\(^3\) Doubtful; but it is difficult to find a more probable meaning for dâdakô hêrhîh.

\(^4\) The eastern empire of the Romans.

\(^5\) See § 23.

\(^6\) The ninth Sasanian king, who reigned A.D. 309–379.
and brought all statements to proper consideration and investigation; and after the preservation of Ātūrpād¹, through the statement which he maintained (pasākhēto) with all those of different sects, and the Nasks were enumerated, he also spoke this even to those who were heterodox, namely: 'Now, when the religion is recognised by us in the worldly existence, we do most diligently endeavour that they shall not allow the infidelity (agdēnōth) of any one whatever;' and he acted accordingly.

28. This (le-denman-1-i²) Khûsrōî³, king of kings who is son of Kavâd, as apostasy and tyranny were fully antagonistically smitten by him⁴, and information and redoubled proper consideration were abundantly augmented—through a declaration from the religion unto every apostasy of the four classes (pīsakō)—also spoke even this as to winning the sacred beings (yazdān khartiēh), namely: 'The truth of the Mazda-worshipping religion is fully understood, and the intelligent are steadfastly capable through proper consideration; but recognition by the worldly existence has mostly become exceedingly scattered, and the particulars are not possible through proper consideration, but through purity of thought,

¹ See Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 22.
² Literally 'this one who is,' which, applied to a person near at hand, is a phrase analogous to valman-1-i, 'that one who is,' applied in § 25 to a person more remote. The oblique case le-denman of the demonstrative pronoun, which occurs very rarely, is analogous to the oblique cases li, lanman, lak, lekūm of the personal pronouns, which occur constantly.
³ The twentieth Sasanian king, who reigned A.D. 531–579; he was surnamed Anōsharavân, 'immortal-souled.'
⁴ Referring to his extirpation of the heresy of Mazdak, A.D. 528, before he came to the throne.
word, and deed, and the statements of the good spirit, the liturgical ceremonial of the sacred beings with purity.

29. 'We also call, each of those called by us, a priest of Aûharmaezd, whose perception of the spiritual existence is manifested unto us; and our wide resources, the perception of the spiritual existence and the example of the worldly one, are likewise indications of both natures that are complete. 30. And we invite (bavihûnêm) those invited¹, even with that excellence and efficiency which are due to them, on account of which the sacred beings are predominantly over Irân; the country of Irân having proceeded onwards through instruction from the Mazda-worshipping religion which the ancients celebrated. 31. The knowledge of the sociable ceremonial (ham-yazisnîth)—for which, indeed, those of the intelligent of disunited Khvanîras are not in a dispute of antagonism—is, in that way, mostly the sonorous (aêvâzîk) Avesta, in the pure statement of the writing adornable by memoranda of particulars; and even the simple wordless (avâkîk) mode is maintained in the announcement of the statement.

32. 'Even then all the domestic (khânîk) knowledge of the Mazda-worshipping religion is really on this account, which is understood by us, that, when all are intellectual (vir-hômînd), and the proper consideration of a stranger (bîgânakô) is owing to the world of the Mazda-worshipping religion, they arrive at this place. 33. But through the new possession and proper consideration of the stranger, owing to the Mazda-worshipping religion, they are

¹ As in Yas. II.
not capable of bringing about so much acquirement and manifestation of knowledge, for the advantage and open duty of the worldly existence, as is in the recitation of a priestly master through much investigation, and is abundantly well-considered. 34. And if we command, with the utmost solicitude, the proper consideration of the Avesta and Zand of the primitive Magian statements (Magōt-gobisnō), which are more humbly observant, better disposed, good, and ever renewed uneffacedly, as well as an increase of acquirement worthily therefrom, for the knowledge of those of the world, there is no necessity of first acquiring the quality of creation from the creator, by those who are worldly existences, for understanding the creator and the marvellousness of the spiritual existences; or all necessity of acquiring is said to be longing through scanty knowledge.

35. 'They who are a counterpart (aēdūnōth) of manifestation from the religion—and even through the resemblance there is a possibility of the existence of understanding—are mentioned as effecting proper consideration (hū-sikāl-gar); and he who has to exhibit enlightenment (rōshanō) through knowledge, has to maintain acquaintance with the religion. 36. And since the origin of every knowledge is the religion, alike through spiritual power, and alike through worldly manifestation 1, that which any one has wisely spoken—even though not considered by him as similarly beheld (ham-dīdō) by any Avesta declaration—is still then accounted as a manifestation from the religion, whose business is

---

1 Assuming that pēdākīh-tnidārīh stands for pēdākīnīdārīh.
bringing forth offspring for the sacred beings through instruction.'

37

FROM PERSIAN RIVĀYATS².

I. FROM THE RIVĀYAT OF BAHMAN PŪNGYAH³.

The names of the twenty-one Nasks, from the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô:—Yathâ, the Stûdkar; ahû, the Varstah-mânthrâh; vairyô, the Bagh; athâ, the Dâmdâd; ratus, the Nâdûr; ashâd, the Pâzûn; kîd, the Ratustâyêd; haâkâ, the Baris; vangheûs, the Kassrôb; dazdâ, the Vistâspâd; mananghô, the Dâd; shyaothanânâm, the Kîdrast; anghheûs, the Spentah; mazdâi, the Bayân-yast; khsha-thremkâ, the Niyâdâm; ahurâi, the Duvâsârûgîd; à, the Hûspârâm; yim, the Sakadâm; drûgûbyô, the Gud-dév-dâd⁴; dadàd, the Hâdokht of the Dvâzdah-hâmâspah; vâstârem, the Yast⁵.

¹ Then follows a briefer account of the remaining three archangels.
² These extracts from the Persian Rivâyats are taken from MS. 29 belonging to the Bombay University Library, which is a copy, made A.D. 1679, from a long Rivâyat said to have been compiled by Barû Kâmôtûn. The same extracts are to be found in many other MSS.
³ Bahman Pûngyah of Surat, a layman whose father’s name appears to have been Isfêndûz, returned from Persia A.D. 1627, with letters and MSS. from priests in Irân in reply to letters from priests in India.
⁴ The Vendîdâd.
⁵ The order in which the Nasks are here arranged is the same as that employed in Dk. VIII, Chap. I, 12, and was in general
II. FROM THE RIVÂYAT OF KÂMAH BAHRÂH.

1. The name of the first of these books is Stôdyašt, and this is a book of thirty-three compilations (jûrat), that is, of thirty-three subdivisions (kardah). The sending down of this book was for the description of the Lord and his angels; and he made it an indispensable duty for the whole world that they learn this book by heart, and for this purpose they form an assembly. Of this total of twenty-one Names it is one Nask of the Avesta, and in that mode they recite this.

2. The name of the second is Stûdgar, and this is of twenty-two subdivisions, which God, the praise-

use 600 years ago, as we find that Rûstâm Mitâd-dâpân (the writer of the original from which K1 was copied A.D. 1324) considered the Vendîdâd as the nineteenth Nask, corresponding to the Avesta word drigubyd in the Ahunavair. In Olshausen and Mohl’s Fragmens relatifs à la religion de Zoroastre, a similar list of the Nasks is extracted from Anquetil’s Great Rivâyat, in which the order and orthography of the names of the Nasks are the same as those adopted by the later writers of the Persian Rivâyats, beginning with the Stôdyašt and ending with the Hâdokht (which makes the Vendîdâd the twentieth Nask), and reversing the order of the Kîdrast and Spentah, as well as that of the Duvâsarôgîd and Hûspârâm.

1 This writer is often quoted in the Rivâyats, but no particulars about him have been noticed. Another copy of this text occurs in MS. 225 of Ouseley’s Collection (O225, fols. 15–19) in the Bodleian Library at Oxford; Olshausen and Mohl (OM) combine the information given in II and III; and MS. 10 of Haug’s Collection in the State Library at Munich (MH10, fols. 55–57) combines II and IV.

2 See Dk. VIII, Chap. XLVI.

3 Assuming that ‘hâvēs, ‘his own,’ stands for ‘hûdâf, as in Riv. IV, 2.

4 See Dk. VIII, Chap. II, and IX, Chaps. II–XXIII.
worthy and exalted, sent down for prayer and virtue, authority and intercession, and giving union to kindred.

3. The name of the third is Vahîst-mânîthrah\(^1\), and that is of twenty-two subdivisions, which God, the praiseworthy and exalted, sent down for faith and heedfulness in religion. One is reminded, in this book, about the intention and character of Zaratust; also the goodness of the creation, and the good actions before Zaratust; and the narrative of this book extends in this manner up to the resurrection.

4. The name of the fourth is Bagh\(^2\); this book is of twenty-one parts (pârah) or subdivisions, and its explanation is about whatever is in the religion; also a declaration of God, the praiseworthy and exalted, and of whatever the Lord has made incumbent on mankind as to devotion and heedfulness, as to justice and virtue, and as to good actions, closing the path of Satan to oneself, and approaching the last abode, that is, the other world.

5. The name of the fifth is Dvâzdhah-hâmåst\(^3\), and the commentary of this book is for assistance\(^4\). This book is of thirty-two subdivisions, which God, the praiseworthy and exalted, sent down in remembrance of the beginning of the creatures of the upper world and lower world. Also a description of the whole of them, and of whatever the Most Just, the praiseworthy and exalted, has made mention in the

---

\(^1\) See Dk. VIII, Chap. III, and IX, Chaps. XXIV–XLVI.
\(^2\) Ibid. Chap. IV and Chaps. XLVII–LXVIII.
\(^3\) Ibid. Chap. V.
\(^4\) Written dar-imdâd; but, omitting the letter r, we should have 'the Dâmdâd.'
sky and the earth, water, plants, and fire, mankind and quadrupeds, grazing animals and birds, and whatever is created for the advantage and equipment of them. And like this, moreover, the resurrection, that is, the raising of the dead, their path, assembling, and dispersion, and the nature and circumstances of the resurrection, as to good doers and evil doers, through the gravity of every action which they perform as good or bad.

6. The name of the sixth is Nâdar\(^1\), and that is of thirty-five compilations which are sent down about the stars and the aspect and life of the sky. Also a description of the constellations, which are auspicious and which inauspicious, the method of these sciences and the operation of each one; whatever they say in sublime words, and whatever remains in this. They separate this from a book whose name in Arabic is Bavâšfâl\(^2\) and is about the knowledge of the stars; and in Persian the name of that book is Favâmîgasân\(^3\), and they have made much more mention of the meaning of that, and of instruction of this kind for the moderns.

7. The name of the seventh is Pâgâm\(^4\), and this is a book of twenty-two subdivisions, which God, the praiseworthy and exalted, sent down about quadrupeds and how it is necessary to render them

---

1 See Dk. VIII, Chap. VI. Singularly enough, the writers in the Rivâyats profess to know very much about this and their twelfth Nask, of neither of which the Dinkard knows anything.
2 In the different MSS. consulted, this name is four times written دینکارد and once دینکارد.
3 Variously written بیلونگسک، فراموکسان، فرامسکان، فارمکسان، خراسان.
4 See Dk. VIII, Chap. VII.
lawful, which is lawful and which unlawful, and how they slaughter them; which it is and how it is necessary to slaughter it for the sake of a season-festival, and whatever is about a season-festival; how it is necessary to celebrate it, and the person who takes the things; the expense of a season-festival and how much the reward is; how it is necessary to give to the priests, controllers (radân), and high-priests, and to any persons who are without doubts, who in speech, action, and intention are virtuous, and any persons who recite the season-festival liturgy. And everything wise is in this book; and this is incumbent on all people that they learn this, and it is the same for all till the days of the guardian spirits; and every one who possesses knowledge seeks for this, and causes intercession by mankind, for the sake of the worthy, such as clothing for a righteous gift, so that one obtains recompense in the end from heaven; and it is necessary to give this clothing for a righteous gift to relations and the worthy.

8. The name of the eighth is Ratustây, and this is of fifty subdivisions, but when, after the time of Alexander, they held an enquiry, they found no more than thirteen subdivisions. And these are about the affairs of the king and obedience, judges and whatever becomes important in holding enquiries, philosophers and devotees; about the edifices of cities, constructed and made magnificent, birds and species of animals, fish and whatever is

---

1 O225 has ḫāz̄ā, the others only ḫā; but compare Dk. VIII, Chap. VII, 5.
2 See Dk. VIII, Chap. VIII.
Ormazd's, the fowls of Ormazd besides the creatures of Aharman; likewise mountains, rivers, and land, and the like of these.

9. The name of the ninth is Baris¹, and this is a book of sixty subdivisions, but after the time of Alexander they found again no more than twelve subdivisions. And these are about descriptions of kings and judges, and an investigation of their authority and their sufficiency; also the relations of a peasant with peasants, of a king with the kingdom, of judges with a judge, and whatever remains therein. Any actions that are for every nation, how they are ordered, and the option as to their species and nature; also whatever the people know, and the advantage that arises therefrom; besides the sins of people, deceit, telling lies, and whatever remains therein.

10. The name of the tenth is Kaskastrah², and this is a book of sixty subdivisions, but after the calamity of Alexander they found again no more than fifteen. Its explanation is about the distinction (faqal) of natural wisdom and knowledge³ from acquired knowledge, that is, the knowledge born from the mother, and the knowledge and instruction they learn; one learned in purity and truthful speaking, and anything that has brought mankind with virtue out of evil, and with purity out of defilement, and this keeps the doctrine praised and great, and whoever is in the vicinity of a king, and is a peasant, becomes greater in honour and dignity; and, in like manner, any things from which advan-

¹ See Dk. VIII, Chap. IX. ² Ibid. Chap. X. ³ So in OM, MH10; but O225, B29 are corrupted.
tage arises for mankind; and, as to those who tell lies, how it occurs in the vicinity of kings and peasants.

11. The eleventh is the Vistāsp-shâh ¹, and that is of sixty compilations, but after the calamity of Alexander they found again no more than ten subdivisions. It is about Gustâsp’s acceptance of the sovereignty, and as to the religion of Zaratust—who was skilful in reciting the religion, and maintaining it and making it current in the world—he chose the religion of Zaratust.

12. The name of the twelfth is 'Hast ², and this is of twenty-two subdivisions, which are sent down in six portions (guzû). The first is about knowing the Lord, may he be honoured and glorified! and faith on account of Zaratust. The second portion is about the obedience of kings, the truth of the religion, complying with commands and resisting them, and restraining one’s hand from bad actions. The third portion is about the promise to benefactors and their recompense, evildoers and punishment, and escaping hell. The fourth portion is about the mansions of the world, agriculture, trimming trees, such as the date tree, and whatever remains thereof; the trouble and power of mankind and quadrupeds therefrom, and the obedience they exercise; they are the people to whom heedfulness is attributed, and whatever remains thereof; and the high-priests perform their duty by the law of the religion. The fifth portion is about the ranks of mankind, and

¹ See Dk. VIII, Chap. XI. In Riv. IV the surviving subdivisions are said to be only eight, so as to correspond with the sections of the extant Vistāsp Yast.

² Ibid. Chap. XII. O225 has 'Hast.
those are four ranks: the first is to maintain the king grandly, and, next, the judges and the learned in religion; the second rank is to keep watch over the cities, and to annihilate the enemy; of the third rank are writers and, secondarily, cultivators and the society of cities; of the fourth rank are the people of trade, artizans, market-dealers, and tax-gatherers, in war they appear excited, and it is requisite to give a tithe to the high-priests and king; they keep on foot the obeisances and good works of which we have spoken, and, when they act thus, they obtain great rewards in the end.

13. The name of the thirteenth is Sfend, and that is of sixty subdivisions which are sent down for the information of people who are in want of it, and for the knowledge of those persons who become covetous of virtuous actions, and act after the proceedings of the learned and people of religion, and receive advantage therefrom; also as reminders that there is advantage from the daily practice of them. And this book is our reminder about the accounts of the apostle Zaratust by religious people, and whatever is the allotment of God, the exalted; about the false speaking of the people of the world, and about the goodness of the condition of the people of the world. Also whatever becomes manifest in ten years, about the miracles of Zaratust, by the seven reports that they recite.

14. The name of the fourteenth is Girast, and this is of twenty-two subdivisions sent down for the

---

1 Nothing is said of the sixth portion, either in the Rivāyats or the Din-vigirgard.
2 See Dk. VIII, Chap. XIV.
3 Ibid. Chap. XIII. MH10 has Kirast.
understanding of the causes of mankind, which have made people manifest in the mother’s womb, and afterwards those who come out of the womb, some of whom are apostles, some kings, and some peasants; and whatever remains therein.

15. The name of the fifteenth is Baghān-yāst, and it is of seventeen subdivisions in praise of the creations of God, the praiseworthy and exalted, and the angels admitted to him; also thanksgiving for his favours, and that which he makes expedient in the religion, augments the thanksgiving for his favour, until one obtains it back in the end; likewise the appearance of the angels, and this is noble. Praise be to the sacred being, the exalted!

16. The name of the sixteenth is Niyāram, and that is of fifty-four subdivisions, about decrees as to riches, introducing inmates among outsiders, and whatever is made lawful by the exalted Lord; obtaining deliverance from hell, performing service, slavery, and the nature of wayfarers, and every one who performs service and produces remembrance for mankind; whatever is in the thoughts of mankind, and whatever is in the bodies of mankind.

17. The seventeenth is Aspāram, and this is of sixty-four subdivisions which are sent down about rituals, those which are in the book of the people of the religion, and an examination of the people’s expense they know of, for the safety and punishment they order in the world until they obtain deliverance in the end; and whatever they do lawfully and do unlawfully they know; also decrees

---

1 See Dk. VIII, Chap. XV.  
2 Ibid. Chaps. XVI–XX.  
3 Ibid. Chaps. XXVIII–XXXVII.
as to inheritances and the limits of faith, about anything which they sow and whatever they grow, and about regulating nativity; whatever one makes incumbent on memory, and whatever one makes incumbent on memoranda prepared; also how it is necessary to produce whatever tokens there are at the time of childbirth.

18. The name of the eighteenth is Duvâsarôni-gad\(^1\), and it is of sixty-five subdivisions; robbers of human beings and quadrupeds, whatever one makes incumbent that they shall give, and an enumeration of what one makes incumbent on each one of them, owing to theft and terror, obstructing the roads, the dread of the wayfarers, and the disturbance of prisons; and whatever remains therein.

19. The name of the nineteenth is Askâram\(^2\), and it is of fifty-two subdivisions, about judges and philosophers, the method of examining decrees, the knowledge of definitions, and an opinion of those in other matters.

20. The name of the twentieth is Vendîdâd\(^3\), and that is of twenty-two subdivisions, for causing the abstinence of mankind from bad actions, from the devil and disgrace, foreign magicians and those who act after their proceedings and become committers of crime; and we are told of their crime among the whole of the goodness and purity, and the whole of the wickedness and defilement, and the explanation of them.

---

\(^1\) See Dk. VIII, Chaps. XXI–XXVII. MH\(10\) has Duvâsrôb, and OM Duvâsarôgad; dûvâ standing for dûbâ, or zûbâ, the traditional reading of the Zvâris gânâbâ, 'a thief.'

\(^2\) Ibid. Chaps. XXXVIII–XLIII.

\(^3\) Ibid. Chap. XLIV.
21. The name of the twenty-first is Hâdokht\(^1\), and this is a book of thirty subdivisions, about the manner of bringing together and the abundance of miracles, also the excellence and connections of them. And the accursed devil goes far from every one who recites this book together with the Yast\(^2\), and this person is near to the rank (pâtgâh) of a sacred being, and his sins become pure; also in this book the accursed devil becomes cursed, and God knows it.

III. FROM THE RIVÂYAT OF NARÊMÂN HÔSHANG\(^3\).

1. Again, that which is in Pahlavi characters is clear in that manner, that in the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô there are twenty-one vocables, that is, twenty-one words, and beneath each word there is an equivalent meaning; it is also known to the devout that there are twenty-one Nasks of the Avesta.

2. The first Nask is of thirty-three subdivisions, that is, it is of thirty-three compilations, and its name is Stôd-yast, that is, ‘producing the praise of the sacred beings;’ and the words of the book have come down for the majesty of the sacred beings and angels, and they recite them in that manner; and in the presence of every high-priest of the pure ritual, who rightly understands its Avesta and Zand,

---

\(^1\) See Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV. O\(\text{225}\) has Hâdôkht.

\(^2\) The Yasna, or Stôd-yast of § 1.

\(^3\) Narêmân Hôshang of Bharôk returned from Persia, A.D. 1478, with letters from priests in Iran in reply to those from priests in India. His account of the Nasks is more abbreviated than the others, and appears to be derived from a Pahlavi original.
as he recites *them* correctly on three occasions, the angels come down; of this there is no doubt.

3. The name of the second is Istd̄dgār, and it is of twenty-two subdivisions; its statements are for the admonition of the people.

4. The name of the third Nask is Vahist-mānthrah, and it is of twenty-two subdivisions; its purport is to bring confirmation of the religion.

5. The name of the fourth is Bagh, and this is of twenty-one subdivisions; its explanation is about heedfulness.

6. The name of the fifth is Dvâzdhâ-hâmâst, and it is of thirty-two subdivisions; its explanation is in remembrance of the upper world, and about the lower world.

7. The name of the sixth is Nādar, and that is of thirty-five compilations; its explanation is about the interpretation of the world of the stars, the planets and constellations, and understanding the arrangement of the sky.

8. The seventh is the Pâgâm; this Nask is of twenty-two subdivisions, and its explanation is with regard to lawful and unlawful animals, whenever they slaughter *them* for the sake of solemnizing a season-festival; and, again, whatever is manifold reward and good work; also about the reason of the five days of the guardian spirits, which they call the select, *and* wherefore they are appointed.

9. The name of the eighth is Ratustāyī, and it is of fifty subdivisions, of which, after *the time of* Alexander, they preserved and found no more than thirteen subdivisions; its explanation is about maintaining devotion, and *of* obedience to kings, high-priests, and governors.
10. The name of the ninth is Baris, and this Nask was of sixty subdivisions, but after the time of Alexander they found no more than twelve subdivisions; its explanation is of those who are kings and high-priests, leaders and princes, judges and messengers, what is the nature of the authority of peasants and princes, and what kind of towns they possess.

11. The name of the tenth is Kassrōb, and this Nask has been of sixty subdivisions, but after the time of Alexander they found again no more than fifteen subdivisions; its explanation is about the distinction of natural wisdom and knowledge from acquired knowledge; that which makes mankind pure from defilement, and the usage that maintains the proceedings of mankind.

12. The eleventh is the Nask of Vistāsp-shāh, and it has been of sixty subdivisions, but after the time of Alexander they found again no more than ten subdivisions, and their statements are with regard to king Gustāsp making the religion current.

13. The name of the twelfth is Ḫaṣṭ, and it is of twenty-two subdivisions; its explanation is about enquiry of wisdom, maintaining devotion in the world, and the punishment for every sin such as they supply it.

14. The name of the thirteenth is Sfend, and it is of sixty subdivisions; its explanation is of that which they demonstrate as miracles from this Nask, that every requirement comes to pass which every high-priest—who shall recite this Nask for several days with sevenfold voice, according to that which has been written—shall solicit for the world.

15. The name of the fourteenth is Girāṣṭ, and
this is of twenty-two subdivisions, its explanation is about the creation of the people of mankind in the day of the Eternal, until the last day of the resurrection occurs; their becoming manifest in the mother's womb, and why some die in the womb and some are born, some are kings and some are peasants.

16. The name of the fifteenth is Baghân-yast, and this is of seventeen subdivisions; its explanation is about the praise of the angels admitted, and, as to the servants of the Most Glorious, at what period they each become manifest, and what duty they perform, till the resurrection.

17. The name of the sixteenth is Niyâram, and this is of fifty-four subdivisions; its explanation is about decrees as to traders, covenants and decisions, that is, awards with regard to the creatures and how they act.

18. The name of the seventeenth is Aspâram, and this is of sixty-four subdivisions; its explanation in these is well-directed and a good thing; and whatever remains therein.

19. The eighteenth is the Duvâsarôgad, and it is of sixty-five subdivisions; its explanation is that which is a statement on the subject of Khêdyôdath, that is, forming a union with each other by relations and those next one another.

20. The name of the nineteenth is Askâram, and it is of fifty-two subdivisions; its explanation is about the occurrence of the production of the renovation of the universe, up to the resurrection and future existence which are the converting of the dead alive, Aharman and the demons becoming extinct, and the circumstances of those events.
21. The name of the twentieth is Gud-dēv-dād\textsuperscript{1}, and that is of twenty-two subdivisions; its explanation is of causing the abstinence of mankind from pollution, that is, from defilement, and the assault of evil peculiarly owing to the great; from the sight of a menstruous woman, and the like of these, whenever harm and injury happen to the creation.

22. The name of the twenty-first is Hádokhāt, and this is a book of thirty subdivisions; its explanation is such that the accursed devil goes far from every one who shall recite this book together with the Yast, and this person becomes near unto the sacred being, the praiseworthy and exalted, and in such manner as he is near the sacred being in like manner he obtains rank.

23. And the purpose of this being written is so, that it is known to these humble individuals\textsuperscript{2} in this manner, that these books are of those tendencies, and it has been written by those devout ones\textsuperscript{3} in such manner that among us no one is able to read the Pahlavi characters, and the interpretation of these Nasks is in Pahlavi; any one who does not know the Pahlavi characters is high-priest and is not able to demonstrate the miracles of the religion, nor that which was written with regard to the commentary of these Nasks.'

\textsuperscript{1} Pāz. gud is a translation of Av. vi which is merely transliterated by vīk in Vīk-dēv-dād, the original form of Vendīdād.

\textsuperscript{2} The priests in Irān who supplied this information to Narēmān.

\textsuperscript{3} The priests in India who had applied for the information, using the words about to be quoted.
IV. FROM THE RIVĀYAT OF DASTŪR BARZŪ
QIVĀMU-D-DĪN.

1. The reply about the Nasks of the Avesta. The Yathâ-ahû-vairyô is of twenty-one words, and the Avesta is similarly of twenty-one Nasks.

2. The name of the first Nask is Stôd-yast, and that book is of thirty-three compilations, that is, it is of thirty-three subdivisions, and the description of the Lord and the angels is in it.

3. The name of the second Nask is Stûdgar, and that is of twenty-two subdivisions; its description is about prayer, virtuous authority, and intercession.

4. The third Nask is the Vahist-mânthräh, and that is of twenty-two subdivisions about faith and heedfulness; and one is reminded [&c., very nearly the same as in II, 5].

5. The fourth Nask is the Bagh, and that is of twenty-one subdivisions; its explanation is about the religion and its intention, and whatever the Lord has made incumbent on mankind as to devotion and heedfulness; also about closing the path of Satan to oneself, and approaching the last abode.

6. The name of the fifth book is Dvâzdañ-ñamâst, and that is of thirty-two subdivisions in remembrance of the beginning [&c., very nearly the same as in II, 5].

7. The name of the sixth Nask is Nâdar, and that is of thirty-five compilations about the stars

---

1 This Dastûr appears to have been one of several residing at Nausârî A.D. 1614–1646; his father's name is more usually written Qavâmu-d-dîn, and his account of the Nasks closely resembles that of Kâmah Bahrah.
and the disposition and life of the sky. [&c., very nearly the same as in II, 6 to] Bavâfstâl, and in Persian the name of that book is Favâmsa'hân, that is, instruction arises therefrom for the moderns.

8. The name of the seventh Nask is Pâgam, and that is of twenty-two subdivisions; its description is about quadrupeds and how they are made lawful, which is lawful [&c., as in II, 7, to] for the sake of a season-festival, and how it is necessary to perform whatever is in a season-festival; the expense of a season-festival [&c., as in II, 7, to] high-priests, and a description of the clothing for a righteous gift, so that they may obtain recompense in the end from heaven.

9. The eighth Nask is the Ratustâyî, and that is of fifty subdivisions; its purport is about the affairs of the king and obedience, cities constructed and made magnificent, birds, animals, and fish, and whatever is Ormazd’s, besides the creatures of Aharman; [&c., as in II, 8].

10. The name of the ninth book is Baris, and that is of sixty subdivisions, and about descriptions of kings and judges, and an investigation of their authority; also the relations of a peasant [&c., as in II, 9, to] deceit, and telling lies.

11. The name of the tenth book is Kâskanîz, and that is of sixty subdivisions, about the advantage (faṣl) of natural wisdom and knowledge as distinguished from acquired knowledge, that is, the knowledge born from the mother, and the knowledge which they learn by instruction; doctrine about purity and truth, and anything [&c., as in II, 10, to] how it occurs.

12. The name of the eleventh Nask is Vîstâsp,
and that is of sixty compilations, *but* after the calamity of Alexander, when they sought *them* again, they found no more *than* eight subdivisions, and those are about Gustrasp's acceptance [*&c., as in II, 11*].

13. The name of the twelfth book is *Hast*, *and* that is of twenty-two fargards in six portions. The first portion is about knowing the Lord, may he be honoured and glorified! and faith in the mission of Zarathust and any duties which are ordered in a book of the religion. The second portion is about the obedience of kings, the truth of the religion, and complying *with* commands. The third portion is about the promise *to* benefactors and their recompense, the punishment of evil-doers, and escaping from hell. The fourth portion is about the mansions of the world, agriculture and trimming trees, the power of mankind and quadrupeds arisen therefrom, the obedience they exercise, and whatever duty they perform for the high-priests of the religion. The fifth portion [*&c., as in II, 12, to*] the obeisances, so that they obtain great rewards in the end.

14. The name of the thirteenth book is *Sfend*, *and* that is of sixty subdivisions, for the information of people who are in want of it, and for their knowledge; also for any persons who become covetous as to virtuous actions, *and* proceed after the footsteps of the learned and people of religion, and receive advantage therefrom; and as reminders of the celestial sphere that there is advantage from the daily practice of them. Also about the accounts of the evil of mankind, by the apostle Zarathust, about the false speaking [*&c., as in II, 13*].

15. The fourteenth Nask is the *Girast*, *and* that
is of twenty-two subdivisions, for the understanding of the causes of mankind [&c., as in II, 14].

16. The name of the fifteenth book is Baghân-yast, and that is of seventeen subdivisions, in praise of the Lord, the praiseworthy and exalted, and the admitted angels; also thanksgiving for the favours due to that which he makes expedient in the religion, and the thanksgiving for his favour lasts until one obtains it back in the end; likewise the appearance of the angels, and these are nobles for the praise of the sacred being.

17. The name of the sixteenth book is Niyâram, and that is of fifty-four subdivisions, about decrees as to riches, bringing abroad, and whatever is made lawful; obtaining deliverance from hell, performing service, slavery, and the nature of wayfarers; whatever is in the thoughts of mankind, and whatever is in the bodies of mankind.

18. The name of the seventeenth book is Aspâram, and that is of sixty subdivisions about rituals [&c., very nearly the same as in II, 17].

19. The name of the eighteenth Nask is Duvâsrôb, and that is of sixty-five subdivisions, about robbers (duvâyân?) of human beings [&c., very nearly the same as in II, 18].

20. The name of the nineteenth Nask is Askâram, and that is of fifty-two fargards [&c., very nearly the same as in II, 19].

21. The name of the twentieth Nask is Vîndâd, and that is of twenty-two subdivisions [&c., very nearly the same as in II, 20]. And as to this book Vîndâd, which is the twentieth book of the Nasks, out of the twenty-one Nasks of the Avesta, we and you are now using it in the ceremonial, and when,
after the calamity of Alexander, they sought for the books again, they found a portion of each Nask, but did not find any Nask in completeness except the Vindâd which they found complete.

22. The name of the twenty-first Nask is Hâdokht, and that is of thirty subdivisions, about the manner of bringing together and the many miracles, and their excellences and connections; and in this book the accursed devil becomes cursed and becomes annihilated.

23. At present, since the Nasks have not remained perfect in the midst of us, it is not possible to solemnize them, because Alexander the Rûman\(^1\) carried off a rough draft, in Rûman characters, of those of the twenty-one Nasks of the Avesta which were about the stars and medicine, and repeatedly burnt the books of the Avesta, so that the soul of Alexander burns in hell; and after his calamity, every one of the high-priests, in council together, preserved something of the Avesta in his mind, and the aggregate has disclosed the books of the Yasna (yat straight), Vîsperad, Vendidâd, Fravash, Khûrdah Avesta, Darrûn, Ahrîngân, Kidâh Vagarkardan, and Bundahis, which they wrote correctly; as to the remainder (tatammah) which they did not write, it was on this account, that they did not preserve it correctly in their minds. And the expectation, descended from the midst of them in the court of Ormazd and the archangels, is thus, that Vargâvand, Peshôtan, and Hushêdar\(^2\) will arrive in haste for the manifestation of the religion, and the goodness

\(^1\) See Dk. Bk. IV, 24 n.
\(^2\) The three chief producers of the future and final triumph of the religion (see Byt. III, 13–52).
of the religion again assumes splendour from a new head; the good and those of the good religion become cheerful and happy, and the bad and wicked become extinct and disappearing. Amen.

FROM THE DĪN-VIGIRGARD¹.

In the name and for the propitiation of the creator Aûharmazd these several commentaries (zand) are published from revelation (dênô).

The names of the twenty-one Nasks.

1. One is this that is Yathâ, that is, the Stôd-yast, and the subdivisions of this Stôd-yast are thirty-three. In that Nask are the blessing and propitiation of Aûharmazd and the archangels, and they are for the utterance of praise. Aûharmazd sends this Nask into the world, which is suitable for every one, and whoever has committed this Nask to memory recites it. And to every one who, being a high-priest, becomes a reciter of both the Avesta and Zand, and shall recite that Nask three times with correctness, the archangels will come near; as to this they know it without doubt.

2. The second Nask is that which is Ahû, the Stûdgar, and the subdivisions of that Nask are

¹ A Rivâyat in Pahlavi writing, but its language is more Persian than Pahlavi; it commences with this account of the Nasks, combining most of the information contained in the four preceding extracts from the Persian Rivâyats. For this text the translator is indebted to a MS. written A.D. 1813 and belonging to Dastûr Hôshangji Jâmâspji of Poona; a previous translation, in Haug’s Essays, was from a transliteration of the same text prepared by Haug some 25 years ago.
twenty-two. In it are the giving of advice to mankind, the performance of prayer and virtue, the doing of good actions, intercession, producing union among relations, and such-like topics.

3. The third is Vairyô, the Vahist-mânsar, and the subdivisions of this Nask are twenty-two. In this is the topic of those who are becoming without doubt as to the religion of Mazda-worship, causing heedfulness, and thinking about the religion; also the production of the benediction and attributes (sîfât) of the blessedness of Zaratûst, every action which was declared virtuous before Zaratûst, and all actions which have to occur after Zaratûst until the future existence; the benefit of his world, and such-like topics.

4. The fourth Nask is this which is Athâ, the Bagh, and the subdivisions of that Nask are twenty-one. In this the topic is this which is the purpose of the religion of Mazda-worship, and the ideas which Aûharmazd caused to be taught unto mankind; the exercise of reverence, heedfulness, adjudication, and justice; the performance of the proper duty of decision, doing good actions (kâr-î khvair), closing the way of Aharman into oneself, attaining unto the spiritual existence for oneself, and such as are like these.

5. The fifth Nask is Ratus, the Dvâzdákhômâst, and the subdivisions of that Nask are thirty-two. In that Nask are all the topics of the spiritual existence and the heavenly state, virtue and vileness, the material existence of this worldly state, about the sky and about the earth, and everything which Aûharmazd produced and which exists in the water, fire, and plants; human beings and
quadrupeds, grazing animals and birds, and every-
thing which is similarly produced from any (aëk) of
them, and the characteristics of all things. Secondly,
that which is the production of the resurrection and
future existence, and the coming together and
separation at the Kinvad pass; the recompense
for the doers of good works and the punishment
for sinners occur through the future existence, and
such-like topics as these are.

6. The sixth Nask is Ashâd, the Nâdûr, and
the subdivisions of that are thirty-five. In this
Nask are the purposes of the stars (nuğûm), the
zodiac, and the planets, the goodness and evil of
each constellation, and the movement of all the
planets in the signs of the zodiac (bûrg) and lunar
mansions (mahîgân nuğûm). They have trans-
lated it into Arabic and Persian, and the name
they have adopted for this book is Bûtâl, and in
Persian the name which is appointed for it is
Kapâmâgân.

7. The seventh is this which is Kâd, and is the
Pâgâm, and its subdivisions are twenty-two. In
this Pâgâm Nask is the topic of the slaughtering
of quadrupeds and sheep, how they are to be
slaughtered, of which among the quadrupeds the
command is that it is allowable to eat, and of which
kind the eating is not allowable; how he who
slaughters shall strike at the time of the expiring of
the sheep. The more expenditure (sarat) one
makes upon a season-festival, so much the more is
the reward; how much it is expedient to bestow
upon the Dastûrs, Môbads, and Hërbads, and upon
the unwavering practisers of good works in the
good religion; what merit accrues to every one
who celebrates a season-festival and consecrates clothing for a soul, and who, for that reason, is in the supreme heaven in the last times; and it is necessary to give clothing to relations and the righteous as a righteous gift, and to exercise mediation on the part of the righteous; the five greater and lesser days of the guardian spirits, and the practice of good works on these ten days is enjoined in this Nask. It is requisite for all people that they shall read this book with good and wise understanding, that all may become aware of its topics.

8. The eighth Nask is that which is Hâkâ, the Ratustâlh, and the subdivisions of that Nask were fifty when the accursed Alexander had the Nasks burnt up, but after that, as they sought out this Nask, only thirteen of those subdivisions came to hand, and no more remained of those previously existing. In this Nask are the reasons of performing service, giving orders, and remaining at the command of kings and at the command of high-priests and judges; the adornment-preserving\(^1\) purpose of cities is declared, the command of religion, and things made magnificently (agêzîhâ), grazing animals, birds, cattle, and fish; everything which is a production of Aûharmazd or Aharman; all the purposes of all the seas, mountains, and lands; and matters similar to such as are mentioned.

9. The ninth Nask is this which is Vangheus, and is the Baris; the subdivisions of that Nask were first sixty, but after the accursed Alexander only twelve remained. As to the information in this Nask, just as there is the sovereignty for those

\(^1\) Assuming that frêovânîk, which might mean 'important,' stands for pardasânîk.
who are kings, so there is the usage which it is necessary for them to practise, and the command of the sentence of judges of the religion such as is necessary to be executed; the custody and protection for the world, and making each new city flourishing; also the reasons of people, who are false-speaking, sinners, and such-like, are mentioned in this Nask.

10. The tenth Nask is that which is Dazdâ, the Kassrôb, and the subdivisions of that Nask were formerly sixty, but after the accursed Alexander only fifteen subdivisions remained. In that Nask the topic is that which is wisdom and knowledge, the reason of its being brought forth from the mother, and the teaching of wisdom by demonstration, the performance of purification and the speaking of truth; bringing people from vileness unto virtue, and bringing them from defilement and pollution unto purity; greatness and good progeny arise for people near kings, and how the habit of people telling lies, to others and to kings, arises; and such-like as these.

11. The eleventh Nask was Mananghô, the Vîstâspâd, and the subdivisions of that Nask were sixty, but after the accursed Alexander only ten remained. In this Nask is the topic of the sovereignty of Gûstâsp, and Zaratûst the Spîtâmân, having brought the religion from Aûharmaezd, king Gustâsp accepted it, and made it current in the world; and such-like as these.

12. The twelfth is Shyaothananâm, the Khûst, and the subdivisions of that Nask were first twenty-two, but after the accursed Alexander only six remained. Among those six, which are the first
portions ($\text{zizp} = \text{Ar. gizb}$), the topics in one portion are the attributes ($\text{sif}\dot{\text{t}}$) of the creator $\text{A}\text{harmasn}$, and the understanding of them; also being without doubt about the religion of Zaratust, the Spitamân, all the duty and good works which are prescribed in the religion, and such-like. In the second portion is the reason of service for kings, the truth of the religion, submission to all its commands, and withholding one's hand from evil actions, so that it has become far from mischief. In the third portion is that which is the debt for performers of virtuous position, the advantage of good works, the final release from hell, and such-like. The fourth is the reason of the creation of the world, the practice of agriculture, the cultivation of trees, the date-tree and every fruit-tree; whence arises most strength for people and animals; being under the command of the practisers of good works and the virtuous, and being under the command of the high-priests, and such-like as they are. In the fifth portion all the specimens of mankind are mentioned: they who are of great knowledge, who are kings, judges, and the sages of the religion; in the second specimen are they that have to keep watch over all the cities, and to make the enemy confounded; in the third specimen are these whose object one mentions in the term 'husbandmen;' the fourth specimen which one mentions are these who are the greatly-skilled and sitsers in the market, grandiloquent to repel loss, giving one-tenth to the high-priest and king, and offering praise on hardened knees, the last reward of which is that one obtains in the spiritual existence.

13. The thirteenth Nask is that which is $\text{Anghesu}$,
the Spend; its subdivisions are sixty which are precious unto people of pedigrees (mâyagân) and those who possess much avidity for virtuous actions and have to proceed in the footsteps (pâî-râpîh) of the great and religious; also accounts of Zaratûst, who is born from the womb of Dûghdâvô, till ten years of age. Every Dastûr and Môbad shall recite this Nask in purity, and with ease and the proper words, for several days, and shall obtain every desire of his own, or any wish which he claims on account of (barâ râî-î) others.

14. The fourteenth Nask is that which is Mazdâi; the name Zirast is appointed for it, and the subdivisions of that Nask are twenty-two. In like manner this Nask is sent by Aûharmazd, which is to make manifest to the people what is the purpose of that science through which mankind are born from the womb of a mother, how many individuals among them will die away from the womb, and how many individuals will live; how many persons and people among them become kings, and how many, meanwhile (fîmâ), exercise apostleship, that is, the high-priesthood; how many are the grandest of people, and how many are the meanest of mankind, and in what mode this occurs; from first to last, the time people are born and all those topics are in this Nask.

15. The fifteenth is Khshathremkâ, and the name of that Nask is Baghân-yašt, and its subdivisions are seventeen. In it are the topics of Aûharmazd the lord and the archangels, the knowledge of their attributes, and the service and sublimity of Aûharmazd; at what time every Gâh occurs until the future existence, and what duty is
performed; offering praise for every benefit from Aûharmazd, and obtaining benefit from him; the appearance of the archangels, and knowing what is such-and-such an appearance of such-and-such an archangel in the future existence. This Nask used in the service of Aûharmazd and the archangels is very excellent.

16. The sixteenth is Ahurâi, and they have appointed it the name Niyârâm; the subdivisions of that Nask are fifty-four, about the reason of preserving wealth and placing it out, agreement and measure by the cubit and handful; everything the creator Aûharmazd has ordained as uncontaminated, release from hell, and how to walk in the path of reverence and worship; what is in the mind of man, and what is everything in the body of man; and such-like as these that are mentioned.

17. The seventeenth Nask is that which is Å, and the name they have appointed for it is Aspârûm; one mentions sixty-five subdivisions of it, and in this Nask is every religious topic which all persons well understand, and the punishment suffered by sinners, which they receive in their last career; everything which is uncontaminated is allowable, and what is not uncontaminated is not allowable; the stars preside over the destiny of mankind; and such-like as these.

18. The eighteenth Nask is that which is Yim, that has the name Duvasarôzad appointed for it, and the subdivisions of it are likewise sixty-five. In this Nask are the reasons of next-of-kin marriage, forming connections among relations, and such-like as these.

19. The nineteenth Nask is Drigubyô, the name
of which is Askâram, and is of fifty-two stanzas (vēkastihā), about the giving of orders, exercise of authority, and practising wisdom in everything; producing the resurrection, by which every person passed away is made living again, and the malformations of Aharman and the demons are withered away; and such-like.

20. The twentieth Nask is that which is Dadād, that they call by its name of Vendīdād, where the meaning of this is 'the law against the demons,' which is of twenty-two fargards. The topic of it is what preserves mankind from evil and pollution, and will restrain them from the menstrual, dead matter, pestilence, and running sores. Of all the twenty-one Nasks the Nask of 'the law against the demons' has alone remained entire; while several remain scattered by the wickedness (sūmīh) of the accursed Alexander, this Nask of the Vendīdād remained in hand, and owing to its elucidation the religion of Mazda-worship exists now.

21. The twenty-first Nask is Vāstārem, whose name one calls Hādōkht, and its fargards are said to be thirty. In it are much excellence and many miracles, and the vile Aharman becomes far from every one who recites this Hādōkht, and it makes him extinct, and the reciter comes near unto Aūhar-mazd and becomes purified from sin.

22. Now, alas! if all these Nasks do not remain, so that one is not able to solemnize them, that is for this reason, that the accursed Alexander, the Arūman, took several transcripts—in the Arūman language and characters (hurūfō)—of any among those twenty-one Nasks which were about the stars and medicine, and burnt up the other Nasks; and
the soul of the accursed Alexander, the Rûman, will remain wretched and burnt in gloomy hell till the resurrection, owing to his own vileness which injured the religion of Zaratûst.

23. After the villany of Alexander, an assemblage of several high-priests, who were sages of the religion, brought the Avesta of all of them from various places, and made a collection of so much Avesta and Zand as the sacred (yastô) Yasna, Vîsperad, Vendidâd, Ardâ-fravard, and other scraps of the Avesta, the Darûn, Áfrîngân, and the Commands of the religion; all these were written, and the Bûndahis book was correctly written; and all such, among them, as were not written, which did not come into the thoughts of the sages, departed, on that account, from the midst of the many topics of revelation.

24. Just as it is said that there were twenty-one Nasks, there are first, in seven Nasks, the topics of the religion of Maeda-worship, in the second seven Nasks are the topics of medical practice, and in the third seven Nasks the topics and capabilities of the stars are mentioned.
NASK-FRAGMENTS

THAT ARE

STILL EXTANT.
EXTANT FRAGMENTS.

I. Sûdkar Nask.

Dk. IX, Chap. II, 3–15, referring to the useful effect of reciting the Yathâ-ahû-vairyô as a spell, on various occasions, is quoted in Sls. XIX, 1–14, and also in the Persian Rivâyat of Bahman Pûngyah, with some slight variations.

Dk. IX, Chap. VI, 2, refers to the passage thus mentioned in Sls. IX, 2, 3:—'The priest who passes away in an out-district (aûzdehîkîh) thou hast considered as desolate (vîrân); and there is a high-priest who is of a different opinion, there is one who says it is as a non-Irânian (anâîrân) country. It is declared that, when a supreme high-priest (zarâtûstrotûm) passes away in an out-district, an apostate will be born in that dwelling, and this calamity is only (aêvâkê) mentioned as to the supreme high-priest.'

Dk. IX, Chap. VIII, 1–6, refers to Zaratûst's

---

1 Only the Pahlavi versions of these fragments are extant, unless it be otherwise stated.

2 The detailed account of this Nask, in Dk. IX, contains about 5,400 Pahlavi words, and, if these represent the same proportion of original text as those in the accounts of the first three fargârd of the Bakô Nask do, they would indicate about 4,700 words of Avesta text and 10,500 of Pahlavi version as the original extent of this Nask.

3 See p. 418, n. 3.

4 This translation has been corrected in accordance with p. 178, n. 2.
prophetic vision of the golden, silver, steel, and mingled-iron periods of his millennium, quoted at length in Byt. I, 1-5, with variations indicative of the date of the Bahman Yast being later than that of this Nask.

Dk. IX, Chap. X, 3, refers to the detailed account of the seven most heinous evil-doers, quoted in Dd. LXXII, 3-9.

Dk. IX, Chap. XV, refers to the supplication of the soul of Keresâsp for admittance into heaven, on account of his heroic deeds, quoted at length in the Dâdîstân Pahlavi Rivâyat and the Persian Sad-dar-band-i Hûsh (see S. B. E., vol. xviii, pp. 373-381).

Dk. IX, Chap. XVIII, 2, refers to the passage thus quoted in Sls. X, 8:—‘For in the Stûdgar it is said, concerning those who have unlawfully slaughtered animals, the punishment is such that each hair of those animals becomes like a sharp dagger (têkh), and he who is unlawfully a slaughterer is slain.’

No allusion has been noticed in Dk. IX to another passage which is thus quoted in Sls. XII, 32:—‘In the Stûdgar it says thus: “What prepares sneezing? that is, through what process (kâr) does it come?” And Aûharmazd spoke thus: “Hungry living, O Zaratûst! moreover, the remedy for its existence is the Ahunavair, O Zaratûst! and the Ashem (ahtarâyih).”’

II. VARSTMÁNSAR NASK.¹

No quotation from this Nask has yet been noticed.

¹ The detailed account of this Nask, in Dk. IX, contains about
III. BAKÖ NASK.

Dk. IX, Chaps. XLVII—XLIX, describe the contents of the first three fargardâs of this Nask, which are still extant in the Avesta text of Yas. XIX—XXI, whose Pahlavi version may be translated as follows:—

Pahl. Yas. XIX = Bakô I.

The beginning of the Ahunavair of the Bakân.

1. Zarâtûst enquired of Aûharmazd thus: 'O Aûharmazd, propitious spirit, creator of the world of embodied existences, and righteous! (2) which were those words, O Aûharmazd! that were spoken by thee for me, (3) before the sky, before the water, before the earth, before the (well-yielding) cattle, before the plants, before the fire which is Aûhar-

9,600 Pahlavi words, and, if these represent the same proportion of original text as those in the accounts of the first three fargardâs of the Bakô Nask do, they would indicate about 8,300 words of Avesta text and 18,500 of Pahlavi version as the original extent of this Nask.

1 As the detailed account of the first three fargardâs of this Nask, in Dk. IX, contains about 840 Pahlavi words, and represents about 730 words of the original Avesta text in Yas. XIX—XXI, with 1630 in its Pahlavi version, it may be assumed that the detailed account of the whole Nask, extending to nearly 11,000 words, indicates about 9,500 words of Avesta text and 21,200 of Pahlavi version as the total extent of this Nask.

2 The heading of this first hâ is given in J2, Pt4, Mf4 which have been consulted by the translator in addition to Spiegel's text representing K5. The division into sections is that adopted by Spiegel, and the passages in parentheses have no equivalents in the Avesta text.

3 Sp., J2 insert 'good and.'

4 J2 adds '(this is, Aûharmazd the creator is righteous; the rest is through the praise which says the creator is righteous);' compare Pahl. Vend. II, 1.
mazd's son, before the righteous man (Gâyômard), before the demons, (who remain) noxious creatures, and mankind, before all embodied existence (the creation of sovereignty), and before all the excellence created by Aûharmazd, (which is owing to) the manifestation of righteousness?'

4. And Aûharmazd spoke thus: 'They were the apportionment of the Ahunavair, O Spitâmân Zaratûst! (that spirit who would make the religion current, who has formed that religion from the Ahunavair) which was spoken out by me for thee; (5) (that is,) before the sky, (â€œ, as in § 3).

6. 'Whoever chants that apportionment of the Ahunavair, O Spitâmân Zaratûst! without talking (that is, he does not speak out in the middle of any of its difficult Avesta) and not without anxiety (that he may slumber), (7) it is like a hundred above any other authority of those of the Gâthas, when one chants them without talking, or not without anxiety; (thus it becomes fit for the ceremonial).

8. Whoever chants it while talking, or without anxiety, (thus it becomes fit for the ceremonial,) it is like ten above any other authority of those of the Gâthas.

9. 'Whoever in that embodied existence of mine, O Spitâmân Zaratûst! recalls the apportionment of

---

1 Assuming that the khrafaqstarâšô, or khrafaqéstârâšô, of Pt4, Mf4, stands for khrafaqstarânô, as required by the Avesta text. Sp., J2 have 'who were confounded by wisdom.'

2 So in Pt4, Mf4; but Sp., J2 may mean 'he strictly does not speak out in the middle of its Avesta.'

3 All the MSS. have 'while talking, or without anxiety,' as in § 8; but this does not correspond with the Avesta text. The repetition of the parenthetical clause, about the ceremonial, which also occurs in § 8, is likewise suspicious.
the Ahunavair, (that is, seeks for it,) and, further, mutters that which he recalls, (that is, shall accomplish it easily,) and, further, chants that which he mutters, (that is, fully understands its ritual,) and, further, reverences that which is chanted, (that is, shall celebrate the ceremony,) (10) his soul I pass on to the best existence, three times over the Kinvad bridge, I who am Aûharmaez, (that is, on that day in which he shall faithfully provide the ceremony, it shall lead his soul three times unto the world yonder, and shall cause its happiness therein,) (11) to the best existence, the best righteousness, and the best light. 12. Also whoever in that embodied existence of mine, O Spitâmân Zaratûst! mutters the apportionment of the Ahunavair, (that is, shall accomplish it easily,) and drops, (that is, cuts off,) (13) either as much as a half, or as much as a third, or as much as a fourth, or as much as a fifth, (at a fifth the foundation of the sin is laid, at a half it becomes quite complete, and when he shall cut off the whole it is a Tanâpûhar sin,) (14) I twirl away the soul of him, I who am Aûharmaez, from the best existence, (that is, I would put it out;) (15) to such an extent and width is the twirling away as that of this earth, and even so the extent of this earth is as much as its width.'

1. Pt4, Mf4 vâvar; Sp., J2 have va-aêvar, 'and certainly.'
2. So in Pt4, Mf4; Sp., J2 have 'I would,' which may be right.
3. Pt4, Mf4 aparôdînêd; Sp., J2 have barâ ãpahlûkînêd, 'puts quite aside.'
5. Only in J2.
6. See Dk. VIII, Chap. XX, 65.
sessing an Ahu and possessing a Ratu, (from which this is manifest, namely, the possession of a ruler and high-priest. 17. This, too, is said, that it was) before that sky was created, before the water, before the earth, before the plants, (18) before the creation of the four-legged ox (which was the sole-created ox), (19) before the creation of the two-legged righteous man (who was Gâyômard), (20) and before that sun of definite form (the body of the sun) was created as an acquirement of the archangels. 21. It was (likewise) proclaimed to me by the spirituality of propitiousness, (it likewise became possible for the spirituality of propitiousness to say (22) what was said to Zaratûst,) concerning the whole material existence of the righteous who are, who have been, and who will arise, (23) as to the progress of work, (that is, while they shall perform for it that which is specified by it, and good works shall arise through them,) that this work, among the living, is for Aûharmazd, (that is, that which they may perform, suitable for Aûharmazd, they shall so perform as is declared by this fargard).

24. This, too, is the most expressive (most in effect) of those statements which were ever spoken forth (till now), or which one speaks forth (at present), or shall speak forth (even henceforth); (25) for it is through such a statement (such in effect) as that, if the whole embodied existence learnt it and, having learnt, (that is, they shall accomplish it easily,) they retain it, (that is, they

1 Ja omits güftô, 'what was said.'
2 Pahl. avô kevan in Pt4.
3 'Or is spoken forth' in Pt4, Mf4.
4 'Have learnt that which they should have learnt' in Pt4, Mf4.
should rely upon it,) abstinence from passing away would be quite masterful, (that is, they become immortal). 27. This, too, is our saying spoken forth, (preserved among the revelation mentioned in this fargard,) which is learnt, (that is, they shall accomplish it easily,) and one recites, (that is, he utters it in a ceremonial,) thus for any one whatever of the beings whose righteousness is best, (that is, should he do it for a ceremonial, he becomes fit for it; it is when he utters this in a ceremonial that his soul becomes immortal).

28. As it is here spoken forth, (that a ruler and high-priest are to be maintained; as these things are so spoken, and as this law is so,) (29) even when it gives him an Ahu and a Ratu, (that is, it gives up his person to the priestly assembly,) so it is thereby taught to him that the thought of Aûharmaâd is the creature with the first thinking, (that is, the Gàthic lore is set going by him;) (30) whatever teaches this (is the person of him who is king of kings, who) is the greatest (of men) of every description, (that is, it possesses a person in the king of kings;) and so it is taught that the creatures are for him, (where the Gàthic lore is set going by him).

31. Whatever is a good emanation for Aûharmaâd, (that is, has an origin in his personality,) is through the word vângheus, (which in the division becomes the beginning of) the third assertion here, whose recital is 'he gives through Vohûman,' (that is, the recitation which he utters properly is accomplished by him,) and, besides, here is that which

---

1 J₂ has 'given.'  
2 Pt₄, Mf₄ insert 'very.'  
3 So in J₂, Pt₄, Mf₄.  
4 Pt₄, Mf₄, 'the greatest of all men.'  
5 See p. 458, n. 3.
Vohûman has taught, (that is, the reward and recompense which they give Vohûman, they attribute also to him;) (32) whatever is a further indication by Vohûman, (that is, anything which he may accomplish properly as a token, and is performed by him,) became so through this summing up (that is, its end occurred) in shyaothona nanãm; (33) here among the existences was the summing up, (that is, it was its end).

34. What it teaches to the creatures of him who is Aûharmazd, is thus: he who is like him is he who is his own creature, (that is, even these people it tells something so, and thus they attain again, through purity, to the possession of Aûharmazd, just as Aûharmazd produced them through purity). 35. By 'the dominion is for Aûharmazd' it has taught, that he has made Aûharmazd his ruler, over his own person, (who shall perform that which is revealed by the Avesta;) and this is taught, that through him is the ministration of the poor, (that is, happiness is thereby caused by him,) (36) which is friendship for the Spîtâmân; (and the religion of the Spîtâmân became) these five assertions, (that is, the decrees in it were five,) (37) which were the

1 So in J2, Pt4, Mf4.
2 Sp., J2 add 'of the sacred beings.'
3 Only here, and in § 30, dähm, 'a member of the community,' is substituted for the usual dâm, 'a creature.' Either meaning might suit the context, but the Avesta text clearly has 'creature,' and would require more alteration, to suit it to the Pahlavi version, than vice versa. Dk. IX, Chap. XLVII, affords no assistance, as it does not allude to this passage.
4 The Pahlavi version of the Av. tâd mazdâ tavâ khshathrem quoted in Dk. IX, Chap. XLVII, 17.
whole enunciation of the saying, and the whole saying was that of Aûharmašad\(^1\).

38. For the sake of development Aûharmašad, (for cherishing the creatures,) pronounced the Ahunavair, and in its development there was a summing up, (that is, its end occurred). 39. Quickly, when\(^2\) destruction arose, (that is\(^3\), the destroyer,) and rushed in, even among the wicked he uttered (as resistance) (40) this interdict:—(41) ‘Neither our thoughts, nor\(^3\) teachings, (as I have not taught that which thou hast taught,) nor wis doms, (for I consider wisdom as virtuousness, and thou considerest it as viciousness,) (42) nor wills, (for my will is a virtuous wish, and thine a vicious one,) nor words, (for I speak that which is virtuous, and thou speakest that which is vicious,) nor actions, (for my actions are virtuous, and thine are vicious,) (43) nor religions, (for my religion is the Gâthic lore, and thine is witchcraft,) nor souls are themselves in unison, (for as to those who rely upon my things, and those who rely upon thy things, their souls are not in one place;’ he who said this, that even their souls exist, must thus say that they are not souls in unison with ours).

44. Also this saying, which Aûharmašad uttered, has the three degrees, the four classes, (priest, warrior, husbandman, and artisan,) the five chieftainships, (house-ruler, village-ruler, tribe-ruler, province-ruler,

---
\(^1\) As the Pahlavi text of the foregoing interpretation is a commentary upon an Avesta commentary on an obscure Avesta text, it must be expected to be difficult to translate with certainty.
\(^2\) Pt\(_4\), Mf\(_4\) omit ‘when;’ but the speaker of the interdict is Aûharmašad in Pahl. Yas. XLIV, 2 c–e.
\(^3\) So in J\(_2\), Pt\(_4\), Mf\(_4\).
and supreme Zaratûst,) and its summing up is with liberality, (thus it is possible to make it completely for their own, when they deliver themselves up to the priests). 45. Which are the degrees of it? Good thoughts, good words, and good deeds; (they are\(^1\), indeed, virtuous among the degrees of religion). 46. Which are the classes? The priest, warrior, husbandman, and artisan, (47) who are the whole day and night with a righteous man, who are thinking rightly, speaking rightly, and acting rightly, (48) who have recognised a priestly authority, (that is, possess a high-priest,) who have taught the religion, (that is, have provided a ceremony,) (49) and who, through their actions, are a furtherance of the world of righteousness, (owing to the work they accomplish). 50. Which are the chiefs? The house-ruler, village-ruler, tribe-ruler, province-ruler, and the Zaratûst is the fifth (51) in those provinces which are other than the Ragha\(^2\) of Zaratûst; with four chieftainships is the Ragha of Zaratûst. 52. Which are the chiefs of that? The house-ruler, village-ruler, tribe-ruler, and the Zaratûst is the fourth; (that is, when he was in his own province, he also produced its period of prosperity, who arises fourth).

53. How was it when through good thought, (that is, the religion remained in the degree of good thought)? When it arose first in a righteous thinker, (it arose in Gâyõmârd, and he thought for it). 54. How, when through good words? When it was the bounteous text, (doing good). 55. How,

\(^1\) J\(2\), Pt\(4\), Mf\(4\) indicate hômânt (=aît).
\(^2\) The ancient city of Raf which stood not far from Teherân.
when through good deeds? When it was the praise even of righteousness by the first creature, (that is, they shall perform the ceremonial, and also other good works, through the Gāthā lore).

56. Aūharmazd proclaimed; for what was it proclaimed by him? For the righteous spiritual and worldly existence, (for the benefit of the spiritual and worldly existence). 57. Owing to what desire (owing to what necessity) was the said announcement proclaimed\(^1\) by him? (So that he shall become) the privileged developer, (he who is a resolute ruler). 58. For how many righteous (is it requisite to utter it)? (So that one may become) a developer, (even he who may be) an irresolute ruler\(^2\), (to whom they reveal these words. So that the glory of the Kayāns, such as it is with good rulers, should be even so with evil rulers; with good rulers for this purpose, that so they shall produce more benefit; and with evil rulers for this purpose, that so they shall produce less harm)\(^3\).

Pahl. Yas. XX = Bakō II.

The beginning of the second subdivision\(^4\).

1. It was a proclamation of Aūharmazd, the Ashem vohû vahistem asti\(^5\); besides perfect excellence is taught by it to him, (that is, benefit is

---

1 Pt4, Mf4 have frāz gūftō, as in Pahl. Yas. XX, 9.
2 Quoted in Dk. IX, Chap. LXIX, 45.
3 §§ 56–58 are repeated at the end of Pahl. Yas. XX, with reference to the Ashem.
4 So in Pt4, Mf4.
5 This Avesta is quoted as part of the Pahlavi version, and is translated, in Pt4, Mf4, by the usual Pahlavi for ‘righteousness is perfect excellence.’
produced by it for him,) who shall make self-progress his own, (that is, shall produce that which is necessary to produce,) through voḥû vahistem astī¹, thus become the summing up of the assertion, (that is, it became its end). 2. Ustā astī, ustā ahmāi² has, besides, taught the righteous of every kind the happy progress which is necessary to arise for the righteous of every kind, (so that³ happiness may be caused thereby); whatever endurance of man (or diligence) it is necessary for the righteous of every kind to occasion is, besides, taught to the righteous of⁴ every kind, (so that one's happiness may be caused thereby). 3. Hyad ashāi vahistāi ashem² has, besides, taught that all (the duty and good works which are revealed in the text are the whole text (for him whose Avesta and Zand are easy, so that, through īs Avesta and Zand, he can make manifest all the duty and good works of that whole text,)⁵) (4) which teaches⁶ that the dominion is for righteousness, (so that, one may exercise authority through virtuousness, that is, it should be the opinion that it teaches a dominion through virtuousness, so that one may possess authority through virtuousness;) (5) which also teaches the truth to that righteous invoker, (so that he may make a true decision;) (6) and which also teaches the truth to you that are

¹ So in Pt₄, Mf₄; J₂ has 'through one voḥû vahistem; and vahistem astī.'
² This phrase of the Ashem, which begins the Avesta of this section, must also be understood as beginning its Pahlavi version.
³ Only Sp. adds 'one's' here.
⁴ Only Sp. has 'the righteous of,' but it is in the Avesta text.
⁵ So in Pt₄, Mf₄.
⁶ Just as the Ahunavair states that 'the dominion is for Aûharmazd' (see Pahl. Yas. XIX, 35).
fraught with advantage, (so that it may produce true judgment). *These* were the three assertions, (that is, three decrees were in it,) *(7) and* the whole saying was a proclamation, the whole saying was that of Aûharmazed.

8. Aûharmazed proclaimed; *(&c., as in Pahl. Yas. XIX, 56–58).*

Pahl. Yas. XXI = Bakô III.

The beginning of the third subdivision¹.

1. A saying of the righteous Zaratust, to be reverenced, was: ‘Whoever of those existing is thus in worship as regards *the good²*.’ Here what is taught by it is the worship of Aûharmazed, *(that it is that which one should provide for,) which is the law of Aûharmazed, *(that is, his virtuous law,) whereby the reverence of existence is taught, *(that is, that which he would most occasion, which is the ever-asking for progeny by mankind; and he mentions that thing to them,) through which it is possible for them to live well.*  2. Here, besides, the reverence of those males *and* females of the righteous, through complete devotion³ who *was* the first, is taught by it, *(3) which is the obeisance for the archangels, *(that is, it would occasion the propitiation of the archangels). *These* were the three assertions, *(that is, three decrees were in it,) and it was in every way a saying to be reverenced.* Unto whom was the reverence? Unto the archangels in that worship.

4. And Aûharmazed spoke thus: ‘Happy is he

¹ So in Pt₄, Mf₄.

² The beginning of the Yêshê-hâtâm (see Dk. IX, Chap. IV, r n).

³ The archangel Ârmaiti, or Spendarmad.
whose happiness is the happiness of any one whatever, (5) and may Aûharmaéd grant it, through predominance of will, (through his requirement)\(^1\). 6. What reply did he speak through that utterance of words, (what was the thing he spoke about\(^2\))? 7. He spoke the reply of happy progress, the happy progress of the righteous of every kind, who are, who have been, and who will arise. 8. The developer told (that man, as) the development, in reply; and (the reward as) the development that Aûharmaéd mentioned in reply was: ‘That development\(^3\) (I call) righteous, (which) is a development for the righteous.’

Dk. IX, Chap. XLVII, 11, refers to Pahl. Yas. XIX, 12–15, which is thus quoted in Sls. X, 26, in a shorter and altered form:—‘As it says in the Bak thus: “Whoever shall mutter, O Zaratûst! my apportionment of the Ahunavair, (that is, shall softly take it inwardly,) and shall let it escape\(^4\) again, (that is, shall utter it aloud,) so much as a half, or a third, or a fourth, or a fifth, his soul will I shield\(^5\), I who am Aûharmaéd, from the best existence, (that is, I will keep it away,) by such an extent as the width of this earth.”’

---

1 Quoted from Pahl. Yas. XLII, 1 a, b.
2 Pt4, Ms4 have madam in place of maman.
3 So in Pt4, Ms4.
4 Pahl. rahōínēd, or rānīnēd, ‘reject.’ It is the alteration in this verb that changes the meaning of the original text; as the preceding and following verbs, vakhûnêd and gôyêd, do not differ in Pahlavi writing from the vâdîdûnêd and yângêd of Pahl. Yas. XIX, 12.
5 Pahl. neṭrûnam.
IV. DĀMDĀD NASK ¹.

From the very short account of this Nask, given in Dk. VIII, Chap. V, it appears that its contents were very similar to those of the original Bundahis, so far as we find them in the imperfect Indian Bd. I–XXX. And this connection between the two works is further testified by Zs. IX, 1, 16–23, which attributes to the Dāmdād many statements, regarding plants and animals, which are detailed in Bd. XIV, 1, 2, 14–18, 21–24.

Owing to the brief character of the account in Dk. VIII, Chap. V, it is impossible to trace any allusion to two passages quoted from the Dāmdād as follows:—

In Sls. X, 22, XII, 15, it is said that ‘in the Dāmdād it is revealed thus: “Likewise, too, the good works, in like measure (or manner), which come into the father’s possession (or to the father as his own).”’

In Sls. XII, 5, it is said that ‘in the Dāmdād it is revealed that when they sever the consciousness of men it goes out to the nearest fire, then out to the stars, then out to the moon, and then out to the sun;

¹ The very short account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains 75 Pahlavi words, and, if these represent the same proportion of original text as those in the very short accounts of Nasks I, II, III, XXI in the same book, they would indicate about 8,900 words of Avesta text. But, as this is a Hadha-māṭhric Nask, the proportion of its Pahlavi text is best ascertained from that of Nask X, belonging to the same division, which indicates about 29,300 words for the Pahlavi version. The actual original extent of the Irānian Bundahis (which may be considered as a descendant of the Dāmdād) appears to have been about 28,000 Pahlavi words.
and it is needful that the nearest fire, that to which it has come out, should become stronger.'

V. NĀDAR NASK.

No quotation from this Nask has yet been noticed.

VI. PÂGAG NASK.

Dk. VIII, Chap. VII, 4, or 5, probably refers to the passage which contained the statement thus quoted in Sls. IX, 9, 10:—'In a passage of the fifth fargard of the Pâgân it is declared that one mentions these characteristics of four kinds of worship of the sacred beings:—one is that whose Avesta is correct, but the man is bad; the second is that whose Avesta is faulty, but the man is good; the third is that whose Avesta is correct, and the man is good; and the fourth is that whose Avesta is faulty, and the man is bad. That whose Avesta is correct, but the man bad, the archangels will approach and will listen to,

1 As there is no account of this Nask in Dk. VIII, we can only guess that its extent was about the average length of the other Hadha-māthric Nasks, or about 6,800 words of Avesta text and 22,200 of Pahlavi version.

2 The account of this Nask in Dk. VIII (like those of Nasks VIII, XII, XIII, XX), though four or five times as long as the very short accounts, is still short, and the data for estimating the original extent of these five Nasks are very inadequate. We may, perhaps, guess that the two Nasks VI, VIII were together equal to half the length of the four other Hadha-māthric Nasks IV, VII, IX, X, and then proceed to apportion the extent, thus guessed, between the two in proportion to the number of Pahlavi words in the short account of each. In this way we shall find that the 505 Pahlavi words in the short account of the Pâgag may indicate about 9,100 words of Avesta text and 29,800 of Pahlavi version.
but do not accept; that whose Avesta is faulty, but
the man good, the archangels and sacred being will
approach, but do not listen to, and will accept; that
whose Avesta is correct, and the man good, the
archangels and sacred being will approach, will come
to, will listen to, and will accept; and that whose
Avesta is faulty, and the man bad, they do not
approach, do not listen to, and do not accept.

VII. RADO-DAD-AITAG NASK 1.

Dk. VIII, Chap. VIII, 4, probably refers to the
passage containing the statement thus mentioned in
Sls. X, 29:—'In the Rado-dad-aith many harsh
things are said about the severe punishment of the
unhelpful ones (avig1där-dahisnānō) 2 in the spiritual
existence.'

VIII, IX. BARI S 3 and KASKISROBO 4 NASKS.

No quotation from these Nasks has yet been
noticed.

---

1 The very short account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains
88 Pahlavi words, from which the extent of its original text may
be estimated (in the same way as in the case of Nask IV) at about
10,500 Avesta and 34,300 Pahlavi words.

2 Otherwise read hangīdār-dahisnānō, 'producers of irrita-

3 The short account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains 248
Pahlavi words, from which the extent of its original text may be
guessed (in the same way as in the case of Nask VI) at about
4,400 Avesta and 14,600 Pahlavi words.

4 The very short account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains
46 Pahlavi words, from which the extent of its original text may
be estimated (in the same way as in the case of Nask IV) at about
5,500 Avesta and 17,900 Pahlavi words.
X. VISTĀSP-SĀSTŌ NASK ¹.

The first half of this Nask (as described in Dk. VIII, Chap. XI, 1, 2) appears to be still extant in the Vistāsp Yast, 1–44; but the remainder of that Yast does not correspond with the description of the latter half of the Nask.

XI. VĀSTAG NASK ².

No quotation from this Nask has yet been noticed.

XII. KĪTRADĀD NASK ³.

Dk. VIII, Chap. XIII, 10, probably refers to the passage that contained the statement thus quoted in Sls. X, 28:—‘Even so it is revealed in the Kītradād that Spendarmadā spoke to Mānūṣ’kīhar thus: “Even the swiftest horse requires the whip, the sharpest

¹ As half this Nask consists of the Vistāsp Yt. 1–44, which contains about 1,100 Avesta and 3,600 Pahlavi words, the contents of the whole Nask may be estimated at about 2,200 Avesta and 7,200 Pahlavi words.

² As there is no account of this Nask in Dk. VIII, we can only guess that its extent was about the average length of the other Gāthic Nasks, or about 8,900 words of Avesta text and 18,400 of Pahlavi version.

³ The short account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains 396 Pahlavi words, which may be guessed to represent the same proportion of Pahlavi version as in Nasks VI, VIII, the accounts of which are also short. And, as this is a Legal Nask, it may be assumed that the proportion of Avesta text to Pahlavi version would be the same as in the other Legal Nasks, which is the proportion still extant in the Ntrangistān section of Nask XVII. Based upon these assumptions, the probable extent of the Kītradād would be about 2,600 words of Avesta text and 23,400 of Pahlavi version.
steel knife requires the whetstone, and the wisest man requires counsel.”

XIII. SPEND NASK

Dk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 1, probably refers to the passage that contained the statement thus quoted in Sls. X, 4, XII, 11:—‘It is revealed in the Spend that towards Dûkdâv, the mother of Zaratûst, when she was pregnant with Zaratûst, every night for three nights a leader with a hundred and fifty demons rushed (or came) for the destruction of Zaratûst, yet, owing to the existence of the fire in the dwelling, they knew no means of accomplishing it.’

Dk. VIII, Chap. XIV, 8, probably refers to the passage that contained the statement alluded to in AV. XXXII and thus quoted in Sls. XII, 29:—‘As in the Spend it was shown to Zaratûst about one man, that all his limbs were in torment, but one foot was outside; and Zaratûst enquired of Aûharmâzd about the cause of it; and Aûharmâzd said that he was a man, Davâns by name; he was a ruler over thirty-three districts, and no good work was ever practised by him, except one time when fodder was conveyed by him to a sheep with that one foot.’

1 The short account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains 347 Pahlavi words, which would represent about 20,500 words of Pahlavi version, according to the proportion guessed in the case of Nask XII. But, this being a Gâthic Nask, the proportion of Avesta to Pahlavi ought to be that calculated for the Gâthic Nasks I, II, III, XXI, which would give about 9,900 words of Avesta text for this Nask. The seventh book of the Dînkaârd, whose contents are very similar to those attributed to the Spend Nask, contains about 16,000 Pahlavi words.

2 A personification of the Av. davâs of Yas. XXXI, 10c.
No allusion to the following two passages, quoted from the Spend, has been noticed in Dk. VIII, Chap. XIV:—

In Sls. XII, 3, it is said that 'in the Spend it is revealed that a fire, when they shall make it quite clean from its chilled charcoal, has as much comfort as a man whose clothing they shall make clean.'

In Sls. XII, 15, it is said that 'in the Spend and Nihâdûm the high-priests have taught that the duty and good works which a son performs become as much the father's as though they had been done by his own hand.'

XIV. Bakân-yâst Nask 1.

No allusion to the following three passages, quoted from this Nask, could be expected in the very short account of it, given in Dk. VIII, Chap. XV; and they can hardly be traced, with any certainty, in the Avesta texts of the Yâst-s themselves:—

It is just possible that a commentary on Yt. I, 17 may have contained the Av.-Pahl. passage thus quoted in Vig. 2 pp. 160, 161:—'By the Avesta of

1 The account of this Nask in Dk. VIII, though very short, is a fair description of the extant Yâst-s I–XX, and their general character is also indicated by the name of the Nask, which means 'the worship of the divinities.' The extent of these Yâst-s may be estimated at about 22,000 words of Avesta text, and, from the Pahlavi versions of the few Yâst-s that still possess one, it may be calculated that about 44,000 words of Pahlavi version would have been required for the whole collection.

2 Vigirkard-i Dînîk, ed. Peshotan, Bombay, 1848; printed in Pahlavi type from a copy, transcribed in 1754, from an Irânian MS. written in 1240, which the transcriber found in the Modî library at Surat. The Avesta quotations are here transliterated without any attempt at amendment.
the Baghân-yast it is declared: \textit{Yad aêtê yô mazda-yasnô aperenâyûkô avi hê hapta sarehda fragasâîti, stehr-paesanghô aiwyâunghânô paitis hê maidhyâi bügyamanô, avi hê nara paskaiti nemanghentî: Whoevever of those Mazda-worshippers is a child who attains unto the age of seven years, and ties the thread-girdle on his waist, upon that man there is thenceforth the maintenance of the obeisances.}'

A Pahlavi commentary on Yt. VI, 2 may have formerly contained the passage thus mentioned in Sls. XII, 17:—'As in the Bâg-yasnô notice is given about the uncleanness of well-water at night.'

Perhaps one of the five Yasts, XI, XII, XIII, XV, XVIII, respectively dedicated to Srôsh, Rashnû, the guardian spirits, the good Vâê, and Åstâd—the sacred beings specially propitiated by the ceremonies after a death—may have included a commentary containing the passage thus quoted in Vig. pp. 157–158, about the necessity of appointing some one to provide such ceremonies for a man who dies without a son, and to administer his estate:—'By the Avesta of the Bagân-yast it is declared: \textit{Yêzi narô pankada-sanghô sarehdo irifraithyâd avi hê urvânem bügyânem thrâyô ayara uzayarana rathwô hangamanem fraga-sôid, âad hê aputhra anghad puthra fradadhâiti yathaêa nara irista vispanâm avarêtañâm shaêtavat-tanâm avi hê frazaintîm fraga-sôid, paskaiti nemanghaiti baoïdhyêitêa urvâsnayaau.'

---

\textbf{XV. Nîkâdûm Nask}.

Dk. VIII, Chap. XVIII, 3, refers to the passage which, no doubt, contained the statement thus quoted

\footnote{The very long account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains}
in Farh. Olm, pp. 6, 1. 11–7, l. 13:—"Aèdha is the skin of the head, and there is part of it which is large and part which is small, as it says in the Nihådûm:—"Kaya henti masyanghô aèdha, which are those parts with the larger skin? Yô aparaya paiti mastraghñaya, whatever is behind the skull; (Afarg ¹ said, from the ear backwards). Kaya kasyanghô, which are those with the smaller? Yô paouruya paiti mastraghñaya, whatever is before the skull². Vaghdhanem is the head, and one says nars vaghdhanem, &c., this is: Sinful are they who penetrate (sûmbënd) a man's head, astem aèvô mastravanâm, or one bone of the skull; vîspaka yô mastraghñâm amâsta, all those are to be smitten who have penetrated into the skull, and to be given up as outcast³; hvarô-kithanâm⁴ aèteê anyê kikayatô, the penalties of a Khôr⁵ sin chastise those who hurt other parts, (such as the brain which is in the skull of the head, and the marrow of the other members that are to be mentioned, just as it mentions this:—Sinful are they who strike through the bone, or flesh, or marrow of a leg, and every one of those is to be smitten who strikes

4,876 Pahlavi words, from which the extent of its original text may be estimated (in the same way as in the case of Nask XVII) at about 62,600 Avesta and 562,900 Pahlavi words.

¹ One of the old commentators whose statements are frequently quoted in the Pahlavi versions of the Avesta. The reading of his name and the age in which he lived are alike uncertain, but he appears to have been one of the earliest commentators whose opinions now survive.

² Perhaps the quotation ends at this point; but Dk. VIII, Chap. XVIII, 3, is equally applicable to what follows.

³ Tanâpûhar, see Dk. VIII, Chap. XX, 65.

⁴ So in K20.

⁵ See Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXI, 39.
through the bone of one fleshy part, and he is to be given up as outcast; while the penalties of a Khör sin ¹ chastise those who hurt other parts)."

Dk. VIII, Chap. XX, 116, probably refers to the passage which contained the statement thus quoted in Pahl. Vend. IV, 35:—‘That is, this is the account of the number of years, according to that which is in the Hûspârûm as regards the account of the number; and according to that which is in the Nihâdûm it is the account of the number of men.’

Dk. VIII, Chap. XX, 124, possibly refers to the passage which contained the statement thus quoted in Sls. X, 3:—‘In the exposition of the Nihâdûm Nask it says that a man is going to commit robbery, and a wall falls in upon him, it is his destroyer; when a man strikes at him he is his adversary, and both are in sinfulness; when he is going to perform the ceremonial of the sacred beings both are in innocence towards him.’

No allusion to the following six passages, quoted from this Nask, has been noticed in Dk. VIII, Chaps. XVI–XX:—

In Sls. X, 22, XII, 15, it is said as in the last fragment of the Spend Nask, already quoted.

In Sls. X, 23, XII, 16, it is said that ‘in the Nihâdûm the high-priests have taught thus:—‘A man gives a hungry one bread, and it is too much, yet (or when a man gives bread to a man, even though that man has too much bread) all the good works, which he shall perform through that super-

¹ MH6 has va-aêvak kerp after mazg, and both K2o and MH6 have valman barâ yehabûnis; khör tögîsnîhû after tandpûhar.
abundance, become as much his who gave it as though they had been done by his own hand.

In Pahl. Vend. V, 73, it is said ‘like unto this earth and that (sky) which would also cover over it (ever in all places; there is some one who says this is as to dead matter, that in the Nihâdûm says it is as to decision and judgment, and that in the Hûspârûm says it is as to the ritual of the ceremonial).

In Vig. p. 136, it is said that ‘it is declared by the Avesta of the Nihâdûm thus:—“Âad yad draonô Vanantô stârô mazdadhâtô frâyazyâd, kathwârô draonô frakerententi aiwi-hvarenti, yad âeshô nâ yô yaozdâthryô:—So when he, who is that man who is a purifier, shall consecrate the sacred cake of Vanand ¹, the star produced by Aûharmazd, they cut up and shall eat up four sacred cakes.’

In Vig. pp. 180, 181, it is said that in the Nihâdûm it is stated:—Âad aokhta Ahurô Mazdau: “Yad aêtê yô mazdayasna aêtêm srîrem vastrem stehr-paèsanghem hvâm tanûm bâdha paorîm vanghanemâka hadha varanô paitanemâka, paskaiti aiwyâunghânô ava hê maidhyànem bûgyamanô.” Aêtêm zî srîrem vastrem mainyutâstem hâka mainyavanâm dâmanâm avi mê fradadhâd Ahurô Mazdau ashava. “Yatha hê varanô paitanem asti mânayen hvare-khshaêtahê, adhâd hadha hê vastranâm yaozdâthranâm frâyaza và nizbaya và Ahurâi Mazdâi ameshanâm spextanâm, Spitama Zarathustra!’—Thus spoke Aûharmazd: “When for him, of those who are Mazda-worshippers, there is this beneficial, star-spangled (that is, wrought) garment ², always (after seven years of age, that is,

¹ The southern leader of the stars, probably Fomalhaut (see Bd. II, 7, V, 1).
² The sacred shirt.
after seven years of age) first he covers up (that is, clothes) his own body in it, and with (that he is properly) a preserver of faith (that is, a preserver of attachment, and) he afterwards ties (that) girdle (over that starry garment) at the waist (as a waist-belt).”

That, even this well-looking garment, spiritually formed by the creatures of the spirits, is really (that which) the righteous Aûharmazd granted me (who am Zaratûst). “Since it is his preserver of faith, (that is, preserver of attachment), he is like (him who is as) the sun, (a preserver of beneficial faith, an imploiner of the splendid heaven, and is one who is an accepter of the religion); therefore, with that garment, which is purified (that is, pure), do thou worship, or practise invocation, as regards Aûharmazd and as regards the archangels, O Spitâmân Zaratûst! ”

In Vig. pp. 184, 185, it is said that ‘it is declared by the Avesta of the Nihâdûm thus:—Àad aëtahê panka ayara hamaspathmaidhem paiti ratûm spen-tayau ârmatois måunghô nôid frasrâvayôid:—So one does not chant forth (that is, does not invoke) the month of (the completely mindful) Spendarmazd (that is, the Spendarmazd month) in the reign of those five Hamaspadmêdêm days; (for if one invokes it, owing to forgetfulness, the Avesta is not accepted).’

1 This appears to be the reverse of the meaning of Av. bûgya-mânô in Yt. I, 17, but see the first fragment of Nask XIV, quoted in Vig. pp. 160, 161.

2 The last month of the Parsi year, named after the archangel Spendarmazd (see Dk. VIII, Chap. IX, 3).

3 The five intercalary days that follow the last month, in order to make the twelve months, of thirty days each, correspond with a year of 365 days. They coincide with the Hamaspadmêdêm season-festival, originally intended to celebrate the vernal equinox.
XVI. Ganabâ-sar-nigâd Nask\(^1\).

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXII, 2, probably refers to the passage which contained the statement thus quoted in Slvs. X, 13:—'It is revealed in the Ganabâ-sar-nigêd, where a day in the year is indicated, that the sacred thread-girdle of every one who shall be one day more than fourteen years and three months old\(^2\) is to be tied on—it is better so than when he remains unto fifteen years, and then ties on the girdle—who is more cared for, that way, than those of five (or nine) months in the womb of the mother, on whom they should put it.'

XVII. Hûspâram Nask\(^3\).

A small portion of this Nask is still preserved and known by the name of Nîrangistân. The last seven-eighths of this text corresponds with the description of the Nîrangistân section of the Hûspâram, given in Dk. VIII, Chap. XXIX, 1–17, although a few folios of its commencement are probably lost. And

---

\(^1\) The very long account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains 2,179 Pahlavi words, from which the extent of its original text may be estimated (in the same way as in the case of Nask XVII) at about 28,000 Avesta and 251,500 Pahlavi words.

\(^2\) So as to include the nine months’ existence, before birth, in the prescribed fifteen years.

\(^3\) As the 212 Pahlavi words in Dk. VIII, Chap. XXIX, 1–17, represent about 2,722 words of the original Avesta text of this Nask, with 24,472 of its Pahlavi version, it may be fairly assumed that the 3,496 Pahlavi words of the whole account of the Nask in Chaps. XXVIII–XXXVII, must represent about 44,900 Avesta and 403,600 Pahlavi words of original text. And the same proportion probably holds good with regard to the other Legal Nasks, XV, XVI, XVIII, of which very long accounts are given.
the earlier portion of the text begins with a fragment of a passage; which appears to correspond with part of the description of the Aêrpatistân section, given in Chap. XXVIII, 1; but also contains passages that are difficult to trace in any part of that description. The Nirangistân portion of this text is divided into three fargards, and Dd. LXVI, 1 mentions 'five fargards of the Avesta of the correct law of the Nirangistân, which are easy through the Zand;' so that the missing portion of this section of the Nask, described in Chap. XXIX, 18–25, must have contained two fargards. With regard to the unidentified passages, preceding the Nirangistân portion of the extant text, it may be remarked that they include several of the statements about 'unseasonable chatter' contained in Sls. V, 3–6, where they are differently arranged.

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXIX, 2, refers to a passage which may have contained the statement thus mentioned in Sls. XII, 1:—'Of the merit of a threefold consecration of the sacred cake the high-priests have specially taught in the Hûspâram that it is as much as that of a lesser form of worship.'

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXIX, 8, refers to the passage which probably contained the statement thus quoted in Sls. XII, 31:—'Of the ceremonies which go to the bridge as sin it says this in the Hûspâram, that they are the non-celebration of the rites of the season-festivals, the Rapîtvîn, the three nights after a death, the days of the guardian spirits, and the sun and moon.'

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXII, 1, refers to the passage which must have contained the statement thus mentioned in Sls. XIII, 17:—'The six hot ordeals
which, in the Hûspâram, are effected by kthrayâim âthraiâm."

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXIII, 4, refers to the passage which must have contained the statement thus mentioned in Pahl. Vend. XV, 67:—'What is as to the sick dog in the Hûspâram is, "when several doors are together, it is just if the nourishment at each one be only for three nights, and then, when opulence is manifest, the delivery be unto that opulent one, and when not, the delivery be unto him who is good."'

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXV, 2, probably refers to the passage which contained the statement thus mentioned in Sls. XII, 7:—'In the twentieth of the Hûspâram it is shown that over the soul of him who works in the dark there is more predominance of the evil spirit.'

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVI, 7, or 13, probably refers to the passage thus mentioned in Dd. LXI, 3:—'Nearer details of the family guardianship which is proper and which is not proper for an adopted son's duty, of the child of the good religion with whose business it is connected, and of the fathers for whom a family guardian is to be appointed, are in the recital of five fargâds of the Hûspâram.'

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVI, 8–12, probably refers to the passage which contained the statement thus quoted in Sls. X, 21, XII, 14:—'In the fourteenth

---

1 This corrupt Avesta means probably 'fourfold fire.'
2 The first section mentioned of these twenty is that described in Chap. XXXII.
3 See Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVI, 1 n.
4 That is, in one of the last fourteen sections of the Nask. If it were not for this number, and the fact that the passage is understood to apply to the children of a concubine, it might be connected with Chap. XXXIV, 4, 5.
of the Hûspâram Nask the high-priests have taught thus: "My son is suitable even as thy son, but my daughter is not suitable even as thy daughter."

No allusion has been noticed in Dk. VIII, Chaps. XXVIII–XXXVII, to the two passages in Pahl. Vend. IV, 35, V, 73, referring to this Nask, which have been already quoted as also referring to Nask XV.

XVIII. SAKÂDÛM NASK 1.

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 1, 2, refer to passages, one of which may possibly have contained the statement thus quoted in Sls. XII, 2:—"It says in the Sakâdûm that no one of them, that is an inattentive man who has no high-priest, attains to the best existence, not though his recitation should be so much that it has made his duty and good works as much as the verdure of the plants when it shoots forth in spring, the verdure which is given abundantly by Aûharmazd."

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 3, refers to a passage which is thus quoted in Sls. X, 25:—"When an action or an opinion comes forward, and one does not know whether it be a sin or a good work, when possible it is to be abandoned and not carried out by him, as it says in the Sakâdûm that Zaratûst has not provided about anything whatever as regards everything, but three times it has been done by Zaratûst about this duty, that is, so that the Avesta

1 The very long account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains 4,129 Pahlavi words, from which the extent of its original text may be estimated (in the same way as in the case of Nask XVII) at about 53,000 Avesta and 476,600 Pahlavi words.
and Zand, when made quite easy by any one, are for recitation, but are not to be mumbled, for, in mumbling, the portions of the Ahunavair are more chattering.'

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 6, refers to the passage thus mentioned in Sls. XII, 12:—'Where a child is born, during three days, for protection from demons, wizards, and witches, a fire is to be made at night until daylight, and is to be maintained there by day, and pure incense is to be put upon it, as is revealed in the thirtieth 1 of the Sakâdûm.'

Dk. VIII, Chaps. XXXVIII, 13, XLI, 19, refer to passages which seem both to be partially quoted in Farh. Oûm, p. 38, ll. 4–10, thus:—'The period is eagerly proclaimed in another place, as it says in the Sakâdûm thus:—"Thripithwô zi asti âtars Ahurahê Mazdâu hama, bipithwô aiwi-gâmê, atha narô asha- vanô:—For thrice-supplied is the fire of Aûhramazd in summer 2, twice in winter; so is the righteous man. (Whoever has become a deperver of food (ata pdâd) four times, which are successive, should be in doubtfulness as to unrestricted (aband) maintenance viâkîthremkid: without any publicity; as much as it is possible to see being the original minimum of any other)."

Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 33, refers to the passage which contained the statements thus quoted in Ep. I, viii, 1, 7:—'It is declared in the Sakâdûm, that the consecrated bull’s urine, when it becomes

---

1 That is, in one of the first thirty sections (see Dk. VIII, Chap. XXXVIII, 1).

2 Both K2o and MHô have amat, ‘though,’ instead of pavan hamîn. This first sentence corresponds with part of Chap. XLI, 19, and the following sentence with part of Chap. XXXVIII, 13.
fetid, is to be stirred up ¹, and they should not carry it forth so to the fire, so that the stench extends to the fire; because, if that stench extends to the fire, on account of the moisture and through carrying bodily refuse over and forth to the fire, it overpowers it. And that which the Sakâdûm has declared is, specially, that one of the high-priests has individually said: "That stench is mentioned with reference to the occasion when a stench reaches it of a different kind from that which exists naturally in it."

Dk. VIII, Chap. XLIII, 33, refers to the passage which contained the statements thus mentioned in Sls. XII, 10, XIII, 30:—'In the twenty-two ² sections of the Sakâdûm grievous things are shown about those who do not make offerings unto the sacred beings.' And, again, 'while those nineteen (stanzas of Yas. XLVI) are our offering, which it says in the Sakâdûm should be my own, the strength and power of the sacred beings shall become more considerable, and the destroyer more perishable.'

---

XIX. VENDĪDĀD NASK ³.

The whole of this Nask (as described in Dk. VIII, Chap. XLIV) is still extant, and is considered by the writers of the Persian Rivâyats to be a complete work. Its fragmentary character, which is obvious enough to European scholars, must, therefore, be

---

¹ This statement is again mentioned in § 6.
² The last twenty-two (see Dk. VIII, Chap. XLI, 1).
³ The extent of this Nask appears to be the same now as it was in Sasanian times, and may be estimated at about 23,000 Avesta and 48,000 Pahlavi words. The moderately long account of it in Dk. VIII, contains 1,272 Pahlavi words.

[37]  I i
attributed, in all probability, to losses it sustained before the revival of Mazda-worship by the Sasanian dynasty. It is remarkable that the compiler of the account in the Dinkard makes no allusion to the twelfth fargard of the Vendidad, which is also omitted in all old MSS. of the Vendidad with Pahlavi that have been examined, although the copyists appear to have been aware of the existence of a twelfth fargard.

XX. Hâdôkht Nask ¹.

It is doubtful how much of this Nask is still extant. Traditionally, the two fragments published by Westergaard as Yt. XXI, XXII (excepting XXII, 37–42), and by Haug as Hn. I, II, III, are said to belong to this Nask; but no allusion to Hn. II, III can be found in the account given in Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV, and Hn. I can be traced in that account only by assuming that the Ahunavair is therein mentioned (in § 1) instead of its accompanying Ashem-vohû, as it appears to be in Hn. I, 4. In Yt. XI we also appear to have a form of the Srôsh Yast derived from the Hâdôkht Nask, or used in the liturgy when that Nask was recited, and this Yast likewise refers (in § 3) to the Ahunavair in similar terms to those used in Hn. I, 4.

Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV, 1, refers to the passage which contained the statement about the Ahunavair already mentioned and also thus quoted in Sls.

¹ The short account of this Nask, in Dk. VIII, contains 295 Pahlavi words which, according to the proportions adopted in the case of Nask XIII, would represent about 8,400 Avesta and 17,400 Pahlavi words of original text.
XII, 19:—'It says in the Hâdöökht that of the sayings which are spoken out the Ahunavair is that which is most triumphant.'

Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV, 4, refers to the passage which probably contained the statements thus quoted in the Āfrin-i Gahanbâr, 14–19 (Sp.), concerning the righteous gifts to be given away, for the sake of the soul, at each of the six season-festivals:—'There is an Avesta witness manifest in the Hâdöökht from the passage (in the case of the Maḯdhyō-zaremaya festival): “Hazangrem maēshinām daēnunām paitiputhranām narām ashaonām ashaya vanghuya urunē para-daithyād, aēvahē hâtām kīnmānahē yad ashahē vahistahē.'” During the other five festivals the gifts, instead of ewes, are to be cows, mares, camels, and all kinds of herds and seeds, respectively, as appears from the corresponding passages. All six passages, mingled with further Avesta text, occur in several MSS. of the Āfringān-i Gahanbâr (see the earlier part of each section of Āf. Gah. 7–12, ed. Geldner).

Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV, 9, probably refers to the passage which contained the statement thus quoted in Sd. XL, 4:—'In the commentary of the Hâdöökht it says:—"Mā āzārayōis, Zarathustra! mā Pourushaspem, mā Dughdvōām¹, mā aēθrpaitis:—It is not desirable that thou, O Zaratūst! shouldst distress thy father, or mother, or priest.'”

Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV, 10, may possibly refer to

---

¹ The orthography of these three Avesta names has been amended in accordance with the Persian version accompanying them, but all the four MSS. consulted have the first two in the genitive, and one MS. uses a masculine genitive form also for the third name.
the passage which contained a statement that is often partially quoted in Pahlavi colophons, and the Avesta text of which constitutes Yas. LXXII, 11 (Gld.); the first part of the statement, with a translation of its Pahlavi version, is here quoted from Mitrā-Āpān’s colophon to a volume of miscellaneous Pahlavi texts, usually called the Vistāsp-shāhnamak from the subject of its first text, and written A.D. 1322, in which the writer mentions the source from which he quotes; and the second part is taken from the same writer’s colophon to the Yasna MS. K5, written thirteen months later, which is the only known authority for this part of the text:—‘In one passage of the Hādōkht it is declared that Aūhamad spoke to Zaratūst thus:—“Aevō pantau yō asahē vispē anyaēshām apantāmː—one only is the way of righteousness, all those are no waysː—angrahē mainyau nasistām daēnām daēvayasanānām parāgītim mashyanām frākereitimː—which the evil spirit of the heretical demon-worshippers, the wizard, has forced on to mankind.”’

Dk. VIII, Chap. XLV, 13, must refer to the passage which contained the statement thus mentioned in Sls. XIII, 10ː—‘The fifteen stanzas of Yā-shēyaothanā³ are for this reason, because it is given for the destruction of those fifteen fiends who are declared in the medical part of the Hādōkht.’

No allusion to the following seven passages, quoted from this Nask, has been noticed in Dk. VIII, Chap. XLVː—

In Sls. XII, 30, it is stated that ‘in the Hādōkht

1 Only the first and last letters of this word are clearly legible.
2 The first syllable is illegible.
3 Yas. XXXIV.
it says that a woman who shall be reverent is to be considered as much as she who is suitable.'

In Sls. XIII, 6, it is said that 'the twenty-two stanzas of Tā-ve-urvâtâ ¹ are the twenty-two judgments of which it speaks in the Hâdôkht thus:

"Anaomô mananghê daya vispâî kva, kva parô?—Lodging in the judge, that while he has twenty-two judgments he may be more just.'

In Sd. XXII, 3, 4, it is stated that 'in the commentary of the Hâdôkht it says, that every one who performs intercession, and extracts anything from a person on their account, and conveys it to them is as much without dishonesty towards them, as he who may have given to them out of his own property. And in the spiritual existence they take account of that profit for him, and just as they make out the account of the good work of that person who may have given it, even so much is his good work.'

In Vig. p. 12, it is said, with reference to Aharman, 'that he is a creature of Aûharmaezd is manifest from the Avesta of the Hâdôkht: "Dâta, Ahura spenta! Mazdau."'

In Vig. pp. 23–25, it is said that 'if any one passes away from the bodily existence, as much of his wealth comes to his son, wife, and daughter as is declared by the Avesta of the Hâdôkht:—"Âad yêzi avi hê anguhê astvainti, Spitama Zarathustra!—So if in that bodily existence, O Spîtâmân Zaratûst!—narâm vâ nairinâm vâ para-irithyâd,—of males or

---

¹ Yas. XXXI.
² It is perhaps necessary to repeat that no attempt is made to correct the Avesta orthography, except in the case of a few obvious misprints.
females one expires,—kvad aētāēshām yaunghuyanām avaretanām maēthananāṃka vastranāṃ paiti-raēkyād,—however much of their wealth and things, houses and clothing he abandons (that is, he leaves such in this world)—avatha hē hvatō puthrem anghad, aēvō-baghem haka avaretanām nisrinuyād; āad yēzi hvām nāirika bavaiti, aēvō-baghem paiti-nidadhāti; yēzi dughdhrām henti, naēmem baghem fragasād:—in such a case, should there be a son of his, himself, one delivers up to him one share of the property; if the wife herself (that is, his privileged wife) exists, one gives up to her one share in it; if there are daughters, a half-share comes on to each of them.—Āad yēziča hē narō irista hva hizva ukhdhem vākem nazdaska narō danghrem paiti-dyaēti, vispanām vakām ukhdhanāṃka avi yām astvaitīm gaēthām harethrem frabarād;—So also, if that dead man gives over a verbal statement by his own tongue to the nearest wise man (that is, speaks his own will), all his words and statements, when in control of his bodily existence, one carries out (that is, one shall confer authority on his words);—yēzi nōid harethrem baraiti anāperetha haka shyaothana:—if one shall not confer the authority, he becomes an unpardonable sinner (owing to doing this deed; that is, the person who, when there is a will, does not carry it out).—Avad yad hē narō irista aputhrāī anghad, upa hē puthrem fradjadhād, Spitama Zarathustra! yahmad haka puthrō haom urvānem Kinvad peretūm vīdhāryad:—So when that dead man is without a son (that is, there is no son of his), one gives forth the share over to the son, O Spitāmān Zarātūst! by whom, as a son (that is, an adopted son), they pass on the man's own soul from that
K’invad bridge (that is, it departs by the passage of the bridge)."

In Vig. p. 83, it is said that ‘hair from an ox or a horse is suitable, as it is declared by the Hâdôkht: “Geus và aspahê và varesa.”

In Vig. pp. 144, 145, it is said, with reference to announcing the name of the deceased during the celebration of the Srôsh Yast after a death, that ‘it is declared by the Avesta of the Hâdôkht:—

“Yêzi narô mazdayasanô haba gaêthâbyô para-irithyéiti, âaad hê nâma hadha pîtô fraeûrvayâd; yêzi nairika para-irithyéiti, âaad yad hê nâma hadha pathanô uzgeûrvayâd, Spitama Zarathustra! aëtem vàkem ni antare mazdayasanâm frasastayâd:—
If a man who is a Mazda-worshipper passes away from the worldly existence, in such a case one holds out his name with that of his father; and if it be a woman who passes away, in such a case one upholds whatever is her name with that of her husband, O Spitâmân Zarâtûst! one shall further bless this statement (that is, its being reverenced is important) among the Mazda-worshippers, (do thou proclaim and further bless this statement).”

XXI. Stôd-yast Nask.¹

It has been already shown, in Dk. VIII, Chap. XLVI, i n, that the whole of this Nask is probably still extant in the Yasna and Vispérad. About half of the present Yasna appears to consist of five-sixths of this Stôd-yast, to which have been added three

¹ The actual extent of those portions of the Yasna and Vispérad which appear to have constituted this Nask, may be estimated at about 12,500 Avesta and 22,400 Pahlavi words.
fargards of the Bakō (Nask III), with the Hōm and Srōsh Yasts, extracted probably from the Bakān-
yast (Nask XIV), and the greater part of the Ātas
and Ābān Nyāyises; the whole collection being
provided with an introductory and concluding ritual,
compiled from other sources, to form the complete
ceremonial liturgy of the present Yasna.

There appears to be no sufficient evidence, either
internal or external, for ascribing this collection of
the liturgy to so late a date as the end of the ninth
century, when the compilation of the Dīnkard was
completed. It is therefore safer, for the present, to
assume that the Stōd-yast existed for a long period
as a separate Nask (the form described by the
Dīnkard), even after the greater part of its text had
been incorporated with others to form the collected
liturgy now known as the Yasna.

Besides the fragments which are specially at-
tributed to particular Nasks, there are also a few
writings which closely resemble the Nasks, or their
fragments, in general character, but which can hardly
be traced to their actual source by means of the
accounts given in the Dīnkard. Thus, the Aogema-
daēkā might perhaps be supposed to have been
extracted from the Baris (see Dk. VIII, Chap. IX,
18), if it did not contain a few Avesta quotations
from the Yasna, Vendīdād, and Yasts. While the
quotations from the Ashem-staota, given in Vig.
pp. 89, 90, 125–129, 177, 178, are difficult to trace,
owing to the name of their source.
INDEX.
OBSERVATIONS.

The references are to the pages of the introduction and extant fragments, and to the books, chapters, and sections of the translations; the chapters being denoted by the larger ciphers. The letters ch. stand for chapter, com. for commentator, Dk. for Dinkard, Dv. for Dīn-vigirgard, Fr. for Fragments, Int. for Introduction, lun. man. for lunar mansion, m. for mountain, meas. for measure, n for foot-note, Riv. for Rivâyat, and Zs. for Selections of Zâd-sparam.
INDEX.

Abâlis, man, Int. 33; Dk. IV, 2 n.
Abûn nyâyi, Dk. IX, 48, 7 n.; Fr. 488.
Achemenians, Dk. VIII, 18, 16 n.
Ad-dravakhshyâ ch., Dk. IX, 18, 1; 38, 1; 60, 1.
Ad-mâ-yavâ ch., Dk. IX, 19, 1; 42, 1; 64, 1.
Ad-tâ-vakhshyâ ch., Dk. IX, 7, 1; 30, 1; 52, 1.
Aērpatistân ch., Dk. VIII, 28, 1; Fr. 477.
Aēshm, demon, Dk. VIII, 9, 3 n.; IX, 9, 1 n.; 21, 4 n.; 23, 5, 6; 29, 5; 39, 8; 41, 18.
Aēthrapaitit ch., Dk. IX, 24, 1.
Aēzēmno, man, Dk. IX, 33, 5.
Afarg, com., Fr. 472.
Aērângân, Riv. IV, 23; Dv. 23; Fr. 483.
Aērân-i Gahanbâr, Fr. 483.
Aērept sin, Dk. VIII, 20, 65 n.; 31, 39.
Agoyöst, meas., Dk. VIII, 20, 19.
Aharîvâng, angel, Int. 33 n.; Dk. VIII, 9, 3; IX, 24, 3, 14; 30, 14; 45, 6.
Aharman, Dk. IX, 80, 4; 31, 3, 4; 39, 14; 53, 2, 3; 56, 4; 69, 26 n, 39; Zs. 8 n.; Dv. 4, 8, 19, 21; Fr. 485.
Ahu, Fr. 456, 457.
Ahûm-stûd, man, Dk. III, 197, 6 n.
Ahunavair, Int. 29, 40; Dk. VIII, 1, 17, 18, 19; 2, 1 n.; 2, 2 n.; 4, 1 n.; 44, 51 n.; 45, 1; 46, 1, 2 n.; IX, 2, 2 n., 17-19; 8, 1 n.; 19, 2, 6-9; 24, 18; 25, 1 n.; 33, 5; 47, 2-4, 9, 11; Zs. 1-4, 7 n.; Fr. 453-455, 459, 462 n., 464, 482, 483.
Ahunavaiti gâtha, Zs. 2 n, 3.
Airân-shah, man, Int. 35.
Airân-vég, land, Dk. IX, 12, 3; 16, 13, 14 n.; 20, 3; 58, 20 n.
Airîk, man, Int. 35; prince, Dk. VIII, 18, 9, 10.
Airman, angel, Dk. VIII, 44, 80.
Airman supplication, Dk. VIII, 44, 87; IX, 46, 1, 2.
Airya, tribe, Dk. VIII, 13, 15 n.
Airyaman ch., Dk. IX, 23, 1; 46, 1; 68, 1; Zs. 4, 7 n, 9.
Aiwisûrûnîm gâh, Dk. IX, 9, 10.
Akatâsh, demon, Dk. IX, 9, 1.
Akht, man, Dk. IX, 44, 14.
Akûmanô, demon, Dk. VIII, 9, 3 n.; IX, 21, 4 n.; 30, 8; 32, 3 n.; 41, 13; 69, 27.
Albûr{x} m., Dk. IX, 20, 3; 22, 4, 7.
Alexander the Great, Int. 31; Dk. VIII, 1, 21; 8, 1 n.; 9, 1 n.; 10, 1 n.; 11, 1 n.; 13, 16 n.; IV, 23 n.; Riv. II, 8-11; III, 9-12; IV, 12, 21, 23; Dv. 8-12, 20, 22, 23.
Al-Mâmûn, khalifâh, Int. 33; Dk. IV, 2 n.
Amûrdaq, angel, Dk. IX, 9, 1 n.; 10, 1; 31, 25; 34, 7; 35, 21; 41, 17; 48, 2; 61, 10; 64, 4; 69, 22.
Anâbar, demon, Dk. VIII, 9, 3 n.
Anâhita, angel, Dk. IX, 24, 3 n.
Andar, demon, Dk. IX, 9, 1; 32, 3 n. See Êndar.
Angra-manîyu, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n.
Anûshk-rûbân, man, Int. 36, 38.
Aogemadaêâ, book, Fr. 488.
Arabs, Int. 31, 39; Dk. VIII, 18, 16 n.
Arataêstân ch., Dk. VIII, 26, 1; Zs. 5.
Arâ, angel, Dk. VIII, 9, 3 n.
Arâvâhîrî, day, Dk. VIII, 20, 22.
Arâvîrâf, man, Dk. IX, 45, 4 n.
Aredo sin, Dk. VIII, 20, 64, 65 n.; 31, 39; IX, 12, 15.
Arekwâsûr, angel, Dk. IX, 24, 3, 11.
Aresh, demon, Dk. IX, 30, 4, 5; 31, 6-10.
Arehratsb, priest, Dk. IX, 21, 24; IV, 22.
Ar'gasp, king, Dk. VIII, 11, 4; IX, 61, 12; IV, 21.
Arhastan ch., Dk. VIII, 25, 1.
Ärmatt, angel, Fr. 463 n.
Ärmat, angel, Dk. IX, 34, 3.
Artakhshatar, king, Int. 31; Dk. IV, 25, 26.
Arum, land, Dk. IV, 26.
Aruman, Dv. 22.
Arumans, Int. 31; Dk. IV, 24.
Ashahvah, angel, Dk. VIII, 37, 14; IX, 9, i n, 8; 30, 14, 44, 12; 69, 46; Zs. 9; Dk. IV, 10, 12.
Ashavalz, man, Dk. IX, 18, 17.
Ashem, Fr. 453.
Ashem-staota, book, Fr. 488.
Ashem-vohu ch., Dk. IX, 3, i; 26, 1; 48, 1; formula, Dk. VIII, 2, 5 n; 45, 1 n; IX, 9, 3 n; 19, 6–8; 23, 6 n; Zs. 9 n; Fr. 482.
Ashem-yahmat-urta, man, Dk. IX, 39, 20 n.
Asi, angel, Dk. VIII, 9, 3 n.
Askan, Dk. IV, 24.
Askanians, Dk. VIII, 13, 16 n.
Askaram nask, Dk. VIII, 38, 1 n; Riv. II, 19; III, 20; IV, 20; Dv. 19.
Asnavand m., Dk. IX, 12, 5 n.
Aspandiarj, priest, Int. 36.
Aspararn nask, Dk. VIII, 28, 1 n; Riv. II, 17; III, 18; IV, 18; Dv. 17.
Aspin, Dk. IX, 21, 11.
Artad, angel, Dk. IX, 9, 6; 20, 4; Fr. 471.
Ast-vidaz, demon, Dk. IX, 12, 17; 18, 1, 2; 23, 1 n.
Asfistian, land, Int. 33.
Atarevaksh, priest, Dk. IX, 33, 5.
Atan-nyaiyiz, Dk. IX, 43, 7 n; Fr. 488.
Atwylo, man, Dk. VIII, 13, 8 n.
Atur-farnbag, priest, Int. 31–34; Dk. IV, 2.
— fMaraspand, Int. 33, 34, 40, 42; Dk. VIII, 1, 22; 18, 18; IX, 8, 4; 39, 13 n; IV, 27.
— fZaratusti, Dk. VIII, 1, 7 n.
Atur-patakan, land, Dk. IX, 12, 5 n.
Auzak, woman, Dk. IX, 21, 4.
INDEX.

Bagh nask, Dk. VIII, 4, 1 n; Rev. I; II, 4; III, 5; IV, 5; Dv. 4.
Baghân-yazz nask, Dk. VIII, 15, 3 n; Rev. II, 15; III, 16; IV, 16; Dv. 15.

Bahman Pungyâh, man, Dk. VIII, 2, 2 n; IX, 2, 3 n; Riv. I; Fr. 451.

Bahman Yarz, Fr. 452.
Bahrân I, king, Dk. IX, 39, 13 n.
Bakân, Dk. IX, 47, 2, 9, 11; 48, 1; Fr. 453.
Bakân-yazz nask, Int. 40, 41, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 9, 12; 4, 1, 2; 46, 1 n; IX, 47, 2; 50, 2; 69, 1 n; Zs. 4 n; Fr. 451 n, 453, 461, 463, 464.

Barzâz, man, Dk. IX, 16, 18.
Bariz nask, Int. 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 10, 12; 9, 1, 20; Riv. I; II, 9; III, 10; IV, 10; Dv. 9; Fr. 467, 488.

Bârmâyûn, ox, Dk. IX, 21, 22; 22, 2.

Barsôm, Dk. IX, 43, 7 n.
Bartarûsh, man, Dk. VIII, 35, 13 n.
Barzû Kâmdûn, priest, Riv. 0 n.

Bàytûl, book, Dk. IX, 15, 2 n; 16, 17 n; 21, 10 n.

Dâd nask, Dk. VIII, 12, 1 n; Riv. I.

Dâdik men, Dk. VIII, 1, 5 n.

Ch in Oriental words is printed K.

Dâdik, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 8, 9; IX, 5, 2; 15, 2; 16, 17 n; 21, 1, 2, 8-10.

Dâhîn-âlyâr, man, Int. 35.

Dâhîn, Dk. IX, 22, 1, 2.

Dâlî sa, peak, Dk. IX, 20, 3.

Dâmûdâd nask, Int. 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 5, 12, 16 n; 5, 1, 5 n; Riv. I; Fr. 455.

Dârâf, king, Dk. IX, 24, 3.

Darîsteter, Prof., Int. 39 n; Dk. VIII, 16, 8 n; 44, 33 n; IX, 24, 17 n; Zs. 5 n; Dk. III, 197, 6 n.

Darûn, book, Rev. IV, 23; Dv. 23.

Day-mah, Dk. VIII, 20, 19.

Dâstân, man, Dk. IX, 16, 2.

Dâvân, man, Fr. 469.

Dâyûn, priest, Dk. IX, 24, 17 n.

Day-watches, Dk. VIII, 7, 10; 29, 9; 43, 38; 46, 4, 8; IX, 9, 6 n-10 n.

Dên, Int. 34.

Dimwând, man, Dk. IX, 15, 2 n; 16, 17 n; 21, 10 n.

Dinkard, book, Int. 29, 30, 32-39; 47, 43, 46; Dk. VIII, 1, 5 n; 20 n; 13, 18 n; 14, 4; 44, 51 n; IX, 47, 2, 69, 1 n; Zs. 0 n; Dk. III, 197, 6 n; IV, 2 n.

Din-virginward, book, Dk. VIII, 2, 2 n; Dv. 0 n.

Dravâspa, angel, Dk. IX, 15, 3 n.

Dûghâdgâdî, woman, Dv. 13; Fr. 469, 483.

Dûrûsrôb, man, Dk. VIII, 35, 13 n.

Duvâsaron, nask, Dk. VIII, 21, 1 n; Riv. I, III, 19.

Duvâsaron, nask, Dk. VIII, 21, 1 n; Riv. II, 18.

Duvâsaron, nask, Dv. 18.

Duvâsara, Dk. VIII, 21, 1 n; Riv. IV, 10.

Dvâzshâh-hâmâst nask, Dk. VIII, 5,
Érânšîr, man, Int. 35, 36.
Ezekiel, book, Int. 39 n.
Ezniq, Dk. IX, 30, 4 n.

Fargard, ch., Dk. VIII, 1, 20, 23; 28, 7; IX, 1, 2; 29, 7; Zs. 6.
Farhang-i Ohm-áevák, book, Int. 30; Dk. VIII, 18, 8 n; 17, 6 n; 19, 1 n, 54 n; 20, 19 n, 64 n, 74 n; 22, 16 n; 31, 39 n; 38, 13 n; 41, 19 n; Fr. 472, 480.
Faruḫ-šád, priest, Int. 31, 32, 34; Dk. IV, 2.
Favámísahán, book, Riv. IV, 7.
Firdaúš, man, Dk. VIII, 18, 12 n.
Fomalhaut, star, Fr. 474 n.
Frabarzar, priest, Dk. IX, 38, 5; 48, 7 n.
Fradaqâfš, region, Dk. IX, 21, 24 n.
Frāḏakhshtō, man, Dk. IX, 16, 16.
Frānāmam, creed, Dk. IX, 31, 6.
Frashōtar, man, Dk. VIII, 20, 25 n; 38, 68; IX, 21, 24; 22, 2 n; 24, 17; 28, 5; 42, 8; 44, 17; 45, 3; 64, 4; 69, 58; III, 7, 1; IV, 22.
Frásiyā́w, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 11, 12 n; IX, 16, 14 n; 28, 5.
Fravash, book, Riv. IV, 23.
Fravashi, see Guardian spirits.
Frēṣūn, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 8, 9; IX, 6, 2; 16, 2 n; 21, 8, 10, 11, 17, 18, 20-22, 24.
Fürāṇaks, family, Dk. IX, 38, 20.

Gāhanbâr, see Season-festival.
Ganabā-sar-niḡad nask, Int. 41, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 11, 12; 21, 1; Fr. 476.
Gandarep, monster, Dk. IX, 15, 2.
Garsâsh, king, Dk. VIII, 18, 12 n.
Gâthas, hymns, Dk. VIII, 3, 2; 4; 20, 162; 44, 81; 46, 1, 2; IX, 6, 1-3; 17, 8; 18, 1; 30, 12; 41, 27 n; 43, 7 n; 47, 2 n; 9, 68, 1; 69, 1 n; Zs. 0 n, 2-9; Dk. III, 7, 2, 5; Fr. 454.
Gâthic days, Dk. VIII, 7, 11, 23.
— lore, Dk. VIII, 1, 7, 17; IX, 6, 7; 23, 6; 55, 1; Fr. 457, 459, 461.

Gâthic men, Dk. VIII, 1, 5 n; IX, 69, 4.
— naks, Int. 40-42; Dk. VIII, 1, 5, 9, 13, 15-17; IX, 2, 2 n; 24, 1 n; 47, 2 n; Zs. 2, 3; Dk. III, 7, 1; 161, 1, 2; 165, 1, 2, 4, 5; 197, 6.
Gayomâr, man, Dk. VIII, 13, 1; IX, 32, 9, 10 n; 53, 18; Fr. 454, 456, 460.
Geldner, Prof., Dk. VIII, 1, 7 n; 48, 1 n; IX, 31, 6 n.
Ges, man, Dk. IX, 23, 6.
Geurva, man, Dk. IX, 23, 2.
Gērāhikīstān ch., Dk. VIII, 30, 1.
Gōkere n č, Dk. VIII, 18, 3, 4; 44, 80; IX, 58, 20 n.
Gōk-patō, chief, Dk. IX, 16, 14.
Gōr day, Int. 38.
Gōr-arvvan, angel, Dk. IX, 15, 3; 29, 1, 3-6; 8-10; 51, 1; 69, 46; III, 7, 5.
Greek language, Int. 31.
Greens, Dk. IV, 24 n.
Guardian spirits, Dk. VIII, 7, 11-13; 13; IX, 12, 21, 22, 10 n; Riv. II, 7; III, 8, Dv. 7.
Gūshim-ayār, man, Int. 38.
Gūm-āsep fire, Dk. IX, 12, 5.
Gūstasp, king, Riv. II, 11; III, 12; IV, 12; Dv. 11; — man, Int. 36.

Gâmâsp, priest, Dk. VIII, 29, 25 n; 38, 68; IX, 21, 24 n; 24, 17; 42, 9.
Gams̄hād, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 6 n.
Gēshmāk, man, Dk. VIII, 35, 13 n.
Girâd naks, Dk. VIII, 18, 1 n; Riv. II, 14; III, 15; IV, 15.
Gud-dev-dād naks, Dk. VIII, 44, 1 n; Riv. I; III, 21.

Gūrēdār-zaritunīstan ch., Zs. 5.

Hā, ch., Dk. VIII, 1, 20, 23; IX, 1, 2; 2, 2 n; Zs. 6, 7 n.
Hadha-māthric lore, Dk. VIII, 1, 7.
— men, Dk. VIII, 1, 5 n.
— naks, Int. 43, 44, 46; Dk. VIII, 1, 5, 10, 13, 15, 16; Zs. 2, 3; Dk. III, 161, 1, 2; 165, 1, 2, 4, 5; 197, 6.
Hâdōkh naks, Int. 40, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 3, 9, 12, 16; 20, 162; 45, 1, 12, 14; Zs. 6; Riv. I; II, 21; III, 22; IV, 22; Dv. 21; Fr. 482-487.
INDEX.

Hakikākānīstān ch., Dk. VIII, 39, 1.
Hamaspāmādēm gāh, Fr. 475.
Hamēmālīstān ch., Dk. VIII, 19, 1.
Haolt, man, Dk. IX, 23, 2.
Hāsār of distance, Dk. VIII, 20, 19, 78, 100 n; 22, 18; — of time, Dk. VIII, 19, 54; 20, 68, 99; 22, 18.
Hart nask, Dk. VIII, 12, 1 n; Riv. II, 12; III, 13; IV, 13.
Haug, Prof., Int. 29, 30; Dk. VIII, 1, 7 n; Fr. 482.
Hāvan gāh, Dk. IX, 9, 7.
Hāvanān, priest, Dk. IX, 38, 5.
Hindūk, Int. 46.
Hindūs, Dk. IV, 26.
Holy-water, Dk. VIII, 7, 1; 26, 24; 29, 11; 38, 9; 44, 41; IX, 32, 4, 7; 69, 24.
Hōm, angel, Dk. IX, 48, 6; III, 7, 1 n.
— juice, Dk. VIII, 38, 7.
— plant, Dk. VIII, 44, 80; IX, 58, 20 n.
— yart, Fr. 488.
Hōshāng, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 5, 6, 8.
— man, Dk. IX, 16, 16 n.
Hōshangji Jāmāspji, Dastūr, Int. 37.
Hāmāt, queen, Dk. IX, 22, 2.
Hūmstūv, man, Dk. IX, 39, 5.
Hushēdar, apostle, Riv. IV, 23. See Aūshēār.
Hūspāram nask, Int. 41, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 11, 1, 28, 1; Riv. 1; Fr. 473; 474, 476–479.
Hūtōs, queen, Dk. IX, 45, 5.
Heaūtumaiti ch., Dk. IX, 9, 1; 32, 1; 54, 1.
Hvōbas, Dk. IX, 21, 24; 45, 3.
Hvōbdō, Dk. IX, 44, 17.
Hvōv, Dk. VIII, 29, 25.

İndar, demon, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n; 32, 3. See Andar.
İran, Int. 31, 32, 36; Dk. VIII, 1, 20, 22; 11, 1 n; 13, 10–12, 15; 20, 119; 26, 22; 37, 26, 50; 38, 30; IX, 8, 5; 16, 15 n, 17 n; 21, 17 n; 28, 3; 41, 6 n; 48, 4; IV, 24, 30.
İrānians, Dk. VIII, 1, 5 n; 8, 2 n; 20, 26, 152; 34, 8; 37, 50; 38, 61; 44, 57; IX, 23, 2.
İsfeṇdiyār, man, Riv. I n; prince, Dk. IX, 22, 4 n.

İstūdgar nask, Dk. VIII, 2, 2 n; Riv. III, 3.
İsvand, priest, Dk. IX, 33, 5.

J in Oriental words is printed G.
Jāmāspji Minochiharji, Dastūr, Int. 36.
Jeremiah, book, Int. 39 n.

Kadmis, Int. 36.
Kad-mōi-urvā ch., Dk. IX, 20, 1; 43, 3, 65, 1.
Kal, Dk. IX, 29, 3, 4; 39, 19; 44, 14, 15. See Kīk.
Kal-Apīvēh, prince, Dk. IX, 28, 2.
Kal-Kavād, king, Dk. IX, 23, 2 n.
— Khusrōf, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 14, 15 n; IX, 12, 5 n; 16, 19; 22, 10 n, 12; 23, 1, 2, 4–6; 58, 10.
— Lōharāsp, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 15.
— Qubād, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 12 n.
Kāṭyōk-zēd sin, Dk. VIII, 19, 1 n.
Kāl-Ūs, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 8 n, 13, 14 n; IX, 22, 4–6, 8, 9, 12; 23, 2 n.
Kal-Viṣṭāsp, king, Int. 31; Dk. VIII, 11, 1, 2; 13, 15; IX, 24, 5, 17; 39, 22; 41, 5; 44, 16; 68, 26; 58. See Viṣṭāsp.
Kāmāh Bahrah, man, Riv. II, 0.
Kamnamāzēa ch., Dk. IX, 16, 1; 39, 3; 61, 1.
Kangdez, land, Dk. IX, 16, 15; 41, 6 n.
Kapāmāgān, book, Dv. 6.
Karap, Dk. VIII, 35, 13; IX, 29, 3; 32, 23; 39, 19; 44, 15; 58, 33.
Kākānīa nask, Dk. VIII, 10, 1 n; Riv. IV, 11.
Kākāsra nask, Dk. VIII, 10, 1 n; Riv. II, 10.
Kākāsrbō nask, Int. 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 10, 12; 9, 20; 10, 1; Fr. 467.
Kāsrb nask, Dk. VIII, 10, 1 n; Riv. I; III, 11; Dv. 10.
Kāusjī Rustamji, Dastūr, Int. 36.
Kavī-Kavād, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 12, 13, 15 n.
Kāvūlīstān, land, Dk. IX, 16, 17 n.
Kayāns, Dk. VIII, 13, 12; IX, 16, 19; 22, 7, 9; 24, 3, 11; Fr. 461.
Keresasp, man, Dk. VIII, 13, 12; 38, 13 n; IX, 16, 1-4; 16, 17 n; 23, 6; Fr. 452.
Khôr sin, Dk. VIII, 31, 39; IX, 12, 15; Fr. 472, 473.
Khshmainyâ ch., Dk. IX, 6, 1; 29, 1; 51, 1.
Khûmbik, Dk. IX, 16, 16.
Khûrdâd, angel, Dk. IX, 9, 1 n; 19, 1; 31, 25; 34, 27; 35, 21; 41, 17; 43, 2; 61, 10; 64, 4; 69, 22; month, Int. 36.
Khûrdah Avesta, Riv. IV, 23.
Khûsirî-î Kavâdân, king, Int. 42; Dk. IV, 0 n, 28.
Khûst nask, Dv. 12.
Khvanâras, region, Dk. VIII, 8, 2; 18, 2, 4, 6 n, 9, 14; IX, 16, 12; 21, 17, 24; IV, 22, 31.
Khyün, Dk. VIII, 11, 4.
Kielhorn, Prof., Int. 37.
Kik, Dk. VIII, 35, 13 n; IX, 32, 23; 53, 33.
Kubâd, man, Int. 35.
Kêkast lake, Dk. IX, 12, 5 n; 23, 5.
Kidadh Vâgarkarıdan, book, Riv. IV, 23.
Kîdrät nask, Dk. VIII, 13, 1 n; Riv. I.
Kînštân, land, Dk. IX, 16, 14 n.
Kînvd bridge, Dk. VIII, 14, 8; 24, 10 n; 29, 1 n; IX, 16, 3; 20, 3, 4; 49, 8 n; 61, 9; 63, 2; Dv. 5; Fr. 455, 487.
Kitrådañ nask, Int. 40, 41, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 11, 12, 16 n; 18, 1; Fr. 468.
Kitrag-mîyân, prince, Dk. IX, 41, 6.

Law, Dk. VIII, 1, 5, 7, 16, 17; Zs. 2, 3; Dk. III, 7, 4; 161, 1, 2; 165, 1, 5.
Legal nasks, Int. 43-45; Dk. VIII, 1, 11, 13; III, 161, 1, 2; 165, 2, 4, 5; 197, 6.

Mâdîgân-î gugastak Abâlîs, book, Int. 33; Dk. IV, 2 n.
Magian men, Dk. IX, 60, 58; IV, 21.
Magianship, Dk. IX, 60, 58.
Magian statements, Dk. IV, 34.
Mâh-ruÎ, Dk. IX, 43, 7 n.
Mâh-vindâd, man, Int. 34-36, 38.
Mâldîk-mâh, man, Dk. IX, 24, 1, 17; 44, 19; 45, 2 n.
Mâldîk-zarem, season, Dk. VIII, 38, 7.
Mânîh, heretic, Dk. IX, 39, 13; 53, 3 n.
Mânarspend, angel, Dk. IX, 12, 16; 39, 8.
Mânvâñûhar, king, Dk. VIII, 18, 10, 11 n, 12, 18; IX, 35, 13; Fr. 468.
Mar'zâpân, man, Int. 35.
Mashya, man, Dk. VIII, 18, 1; 31, 30.
Mashyûl, woman, Dk. VIII, 13, 1; 31, 30.
Mâthra, Zs. 3; Dk. III, 7, 1-5.
Mâthra-spenzâta, Dk. VIII, 1, 5 n.
Mazdak, heretic, Int. 42; Dk. IX, 32, 17 n; 53, 3 n; IV, 28 n.
Mâzendarân, land, Dk. VIII, 18, 9; IX, 16, 17 n; 21, 17-21; 23, 24; 22, 4 n.
Mâzöñik demons, Dk. IX, 22, 4.
Mîthâokhta, demon, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n.
Mîtrô, angel, Dk. VIII, 44, 16; IX, 9, 7; 20, 4, 5; 23, 1; 28, 3; 39, 9; month, Int. 38.
Mîtrô-âpân, man, Int. 34, 35, 38; Fr. 484.
Modî library, Fr. 470 n.
Mouth-veil, Dk. VIII, 44, 65.
Muhammadan, Int. 38, 39; Dk. IX, 32, 17 n.
Mullâ Bahman, Int. 36.
— Behrâm, Int. 36.
— Fîrûz, Int. 36.

Nâdâr nask, Int. 39, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 10, 12; 6, 1; Riv. II, 6; III, 7; IV, 7; Fr. 466.
Nâdâr nask, Dk. VIII, 8, 1 n; Riv. I; Dv. 6.
Naremâhân, man, Int. 34, 35, 38.
Naremân Hôshang, man, Riv. III, o.
Naunghâthiya, demon, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n.
Nausâri, town, Int. 37.
Nero, emperor, Dk. IV, 24 n.
Nêryôsang, angel, Dk. IX, 22, 10-12.
Nîkázâm nask, Int. 41, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 11, 12; 16, 1; Fr. 470-475.
Nîrangistan ch., Int. 44, 45; Dk. VIII, 29, 1; Fr. 468, 476, 477.
Nîvîk, man, Dk. IX, 16, 2.
Nîyâdâm nask, Dk. VIII, 16, 1 n; Riv. I.
INDEX.

Niyāram nask, Dk. VIII, 16, 1 n.; Riv. II, 16; III, 17; IV, 17; Dv. 16.

Niyāz, demon, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n.

Nōdar, man, Dk. VIII, 13, 18; IX, 33, 5.

Ordeal, Dk. VIII, 19, 38; 20, 12, 14–16, 19, 33, 38, 40–42, 54–56, 66, 67, 130; 32, 1; 38, 64; 42, 3–6; IX, 17, 8; 40, 11, 12; 53, 5–8; Zs. 5; Fr. 477.

Oxus, river, Dk. IX, 16, 14 n.

Padramgōs, lun. man., Int. 46.

Pāgag nask, Int. 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 10, 12, 7; 7, 1; Fr. 466.

Pāgām nask, Dk. VIII, 7, 1 n.; Riv. II, 7; III, 8; IV, 8; Dv. 7.

Pāgōn nask, Fr. 466.

Pādēnā nask, Zs. 3.

Pāpak, man, Int. 31; Dk. IV, 25.

Parasang, meas., Dk. VIII, 20, 100.

Parōkdāsh bird, Dk. VIII, 44, 69.

Parshad-gāvā, chief, Dk. IX, 24, 17.

Pārši year, Int. 35, 36, 38.

Pāshū-haūr-vastān ch., Dk. VIII, 23, 1; Zs. 5.

Pāt-kār-rāṣṭān ch., Dk. VIII, 16, 2; Zs. 5.

Pāt-srōbā, king, Dk. VIII, 18, 9.

Pāzūn nask, Dk. VIII, 7, 1 n.; Riv. I.

Pēshōštānū, prince, Dk. IX, 16, 15; 41, 6 n.; Riv. IV, 23.

Pērāndas, Perānsih, or Pērāyānsāl, land, Dk. IX, 16, 17 n.

Pērānīgas, land, Dk. IX, 21, 20.

Pērōdāsian, Dk. VIII, 13, 5.

Peshotonji Behramji, Dastūr, Int. 37; Fr. 470 n.

Pērīnās, land, Dk. IX, 16, 17.

Piūn valley, Dk. IX, 16, 17 n.

Poona, town, Int. 37.

Pūrādākhshāt, man, Dk. IX, 16, 17.

Pūrādāst, woman, Dk. IX, 45, 2 n, 4.

Pourushapā, man, Fr. 483.

Ptōlemēos, Int. 46.

Qandahār, city, Dk. IX, 16, 17 n.

Radō-dād-aftāg nask, Int. 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 10, 12; 8, 1; Zs. 3; Fr. 467.

Rāgha, city, Fr. 460.

Rām, angel, Dk. IX, 23, 1 n.

Rapithwin gāh, Dk. IX, 9, 8; Fr. 477.

Rashnū, angel, Dk. VIII, 20, 153, 157, 158; 22, 23; 44, 16; IX, 9, 6; 39, 10; Fr. 471.

Rāspī, priest, Dk. VIII, 7, 5, 9; 8, 3; 29, 1, 5, 13.

Ratanji-shāh, man, Int. 36.

Ratu, Fr. 456, 457.

Rattātāyī nask, Dk. VIII, 8, 1 n.; Riv. I; II, 8; III, 9; IV, 9; Dv. 8.

Rēshistān ch., Dk. VIII, 18, 1.

Rōg-vēh, man, Int. 35.

Romans, Dk. IV, 24 n, 26 n.

Rūman, Riv. IV, 23; Dv. 22.

Rustam, hero, Dk. IX, 22, 4 n.

Rūstām, man, Int. 36, 38.

Rustanji Kaikobādji, Dastūr, Int. 37.

Sacerdotal leadership, Dk. VIII, 7, 4, 5; 8, 2; 37, 5; 45, 5.

Sacred cake, Dk. VIII, 29, 2; IX, 14, 1, 2; Fr. 474.

— feast, Dk. VIII, 39, 6.

— shirt, Dk. VIII, 29, 15; Fr. 474.

— thread-girdle, Dk. VIII, 29, 15; 38, 25; Fr. 475, 476.

— twigs, Dk. VIII, 19, 38; 20, 12, 66; 26, 24; 29, 16; 44, 65.

Sad-dar, book, Dk. VIII, 44, 33 n.

Sad-darband-i Hūsh, book, Fr. 452.

Saham, demon, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n.

Sairima, land, Dk. VIII, 13, 15 n.

Sakādān nask, Int. 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 11, 12; 38, 1; Riv. I; Fr. 479–481.

Salm, prince, Dk. VIII, 13, 9.

Salāmān, land, Dk. VIII, 13, 17.

Samarkand, land, Dk. IX, 38, 5 n.

Sasanians, Int. 29, 42, 44; Dk. VIII, 13, 16 n, 17; 43, 24 n; 44, 1 n; IX, 32, 17 n; IV, 24 n; Fr. 482.

Sāukavastān, land, Dk. IX, 16, 14 n.

Season-festival, Dk. VIII, 7, 1, 3, 8; 29, 8, 10; 45, 4; IX, 2, 6; Riv. II, 7; III, 8; IV, 8; Dv. 7.

Sēg, demon, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n.

Sēnān, tribe, Dk. IX, 33, 5.

Sēnō, priest, Dk. IX, 24, 17; 38, 5. See Sēnō.

Sfend nask, Dk. VIII, 14, 1 n; Riv. II, 13; III, 14; IV, 14.

[37]
Shāh-mard, man, Int. 35.
Shāhnāmah, book, Dk. VII, 11, 4 n; 13, 6 n, 9 n; IX, 22, 4 n, 5 n.
Shahpūhar I, king, Dk. IX, 39, 13 n; IV, 26.
Shahpūhar II, king, Int. 42; Dk. VIII, 1, 22 n; 13, 18 n; IV, 27.
Shapīghan, Int. 31; Dk. IV, 23, 26.
Shatravera, angel, Dk. IX, 48, 1, 2; 69, 18; IV, 0 n, 12.
Shatrō-ayār, man, Int. 34-36, 38, 47.
Shatro-ayārān ephemeris, Int. 46.
Shatvarīrō, angel, Dk. IX, 9, 1 n.
Srīkān, town, Zs. 0 n.
Styāvakshī, prince, Dk. VIII, 13, 14; IX, 16, 15 n; 22, 11.
Snōsē, man, Dk. IX, 88, 5.
Soξrōbē Rustamjē, Dastōr, Int. 36.
Sōshāns, apostle, Dk. VIII, 14, 14; IX, 28, 3-5; 30, 10 n; 33, 1; 41, 8 ; 58, 10, 15; 69, 10, 29, 31; Zs. 9.
Spānsīyōrō, man, Dk. IX, 21, 24.
Spand nask, Int. 40, 41, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 9, 12; 14, 1, 5; Dv. 13; Fr. 469.
Spandarmad, angel, Dk. VIII, 9, 3; IX, 12, 25; 24, 3 n; 31, 17 n; 38, 5 n, 6; 42, 10; 43, 2, 58, 27; 54, 2; 60, 4; 69, 14, 47; Fr. 463 n, 468; month, Int. 35; Fr. 475.
Spand-dād, man, Int. 35; prince, Dk. VIII, 18, 18 n.
Spentāh nask, Dk. VIII, 14, 1 n; Riv. I.
Spektā-mainyū ch., Dk. IX, 17, 1; 40, 1; 62, 1; gātha, Zs. 2 n, 3.
Spiegeller, Prof., Fr. 453 n.
Spitāmān, Int. 34; Dk. IX, 12, 31; 18, 3; 20, 4-6; 28, 6; 31, 8; 39, 9, 19; 34, n; 35, 6, 17; 38, 10; 39, 20; 40, 4; 43, 1; 46, 1-3; 47, 19; 58, 29; Fr. 458.
Spitāmān Zarautūt, Int. 31; Dk. VIII, 11, 2; IX, 21, 24; 45, 6, 7; Fr. 454, 455.
Spitāmas, Dk. IX, 39, 23; 45, 2.
Spitīyū, priest, Dk. IX, 21, 24.
Spitōtō, priest, Dk. IV, 22 n.
Srōbar, snake, Dk. VIII, 35, 13; IX, 10, 3; 15, 2, 3 n.
Srōsh, angel, Dk. VIII, 9, 3; 44, 16; IX, 9, 5; 21, 4 n; 22, 1; 28, 3; 33, 5 n; 39, 16; Fr. 471.
Srōsh yast, Dk. VIII, 46, 1 n; Fr. 482, 487, 488.
Srōshāvāz, priest, Dk. IX, 33, 5.
Stōd-yast nask, Int. 40, 42, 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 9, 12; 46, 1 n, 4; IX, 2, 2 n; 47, 10; Zs. 3 n; Riv. I, 1; III, 2; IV, 2; Dv. 1; Fr. 487, 488. See Yart.
Stōristān ch., Dk. VII, 24, 1; Zs. 5.
Stōdāgar nask, Dk. VIII, 2, 2 n; Riv. I; II, 2; IV, 3; Dv. 2; Fr. 452.
Sūçek nask, Int. 43, 45; Dk. VIII, 1, 7 n, 9, 12; 2, 2; IX, 2, 2; Zs. 4 n; Fr. 451.
Surat, town, Int. 36; Fr. 470 n.
Satvāhrūn, lun. man., Int. 46.
Sēnō, priest, Dk. III, 7, 1; 197, 6 n.
See Sēnō.
Sīkand-gūmanīk Vīgar, book, Int. 33.
Sōvar, demon, Dk. IX, 9, 1; 21, 4 n.
Tad-thwā-peresā ch., Dk. IX, 14, 1; 37, 1; 69, 1.
Taξar, meas., Dk. VIII, 20, 19.
Tākhmō-rupō, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 6.
Tāndpūhar sin, king, Dk. VIII, 20, 65, 98; 29, 5; Fr. 455, 472 n.
Tārōmat, demon, Dk. IX, 34, p.
Tartars, Int. 39.
Tātērōd, demon, Dk. IX, 9, 1; 21, 4 n.
Tā-ve-urvātā ch., Dk. IX, 8, 1; 31, 1; 53, 1.
Tāξ, man, Dk. VIII, 13, 8, 9.
Tāξīks, tribe, Dk. VIII, 13, 8.
Tehmurās Dinshawji, priest, Int. 46.
Thraetano, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 8 n.
Three nights after death, Dk. VIII, 30, 12.
Tīr, month, Int. 34.
Tītīdīr, day, Int. 36.
Tōsār, or Tanasar, priest, Int. 31; Dk. IV, 25.
Tūg, prince, Dk. VIII, 13, 9.
Tūrya, tribe, Dk. VIII, 13, 15 n.
Tūmāspian, title, Dk. VIII, 13, 11.
Tūrān, land, Dk. VIII, 13, 11, 15; 35, 13 n; IX, 22, 17; 38, 5; 39, 20.
Tūrī Prādrāv-vakhsh, man, Dk. IX, 10, 3.
Yast (yasa), Dk. IX, 69, 1; Riv. II, 21; III, 22.
— nask, Dk. VIII, 1, 16; 46, 1; Zs. 3; Riv. I. See Stöd-yart.
Yasts, Int. 45; Dk. VIII, 10, 2; Fr. 470, 471, 488.
Yāta sin, Dk. VIII, 31, 39.
Yathā-ahā-vairya ch., Dk. IX, 2, 2; 25, 1; formula, Dk. VIII, 1, 7; n; 2, 2 n; 44, 51; IX, 2, 2, 3, 16, 32, 9; 47, 2 n, 6; Zs. 4 n; Dk. III, 7, 2; Riv. I; III, 1; IV, 1; Fr. 451.
Yathāiḥ ch., Dk. IX, 10, 1; 33, 1; 55, 1.
Yazd, town, Int. 36.
Yazdakard, king, Int. 34–36, 38.
Yēnha-hātām ch., Dk. IX, 4, 1; 27, 1; 49, 1; formula, Zs. 4 n; Fr. 463 n.
Yēzī ch., Dk. IX, 18, 1; 41, 1; 63, 1.
Yīm, king, Dk. VIII, 13, 6–8; 44, 3, 4; IX, 5, 2, 4; 12, 3 n; 21, 2–4, 6, 12; 32, 12; 69, 12; Dv. 18.
Yōut-i Fryānō, Dk. VIII, 13, 18 n; IX, 28, 2 n; 38, 20 n.
Yūgyāst, meas., Dk. VIII, 20, 19.

Zāb-sparam, priest, Int. 33, 39; Dk. VIII, 5, 5 n.
Zākhmstān ch., Zs. 5.
Zand, commentary, Dk. VIII, 1, 3; 3, 3; Fr. 477. See Avesta and Zand.
Zaratūst, apostle, Int. 32; Dk. VIII, 1, 20; 10, 3; 11, 2, 4; 20, 114; 38, 66 n; 46, 3, 14; IX, 2, 17; 12, 3 n; 18, 1, 8, 9; 15, 1, 4; 16, 19 n; 20, 5; 25, 4; 28, 3; 29, 5, 13; 30, 4; 38, 5; 34, 9; 35, 2, 5; 43, 7; 44, 14, 17–21; 45, 2–4; 58, 17; 54, 5, 8; 59, 13, 18; 60, 1; 61, 7, 12; 65, 3; 67, 1; 69, 3, 23, 59; accepts religion, Dk. IX, 24, 18; IV, 22 n, 23; advised, Dk. IX, 12, 13; 24, 15, 17; 25, 2; 27, 1; 88, 25; 43, 8, 11; birth, Dk. VIII, 8, 1; 14, 1, 2; 44, 79; IX, 24, 1, 2, 4, 7–13; coming, Dk. VIII, 13, 16, 20; conflict with demons, Dk. VIII, 44, 74, 75; his family, Dk. VIII, 29, 25; his successors, Dk. VIII, 14, 12–14; IX, 39, 18; 41, 6–8; killed, Dk. VIII, 35, 13 n; law of, Zs. 3; life and actions, Dk. VIII, 14, 3–10; praise of, Dk. IX, 28, 1, 6; 42, 7; 50, 2; religion of, Dk. IX, 37, g–j; 51, 12; 52, 7; 53, 11, 18; 54, 7; 57, 28; 58, 3; 61, 14; speaks, Dk. IX, 12, 23; 27, 2; 31, 7, 9, 11; 35, 18, 22, 24; 37, 7; 69, 8, 30; III, 7, 4; spoken to, Dk. IX, 28, 2, 4, 8; 31, 6; 32, 9, 12; 33, 1; 35, 13, 17, 20, 21, 25; 37, 6, 9, n; 38, 1, 4, 15; 20, 22, 26; 42, 13; 43, 10; 44, 1; 46, 3; 61, 1; 63, 9, 12; 65, 6, 8; 69, 5, 15, 16, 20, 26; III, 7, 1, 3, 5; vision of the future, Dk. IX, 8, 1–3; 35, 14.
Zaratūst the Spitāmān, Int. 34; Dk. VIII, 13, 16; IX, 27, 1; 30, 11; 32, 17, 21; 41, 5; 66, 1.
Zaratūst, priest, Int. 32.
Zaratūst-i Attū-pādān, Dk. VIII, 18, 18 n.
Zārūtū, demon, Dk. IX, 9, 1; 21, 4 n.
Zārmān, demon, Dk. IX, 21, 4 n.
Zatamistān ch., Dk. VIII, 17, 1.
Zirāt nask, Dv. 14.
Zīyānakstān ch., Dk. VIII, 40, 1.
Zōṭi, priest, Dk. VIII, 7, 5, 9; 8, 3; 29, 1, 5, 13; 31, 20; IX, 12, 26–28; 24, 4; 33, 5; 43, 7; 69, 50.
ERRATA.

P. 89, ll. 9, 10, for 'the Irânian nationality (A'îrîh)' read 'subjection (hêrîh)'
P. 186, ll. 19-20, for 'preparation' read 'bespattering'
   In several places it would be better to read āmûkō, 'teaching,' instead of
   hâmô-kûn, 'every kind (or mode),' so as to obtain the following amended
   passages:

P. 23, ll. 14-16. Then the exalting chanted teaching of Aûharmaæd for
   Zaratfist is called, &c.

P. 24, l. 1, the teaching for Kâf-Virtâsp; &c.

P. 114, ll. 15-18, the meritoriousness in the guardianship and teaching by
   the keepers of those flocks; the happy effect of the flock and that
   of the keeper's teaching; &c.

  ll. 23-28, that of the disciple through the teaching by the priestly
   instructor; the teaching of the priestly instructor for the pupil, and
   the happy effect of the priestly instructor's teaching in similar
   matters.

P. 119, ll. 2-5, the want of eminence of any one through a teaching that
   is an offence to others, which is owing to his closed doors and evil
   eminence in teaching; &c.

Professor Darniestetter has suggested the following correction:

P. 26, ll. 22, 23, for 'based upon the traditional early law (vâsarîd
   pêrdoûdî)' read 'dependent upon Vâegegered the Pêrdoûdîan;' [who
   was the twin brother of Hôshâng; see Sachau's Albûhûni's
   Chronology of Ancient Nations, pp. 206, 211].
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONSONANTS</th>
<th>Gutturales</th>
<th>Missionary Alphabet</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Zend</th>
<th>Pehlevi</th>
<th>Persian</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Hebrew</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I Class</td>
<td>II Class</td>
<td>III Class</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Tenuis</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>क</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>क</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 &quot;</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ख</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>kh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Media</td>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>म</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>न</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 &quot;</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>घ</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Gutturo-labialis</td>
<td>q</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>q</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Nasalis</td>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Spiritus asper</td>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 &quot;</td>
<td>'h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 &quot;</td>
<td>'h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 &quot;</td>
<td>'h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 &quot;</td>
<td>'h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 &quot;</td>
<td>'h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ह</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह (ng)</td>
<td>ह, hs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gutturales modificatae</td>
<td>(palatales, &amp;c.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Tenuis</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>च</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 &quot;</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>क</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>kh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Media</td>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ज</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>न</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 &quot;</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>घ</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 &quot;</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>न</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>न</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHINESE</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>TH</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>b, h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEBREW</td>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>ㅌ</td>
<td>ㅊ</td>
<td>ㅅ</td>
<td>ㅈ</td>
<td>ㅌ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARABIC</td>
<td>١</td>
<td>٢</td>
<td>٣</td>
<td>٤</td>
<td>٥</td>
<td>٦</td>
<td>٧</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERSIAN</td>
<td>۱</td>
<td>۲</td>
<td>۳</td>
<td>۴</td>
<td>۵</td>
<td>۶</td>
<td>۷</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSALTER</td>
<td>๑</td>
<td>๒</td>
<td>๓</td>
<td>๔</td>
<td>๕</td>
<td>๖</td>
<td>๗</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZEN</td>
<td>๑</td>
<td>๒</td>
<td>๓</td>
<td>๔</td>
<td>๕</td>
<td>๖</td>
<td>๗</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SANSKRIT</td>
<td>๑</td>
<td>๒</td>
<td>๓</td>
<td>๔</td>
<td>๕</td>
<td>๖</td>
<td>๗</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>18 Semivocalis</th>
<th>19 Spiritus asper</th>
<th>20 &quot; lenis</th>
<th>21 &quot; asper assimilatus</th>
<th>22 &quot; lenis assimilatus</th>
<th>23 Tennis</th>
<th>24 &quot; aspirata</th>
<th>25 &quot; assimilata</th>
<th>26 Media</th>
<th>27 &quot; aspirata</th>
<th>28 &quot; assimilata</th>
<th>29 Nasalis</th>
<th>30 Semivocalis</th>
<th>31 &quot; mollis 1</th>
<th>32 &quot; mollis 2</th>
<th>33 Spiritus asper 1</th>
<th>34 &quot; asper 2</th>
<th>35 &quot; lenis</th>
<th>36 &quot; asperinus 1</th>
<th>37 &quot; asperinus 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I Class</td>
<td>II Class</td>
<td>III Class</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dentales modificatae (linguales, &amp;c.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38 Tenuis</td>
<td>t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 ″ aspirata</td>
<td>th</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 Media</td>
<td>d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 ″ aspirata</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 Nasalis</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 Semivocalis</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 ″ fricata</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 ″ discritica</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 Spiritus asper</td>
<td>sh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47 ″ lenis</td>
<td>zh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Labiales.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48 Tenuis</td>
<td>p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49 ″ aspirata</td>
<td>ph</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 Media</td>
<td>b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 ″ aspirata</td>
<td>bh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52 Tenuissima</td>
<td>p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 Nasalis</td>
<td>m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54 Semivocalis</td>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 ″ aspirata</td>
<td>hw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56 Spiritus asper</td>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57 ″ lenis</td>
<td>v</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58 Anuvāra</td>
<td>m</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 Visarga</td>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sacred Books of the East
Translated by Various Oriental Scholars

And edited by

The Right Hon. F. Max Müller.

* * * This Series is published with the sanction and co-operation of the Secretary of State for India in Council.

Report presented to the Académie des Inscriptions, May 11, 1883, by M. Ernest Renan.

'M. Renan présente trois nouveaux volumes de la grande collection des "Livres sacrés de l'Orient" (Sacred Books of the East), que dirige à Oxford, avec une si vaste érudition et une critique si sûre, le savant associé de l'Académie des Inscriptions, M. Max Müller.... La première série de ce beau recueil, composée de 24 volumes, est presque achevée. M. Max Müller se propose d'en publier une seconde, dont l'intérêt historique et religieux ne sera pas moindre. M. Max Müller a su se procurer la collaboration des savans les plus éminens d'Europe et d'Asie. L'Université d'Oxford, que cette grande publication honore au plus haut degré, doit tenir à continuer dans les plus larges proportions une œuvre aussi philosophiquement conçue que savamment exécutée.'

Extract from the Quarterly Review.

'We rejoice to notice that a second series of these translations has been announced and has actually begun to appear. The stones, at least, out of which a stately edifice may hereafter arise, are here being brought together. Prof. Max Müller has deserved well of scientific history. Not a few minds owe to his enticing words their first attraction to this branch of study. But no work of his, not even the great edition of the Rig-Veda, can compare in importance or in usefulness with this English translation of the Sacred Books of the East, which has been devised by his foresight, successfully brought so far by his persuasive and organising power, and will, we trust, by the assistance of the distinguished scholars he has gathered round him, be carried in due time to a happy completion.'

Professor E. Hardy, Inaugural Lecture in the University of Freiburg, 1887.

'Die allgemeine vergleichende Religionswissenschaft datirt von jenem grossartigen, in seiner Art einzig dastehenden Unternehmen, zu welchem auf Anregung Max Müllers im Jahre 1874 auf dem internationalen Orientalistencongress in London der Grundstein gelegt worden war, die Übersetzung der heiligen Bücher des Ostens' (the Sacred Books of the East).

The Hon. Albert S. G. Canning, 'Words on Existing Religions.'

'The recent publication of the "Sacred Books of the East" in English is surely a great event in the annals of theological literature.'

Oxford
At The Clarendon Press
London: Henry Frowde
Oxford University Press Warehouse, Amen Corner, E.C.
FIRST SERIES.

VOL. I. The Upanishads.
Translated by F. MAX MÜLLER. Part I. The Khândogya-
upanishad, The Talavakâra-upanishad, The Aitareya-árañyaka,
The Kaushitaki-bráhmaña-upanishad, and The Vágasaneyi-
samhitâ-upanishad. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Upanishads contain the philosophy of the Veda. They have
become the foundation of the later Vedânta doctrines, and indirectly
of Buddhism. Schopenhauer, speaking of the Upanishads, says:
'In the whole world there is no study so beneficial and so elevating
as that of the Upanishads. It has been the solace of my life, it will
be the solace of my death.'

[See also Vol. XV.]

VOL. II. The Sacred Laws of the Âryas,
As taught in the Schools of Âpastamba, Gautama, Vâsisththa,
and Baudhâyana. Translated by GEORG BÜHLER. Part I.
Âpastamba and Gautama. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Sacred Laws of the Âryas contain the original treatises on
which the Laws of Manu and other laugivers were founded.

[See also Vol. XIV.]

VOL. III. The Sacred Books of China.
The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE.
Part I. The Shû King, The Religious Portions of the Shih
King, and The Hsiâo King. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

Confucius was a collector of ancient traditions, not the founder of
a new religion. As he lived in the sixth and fifth centuries B.C.
his works are of unique interest for the study of Ethology.

[See also Vols. XVI, XXVII, XXVIII, XXXIX, and XL.]

VOL. IV. The Zend-Avesta.
Translated by JAMES DARMESTETER. Part I. The Vendîdâd.
Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, 14s.

The Zend-Avesta contains the relics of what was the religion of
Cyrus, Darius, and Xerxes, and, but for the battle of Marathon,
might have become the religion of Europe. It forms to the present
day the sacred book of the Parsis, the so-called fire-worshippers.
[See also Vols. XXIII and XXXI.]

**Vol. V.** Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. West. Part I. The Bundahis, Bahman
Yast, and Shâyast lâ-shâyast. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

The Pahlavi Texts comprise the theological literature of the revival
of Zoroaster’s religion, beginning with the Sassanian dynasty. They
are important for a study of Gnosticism.
[See also Vols. XVIII, XXIV, XXXVII, and XLVII.]

**Vols. VI and IX.** The Qur’ân.
Parts I and II. Translated by E. H. Palmer. 8vo, cloth, 21s.

This translation, carried out according to his own peculiar views
of the origin of the Qur’ân, was the last great work of E. H. Palmer,
before he was murdered in Egypt.

**Vol. VII.** The Institutes of Vishnu.
Translated by Julius Jolly. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

A collection of legal aphorisms, closely connected with one of the
oldest Vedic schools, the Kathas, but considerably added to in later
time. Of importance for a critical study of the Laws of Manu.

**Vol. VIII.** The Bhagavadgîtå, with The Sanatsugâtïya,
and The Anugîtå.
8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

The earliest philosophical and religious poem of India. It has been
paraphrased in Arnold’s ‘Song Celestial’.

**Vol. X.** The Dhammapada,
Translated from Pâli by F. Max Müller; and
The Sutta-Nipâta,
Translated from Pâli by V. Faursbøll; being Canonical Books
of the Buddhists. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

The Dhammapada contains the quintessence of Buddhist morality.
The Sutta-Nipâta gives the authentic teaching of Buddha on some
of the fundamental principles of religion.
VOL. XI. Buddhist Suttas.
Translated from Pāli by T. W. Rhys Davids. 1. The Mahāparinibbāna Sutta; 2. The Dhamma-kakka-ppavattana Sutta. 3. The Tevigga Sutta; 4. The Ākaṅkheyya Sutta; 5. The Ketokhila Sutta; 6. The Mahā-sudassana Sutta; 7. The Sabbāsava Sutta. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

A collection of the most important religious, moral, and philosophical discourses taken from the sacred canon of the Buddhists.

VOL. XII. The Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa, according to the Text of the Mādhyandina School.
Translated by Julius Eggeling. Part I. Books I and II. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

A minute account of the sacrificial ceremonies of the Vedic age. It contains the earliest account of the Deluge in India.
[See also Vols. XXVI, XL1, XLIII, and XLIV.]

VOL. XIII. Vinaya Texts.
Translated from the Pāli by T. W. Rhys Davids and Hermann Oldenberg. Part I. The Pātimokkha. The Mahāvagga, I–IV. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.
The Vinaya Texts give for the first time a translation of the moral code of the Buddhist religion as settled in the third century B.C.
[See also Vols. XVII and XX.]

VOL. XIV. The Sacred Laws of the Āryas,
As taught in the Schools of Āpastamba, Gautama, Vāsishṭha, and Baudhāyana. Translated by Georg Bühler. Part II. Vāsishṭha and Baudhāyana. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

VOL. XV. The Upanishads.
[* * Vol. XV can only be supplied as part of a complete set of the First Series.]

VOL. XVI. The Sacred Books of China.
The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by James Legge. Part II. The Yi King. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.
[See also Vols. XXVII, XXVIII.]

VOL. XVII. Vinaya Texts.
Translated from the Pāli by T. W. Rhys Davids and Hermann Oldenberg. Part II. The Mahāvagga, V–X. The Kullavagga, I–III. 8vo, cloth. 10s. 6d.
**EDITED BY F. MAX MÜLLER.**

**VOL. XVIII.** Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. West. Part II. The Dādāstān-ī Dīnīk and The Epistles of Mānūṣkhar. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

**VOL. XIX.** The Fo-sho-hing-tsan-king.
A Life of Buddha by Aśvaghosha Bodhisattva, translated from Sanskrit into Chinese by Dharmaraksha, A.D. 420, and from Chinese into English by Samuel Beal. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

*This life of Buddha was translated from Sanskrit into Chinese, A.D. 420. It contains many legends, some of which show a certain similarity to the Evangelium infantiae, &c.*

**VOL. XX.** Vinaya Texts.
Translated from the Pāli by T. W. Rhys Davids and Hermann Oldenberg. Part III. The Kullavagga, IV–XII. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

**VOL. XXI.** The Saddharma-pundarika; or, The Lotus of the True Law.
Translated by H. Kern. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

*The Lotus of the True Law,* a canonical book of the Northern Buddhists, translated from Sanskrit. There is a Chinese translation of this book which was finished as early as the year 286 A.D.

**VOL. XXII.** Gaina-Sūtras.
Translated from Prākrit by Hermann Jacobi. Part I. The Ādhārāṅga-Sūtra and The Kalpa-Sūtra. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

*The religion of the Gainas was founded by a contemporary of Buddha. It still counts numerous adherents in India, while there are no Buddhists left in India proper.*

[See Vol. XLV.]

**VOL. XXIII.** The Zend-Avesta.
Translated by James Darmesteter. Part II. The Sīrōzahs, Yasts, and Nyāyis. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

**VOL. XXIV.** Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. West. Part III. Dīnā-ī Mālnōg-Khirad, Sikand-gūmānīk Vigār, and Sad Dar. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.
SECOND SERIES.

**Vol. XXV.** Manu.
Translated by Georg Bühler. 8vo, cloth, 21s.
This translation is founded on that of Sir William Jones, which has been carefully revised and corrected with the help of seven native Commentaries. An Appendix contains all the quotations from Manu which are found in the Hindu Law-books, translated for the use of the Law Courts in India. Another Appendix gives a synopsis of parallel passages from the six Dharma-sūtras, the other Śrāvastis, the Upanishads, the Mahābhārata, &c.

**Vol. XXVI.** The Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa.
Translated by Julius Eggeling. Part II. Books III and IV. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

**Vol. XXVII and XXVIII.** The Sacred Books of China.
The Texts of Confucianism. Translated by James Legge. Parts III and IV. The Lî Kî, or Collection of Treatises on the Rules of Propriety, or Ceremonial Usages. 8vo, cloth, 25s.

Part I. Sāṅkhâyana, Āryāvārya, Pāraskara, Khâdira. Translated by Hermann Oldenberg. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

Part II. Gobhila, Hiraṇyakeśin, Āpastamba. Translated by Hermann Oldenberg. Āpastamba, Yāgīṇa-parībhāshā-sūtras. Translated by F. Max Müller. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

These rules of Domestic Ceremonies describe the home life of the ancient Aryas with a completeness and accuracy unmatched in any other literature. Some of these rules have been incorporated in the ancient Law-books.

**Vol. XXXI.** The Zend-Avesta.
Part III. The Yasna, Visparad, Ârīnagān, Gâhs, and Miscellaneous Fragments. Translated by L. H. Mills. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

**Vol. XXXII.** Vedic Hymns.
Translated by F. Max Müller. Part I. 8vo, cloth, 18s. 6d. [See also Vol. XLVI.]

**Vol. XXXIII.** The Minor Law-books.
Translated by Julius Jolly. Part I. Nārada, Brhadspati. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.
EDITED BY F. MAX MÜLLER.

VOL. XXXIV. The Vedánta-Sūtras, with the Commentary by Saṅkarākārya. Part I.
Translated by G. THIBAUT. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.
[See also Vol. XXXVIII.]

VOLS. XXXV AND XXXVI. The Questions of King Milinda.
Translated from the Pāli by T. W. RHYS DAVIDS.
Part I. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d. Part II. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

VOL. XXXVII. Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. WEST. Part IV. The Contents of the Nasks, as stated in the Eighth and Ninth Books of the Dhíkard. 15s.

VOL. XXXVIII. The Vedánta-Sūtras. Part II. 8vo, cloth, with full Index to both Parts, 12s. 6d.

VOLS. XXXIX AND XL. The Sacred Books of China.
The Texts of Tâoism. Translated by JAMES LEGGE. 8vo, cloth, 21s.

VOL. XLI. The Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa. Part III.
Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

VOL. XLII. Hymns of the Atharva-veda.
Translated by M. BLOOMFIELD. 8vo, cloth, 21s.

VOL. XLIII. The Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa.
Translated by JULIUS EGGELING. Part IV. Books VIII, IX, and X. 12s. 6d.

VOL. XLIV. The Satapatha-Brāhmaṇa. Part V.
[Nearly ready.]

VOL. XLV. The Gaina-Sūtras.
Translated from Prakṛti, by HERMANN JACOB. Part II. The Uttarādhyayaṇa Sūtra, The Sūtrakṛitāṅga Sūtra. 8vo, cloth, 12s. 6d.

VOL. XLVI. Vedic Hymns. Part II. 8vo, cloth, 14s.

VOL. XLVII. Pahlavi Texts.
Translated by E. W. WEST. Part V. Marvels of Zoroastrianism. 8s. 6d.

VOL. XLVIII. The Vedánta-Sūtras, with Rāmānuja's Śrībhāṣṭya.
Translated by G. THIBAUT. [In the Press.]

Anecdota Oxoniensia.
ARYAN SERIES.

Buddhist Texts from Japan. I. Vagrakkhedikā; The Diamond-Cutter.
Edited by F. Max Müller, M.A. Small 4to, 3s. 6d.
One of the most famous metaphysical treatises of the Mahāyāna Buddhists.

Buddhist Texts from Japan. II. Sukhāvatī-Vyūha:
Description of Sukhāvatī, the Land of Bliss.
Edited by F. Max Müller, M.A., and Bunyiu Nanjio. With two Appendices: (1) Text and Translation of Saṅghavarman’s Chinese Version of the Poetical Portions of the Sukhāvatī-Vyūha; (2) Sanskrit Text of the Smaller Sukhāvatī-Vyūha. Small 4to, 7s. 6d.
The *editio princeps* of the Sacred Book of one of the largest and most influential sects of Buddhism, numbering more than ten millions of followers in Japan alone.

Buddhist Texts from Japan. III. The Ancient Palm-Leaves containing the Pragñā-Pāramitā-Hridaya-Sūtra and the Ushnisha-Vigaya-Dhāraṇī.
Edited by F. Max Müller, M.A., and Bunyiu Nanjio, M.A. With an Appendix by G. Bühlcr, C.I.E. With many Plates. Small 4to, 10s.
Contains facsimiles of the oldest Sanskrit MS. at present known.

Dharma-Samgraha, an Ancient Collection of Buddhist Technical Terms.
Prepared for publication by Kenjiu Kasawara, a Buddhist Priest from Japan, and, after his death, edited by F. Max Müller and H. Wenzel. Small 4to, 7s. 6d.

Kātyāyana’s Sarvānukramanī of the Rgveda.
With Extracts from Shadgurusishya’s Commentary entitled Vedārthadīpikā. Edited by A. A. Macdonell, M.A., Ph.D. 16s.

The Buddha-Karita of Asvaghosa.
Edited, from three MSS., by E. B. Cowell, M.A. 12s. 6d.

The Mantrāpātha, or the Prayer Book of the Āpastambins.
Edited, together with the Commentary of Haradatta, and translated by M. Winternitz, Ph.D. *First Part*. Introduction, Sanskrit Text, Varietas Lectionis, and Appendices. Small quarto, 10s. 6d.

Oxford
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
LONDON: HENRY FROWDE
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.